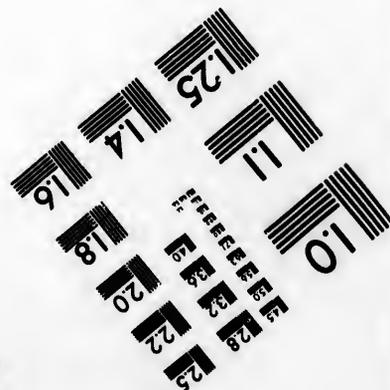
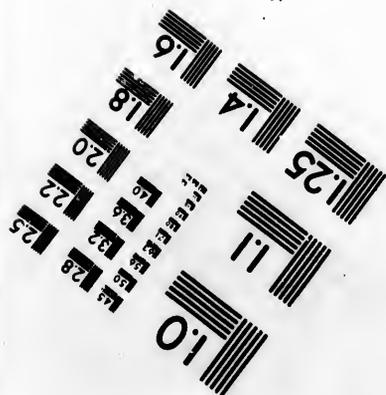
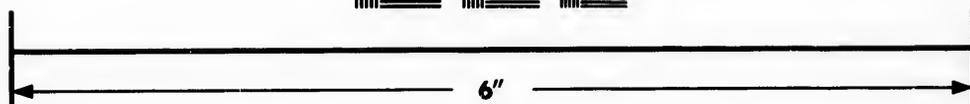
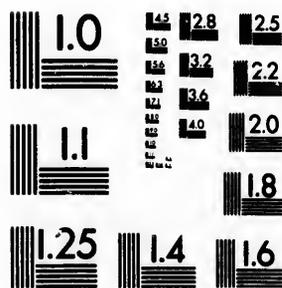


**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

**CIHM/ICMH
Microfiche
Series.**

**CIHM/ICMH
Collection de
microfiches.**



Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques

© 1985

Technical and Bibliographic Notes/Notes techniques et bibliographiques

The Institute has attempted to obtain the best original copy available for filming. Features of this copy which may be bibliographically unique, which may alter any of the images in the reproduction, or which may significantly change the usual method of filming, are checked below.

L'Institut a microfilmé le meilleur exemplaire qu'il lui a été possible de se procurer. Les détails de cet exemplaire qui sont peut-être uniques du point de vue bibliographique, qui peuvent modifier une image reproduite, ou qui peuvent exiger une modification dans la méthode normale de filmage sont indiqués ci-dessous.

Coloured covers/
Couverture de couleur

Coloured pages/
Pages de couleur

Covers damaged/
Couverture endommagée

Pages damaged/
Pages endommagées

Covers restored and/or laminated/
Couverture restaurée et/ou pelliculée

Pages restored and/or laminated/
Pages restaurées et/ou pelliculées

Cover title missing/
Le titre de couverture manque

Pages discoloured, stained or foxed/
Pages décolorées, tachetées ou piquées

Coloured maps/
Cartes géographiques en couleur

Pages detached/
Pages détachées

Coloured ink (i.e. other than blue or black)/
Encre de couleur (i.e. autre que bleue ou noire)

Showthrough/
Transparence

Coloured plates and/or illustrations/
Planches et/ou illustrations en couleur

Quality of print varies/
Qualité inégale de l'impression

Bound with other material/
Relié avec d'autres documents

Includes supplementary material/
Comprend du matériel supplémentaire

Tight binding may cause shadows or distortion along interior margin/
La reliure serrée peut causer de l'ombre ou de la distorsion le long de la marge intérieure

Only edition available/
Seule édition disponible

Blank leaves added during restoration may appear within the text. Whenever possible, these have been omitted from filming/
Il se peut que certaines pages blanches ajoutées lors d'une restauration apparaissent dans le texte, mais, lorsque cela était possible, ces pages n'ont pas été filmées.

Pages wholly or partially obscured by errata slips, tissues, etc., have been refilmed to ensure the best possible image/
Les pages totalement ou partiellement obscurcies par un feuillet d'errata, une pelure, etc., ont été filmées à nouveau de façon à obtenir la meilleure image possible.

Additional comments:/
Commentaires supplémentaires:

Photocopy of map

This item is filmed at the reduction ratio checked below/
Ce document est filmé au taux de réduction indiqué ci-dessous.

10X	12X	14X	16X	18X	20X	22X	24X	26X	28X	30X	32X
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>						

The copy filmed here has been reproduced thanks to the generosity of:

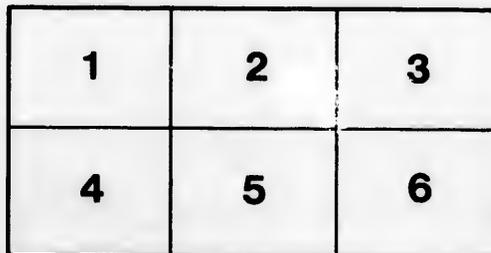
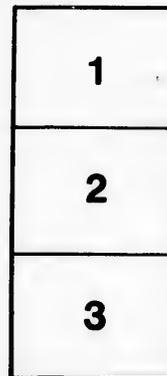
Library of Congress
Photoduplication Service

The images appearing here are the best quality possible considering the condition and legibility of the original copy and in keeping with the filming contract specifications.

Original copies in printed paper covers are filmed beginning with the front cover and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression, or the back cover when appropriate. All other original copies are filmed beginning on the first page with a printed or illustrated impression, and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression.

The last recorded frame on each microfiche shall contain the symbol \rightarrow (meaning "CONTINUED"), or the symbol ∇ (meaning "END"), whichever applies.

Maps, plates, charts, etc., may be filmed at different reduction ratios. Those too large to be entirely included in one exposure are filmed beginning in the upper left hand corner, left to right and top to bottom, as many frames as required. The following diagrams illustrate the method:



L'exemplaire filmé fut reproduit grâce à la générosité de:

Library of Congress
Photoduplication Service

Les images suivantes ont été reproduites avec le plus grand soin, compte tenu de la condition et de la netteté de l'exemplaire filmé, et en conformité avec les conditions du contrat de filmage.

Les exemplaires originaux dont la couverture en papier est imprimée sont filmés en commençant par le premier plat et en terminant soit par la dernière page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration, soit par le second plat, selon le cas. Tous les autres exemplaires originaux sont filmés en commençant par la première page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration et en terminant par la dernière page qui comporte une telle empreinte.

Un des symboles suivants apparaîtra sur la dernière image de chaque microfiche, selon le cas: le symbole \rightarrow signifie "A SUIVRE", le symbole ∇ signifie "FIN".

Les cartes, planches, tableaux, etc., peuvent être filmés à des taux de réduction différents. Lorsque le document est trop grand pour être reproduit en un seul cliché, il est filmé à partir de l'angle supérieur gauche, de gauche à droite, et de haut en bas, en prenant le nombre d'images nécessaire. Les diagrammes suivants illustrent la méthode.

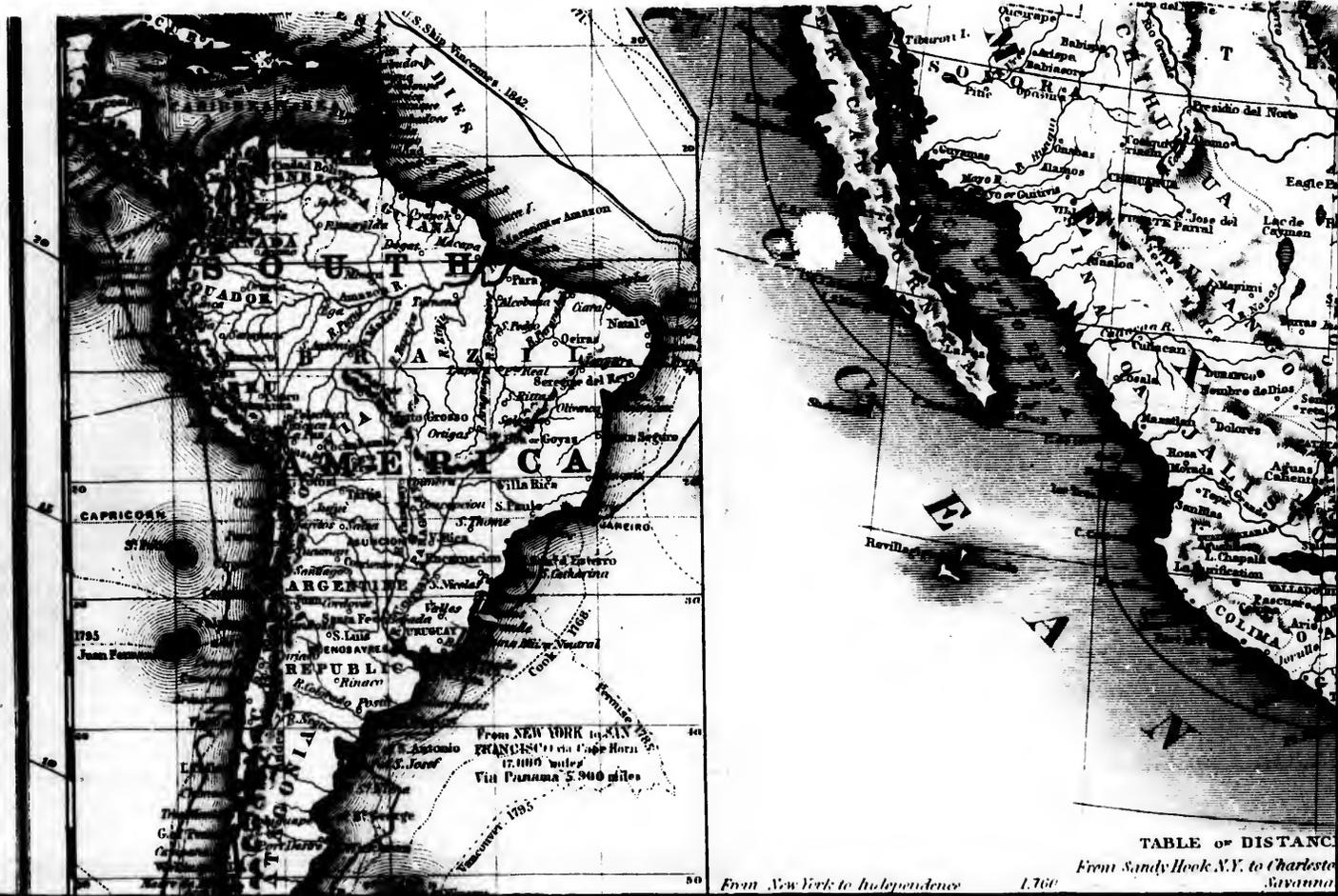
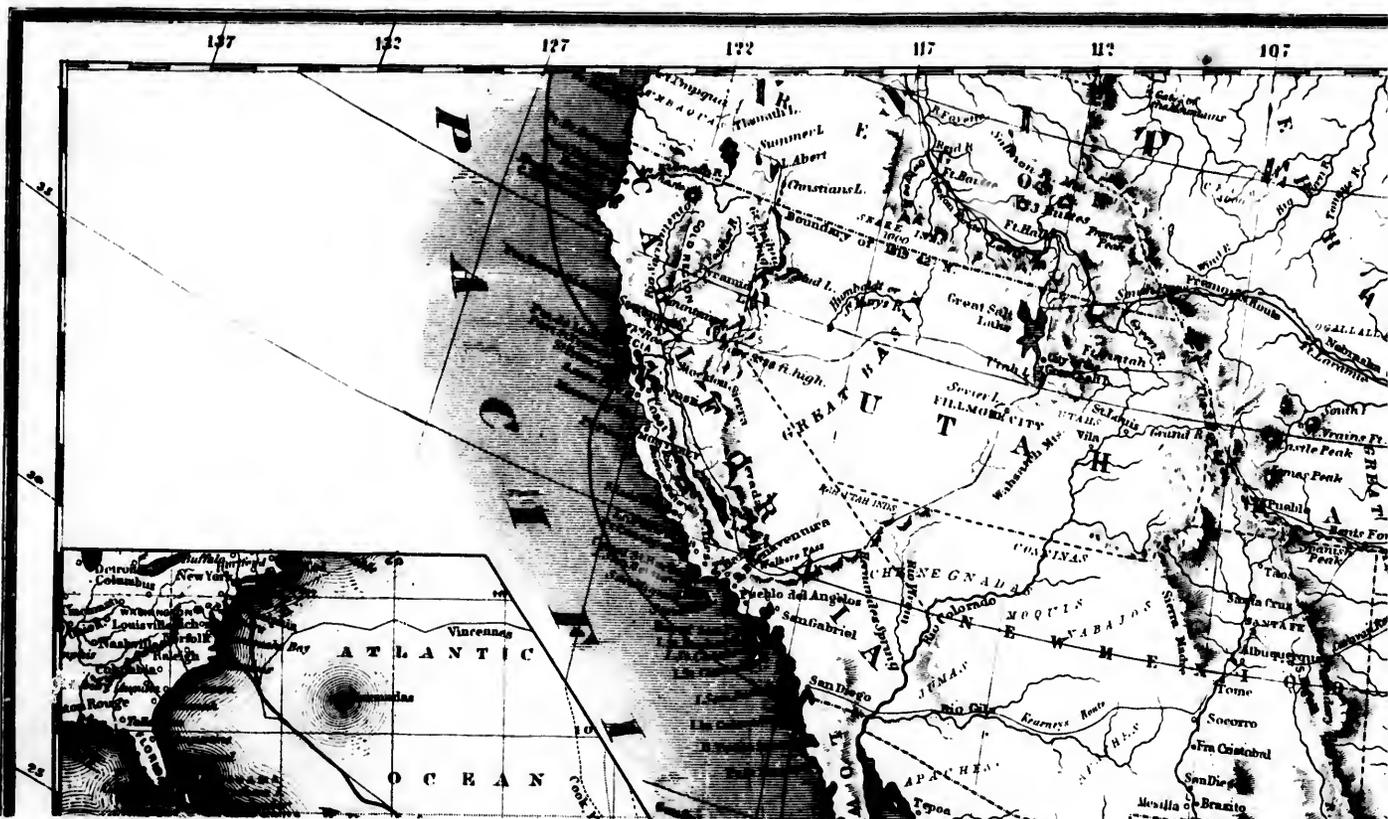


TABLE OF DISTANCES
From New York to Independence 1,700
From Sandy Hook N.Y. to Charleston S.C. 1,700
From New York to Savannah 1,700



TABLE OF DISTANCES
 from Sandy Hook, N.Y. to Charleston, S.C.
 Savannah

Miles
614
680

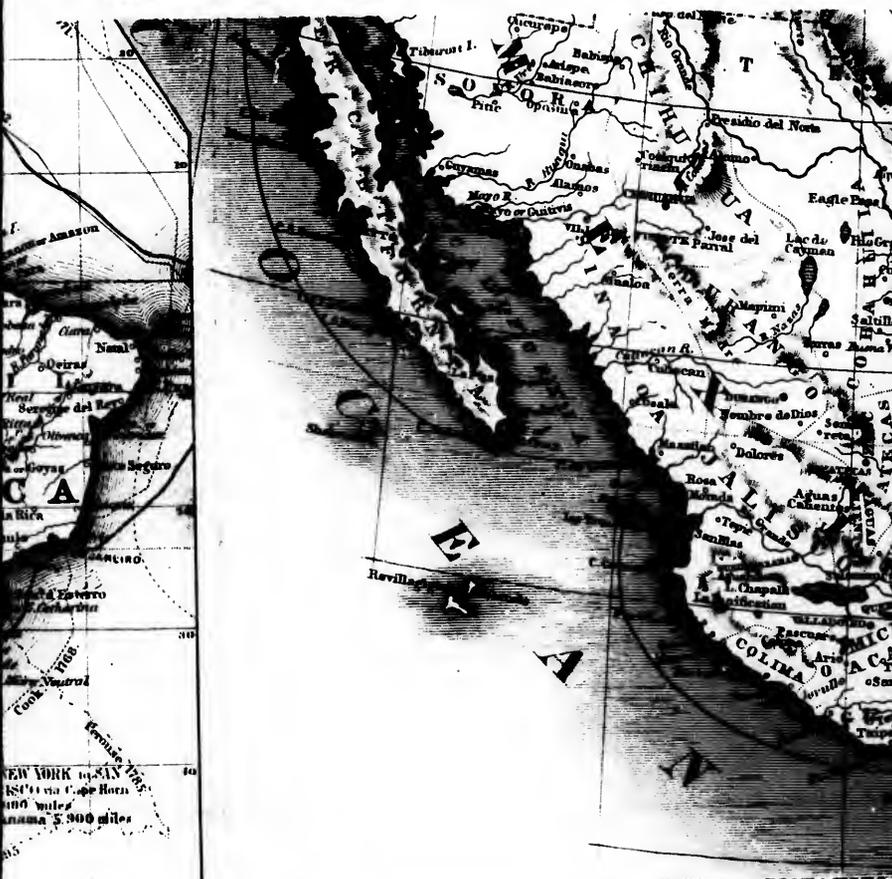
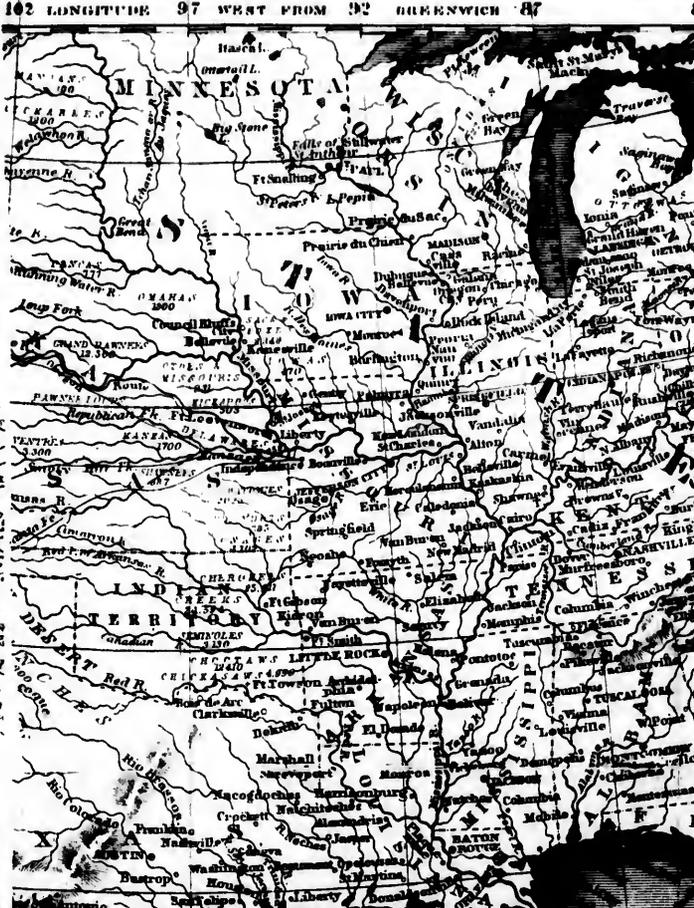
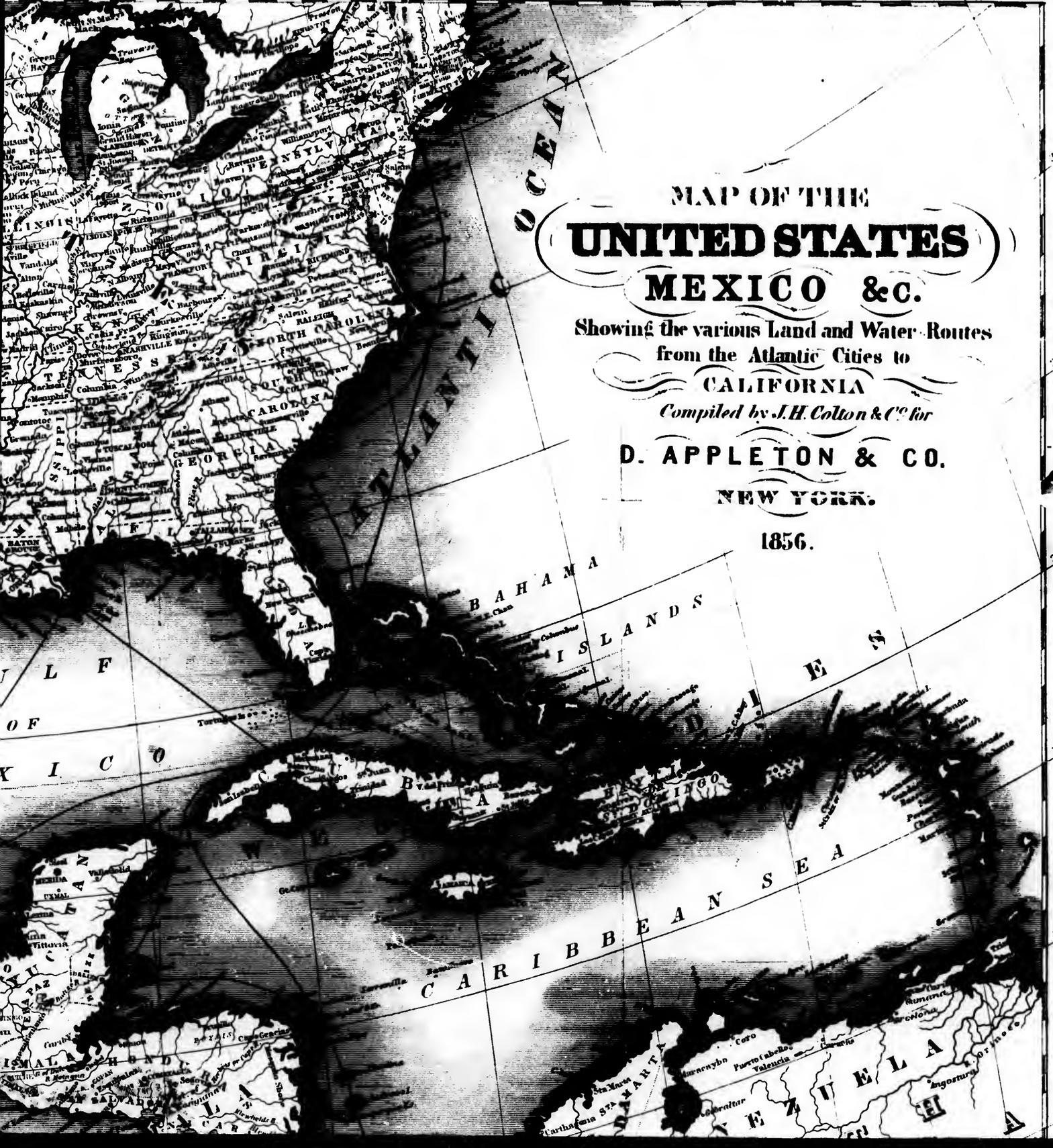


TABLE OF DISTANCES

From New York to Independence	1,760	From Sandy Hook N.Y. to Charleston Bar	614
From Independence Mo. to Saffers Fort	2,091	Savannah	680
		Havana Moro	1,260

NEW YORK to SAN FRANCISCO via Cape Horn 10,000 miles
 to Panama 5,900 miles



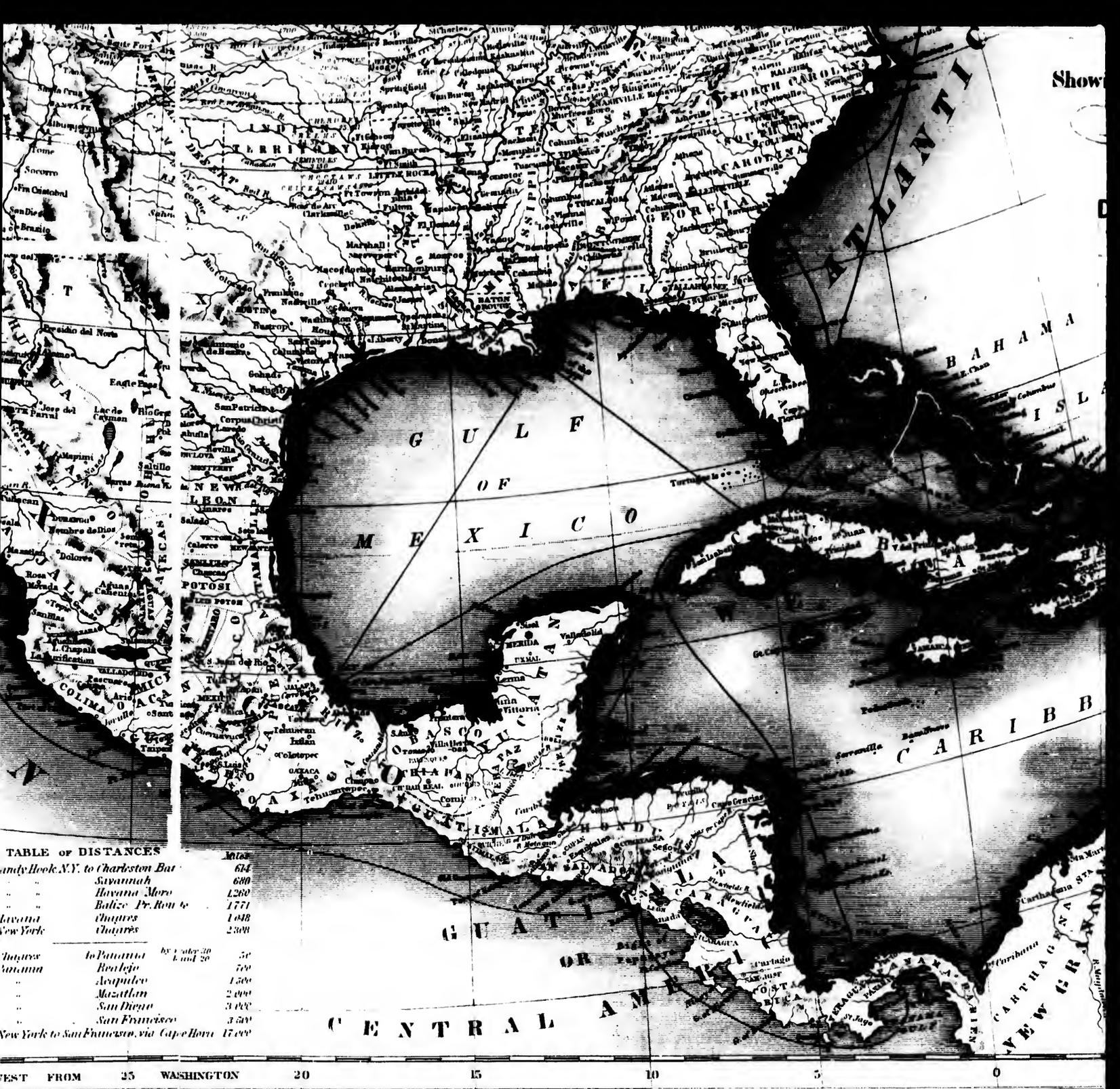
MAP OF THE
UNITED STATES
MEXICO & C.

Showing the various Land and Water Routes
from the Atlantic Cities to
CALIFORNIA

Compiled by J.H. Colton & Co for
D. APPLETON & CO.
NEW YORK.

1856.

30
25
20
15
10
5



Show

TABLE OF DISTANCES

Ward's Hook, N.Y. to Charleston Bar	Miles	614
Savannah	680	
Havana, Moro	1280	
Bahia, Pr. Ron 6	1771	
Havana	1948	
New York	2308	
Havana	by Cuba to	50
Havana	by land to	700
Acapulco	1500	
Mazatlan	2000	
San Diego	3000	
San Francisco	3500	
New York to San Francisco, via Cape Horn	17000	

WEST FROM 35 WASHINGTON 20 15 10 5 0

Entered according to Act of Congress in the

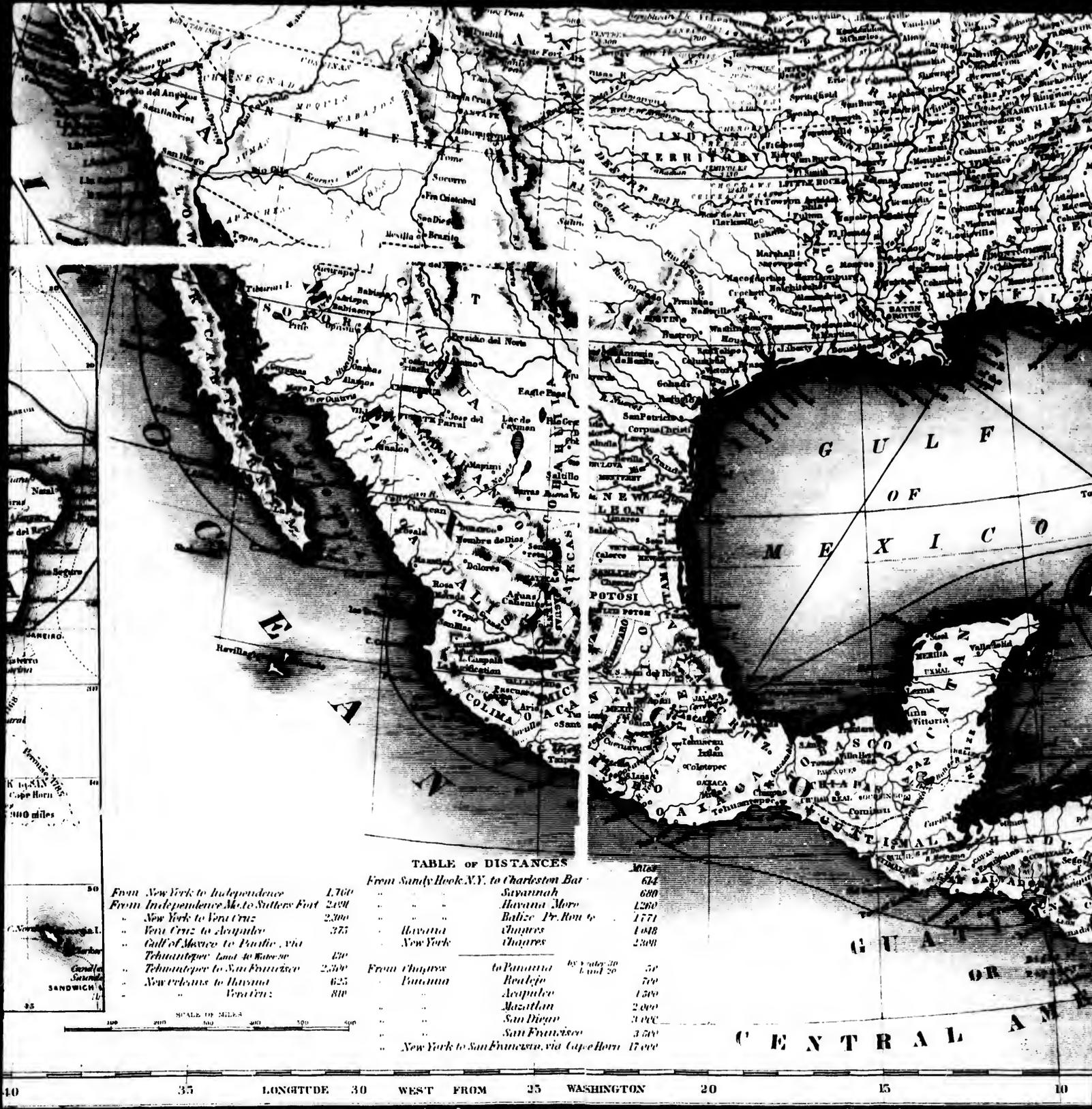


TABLE OF DISTANCES

	Miles		Miles
From New York to Independence	1,760	From Sandy Hook, N.Y. to Charleston Bar	674
From Independence Mo. to Sutters Fort	2,690	" " " Savannah	680
" New York to Vera Cruz	2,300	" " " Havana, Mo.	1,260
" Vera Cruz to Acapulco	375	" Bahic Pr. Ron to	1,771
" Call of Mexico to Pacific, via Tehuantepec Land to Mexico	420	Havana to	1,048
" Tehuantepec to San Francisco	2,500	Chiapas	2,000
" New Orleans to Havana	625	Chiapas	2,000
" " Vera Cruz	810	San Diego	3,000
		San Francisco	3,500
		New York to San Francisco, via Cape Horn	17,000



40 35 30 WEST FROM 25 WASHINGTON 20 15 10

CENTRAL AMERICA

MEXICO & C.

Showing the various Land and Water Routes
from the Atlantic Cities to

CALIFORNIA

Compiled by J.H. Colton & C^o for

D. APPLETON & CO.

NEW YORK.

1856.



Entered according to Act of Congress in the year 1856 by J.H. Colton in the clerk's office of the District Court of the Southern District of New York



COL. J. C. FREMONT.

NARRATIVE
OF
THE EXPLORING EXPEDITION
TO
THE ROCKY MOUNTAINS
IN THE YEAR 1842.
AND TO
OREGON AND NORTH CALIFORNIA
IN THE YEARS 1843-44.

BY
COLONEL J. W. TREMONT,

REPRINTED FROM THE OFFICIAL COPY.



NEW YORK,
D. APPLETON AND COMPANY,
343 & 345 BROADWAY.
M.DCCC.LVI.



COL. J. C. FREMONT.

NARRATIVE
OF
THE EXPLORING EXPEDITION
TO
THE ROCKY MOUNTAINS
IN THE YEAR 1842.
AND TO
OREGON AND NORTH CALIFORNIA
IN THE YEARS 1843-44.

BY
COLONEL J. ^{John} C. ^{Charles} FRÉMONT,

REPRINTED FROM THE OFFICIAL COPY.



NEW YORK:
D. APPLETON AND COMPANY,
346 & 348 BROADWAY.
M.DCCC.LVI.

F592
.F868

P
fo
m
m
ci

g
O
in
of
th
th
In
M
si
in
o

re
M
co

ti
th
th
a
e

PREFATORY NOTICE.

THE immense region west of the Rocky Mountains, extending to the Pacific ocean, and bounded by the Russian frontier on the north, and California on the south, now attracts so much of popular regard, and is commingled with so many important national interests, that an accurate and minute acquaintance with the general topic is essential to every American citizen.

Several exploring tours of the western portion of our continent, within the geographical boundaries of the wilds now commonly known by the title, OREGON, have taken place during the present century. President Jefferson, in 1804, directed the first scrutiny in that country under the superintendence of Messrs. Lewis and Clarke, who devoted the larger part of three years to the examination of those trackless forests, and who were the pioneers of the movements which are now extending the limits of civilization, where Indians, or deer, bears, or buffaloes only roamed. The second expedition by Major Pike to survey the West, forty years ago, was restricted to the eastern side of the Rocky Mountains, and consequently communicated little direct intelligence concerning the lands, the possession of which is now the subject of controversy between the United States and Britain.

The other subsequent travellers in the western territory confined their researches within the country through which the Upper Mississippi and Missouri flow; and therefore imparted no information of any importance concerning the Oregon lands, rivers, and other topics of public interest.

During several years, however, from 1833 to 1838, Mr. Nicollet, a scientific tourist, explored a very extensive portion of the western country beyond the northern branches of the Mississippi. At the close of his amateur travels, the government of the United States engaged him to repeat his journey in another region; and Captain Fremont was united with him to assist his efforts. After an absence of two seasons, they returned and exhibited the

PREFATORY NOTICE.

result of their discoveries and astronomical observations and topographical admeasurements to the government at Washington.

It being desirable for the Federal authorities to become fully acquainted with the state of the territory between the southern geographical boundary of the United States and the Rocky Mountains, around the head-waters of the Missouri, Captain Fremont was appointed to superintend that exploring tour. That enterprising and scientific traveller is now absent on his *third* expedition to enlarge our acquaintance with the western uninhabited districts.

The ensuing narratives include the **REPORTS** of the two tours which have already been made by Captain Fremont, as they were presented to the Congress of the United States, and originally published by their command; excluding only the portions which are altogether astronomical, scientific, and philosophical, and therefore not adapted for general utility. Captain Fremont states that the whole of the delineations both "in the narrative and in the maps," which constitute the official publication, are "the result of positive observation." From a survey of the researches thus presented, it appears, that the entire map of Oregon has been amply drawn out, so far as at present is requisite for all the purposes of geographical inquiry and national arrangement. With these claims on public attention, and the deep interest which the subject itself now offers, this authentic edition of Captain Fremont's extensive and protracted researches in the western dominions of the United States, is confidently recommended to the perusal of our fellow-citizens.

yea
exp
we
pas
tion
of
Ore
teri
exp
the
Mr
and
con
C
mon
clo
Ser
tim
the
gag
last
Cor
form
ing
to
con
the
I
Cal
to
the
on
or
ral,
knc
I
side
bas
oce
the
on
Bri

s and topographical

me fully acquainted
ographical boundary
the head-waters of
attend that exploring
absent on his *third*
uninhabited districts.
two tours which have
resented to the Con
their command; ex-
mical, scientific, and
y. Captain Fremont
narrative and in the
the result of positive
resented, it appears,
so far as at present
nd national arrange-
deep interest which
Captain Fremont's
inions of the United
fellow-citizens.

GEOGRAPHICAL MEMOIR.

On the second day of February, in the year 1847, during my absence on my third expedition of topographical survey, in the western part of this continent, a resolve was passed by the Senate directing the construction of two maps—one of the central section of the Rocky mountains, and the other of Oregon and Upper California—from the materials collected by me in the two previous expeditions, and with the additions which the then existing expedition might furnish; and Mr. Charles Preuss, my assistant in the first and second expeditions, was employed to commence the work.

On my return to the United States, in the month of September last, I found Mr. Preuss closely engaged upon the work on which the Senate had employed him; and, from that time to the present, I have myself given all the time that could be spared from other engagements to supply the additions which the last expedition has enabled me to make. Conceiving that the map of Oregon and California was of the most immediate and pressing importance, I first directed my attention to its preparation, in order to bring it into a condition as soon as possible to be laid before the Senate; which is now done.

In laying this map of Oregon and Upper California before the Senate, I deem it proper to show the extent and general character of the work, and how far it may be depended on as correct, as being founded on my own or other surveys, and how far it is conjectural, and only presented as the best that is known.

In extent, it embraces the whole western side of this continent between the eastern base of the Rocky mountains and the Pacific ocean, and between the straits of Fuca and the gulf of California, taking for its outline, on the north, the boundary line with Great Britain, and on the south, including the bay

of San Diego, the head of the gulf of California, the rivers Colorado and Gila, and all the country through which the line of the late treaty with Mexico would run, from *El Paso del Norte* to the sea. To complete the view in that quarter, the valley of the Rio del Norte is added, from the head of the river to *El Paso del Norte*, thereby including New Mexico. The map has been constructed expressly to exhibit the two countries of Oregon and the Alta California together. It is believed to be the most correct that has appeared of either of them; and it is certainly the only one that shows the structure and configuration of the interior of Upper California.

The part of the map which exhibits Oregon is chiefly copied from the works of others, but not entirely, my own explorations in that territory having extended to nearly two thousand miles. The part which exhibits California, and especially the Great Basin, the Sierra Nevada, the beautiful valley of Sacramento and San Joaquin, is chiefly from my own surveys or personal view, and in such cases is given as correct. Where my own observations did not extend, the best authorities have been followed.

The profile view in the margin, on the north side of the map, exhibits the elevations of the country from the *South Pass* in the Rocky mountains to the bay of San Francisco, passing the Utah and the Great Salt lake, following the river Humboldt through the northern side of the Great Basin, crossing the Sierra Nevada into the valley of the Sacramento, where the emigrant road now crosses that sierra forty miles north of Nueva Helvetia. This line shows the present travelling route to California. The profile on the south side of the map exhibits the elevations of the country on a different line—the line of exploration in the last expedition—

GEOGRAPHICAL MEMOIR

from the head of the Arkansas by the Utah and Salt lake, and through the interior of the Great Basin, crossing the Sierra Nevada into the Sacramento valley at the head of the Rio de los Americanos. These profile views are given merely for their outlines, to show the structure of the country between the Rocky mountains and the sea, and the rise and fall occasioned by mountains and valleys. Full and descriptive profile views on a large scale are wanted, marking the geological structure of the country, and exhibiting at their proper altitudes the different products of the vegetable kingdom. Some material is already collected for such a purpose, extending on different lines from the Mississippi to the Pacific, but not sufficient to complete the work.

The Arabic figures on different parts of the map indicate the elevation of places above the level of the sea; a knowledge of which is essential to a just conception of the climate and agricultural capacities of a country.

The longitudes established on the line of exploration of the last expedition are based on a series of astronomical observations, resting on four main positions, determined by lunar culminations. The first of these main positions is at the mouth of the Fontaine qui Bouit river, on the Upper Arkansas; the second is on the eastern shore of the Great Salt lake, and two in the valley of the Sacramento, at the western base of the Sierra Nevada. This line of astronomical observations, thus carried across the continent, reaches the Pacific ocean on the northern shore of the bay of Monterey.

In my published map, of the year 1845, the line of the western coast was laid down according to Vancouver. When the newly established positions were placed on the map now laid before the Senate, it was found that they carried the line of the coast about fourteen miles west, and the valleys of the Sacramento and San Joaquin about twenty miles east; making an increase of more than thirty miles in the breadth of the country below the Sierra Nevada. Upon examination, it was found that these positions agreed, nearly, with the observations of Captain Beechey, at Monterey. The corrections required by the new positions were then accordingly made; the basin of the Sacramento and San Joaquin valleys was removed to the eastward, and the line of the coast projected farther west, conformably to my observations, retaining the configuration given to it by the surveys of Vancouver.

The error in the position of the San Joaquin, Sacramento, and Wahlahmath valleys still exists upon the most authentic maps extant; and it appears that, upon the charts in general use, a greatly erroneous position is still given to the coast.

By the return of the United States sloop-of-war Portsmouth, Commander Montgomery, from the Pacific ocean, it is learned that two British ships of war are now engaged in making a new survey of the gulf and coast of California. It is also known that an American whale ship was recently lost on the coast of California in consequence of the errors in the charts now in general use, locating the coast and islands, from Monterey south, too far east.*

The astronomical observations made by me across the continent, in this my third expedition, were calculated by Professor Hubbard, of the national observatory, (Washington city,) during the present winter; and a note from him on the subject of these observations is added as an appendix to this memoir. My attention having been recently called to this subject, (the true position of the coast of California,) I find it worthy of remark, that the position given to this coast on the charts of the old Spanish navigators agrees nearly with that which would be assigned to it by the observations of the most eminent naval surveyors of the present day. The position adopted for Monterey and the adjacent coast, on the map now laid before the Senate, agrees nearly with that in which it had been placed by the observations of Malaspina,† in 1791.

In constructing this map it became necessary to adopt the coast line of the Pacific, as found in maps in general use, to give it completeness. It was no part of my design to make a chart of the coast. Finding an error when I came to lay down the Bay of Monterey, I altered my map to suit it. I knew nothing then of any errors in the coast. It is satisfactory now to find that my astronomical observations correspond with those previously made by Beechey and Belcher, and very gratifying to be able to add some testimonial to the correctness of those made by Malaspina long before either of them. Vancouver removed the coast line as fixed by Malaspina, and the subsequent observations carry it back.

* NAVAL.—The United States sloop-of-war Portsmouth, Commander John B. Montgomery, arrived at Boston on Friday, from the Pacific ocean, last from Valparaiso, February 23. Commander Montgomery states that the British frigate "Herald," and the brig "Pandora," are engaged in making a new survey of the gulf and coast of California.

† The whale ship "Hope," of Providence, was recently lost on the coast, in consequence of an error in the charts now in general use, which locate the coasts and islands from Monterey to Cape St. Lucas from fifteen to forty miles too far to the eastward.—National Intelligencer.

‡ Of this skillful, intrepid, and unfortunate navigator, Humboldt (Essay on New Spain) says:

"The peculiar merit of his expedition consists not only in the number of astronomical observations, but principally in the judicious method which was employed to arrive at certain results. The longitude and latitude of four points on the coast (Cape San Lucas, Monterey, Nootka, and Fort Mulgrave) were fixed in an absolute manner.

I in an exp tion I d map for of t wis In c to The to a Sep ken to li of t side char non exor mate sion

T rang with form to th Cali a g wate Paci the ively is re para tion, tains reac snow heav four the l situ rang mou cont

T the Neve self appl tains perp Cali be w the divis Cali deci prod

In laying this map before the Senate, and in anticipation of the full work which my explorations (with some further examinations) may enable me to draw up hereafter, I deem it a proper accompaniment to the map to present some brief notices of CALIFORNIA, with a view to show the character of the country, and its capability or otherwise to sustain a considerable population. In doing this, no general remarks applicable to the whole of California can be used. The diversity in different parts is too great to admit of generalization in the description. Separate views of different parts must be taken; and in this brief sketch, the design is to limit the view to the two great divisions of the country which lie on the opposite sides of the SIERRA NEVADA, and to the character of that mountain itself, so prominent in the structure of the country, and exercising so great an influence over the climate, soil, and productions of its two divisions.

SIERRA NEVADA.

This SIERRA is part of the great mountain range, which, under different names and with different elevations, but with much uniformity of direction and general proximity to the coast, extends from the peninsula of California to Russian America, and without a gap in the distance through which the water of the Rocky mountains could reach the Pacific ocean, except at the two places where the Columbia and Frazer's river respectively find their passage. This great range is remarkable for its length, its proximity and parallelism to the sea-coast, its great elevation, often more lofty than the Rocky mountains, and its many grand volcanic peaks, reaching high into the region of perpetual snow. Rising singly, like pyramids, from heavily timbered plateaux, to the height of fourteen and seventeen thousand feet above the level of the sea, these snowy peaks constitute the characterizing feature of the range, and distinguish it from the Rocky mountains and all others on our part of the continent.

That part of this range which traverses the ALTA CALIFORNIA is called the *Sierra Nevada*, (Snowy mountain)—a name in itself implying a great elevation, as it is only applied, in Spanish geography, to the mountains whose summits penetrate the region of perpetual snow. It is a grand feature of California, and a dominating one, and must be well understood before the structure of the country and the character of its different divisions can be comprehended. It divides California into two parts, and exercises a decided influence on the climate, soil, and productions of each. Stretching along the

coast, and at the general distance of 150 miles from it, this great mountain wall receives the warm winds, charged with vapor, which sweep across the Pacific ocean, precipitates their accumulated moisture in fertilizing rains and snows upon its western flank, and leaves cold and dry winds to pass on to the east. Hence the characteristic differences of the two regions—mildness, fertility, and a superb vegetable kingdom on one side, comparative barrenness and cold on the other.

The two sides of the Sierra exhibit two distinct climates. The state of vegetation, in connection with some thermometrical observations made during the recent exploring expedition to California, will establish and illustrate this difference. In the beginning of December, 1845, we crossed this Sierra, at latitude $39^{\circ} 17' 12''$, at the present usual emigrant pass, at the head of the Salmon Trout river, 40 miles north of New Helvetia, and made observations at each base, and in the same latitude, to determine the respective temperatures; the two bases being, respectively, the *western* about 500, and the *eastern* about 4,000 feet above the level of the sea; and the Pass, 7,200 feet. The mean results of the observations were, on the *eastern* side, at sunrise, 9° ; at noon, 44° ; at sunset 30° ; the state of vegetation and the appearance of the country being at the same time (second week of December) that of confirmed winter; the rivers frozen over, snow on the ridges, annual plants dead, grass dry, and deciduous trees stripped of their foliage. At the *western* base, the mean temperature during a corresponding week was, at sunrise, 29° , and at sunset 52° ; the state of the atmosphere and of vegetation that of advancing spring; grass fresh and green, four to eight inches high, vernal plants in bloom, the air soft, and all the streams free from ice. Thus December, on one side of the mountain, was winter; on the other it was spring.

THE GREAT BASIN.

EAST of the Sierra Nevada, and between it and the Rocky mountains, is that anomalous feature in our continent, the GREAT BASIN, the existence of which was advanced as a theory after the second expedition, and is now established as a geographical fact. It is a singular feature: a basin of some five hundred miles diameter, every way, between four and five thousand feet above the level of the sea, shut in all around by mountains, with its own system of lakes and rivers, and having no connection whatever with the sea. Partly arid and sparsely inhabited, the general character of the GREAT BASIN is that of a desert, but with great exceptions, there being

the United States sloop-
Commander Montgome-
ocean, it is learned that
of war are now engaged
survey of the gulf and
It is also known that
ship was recently lost on
nia in consequence of the
now in general use, loca-
islands, from Monterey

observations made by me
at, in this my third expe-
ted, in this my third expe-
ed by Professor Hub-
d observatory, (Washing-
e present winter; and a
e subject of these obser-
s an appendix to this
ion having been recently
et, (the true position of
nia,) I find it worthy of
e position given to this coast
e old Spanish navigators
that which would be as-
observations of the most
yours of the present day,
d for Monterey and the
e map now laid before
nearly with that in which
y the observations of
1.

This map it became neces-
ast line of the Pacific, as
neral use, to give it com-
no part of my design to
coast. Finding an error
down the Bay of Monte-
map to suit it. I knew
ny errors in the coast,
ow to find that my astro-
ns correspond with those
y Boscchey and Belcher,
; to be able to add some
rrectness of those made
before either of them.
d the coast line as fixed
the subsequent observa-

States sloop-of-war Portsmouth,
Montgomery, arrived at Boston on
Queen, last from Valparaiso, Feb-
Montgomery states that the British
the brig "Pandora," are en-
survey of the gulf and coast of

ope," of Providence, was re-
n consequence of an error in the
use, which locate the coasts and
Cape St. Lucas from fifteen to
e eastward.—*National Intelli-*

pid, and unfortunate navigator,
w Spain) says:
his expedition consists not only
omical observations, but princ-
hed which was employed to at-
the longitude and latitude of four
San Lucas, Monterey, Noctku,
e fixed in an absolute manner.

many parts of it very fit for the residence of a civilized people; and of these parts, the Mormons have lately established themselves in one of the largest and best. Mountain is the predominating structure of the interior of the Basin, with plains between—the mountains wooded and watered, the plains arid and sterile. The interior mountains conform to the law which governs the course of the Rocky mountains and of the Sierra Nevada, ranging nearly north and south, and present a very uniform character of abruptness, rising suddenly from a narrow base of ten to twenty miles, and attaining an elevation of two to five thousand feet above the level of the country. They are grassy and wooded, showing snow on their summit peaks during the greater part of the year, and affording small streams of water from five to fifty feet wide, which lose themselves, some in lakes, some in the dry plains, and some in the belt of alluvial soil at the base; for these mountains have very uniformly this belt of alluvion, the wash and abrasion of their sides, rich in excellent grass, fertile, and light and loose enough to absorb small streams. Between these mountains are the arid plains which receive and deserve the name of desert. Such is the general structure of the interior of the Great Basin, more Asiatic than American in its character, and much resembling the elevated region between the Caspian sea and northern Persia. The rim of this Basin is massive ranges of mountains, of which the Sierra Nevada on the west, and the Wah-satch and Timpanogos chains on the east, are the most conspicuous. On the north, it is separated from the waters of the Columbia by a branch of the Rocky mountains, and from the gulf of California, on the south, by a bed of mountainous ranges, of which the existence has been only recently determined. Snow abounds on them all; on some, in their loftier parts, the whole year, with wood and grass; with copious streams of water, sometimes amounting to considerable rivers, flowing inwards, and forming lakes or sinking in the sands. Belts or benches of good alluvion are usually found at their base.

Lakes in the Great Basin.—The Great Salt lake and the Utah lake are in this Basin, towards its eastern rim, and constitute its most interesting feature—one, a saturated solution of common salt—the other, fresh—the Utah about one hundred feet above the level of the Salt lake, which is itself four thousand two hundred above the level of the sea, and connected by a strait, or river, thirty-five miles long.

These lakes drain an area of ten or twelve thousand square miles, and have, on the east, along the base of the mountain, the usual bench of alluvion, which extends to a dia-

stance of three hundred miles, with wood and water, and abundant grass. The Mormons have established themselves on the strait between these two lakes, and will find sufficient arable land for a large settlement—important from its position as intermediate between the Mississippi valley and the Pacific ocean, and on the line of communication to California and Oregon.

The Utah is about thirty-five miles long, and is remarkable for the numerous and bold streams which it receives, coming down from the mountains on the southeast, all fresh water, although a large formation of rock salt, imbedded in red clay, is found within the area on the southeast, which it drains. The lake and its affluents afford large trout and other fish in great numbers, which constitute the food of the Utah Indians during the fishing season. The Great Salt lake has a very irregular outline, greatly extended at time of melting snows. It is about seventy miles in length; both lakes ranging nearly north and south, in conformity to the range of the mountains, and is remarkable for its predominance of salt. The whole lake waters seem thoroughly saturated with it, and every evaporation of the water leaves salt behind. The rocky shores of the islands are whitened by the spray, which leaves salt on every thing it touches, and a covering like ice forms over the water, which the waves throw among the rocks. The shores of the lake in the dry season, when the waters recede, and especially on the south side, are whitened with incrustations of fine white salt; the shallow arms of the lake, at the same time, under a slight covering of briny water, present beds of salt for miles, resembling softened ice, into which the horses' feet sink to the fetlock. Plants and bushes, blown by the wind upon these fields, are entirely incrustated with crystallized salt, more than an inch in thickness. Upon this lake of salt the fresh water received, though great in quantity, has no perceptible effect. No fish, or animal life of any kind, is found in it; the *larvæ* on the shore being found to belong to winged insects. A geological examination of the bed and shores of this lake is of the highest interest.

Five gallons of water taken from this lake in the month of September, and roughly evaporated over a fire, gave fourteen pints of salt, a part of which being subjected to analysis, gave the following proportions:

	parts.
Chloride of sodium (common salt)	97.80
Chloride of calcium	0.61
Chloride of magnesium	0.24
Sulphate of soda	0.23
Sulphate of lime	1.12

100.00

hundred miles, with wood and grass. The Mormons themselves on the strait boats, and will find sufficient settlement—important intermediate between the and the Pacific ocean, and communication to California

at thirty-five miles long, for the numerous and bold receives, coming down from the southeast, all fresh large formation of rock red clay, is found within the east, which it drains. Elements afford large trout great numbers, which come the Utah Indians during

The Great Salt lake has an outline, greatly extended at low water. It is about seventy miles long, and the two lakes ranging nearly in conformity to the range and is remarkable for its salt. The whole lake was formerly saturated with it, and of the water leaves salt on the shores of the islands are very dry, which leaves salt on the rocks, and a covering like ice water, which the waves break. The shores of the lake, when the waters recede, are covered with fine white crustations of soda, and the arms of the lake, at the mouth, are covered with a slight covering of briny water, which the horses' hoofs will not touch. Plants and bushes, upon these fields, are entirely crystallized salt, more common. Upon this lake water received, though great in quantity, has no perceptible effect. No fish of any kind, is found in the lake, the shore being found to be infested with insects. A geological examination of the shores of this lake is of great interest.

Water taken from this lake in September, and roughly analysed, gave fourteen pints of water, which being subjected to analysis, afforded the following proportions:

	parts.
Water (common salt)	97.80
Iron	0.61
Sulphur	0.24
Chlorine	0.23
Other	1.12
Total	100.00

Southward from the Utah is another lake of which little more is now known than when Humboldt published his general map of Mexico. It is the reservoir of a handsome river, about two hundred miles long, rising in the Wah-satch mountains, and discharging a considerable volume of water. The river and lake were called by the Spaniards, *Severo*, corrupted by the hunters into *Sevier*. On the map, they are called *Nicollet*, in honor of J. N. Nicollet, whose premature death interrupted the publication of the learned work on the physical geography of the basin of the Upper Mississippi, which five years of labor in the field had prepared him to give.

On the western side of the basin, and immediately within the first range of the Sierra Nevada, is the Pyramid lake, receiving the water of Salmon Trout river. It is thirty-five miles long, between four and five thousand feet above the sea, surrounded by mountains, is remarkably deep and clear, and abounds with uncommonly large salmon trout. Southward, along the base of the Sierra Nevada, is a range of considerable lakes, formed by many large streams from the Sierra. Lake Walker, the largest among these, affords great numbers of trout, similar to those of the Pyramid lake, and is a place of resort for Indians in the fishing season.

There are probably other collections of water not yet known. The number of small lakes is very great, many of them more or less salty, and all, like the rivers which feed them, changing their appearance and extent under the influence of the season, rising with the melting of the snows, sinking in the dry weather, and distinctly presenting their high and low water mark. These generally afford some fertile and well-watered land, capable of settlement.

Rivers of the Great Basin.—The most considerable river in the interior of the Great Basin is the one called on the map Humboldt river, as the mountains at its head are called Humboldt river mountains—so called as a small mark of respect to the "Nestor of scientific travellers," who has done so much to illustrate North American geography, without leaving his name upon any one of its remarkable features. It is a river long known to hunters, and sometimes sketched on maps under the name of Mary's, or Ogden's, but now for the first time laid down with any precision. It is a very peculiar stream, and has many characteristics of an Asiatic river—the Jordan, for example, though twice as long—rising in mountains and losing itself in a lake of its own, after a long and solitary course. It rises in two streams in mountains west of the Great Salt lake, which unite, after some fifty miles, and bears westwardly along the northern side of the basin

towards the Great Sierra Nevada, which it is destined never to reach, much less to pass. The mountains in which it rises are round and handsome in their outline, capped with snow the greater part of the year, well clothed with grass and wood, and abundant in water. The stream is a narrow line, without affluents, losing by absorption and evaporation as it goes, and terminating in a marshy lake, with low shores, fringed with bulrushes, and whitened with saline incrustations. It has a moderate current, is from two to six feet deep in the dry season, and probably not fordable any where below the junction of the forks during the time of melting snows, when both lake and river are considerably enlarged. The country through which it passes (except its immediate valley) is a dry sandy plain, without grass, wood, or arable soil; from about 4,700 feet (at the forks) to 4,200 feet (at the lake) above the level of the sea, winding among broken ranges of mountains, and varying from a few miles to twenty in breadth. Its own immediate valley is a rich alluvion, beautifully covered with blue-grass, herd-grass, clover, and other nutritious grasses; and its course is marked through the plain by a line of willow and cotton-wood trees, serving for fuel. The Indians in the fall set fire to the grass, and destroy all trees except in low grounds near the water.

This river possesses qualities which, in the progress of events, may give it both value and fame. It lies on the line of travel to California and Oregon, and is the best route now known through the Great Basin, and the one travelled by emigrants. Its direction, nearly east and west, is the right course for that travel. It furnishes a level unobstructed way for nearly three hundred miles, and a continuous supply of the indispensable articles of water, wood, and grass. Its head is towards the Great Salt lake, and consequently towards the Mormon settlement, which must become a point in the line of emigration to California and the lower Columbia. Its termination is within fifty miles of the base of the Sierra Nevada, and opposite the Salmon Trout river pass—a pass only seven thousand two hundred feet above the level of the sea, and less than half that above the level of the Basin, and leading into the valley of the Sacramento, some forty miles north of Nueva Helvetia. These properties give to this river a prospective value in future communications with the Pacific ocean, and the profile view on the north of the map shows the elevations of the present travelling route, of which it is a part, from the South pass, in the Rocky mountains, to the bay of San Francisco.

The other principal rivers of the Great Basin are found on its circumference, col-

lecting their waters from the Snowy mountains, which surround it, and are, 1. BEAR RIVER, on the east, rising in the massive range of the Timpanogos mountains and falling into the Great Salt lake, after a doubling course through a fertile and picturesque valley, two hundred miles long. 2. THE UTAH RIVER and TIMPANOZU or TIMPANOGOS, discharging themselves into the Utah lake on the east, after gathering their copious streams in the adjoining parts of the *Wah-satch* and Timpanogos mountains. 3. NICOLLET RIVER, rising south in the long range of the *Wah-satch* mountains, and falling into a lake of its own name, after making an arable and grassy valley, two hundred miles in length, through mountainous country. 4. SALMON TROUT river, on the west, running down from the Sierra Nevada and falling into Pyramid lake, after a course of about one hundred miles. From its source, about one-third of its valley is through a pine-timbered country, and for the remainder of the way through very rocky, naked ridges. It is remarkable for the abundance and excellence of its salmon trout, and presents some ground for cultivation. 5. CANSON and WALKER rivers, both handsome clear-water streams, nearly one hundred miles long, coming, like the preceding, down the eastern flank of the Sierra Nevada and forming lakes of their own name at its base. They contain salmon trout and other fish, and form some large bottoms of good land. 6. OWENS RIVER, issuing from the Sierra Nevada on the south, is a large bold stream about one hundred and twenty miles long, gathering its waters in the Sierra Nevada, flowing to the southward, and forming a lake about fifteen miles long at the base of the mountain. At a medium stage it is generally four or five feet deep, in places fifteen; wooded with willow and cotton-wood, and makes continuous bottoms of fertile land, at intervals rendered marshy by springs and small affluents from the mountain. The water of the lake in which it terminates has an unpleasant smell and bad taste, but around its shores are found small streams of pure water with good grass. On the map this has been called OWENS river.

Besides these principal rivers issuing from the mountains on the circumference of the Great Basin, there are many others, all around, all obeying the general law of losing themselves in sands, or lakes, or belts of alluvion, and almost all of them an index to some arable land, with grass and wood.

Interior of the Great Basin.—The interior of the Great Basin, so far as explored, is found to be a succession of sharp mountain ranges and naked plains, such as have been described. These ranges are isolated, presenting summit lines broken into many

peaks, of which the highest are between ten and eleven thousand feet above the sea. They are thinly wooded with some varieties of pine, (*pinus monophyllus* characteristic,) cedar, aspen, and a few other trees; and afford an excellent quality of bunch grass, equal to any found in the Rocky mountains. Black-tailed deer and mountain sheep are frequent in these mountains; which, in consideration of their grass, water, and wood, and the alluvion at their base, may be called fertile, in the radical sense of the word, as signifying a capacity to produce, or bear, and in contradistinction to sterility. In this sense these interior mountains may be called fertile. Sterility, on the contrary, is the absolute characteristic of the valleys between the mountains—no wood, no water, no grass; the gloomy artemisia the prevailing shrub—no animals, except the hares, which shelter in these shrubs, and fleet and timid antelope, always on the watch for danger, and finding no place too dry and barren which gives it a wide horizon for its view and a clear field for its flight. No birds are seen in the plains, and few on the mountains. But few Indians are found, and those in the lowest state of human existence; living not even in communities, but in the elementary state of families, and sometimes a single individual to himself—except about the lakes stocked with fish, which become the property and resort of a small tribe. The abundance and excellence of the fish, in most of these lakes, is a characteristic; and the fishing season is to the Indians the happy season of the year.

Climate of the Great Basin.—The climate of the Great Basin does not present the rigorous winter due to its elevation and mountainous structure. Observations made during the last expedition, show that around the southern shores of the Salt lake, latitude 40° 30', to 41°, for two weeks of the month of October, 1835, from the 13th to the 27th, the mean temperature was 40° at sunrise, 70° at noon, and 54° at sunset; ranging at sunrise from 28° to 57°; at noon from 62° to 76°; at four in the afternoon, from 58° to 69°; and at sunset, from 47° to 57°.

Until the middle of the month the weather remained fair and very pleasant. On the 15th, it began to rain in occasional showers, which whitened with snow the tops of the mountains on the south-eastern side of the valley. Flowers were in bloom during all the month. About the 18th, on one of the large islands in the south of the lake, *helianthus*, several species of *aster*, *erodium*, *cicutarium*, and several other plants, were in fresh and full bloom; the grass of the second growth was coming up finely, and vegetation, generally, betokened the lengthened summer of the climate.

The 16th, 17th, and 18th, stormy with rain; heavy at night; peaks of the Bear river range and tops of the mountains covered with snow. On the 18th, cleared with weather like that of late spring, and continued mild and clear until the end of the month, when the fine weather was again interrupted by a day or two of rain. No snow within 2,000 feet above the level of the valley.

Across the interior, between latitudes 41° and 38°, during the month of November, (5th to 25th,) the mean temperature was 29° at sunrise, and 40° at sunset; ranging at noon (by detached observations) between 41° and 60°. There was a snow storm between the 4th and 7th, the snow falling principally at night, and sun occasionally breaking out in the day. The lower hills and valleys were covered a few inches deep with snow, which the sun carried off in a few hours after the storm was over.

The weather then continued uninterruptedly open until the close of the year, without rain or snow; and during the remainder of November, generally clear and beautiful; nights and mornings calm, a light breeze during the day, and strong winds of very rare occurrence. Snow remained only on the peaks of the mountains.

On the western side of the basin, along the base of the *Sierra Nevada*, during two weeks, from the 25th *November* to the 11th *December*, the mean temperature at sunrise was 11°, and at sunset 34°; ranging at sunrise from zero to 21°, at sunset from 23° to 44°. For ten consecutive days of the same period, the mean temperature at noon was 45°, ranging from 33° to 56°.

The weather remained open, usually very clear, and the rivers were frozen.

The winter of '43-'44, within the basin, was remarkable for the same open, pleasant weather, rarely interrupted by rain or snow. In fact, there is nothing in the climate of this great interior region, elevated as it is, and surrounded and traversed by snowy mountains, to prevent civilized man from making it his home, and finding in its arable parts the means of a comfortable subsistence; and this the Mormons will probably soon prove in the parts about the Great Salt lake. The progress of their settlement is already great. On the first of April of the present year, they had 3,000 acres in wheat, seven saw and grist mills, seven hundred houses in a fortified inclosure of sixty acres, stock, and other accompaniments of a flourishing settlement.

Such is the Great Basin, heretofore characterized as a desert, and in some respects meriting that appellation; but already demanding the qualification of great exceptions, and deserving the full examination of a thorough exploration.

MARITIME REGION WEST OF THE SIERRA NEVADA.

WEST of the *SIERRA NEVADA*, and between that mountain and the sea, is the second grand division of California, and the only part to which the name applies in the current language of the country. It is the occupied and inhabited part, and so different in character—so divided by the mountain wall of the Sierra from the Great Basin above—as to constitute a region to itself, with a structure and configuration—a soil, climate, and productions—of its own; and as northern Persia may be referred to as some type of the former, so may Italy be referred to as some point of comparison for the latter. North and south, this region embraces about ten degrees of latitude—from 32°, where it touches the peninsula of California, to 42°, where it bounds on Oregon. East and west, from the *Sierra Nevada* to the sea, it will average, in the middle parts, 150 miles; in the northern parts 200—giving an area of above one hundred thousand square miles. Looking westward from the summit of the Sierra, the main feature presented is the long, low, broad valley of the Joaquin and Sacramento rivers—the two valleys forming one—five hundred miles long and fifty broad, lying along the base of the Sierra, and bounded to the west by the low coast range of mountains, which separates it from the sea. Long dark lines of timber indicate the streams, and bright spots mark the intervening plains. Lateral ranges, parallel to the *Sierra Nevada* and the coast, make the structure of the country and break it into a surface of valleys and mountains—the valleys a few hundred, and the mountains two to four thousand feet above the sea. These form greater masses, and become more elevated in the north, where some peaks, as the *Shastah*, enter the regions of perpetual snow.—Stretched along the mild coast of the Pacific, with a general elevation in its plains and valleys of only a few hundred feet above the level of the sea—and backed by the long and lofty wall of the Sierra—mildness and geniality may be assumed as the characteristic of its climate. The inhabitant of corresponding latitudes on the Atlantic side of this continent can with difficulty conceive of the soft air and southern productions under the same latitudes in the maritime region of Upper California. The singular beauty and purity of the sky in the south of this region is characterized by Humboldt as a rare phenomenon, and all travellers realize the truth of his description.

The present condition of the country affords but slight data for forming correct opinions of the agricultural capacity and fertility of the soil. Vancouver found, at the

mission of San Buenaventura, in 1792, latitude $34^{\circ} 16'$, apples, pears, plums, figs, oranges, grapes, peaches, and pomegranates, growing together with the plantain, banana, coconut, sugar-cane, and indigo, all yielding fruit in abundance and of excellent quality. Humboldt mentions the olive oil of California as equal to that of Andalusia, and the wine like that of the Canary Islands. At present, but little remains of the high and various cultivation which had been attained at the missions. Under the mild and paternal administration of the "Fathers," the docile character of the Indians was made available for labor, and thousands were employed in the fields, the orchards, and the vineyards. At present, but little of this former cultivation is seen. The fertile valleys are overgrown with wild mustard; vineyards and olive orchards, decayed and neglected, are among the remaining vestiges; only in some places do we see the evidences of what the country is capable. At San Buenaventura we found the olive trees, in January, bending under the weight of neglected fruit; and the mission of San Luis Obispo (latitude 35°) is still distinguished for the excellence of its olives, considered finer and larger than those of the Mediterranean.

The productions of the south differ from those of the north and of the middle. Grapes, olives, Indian corn, have been its staples, with many assimilated fruits and grains. Tobacco has been recently introduced and the uniform summer heat which follows the wet season, and is uninterrupted by rain, would make the southern country well adapted to cotton. Wheat is the first product of the north, where it always constituted the principal cultivation of the missions. This promises to be the grain growing region of California. The moisture of the coast seems particularly suited to the potato and to the vegetables common to the United States, which grow to an extraordinary size.

Perhaps few parts of the world can produce in such perfection so great a variety of fruits and grains as the large and various region inclosing the bay of San Francisco, and drained by its waters. A view of the map will show that region and its great extent, comprehending the entire valleys of the Sacramento and San Joaquin, and the whole western slope of the Sierra Nevada. General phrases fail to give precise ideas, and I have recourse to the notes in my journal to show its climate and productions by the test of the thermometer and the state of the vegetable kingdom.

VALLEYS OF THE SACRAMENTO AND SAN JOAQUIN.

These valleys are one, discriminated only by the names of the rivers which traverse it.

It is a single valley—a single geographical formation—near 500 miles long, lying at the western base of the Sierra Nevada, and between it and the coast range of mountains, and stretching across the head of the bay of San Francisco, with which a *delta* of twenty-five miles connects it. The two rivers, San Joaquin and Sacramento, rise at opposite ends of this long valley, receive numerous streams, many of them bold rivers, from the Sierra Nevada, become themselves navigable rivers, flow toward each other, meet half way, and enter the bay of San Francisco together, in the region of tide water, making a continuous water line from one end to the other.

The valley of the San Joaquin is about 300 miles long and 60 broad, between the slopes of the coast mountain and the Sierra Nevada, with a general elevation of only a few hundred feet above the level of the sea. It presents a variety of soil, from dry and unproductive to well watered and luxuriantly fertile. The eastern (which is the fertile) side of the valley is intersected with numerous streams, forming large and very beautiful bottoms of fertile land, wooded principally with white oaks (*quercus longiglunda*, Torr. and Frem.) in open groves of handsome trees, often five or six feet in diameter, and sixty to eighty feet high. Only the larger streams, which are fifty to one hundred and fifty yards wide, and drain the upper parts of the mountains, pass entirely across the valley, forming the Tularé lakes and the San Joaquin river, which, in the rainy season, make a continuous stream from the head of the valley to the bay. The *foot hills* of the Sierra Nevada, which limit the valley, make a woodland country, diversified with undulating grounds and pretty valleys, and watered with numerous small streams, which reach only a few miles beyond the hills, the springs which supply them not being copious enough to carry them across the plains. These afford many advantageous spots for farms, making sometimes large bottoms of rich moist land. The rolling surface of the hills presents sunny exposures, sheltered from the winds, and having a highly favorable climate and suitable soil; are considered to be well adapted to the cultivation of the grape, and will probably become the principal vine growing region of California. The uplands bordering the valleys of the large streams are usually wooded with evergreen oaks, and the intervening plains are timbered with groves or belts of evergreen and white oaks among prairie and open land. The surface of the valley consists of level plains along the Tularé lakes and San Joaquin river, changing into undulating and rolling ground nearer the foot hills of the mountains.

—a single geographical miles long, lying at the Sierra Nevada, and best range of mountains, the head of the bay with which a delta of connects it. The two and Sacramento, rise at long valley, receive many of them bold rivers, vada, become themselves low toward each other, and enter the bay of San Joaquin, in the region of tide continuous water line from

the San Joaquin is about 60 miles broad, between the mountain and the Sierra Nevada, the general elevation of only a few feet above the level of the sea. The soil, from dry and hard to watered and luxuriantly green (which is the fertile) is intersected with numerous small and very beautiful streams, wooded principally with *Quercus longiglandula*, Torr. In some groves of handsome oaks six feet in diameter, and thirty feet high. Only the larger oaks are fifty to one hundred years old and drain the upper parts of the valley entirely across the Tularé lakes and the San Joaquin, in the rainy season, stream from the head of the valley. The foot hills of the valley limit the valley, make the soil diversified with undulating and watered valleys, and watered small streams, which are small beyond the hills, and only they not being copious in the plains. The valleys of the large oaks are very advantageous spots for agriculture. The rolling surface of the valley, sheltered from the winds, and having a highly favorable soil, are considered the best for the cultivation of the principal crops of California. The valleys of the large oaks are very wooded with evergreen oaks, and the intervening plains are timbered with oaks of evergreen and white oaks, and open land. The valley consists of level plains, and San Joaquin is a plain, and undulating and rolling in the foot hills of the mountain.

A condensed notice from observations, made during several journeys through the valley, will serve to give some definite ideas of its climate and character.

We left the upper settlements of New Helvetia on the 14th December, and, passing through the groves of oak which border the Rio de los Americanos, directed our course in a southeasterly direction across a plain toward the Rio de los Cos-um-nes, a handsome, well-wooded stream, about thirty yards wide. The Cos-um-ne Indians, who give name to this river, have been driven away from it within a few years, and dispersed among other tribes; and several farms, of some leagues in extent, have already been established on the lower part of the stream. We encamped at one of these, about eight miles above the junction of the Cos-um-ne river with the Mo-kel-um-ne, which a few miles below enters a deep slough in the delta of the San Joaquin delta.

At this place the temperature at sunset was 55°, and at sunrise 27°.

Our road on the 15th was over the plain between the Cos-um-ne and Mo-kel-um-ne rivers, inclining toward the mountains. We crossed several wooded sloughs, with ponds of deep water, which, nearer the foot hills, are running streams, with large bottoms of fertile land; the greater part of our way being through open woods of evergreen and other oaks. The rainy season, which commonly begins with November, had not yet commenced, and the Mo-kel-um-ne river was at the lowest stage usual to the dry season, and easily forded. This stream is about sixty yards wide, and the immediate valley some thirty or forty feet below the upland plain. It has broad alluvial bottoms of very fertile soil—sometimes five hundred yards wide, bounded by a low upland, wooded with evergreen oaks. The weather in the evening was calm, the sky mottled with clouds, and the temperature at sunset 52°.

Leaving the Mo-kel-um-ne, (December 16,) we travelled about twenty miles through open woods of white oak, crossing in the way several stream beds—among them the Calaveras creek. These have abundant water, with good land above; and the Calaveras makes some remarkably handsome bottoms. Issuing from the woods, we rode about sixteen miles over an open prairie, partly covered with bunch-grass, the timber reappearing on the rolling hills of the river Stanislaus in the usual belt of evergreen oaks. The river valley was about forty feet below the upland, and the stream seventy yards broad, making the usual fertile bottoms, which here were covered with green grass among large oaks. We encamped in one of these bottoms, in a grove of the large white oak previously mentioned, as *Quercus*

longiglandula (Torr. and Frem.) This oak is a new species, belonging to the division of white oaks, distinguished by the length of its acorn, which is commonly an inch and a half, and sometimes two inches. This long acorn characterizes the tree, which has accordingly been specified by Dr. Torrey as *Quercus longiglandula*—(long-acorn oak.)*

The tree attains frequently a diameter of six feet, and a height of eighty feet, with a wide spreading head. The many varieties of deciduous and evergreen oaks, which predominate throughout the valleys and lower hills of the mountains, afford large quantities of acorns, which constitute the principal food of the Indians of that region. Their great abundance, in the midst of fine pasture lands, must make them an important element in the agricultural economy of the country.

The day had been very warm, and at sunset the temperature was 55°, and the weather clear and calm.

At sunrise next morning, the thermometer was at 22°, with a light wind from the Sierra, N. 75° E., and a clear, pure sky, in which the blue line of the mountain showed distinctly. The way, for about three miles, was through open woods of evergreen and other oaks, with some shrubbery intermingled. Among this was a *Lupinus* of extraordinary size, not yet in bloom. Emerging from the woods, we travelled in a southeasterly direction, over a prairie of rolling land, the ground becoming somewhat more broken as we approached the To-wal-um-ne river, one of the finest tributaries of the San Joaquin. The hills were generally covered with a species of geranium, (*erodium cicutarium*), a valuable plant for stock, considered very nutritious. With this was frequently interspersed good and green bunch-grass, and a plant commonly called *bur clover*. This plant, which in some places is very abundant, bears a spirally twisted pod, filled with seeds, which remains on the ground during the dry season, well preserved, and affords good food for cattle until the spring rains bring out new grass. We started a band of wild horses on approaching the river, and the Indians ran off from a village on the bank—the men lurking round to observe us. About their huts were the usual *acorn cribs*, containing each some twenty or thirty bushels. We found here excellent grass, and broad bottoms of alluvial land, open-wooded, with large white oaks of the new species. The thermometer, at sunset, was 54°.5, with a calm, clear atmosphere. Multitudes of geese and other wild fowl made the night noisy.

In the morning, the sky was clear, with an air from S. 55° E., and a hoar frost cover-

* The names of plants mentioned in this memoir rest on the authority of Dr. Torrey, by whom the specimens have been examined.

ing the ground like a light fall of snow. At sunrise, the thermometer was $24^{\circ}.5$. Our course now inclined more towards the foot of the mountain, and led over a broken country. In about 17 miles we reached the river *Aux-ur-né*, another large affluent to the San Joaquin, and continued about six miles up the stream, intending to reach, gradually, the heart of the mountains at the head of the *Lake Fork* of the *Tuláre*.

We encamped on the southern side of the river, where broken hills made a steep bluff, with a narrow bottom. On the northern side was a low, undulating wood and prairie land, over which a band of about three hundred elk was slowly coming to water where we halted, feeding as they approached.

December 19th.—The weather continued clear and pleasant. We continued our journey in a southeasterly direction, over a broken and hilly country, without timber, and showing only scattered clumps of trees, from which we occasionally started deer. In a few hours' ride we reached a beautiful country of undulating upland, openly timbered with oaks, principally evergreen, and watered with small streams. We came here among some villages of Indians, of the horse-thief tribes, who received us in an unfriendly manner; and, after a busy night among them, we retreated the next morning to the more open country of the lower hills. Our party was then a small one of 16 men, encumbered with cattle, which we were driving to the relief of the main body of the expedition, which had been sent southward from Walker's lake, in the basin, along the eastern base of the Sierra Nevada, and to which a valley in the mountain, on the *Tuláre Lake Fork*, had been appointed as a place of meeting.

In the evening, we encamped at an elevation of 1,000 feet above the sea, latitude $37^{\circ} 07' 47''$, still among the hills, on a spring hollow, leading to the Upper Joaquin river. The day had been mild, with a faint sun, and cloudy weather; and, at sunset, there were some light clouds in the sky, with a northeasterly wind, and a sunset temperature of 45° ; probably rendered lower than usual by the air from the mountains, as the foothills have generally a warmer temperature than the open valley. Elk were numerous during the day, making, on one occasion, a broken band, several miles in length.

On the 21st, the thermometer at sunrise was 32.6 ; the sky slightly clouded, and, in the course of the morning, the clouds gathered heavy in the southwest. Our route lay in a southeasterly direction, toward the Upper Joaquin, crossing among rolling hills, a large stream and several sandy beds of affluents to the main river. On the trees along these streams, as well as on the hills, I noticed *mosses*. About 2, in the afternoon, we

reached the Upper San Joaquin. The stream was here about 70 yards wide, and much too deep to be forded. A little way below, we succeeded in crossing, at a rapid made by a bed of rock, below which, for several miles, the river appeared deep and not fordable. We followed down the stream for six or eight miles, and encamped on its banks, on the verge of the valley plain. At evening, rain began to fall, and, with this, the spring properly commenced. There had been a little rain in November, but not sufficient to revive vegetation.

December 22.—The temperature at sunrise was 39° . There had been heavy rain during the night, with high wind, and this morning, there was a thick fog, which began to go off at 8 o'clock, when the sun broke through. We crossed an open plain, still in a southeasterly direction, reaching, in about twenty miles, the *Tulares Lake* river. This is one of the largest and handsomest streams in the valley, being about 100 yards broad, and having, perhaps, a larger body of fertile land than any other. The broad alluvial bottoms are well wooded with several species of oaks. This is the principal affluent to the *Tuláre lake*, (the bullrush lake,) a strip of water, about 70 miles long, surrounded by lowlands, rankly overgrown with bullrushes, and receiving all the rivers in the southern end of the valley. In times of high water, the lake discharges into the Joaquin, making a continuous water line through the whole extent of the valley.

We ascended this river to its sources in the Sierra Nevada, about 50 miles from the edge of the valley, which we reached again on the 7th of *January*, in the neighborhood of the *Tuláre lake*. We found the temperature much the same as in *December*. Fogs, which rose from the lake in the morning, were dense, cold, and penetrating, but, after a few hours, gave place to a fine day. The face of the country had been much improved by the rains which had fallen while we remained in the mountains. Several *hibiscus* plants, among them the golden-flowered violet (*viola crisantha*) and *erodium cicutarium*, the first valley flowers of the spring, which courted a sunny exposure and warm sandy soil, were already in bloom on the southwestern hill-slopes. In the foot hills of the mountains the bloom of the flowers was earlier. We travelled among multitudinous herds of elk, antelope, and wild horses. Several of the latter, which we killed for food, were found to be very fat. By the middle of *January*, when we had reached the lower San Joaquin, the new green grass covered the ground among the open timber on the rich river bottoms, and the spring vegetation had taken a vigorous start.

The mean temperature in the Joaquin val-

San Joaquin. The stream yards wide, and much too

A little way below, we found, at a rapid made by a dam, which, for several miles, was deep and not fordable. We camped on its banks, on the valley plain. At evening, and, with this, the spring had. There had been a litter, but not sufficient to

The temperature at sunrise here had been heavy rain with high wind, and this was a thick fog, which began to clear, when the sun broke over an open plain, still in the direction, reaching, in about the Tulare Lake river. This is the most and handsomest stream, being about 100 yards broad, and a larger body of fertile soil. The broad alluvial plain, wooded with several species, is the principal affluent to the Tulare (bullrush lake,) a strip of miles long, surrounded by brush, overgrown with bullrushes, the rivers in the southern

In times of high water, the river enters the Joaquin, making a straight line through the whole valley.

This river to its sources in the mountains, about 50 miles from the mouth, which we reached again in January, in the neighborhood of the lake. We found the temperature as in December. Fogs, and penetrating, but, after a while, place to a fine day. The river had been much improved, and had fallen while we were in the mountains. Several herds of wild horses, from the golden-flowered (violets) and *erodium cicutarium*, were seen, flowers of the spring, which, in exposure and warm sandy soil, are in bloom on the southwest side of the foot hills of the mountains. The flowers were earlier, and more numerous, than in the mountains. Several herds of wild horses. Several of the horses were killed for food, were fat. By the middle of January, we reached the lower San Joaquin, where green grass covered the plain, and the open timber on the right side of the spring vegetation had started.

Temperature in the Joaquin val-

ley, during the journey, from the middle of December to the middle of January, was at sunrise 29° and at sunset 52°, with generally a faint breeze from the snowy mountains in the morning, and calm weather at the evening. This was a lower temperature than we had found in the oak region of the mountains bordering the valley, between 1000 and 5000 feet above the level of the sea, where, throughout California, I have remarked the spring to be more forward than in the open valleys below.

During a journey through the valley, between the head of the Tulare lakes and the mouth of the San Joaquin, from the 19th January to the 12th February, the mean temperature was 38° at sunrise and 53° at sunset, with frequent rains. At the end of January, the river bottoms, in many places, were thickly covered with luxuriant grass, more than half a foot high. The California poppy, (*Eschscholtzia Californica*), the characteristic plant of the California spring; *memphila insignis*, one of the earliest flowers, growing in beautiful fields of a delicate blue, and *erodium cicutarium*, were beginning to show a scattered bloom. Wild horses were fat, and a grisly bear, killed on the 2d February, had four inches thickness of fat on his back and belly, and was estimated to weigh a thousand pounds. Salmon was first obtained on the 4th February in the To-wal-um-ne river, which, according to the Indians, is the most southerly stream in the valley in which this fish is found. By the middle of March, the whole valley of the San Joaquin was in the full glory of spring; the evergreen oaks were in flower, *geranium cicutarium* was generally in bloom, occupying the place of the grass, and making on all the uplands a close sward. The higher prairies between the rivers presented unbroken fields of yellow and orange-colored flowers, varieties of *Layia* and *Eschscholtzia Californica*, and large bouquets of the blue flowering *memphila* nearer the streams. These made the prevailing bloom, and the sunny hillsides to the river bottoms showed a varied growth of luxuriant flowers. The white oaks were not yet in bloom.

Observations made in the valley, from the bend of the Joaquin to the Cos-um-ne river, give, for the mean temperature, from the 10th to the 22d March, 38° at sunrise and 56° at sunset, the dew point being 35° at sunrise, and 47° at sunset, and the quantity of moisture contained in a cubic foot of air being 2.712 grains, and 4.072 grains, respectively.

A sudden change in the temperature was remarked in passing from the To-wal-um-ne to the Stanislaus river, there being no change in the weather, and the wind continuing from the northwest, to which we were more directly exposed on reaching the Stanislaus

river, where we opened on the bay. In travelling down to the Stanislaus, the mean temperature for five days (from the 11th to the 16th) was 40° at sunrise, 73° at 4 p. m., and 63° at sunset; and detached observations gave 66° at 9 a. m., 77° at noon, and 87° at 2 p. m.

The dew point was 38°.0, 55°.5, 54°.3 at sunrise, at 4 in the afternoon, and at sunset; and the moisture contained in a cubic foot of air 2.878 grains, 5.209 grains, and 4.927 grains, respectively.

North of the Stanislaus for five days (from the 16th to the 21st) the mean was 36°.6 at sunrise, 67° at 4 p. m., and 49° at sunset. The dew point was 34°.9 at sunrise, 37°.1 at 4 p. m., and 40°.9 at sunset, and the quantity of moisture in a cubic foot of air 2.671 grains, 2.983 grains, and 3.216 grains, at the corresponding times. At sunrise of the 16th, on the To-wal-um-ne, the thermometer was at 43°, and at sunrise of the next morning, on the Stanislaus, at 35°.

The temperature was lowest on the night of the 17th. At sunrise of the morning following the thermometer was at 27°, and it was remarked that the frost affected several varieties of plants. On the 20th and 21st there were some showers of rain, the first since the end of February. These were preceded by south-westerly winds.

During December and the first part of January, which was still at the season of low waters, we were easily able to ford all the Joaquin tributaries. These begin to rise with the rains, and are kept up by the melting snows in the summer. At the end of January, the Joaquin required boating throughout the valley, and the tributaries were forded with difficulty.

In the latter part of March, of a dry season, (1844,) we were obliged to boat the Stanislaus, To-wal-um-ne, and Aux-um-ne, and the San Joaquin was nowhere fordable below the bend where it is joined by the slough of the Tulare lake. On the 13th of March, 1846, we were obliged to boat the San Joaquin, the river being nowhere fordable below the junction of the slough, and the Indians guided us to some difficult fords of the large tributaries, where we succeeded to cross with damage to our equipage. In July of the same year, we boated the San Joaquin below the Aux-um-ne, it being nowhere fordable below the bend.

In June, 1847, the Joaquin was nowhere fordable, being several hundred yards broad as high up as the Aux-um-ne river, even with its banks, and scattered in sloughs over all its lower bottoms. All the large tributaries, the Aux-um-ne, To-wal-um-ne, Stanislaus, and Mo-kel-um-ne, required to be boated, and were pouring down a deep volume of water from the mountains, one to

two hundred yards wide. The high waters came from the melting snows, which, during the past winter, had accumulated to a great depth in the mountains, and, at the end of June, lay in the approaches to the Bear river pass, on a breadth of ten or fifteen miles, and this below the level of 7,200 feet. In rainy seasons, when the rains begin with November, and the snows lie on the mountains till July, this river is navigable for eight months of the year—the length of time depending on the season.

The Cosumne was the last tributary of the San Joaquin, and the last river of its valley coming down from the Sierra Nevada. The *Rio de los Americanos* was the first tributary of the valley of the Sacramento, also coming down, like all the respectable tributaries of both rivers, from the snowy summit and rainy side of the great Sierra. The two valleys are one, only discriminated in description or reference by the name of the river which traverses the respective halves, as seen in the map. We entered the part of the valley which takes the name of its river, *Sacramento*, on the 21st day of March, going north, and continued our observations on that valley.

We remained several days on the *Rio de los Americanos*, to recruit our animals on the abundant range between the Sacramento and the hills. During this time the thermometer was at 35° at sunrise, 54° at 9 o'clock in the morning, 63° at noon, 63° at 2 in the afternoon, 61° at 4, and 53° at sunset; the dew-point at corresponding times being 34° 0, 49° 9, 46° 6, 49° 4, 51° 6, 43° 7; and the quantity of moisture in a cubic foot of air being 2.519 grs., 4.235 grs., 3.808 grs., 4.161 grs., 4.484 grs., 3.469 grs.

We left the *Rio de los Americanos* on the 24th, ten miles above the mouth, travelling a little east of north, in the direction of the Bear river settlements, at the foot of the Emigrant pass. The road led among oak timber, over ground slightly undulating, covered with grass intermingled with flowers. The thermometer at 4 was 76°, and at sunset 60°; the weather clear.

At sunrise of the 25th, the temperature was 36°, with an easterly wind and clear sky. In about thirty miles travel to the north, we reached the rancho of Mr. Keyser, on Bear river; an affluent to *Feather* river, the largest tributary of the Sacramento. The route lay over an undulating country—more so as our course brought us nearer the mountains—wooded with oaks and shrubbery in blossom, with small prairies intervening. Many plants were in flower, and among them the California poppy, unusually magnificent. It is the characteristic bloom of *California* at this season, and the Bear river cottons, near the hills, were covered with it.

We crossed several small streams, and found the ground miry from the recent rains. The temperature at 4 in the afternoon was 70°, and at sunset 58°, with an easterly wind, and the night bright and clear.

The morning of the 25th was clear, and warmer than usual; the wind southeasterly, and the temperature 40°. We travelled across the valley plain, and in about sixteen miles reached *Feather* river, at twenty-six miles from its junction with the Sacramento, near the mouth of the *Yuva*, so called from a village of Indians who live on it. The river has high banks—twenty or thirty feet—and was here 150 yards wide, a deep, navigable stream. The Indians aided us across the river with canoes and small rafts. Extending along the bank in front of the village, was a range of wicker cribs, about twelve feet high, partly filled with what is there the Indians' staff of life—acorns. A collection of huts, shaped like bee-hives, with naked Indians sunning themselves on the tops, and these acorn cribs, are the prominent objects in an Indian village.

There is a fine farm, or *ranch*, on the *Yuva*, stocked with about 3,000 head of cattle, and cultivated principally in wheat, with some other grains and vegetables, which are carried, by means of the river, to a market at San Francisco. Mr. Cordua, a native of Germany, who is proprietor of the place, informed me that his average harvest of wheat was about twenty-five bushels to the acre, which he supposed would be about the product of the wheat lands in the Sacramento valley. The labor on this and other farms in the valley is performed by Indians.

The temperature here was 74° at 2 in the afternoon, 71° at 4, and 69° at sunset, with a northeasterly wind and clear sky.

At sunrise of the 27th the temperature was 42°, clear, with a northeasterly wind. We travelled northwardly, up the right bank of the river, which was wooded with large white and evergreen oaks, interspersed with thickets of shrubbery in full bloom. We made a pleasant journey of twenty-seven miles, and encamped at the bend of the river, where it turns from the course across the valley to run southerly to its junction with the Sacramento. The thermometer at sunset was at 67°, sky partially clouded, with southerly wind.

The thermometer at sunrise on the 28th was at 46° 5, with a northeasterly wind. The road was over an open plain, with a few small sloughs or creeks that do not reach the river. After travelling about fifteen miles we encamped on *Butte* creek, a beautiful stream of clear water about fifty yards wide, with a bold current running all the year. It has large fertile bottoms, wooded with open groves, and having a luxuriant

oaks. Grass was good and abundant, with wild oats and pea-vine in the bottoms. The day was fine, with a cool northwesterly breeze, which had in it the air of the high mountains. The wild oats here were not yet headed.

The snowy *Peak of Shast* bore directly north, showing out high above the other mountains. Temperature at sunset 57° , with a west wind and sky partly clouded.

April 7.—The temperature at sunrise was 37° , with a moist air; and a faintly clouded sky indicated that the wind was southerly along the coast. We travelled towards the *Shast* peak, the mountain ranges, on both sides of the valleys, being high and rugged, and snow-covered. Some remarkable peaks in the Sierra, to the eastward, are called *the Sisters*, and, nearly opposite, the Coast Range shows a prominent peak, which we have called *Mount Linn*.

Leaving the Sacramento, at a stream called *Red Bank creek*, and continuing to the head of one of its forks, we entered on a high and somewhat broken upland, timbered with at least four varieties of oaks, with *mansanita* (*arbutus Menziesii*) and other shrubby interspersed. A remarkable species of pine, having leaves in threes, (sometimes six to nine inches long,) with bluish foliage, and a spreading, oak-shaped top, was scattered through the timber. I have remarked that this tree grows lower down the mountains than the other pines, being found familiarly associated with the oaks, the first met after leaving the open valleys, and seeming to like a warm climate. Flowers were as usual abundant. The splendid California poppy characterized all the route along the valley. A species of clover was in bloom, and the berries of the *mansanita* were beginning to redden on some trees, while on others they were still in bloom. We encamped, at an elevation of about 1,000 feet above the sea, on a large stream called *Cottonwood creek*, wooded on the bottoms with oaks, and with cotton-woods along the bed, which is sandy and gravelly. The water was at this time about twenty yards wide, but is frequently fifty. The face of the country traversed during the day was gravelly, and the bottoms of the creek where we encamped have a sandy soil.

There are six or seven *rancherias* of Indians on the Sacramento river between the farm where we had crossed the Sacramento and the mouth of this creek, and many others in the mountains about the heads of these streams.

The next morning was cloudy, threatening rain, but the sky grew brighter as the sun rose, and a southerly wind changed to north-west, which brought, as it never fails to bring, clear weather.

We continued 16 miles up the valley, and encamped on the Sacramento river. In the afternoon (April 8) the weather again grew thick, and in the evening rain began to fall in the valley and snow on the mountains. We were now near the head of the lower valley, and the face of the country and the weather began sensibly to show the influence of the rugged mountains which surround and terminate it.

The valley of the Sacramento is divided into upper and lower—the lower two hundred miles long, the upper about one hundred; and the latter not merely entitled to the distinction of upper, as being higher up on the river, but also as having a superior elevation of some thousands of feet above it. The division is strongly and geographically marked. The *Shast* peak stands at the head of the lower valley, in the forks of the river, rising from a base of about 1,000 feet, out of a forest of heavy timber. It ascends like an immense column upwards of 14,000 feet, (nearly the height of *Mont Blanc*;) the summit glistening with snow, and visible, from favorable points of view, at a distance of 140 miles down the valley. The river here, in descending from the upper valley, plunges down through a *canyon*, falling 2,000 feet in twenty miles. This upper valley is 100 miles long, heavily timbered, the climate and productions modified by its altitude, its more northern position, and the proximity and elevation of the neighboring mountains covered with snow. It contains valleys of arable land, and is deemed capable of settlement. Added to the lower valley, it makes the whole valley of the Sacramento 300 miles long.

April 9.—At 10 o'clock the rain which commenced the previous evening had ceased, and the clouds clearing away, we boated the river, and continued our journey eastward toward the foot of the Sierra. The Sacramento bottoms here are broad and prettily wooded, with soil of a sandy character. Our way led through very handsome, open woods, principally of oaks, mingled with a considerable quantity of the oak-shaped pine. Interspersed among these were bouquets or thickets of *mansanita*, and an abundant white-flowering shrub, now entirely covered with small blossoms. The head of the valley here (lower valley) is watered by many small streams, having fertile bottom lands, with a good range of grass and acorns. In about six miles we crossed a creek 20 or 25 feet wide, and several miles farther descended into the broad bottoms of a swift stream about 20 yards wide, called *Cow creek*, so named as being the range of a small band of cattle, which ran off here from a party on their way to Oregon. They are entirely wild, and are hunted like other game. A large band of

miles up the valley, and
 Sacramento river. In the
 weather again grew
 rain began to fall
 on the mountains.
 the head of the lower
 of the country and the
 ly to show the influence
 mountains which surround

Sacramento is divided
 —the lower two hun-
 upper about one hun-
 not merely entitled to
 ner, as being higher up
 as having a superior
 nsands of feet above it.
 and geographically
 l peak stands at the
 lley, in the forks of the
 ase of about 1,000 feet,
 avy timber. It ascends
 mn upwards of 14,000
 ht of Mont Blanc,) the
 with snow, and visible,
 s of view, at a distance
 the valley. The river
 from the upper valley,
 h a cañon, falling 2,000
 This upper valley is
 ily timbered, the climate
 idified by its altitude, its
 on, and the proximity and
 hboring mountains cov-
 contains valleys of ara-
 med capable of settle-
 a lower valley, it makes
 of the Sacramento 300

o'clock the rain which
 ous evening had ceased,
 ng away, we boated the
 our journey eastward
 e Sierra. The Sacra-
 are broad and prettily
 a sandy character. Our
 y handsome, open woods,
 ngled with a considera-
 ak-shaped pine. Inter-
 were bouquets or thick-
 an abundant white-flow-
 ily covered with small
 d of the valley here
 atered by many small
 le bottom lands, with a
 and acorns. In about
 d a creek 20 or 25 feet
 iles farther descended
 s of a swift stream about
 d Cow creek, so named
 f a small band of cattle,
 om a party on their way
 re entirely wild, and are
 me. A large band of

antelope was seen in the timber, and five or
 six deer came darting through the woods.
 An antelope and several deer were killed.
 There appear to be two species of these deer
 —both of the kind generally called black-
 tailed; one, a larger species frequenting the
 prairies and lower grounds; the other, much
 smaller, and found in the mountains only.

The mountains in the northeast were black
 with clouds when we reached the creek, and
 very soon a fierce hail storm burst down on
 us, scattering our animals and covering the
 ground an inch in depth with hailstones about
 the size of wild cherries. The face of the
 country appeared as whitened by a fall of
 snow, and the weather became unpleasantly
 cold. The evening closed in with rain, and
 thunder rolling around the hills. Our eleva-
 tion here was between 1,000 and 1,100 feet.
 At sunrise the next morning the thermom-
 eter was at 33°. The surrounding mount-
 ains showed a continuous line of snow, and
 the high peaks looked wintry. Turning to
 the southward, we retraced our steps down
 the valley, and reached Mr. Lassen's, on
 Deer river, on the evening of the 11th. The
 Sacramento bottoms between Antelope and
 Deer river were covered with oats, which
 had attained their full height, growing as in
 sown fields. The country here exhibited the
 maturity of spring. The California poppy
 was every where forming seed pods, and
 many plants were in flower and seed together.
 Some varieties of clover were just beginning
 to bloom. By the middle of the month the
 seed vessels of the California poppy, which,
 from its characteristic abundance, is a promi-
 nent feature in the vegetation, had attained
 their full size; but the seeds of this and
 many other plants, although fully formed,
 were still green colored, and not entirely
 ripe. At this time I obtained from the San
 Joaquin valley seeds of the poppy, and other
 plants, black and fully ripe, while they still
 remained green in this part of the Sacra-
 mento—the effect of a warmer climate in
 the valley of the San Joaquin. The mean
 temperature for 14 days, from the 10th to the
 24th of April, was 43° at sunrise, 58° at 9
 in the morning, 64° at noon, 66° at 2 in the
 afternoon, 69° at 4, and 58° at sunset, (lati-
 tude 40°.) The thermometer ranged at sun-
 rise from 38° to 51°, at 4 (which is the hot-
 test of those hours of the day when the
 temperature was noted) from 53° to 88°,
 and at sunset from 49° to 65°. The dew
 point was 40.°3 at sunrise, 47.°3 at 9 in the
 morning, 46.°1 at noon, 49.°2 at 2 in the af-
 ternoon, 49.°2 at 4, and 46.°6 at sunset;
 and the quantity of moisture in a cubic foot
 of air at corresponding times was 3.grs.104,
 3.grs.882, 3.grs.807, 4.grs.213, 4.grs.217,
 3.grs.884, respectively. The winds fluctu-
 ated between northwest and southeast, the

temperature depending more upon the state
 of the sky than the direction of the winds—
 a clouded sky always lowering the thermom-
 eter fifteen or twenty degrees in a short time.
 For the greater number of the days above
 given, the sky was covered and the atmo-
 sphere frequently thick, with rain at intervals
 from the 19th to the 23d.

On the 25th May, we returned to this
 place (Lassen's) from an excursion to the
 Upper Sacramento. The plants we had left
 in bloom were now generally in seed; and
 many, including the characteristic plants,
 perfectly ripe. The mean temperature of a
 few days ending May, was 54°.7 at sunrise,
 70°.6 at noon, and 67°.3 at sunset. Trav-
 elling south into the more open and wider
 part of the valley where the bordering
 mountains are lower and showed less snow,
 the temperature increased rapidly. At the
 Buttes—an isolated mountain ridge about six
 miles long and about 2,690 feet above the
 sea—the mornings were pleasantly cool for
 a few hours, but before ten the heat of the
 sun became very great, though usually tem-
 pered by a refreshing breeze. The heat
 was usually the greatest about four in the
 afternoon. The mean temperature from
 May 27th to June 6th, was 64°. at sunrise,
 79°. at nine in the morning, 86°. at noon,
 90°. at two in the afternoon, 91°. at four,
 and 80°. at sunset, ranging from 53°. to
 79°. at sunrise—from 85°. to 98°. at four
 in the afternoon—and from 73°. to 89°. at
 sunset. The place of observation was at
 the eastern base of the Buttes, about 800
 feet above the sea, latitude 39° 12', and one
 of the warmest situations in the Sacramento
 valley. At corresponding times the dew
 point was at 56.°5, 62.°4, 66.°5, 68.°2,
 66.°6, 66.°9, and the quantity of moisture
 in a cubic foot of air 5.grs.253, 6.grs.318,
 7.grs.191, 7.grs.495, 7.grs.164, and 7.grs.269
 respectively. We felt the heat here more
 sensibly than at any other place where our
 journeying brought us in California. The
 hunters always left the camp before daylight,
 and were in by nine o'clock, after which the
 sun grew hot. Game was very fat and
 abundant; upwards of eighty deer, elk, and
 bear were killed in one morning. The range
 consisted of excellent grasses, wild oats in
 fields, red and other varieties of clover,
 some of which were now in mature seed
 and others beginning to flower. Oats were
 now drying in level places where exposed
 to the full influence of the sun, remain
 green in moister places and on the hi
 slopes.

The mean temperature of the open valley
 between the Buttes and the American fork
 from the 8th to the 21st June, was 67°. at
 sunrise, 74°. at nine in the morning, 85°. at
 noon, 87°. at two in the afternoon, 88°. at

four, and 77°. at sunset; ranging at sunrise from 51° to 61°; at 4 from 81° to 97°, and at sunset from 71° to 85°. The dew point at corresponding times was 52°.8, 58°.8, 62°.1, 66°.8, 62°.5, 60°.7, and the quantity of moisture in a cubic foot of air being 4.685 grs., 5.709 grs., 6.320 grs., 7.217 grs., 6.377 grs., 5.973 grs., respectively.

Western Slope of the Sierra Nevada.—The western flank of this Sierra belongs to the maritime region of California, and is capable of adding greatly to its value. It is a long, wide slope, timbered and grassy, with intervals of arable land, copiously watered with numerous and bold streams, and without the cold which its name and altitude might imply. In length it is the whole extent of the long valley at its base, five hundred miles. In breadth, it is from forty to seventy miles from the summit of the mountain to the termination of the foot hills in the edge of the valleys below, and almost the whole of it available for some useful purpose—timber, pasturage, some arable land, mills, quarries—and so situated as to be convenient for use, the wide slope of the mountain being of easy and practicable descent. Timber holds the first place in the advantages of this slope, the whole being heavily wooded, first with oaks, which predominate to about half the elevation of the mountain; and then with pines, cypress, and cedars, the pines predominating; and hence, called the pine region, as that below is called the oak region, though mixed with other trees. The highest summits of the Sierra are naked, massive granite rock, covered with snow, in sheltered places all the year round. The oaks are several varieties of white and black oak, and evergreens, some of them resembling live oak. Of the white oak there are some new species, attaining a handsome elevation, upon a stem six feet in diameter. Acorns of uncommon size, and not bad taste, used regularly for food by the Indians, abound on these trees, and will be of great value for stock. The cypress, pine, and cedar are between 100 and 250 feet high, and five to twelve feet in diameter, with clean solid stems. Grass abounds on almost all parts of the slope; except towards the highest summits, and is fresh and green all the year round, being neither killed by cold in the winter, nor dried by want of rain in the summer. The foot hills of the slope are sufficiently fertile and gentle to admit of good settlements; while valleys, coves, beaches and meadows of arable land are found throughout. Many of the numerous streams, some of them amounting to considerable rivers, which flow down the mountain side, make handsome, fertile valleys. All these streams furnish good water power. The climate in the

lower part of the slope is that of constant spring, while above, the cold is not in proportion to the elevation. Such is the general view of the western slope of the great Sierra; but deeming that all general views should rest upon positive data, I add some notes taken from actual observations made in different ascents and descents in the winter and spring of 1845-46, and in different degrees of latitude from 35° to 41°.

December 4, 1845.—Descent from the pass, at the head of Salmon Trout river, latitude 39° 17', elevation 7,200 feet. At 3 in the afternoon the temperature at 46°, at sunset 34°, at sunrise next morning 22°; the sky perfectly clear; no snow in the pass, but much on the mountain tops. Here the present emigrant road now crosses. A fork of Bear river (a considerable stream tributary to Feather river, which falls into the Sacramento) leads from the pass, and the road follows it; but finding this a rugged way, we turned to the south, and encamped in a mountain meadow of good green grass. A yellow moss very abundant on the north sides of the pines.

December 6.—The route was over good travelling ground, through open pine forest on a broad, leading ridge, affording an excellent road. A species of cedar (*Thuja gigantea*) occurred, often of extraordinary height and size. *Pinus lambertiani* was one of the most frequent trees, distinguished among cone-bearing tribes by the length of its cones, sometimes sixteen or eighteen inches long. The Indians eat the inner part of the burr, and large heaps of them were seen where they had been collected. Leaving the higher ridges, and gaining the smoother spurs, and descending about 4,000 feet, the face of the country changed rapidly. The country became low, rolling, and pretty; the pines began to disappear, and varieties of oak, and principally an evergreen resembling live oak, became the predominating forest growth. These oaks bear great quantities of large acorns, the principal food of all the wild Indians. At a village of a few huts which we came upon, there was a large supply of these acorns—eight or ten cribs of wicker work, containing about twenty bushels each. The best acorns are obtained from a large tree belonging to the division of white oaks, which is very abundant, and generally forms the groves on the bottom lands of the streams—standing apart, with a clean undergrowth of grass, giving them the appearance of cultivated parks. It is a noble forest tree, already mentioned as a new species, sixty to eighty feet high, with a tufted summit of spreading branches, and frequently attains a diameter of six feet. The largest we measured reached eleven feet. The evergreen oaks generally have a low growth,

is that of constant cold is not in proportion. Such is the general slope of the great Si- that all general views positive data, I add some tual observations made and descents in the of 1845-46, and in dif- titude from 35° to 41°.

5.—Descent from the f Salmon Trout river, ation 7,200 feet. At 3 temperature at 46°, at so next morning 22°; r; no snow in the pass, untain tops. Here the ad now crosses. A (a considerable stream river, which falls into is from the pass, and the finding this a rugged e south, and encamped w of good green grass. abundant on the north

e route was over good rough open pine forest edge, affording an excel- es of cedar (*Thuja gi-* often of extraordinary nus *lambertiani* was one ont trees, distinguished tribes by the length of s sixteen or eighteen ndians eat the inner part go heaps of them were been collected. Leav- ges, and gaining the descending about 4,000 country changed rapidly. low, rolling, and pretty; disappear, and varieties ly an evergreen resem- me the predominating e oaks bear great quan- the principal food of all t a village of a few huts there was a large supply nt or ten cribs of wicker at twenty bushels each. e obtained from a large division of white oaks, ant, and generally forms ton lands of the streams th a clean undergrowth n the appearance of cul- a noble forest tree, al- a new species, sixty to th a tufted summit of and frequently attains a et. The largest we ven feet. The ever- ly have a low growth,

with long branches and spreading tops. Some of them are suitable for ship timber, and have already been used for that purpose.

At our evening encampment of the 8th, which was at an elevation of five hundred feet above the sea, latitude 38° 53', and distant from the sea-coast about one hundred miles, the temperature at sunset was 48°, the sky clear and calm, weather delightful, and the vegetation that of early spring. We were still upon the foot hills of the mountain, where the soil is sheltered by woods, and where rain falls much more frequently than in the open Sacramento valley, near the edge of which we then were. I have been in copious, continuous rains of eighteen or twenty hours' duration in the oak region of the mountain, when not a drop fell in the valley below. Innumerable small streams have their rise and course through these foot hills, which never reach the river of the valley, but are absorbed in its light soil. The large streams coming from the upper parts of the mountain make valleys of their own, of fertile soil, covered with luxuriant grass and interspersed with groves. This is the general character of the foot hills throughout the entire length of the Sacramento and San Joaquin valleys—a broad belt of country, and probably destined to become a vine-growing, as well as a grain and pastoral country.

December 9.—Entered the valley of the Sacramento. Fresh, green grass for eight or ten miles into the valley, cattle feeding upon it, or lying under the shade of trees—the shade being pleasant to our own feelings. Further in, towards the middle of the valley, where the spring rains had not yet commenced, the country looked parched and dry, the grass eaten down by the cattle, which were quite fat and fine beef.

Ascent, December and January, 1845-46, latitude 37°. Entering the mountain by the *Rio Reyes* of Tularé lake, (December 24,) we found its general character very similar to what it was in the more northern part, (latitude 39°,) the timber perhaps less heavy and more open, and the mountain generally more rough, extremely rocky in the upper parts, but wooded up to the granite ridges which compose its rocky eminences. At the elevation of 3,500 feet the ridges were covered with oaks and pines intermixed, and the bottom lands with oaks, cotton-wood, and sycamores. Small varieties of evergreen oaks reached the observed height of 9,480 feet, at which elevation *pinus lambertiani*, and other varieties of pine, fir, and cypress, were large and lofty trees. During the latter part of December and first days of January the average temperature of the oak region, going to about 5,000 feet above the

sea, was, at sunrise, 34.° 6', and at sunset 50.° 5'. In the piney region, between this height and 1,100 feet, the average at sunrise was 28.° 7', and at sunset 30° 4'. The lowest observed temperature was at sunset of January 1, when the sky had entirely cleared after a severe snow storm. The thermometer then stood at 8.° 5, the elevation above the sea being 9,400 feet. Descending to the oak region, spring weather, rain and sunshine, prevailed. At an elevation of 4,500 feet the temperature, at the night encampment of the 3d day of January, was 38° at sunset, and the same at sunrise, the grass green, and growing freshly under the oaks. The snow line was then at about 6,000 feet above the level of the sea. Rain had begun to fall in the valley of the San Joaquin in this latitude (37°) on the 20th of December, and snow at the same time upon the summit of the mountain. The mean temperature of the mountain during this ascent and descent (December 24 to January 8) was 31°. 6' at sunrise, 40°. 4' at sunset.

Descent by Mr. Kern's party, latitude 35°. 30', December and January. Mr. Kern, with a detached party had crossed the Sierra about one hundred miles further south, nearly opposite the head of the Tularé lakes, and remained encamped in a valley or cove, near the summit of the Sierra, at the head of Kern's river, from December 27th to January 17th; the cove well wooded with evergreen oaks, some varieties of pine, firs and cedars, maintaining the usual majestic growth, which characterizes the cone-bearing trees of the Sierra. Until the 12th of January the weather almost that of summer, when the rains commenced, which was almost three weeks later than in latitude 37°. The 17th there was a fall of snow, washed off in the cove by a rain in the afternoon, the high ridges remaining covered a foot deep. The mean temperature in the cove from December 27th to January 17th was at sunrise 26°, at noon 60°, at sunset 52°. After that, snow and rain, alternated with sunshine, snow remaining on the ridges, and winter set in fairly on all the upper half of the mountain.

Ascent about latitude 41°, (April and May,) April 26, 1846—head of the lower Sacramento valley. Left the river Sacramento, going up one of the many pretty little streams that flow into the river around the head of the lower valley. On either side, low steep ridges were covered along their summits with pine, and oaks occupied the somewhat broad bottoms of the creek. Snowy peaks made the horizon on the right, and the temperature at noon was 71°, but the day was still and hot. The small streams are numerous here, and have much bottom land; grass and acorns abundant, and both

of excellent quality. Encamped in the evening in latitude $40^{\circ} 38' 58''$, elevation above the sea 1,080 feet, temperature at sunset 56° , weather pleasant. Grisly bears numerous, four being killed by the hunters after we had encamped.

April 27.—Found a good way along a flat ridge, a pretty, open mountain stream on the right, the country beginning to assume a mountainous character, wooded with mingled oak and long-leaved pine, and having a surface of scattered rocks, with grass and flowers. At noon, crossing a high ridge, the thermometer showed 61° . At night, at an elevation of 2,460 feet, we encamped on a creek that went roaring into the valley; temperature at sunset 52° .

28th, continued up the stream on which we had encamped, the country rising rapidly, clothed with heavy timber. On crossing one of the high ridges snow and *pinus lambertiana* appeared together. An hour before noon reached the pass in the main ridge, in an open pine forest, elevation 4,000 feet thermometer at 50° , latitude near 41° . Snow in patches, and deciduous oaks mixed with the pines.

Returning upon a different line, towards the lower valley of the Sacramento, near its head, we found in the descent a truly magnificent forest. It was composed mainly of a cypress and a lofty white cedar (*Thuja gigantea*) 120 to 140 feet high, common in the mountains of California. All were massive trees; but the cypress was distinguished by its uniformly great bulk. None were seen so large as are to be found in the coast mountains near Santa Cruz, but there was a greater number of large trees—seven feet being a common diameter—carrying the bulk eighty or a hundred feet without a limb. At an elevation of four thousand six hundred feet the temperature at sunset was 48° , and at sunrise 37° . Oaks already appeared among the pines, but did not yet show a leaf. In the meadow marshes of the forest grass was green, but not yet abundant, and the deer were poor. Descending the flanks of the mountain, which fell gradually towards the plain, the way was through the same deep forest. At the elevation of about 3,000 feet the timber had become more open, the hills rolling, and many streams made pretty bottoms of rich grass; the black oaks in full and beautiful leaf were thickly studded among the open pines, which had become much smaller and fewer in variety, and when we halted near mid-day, at an elevation of 2,200 feet, we were in one of the most pleasant days of late spring; cool and sunny, with a pleasant breeze, amidst a profusion of various flowers; many trees in dark summer foliage, and some still in bloom. Among these the white spikes of the horse-chestnut,

common through all the oak region, were conspicuous. We had again reached summer weather, and the temperature at noon was 70° .

In the afternoon we descended to the open valley of the Sacramento, 1,000 feet lower, where the thermometer was 68° at sunset, and 51° at sunrise. This was the best timbered region that I had seen, and the more valuable from its position near the head of the lower valley of the Sacramento, and accessible from its waters.

Bay of San Francisco and dependent country.—The bay of San Francisco has been celebrated, from the time of its first discovery, as one of the finest in the world, and is justly entitled to that character even under the seaman's view of a mere harbor. But when all the accessory advantages which belong to it—fertile and picturesque dependent country, mildness and salubrity of climate, connexion with the great interior valley of the Sacramento and San Joaquin, its vast resources for ship timber, grain and cattle—when these advantages are taken into the account, with its geographical position on the line of communication with Asia, it rises into an importance far above that of a mere harbor, and deserves a particular notice in any account of maritime California. Its latitudinal position is that of Lisbon; its climate is that of southern Italy; settlements upon it for more than half a century attest its healthiness; bold shores and mountains give it grandeur; the extent and fertility of its dependent country give it great resources for agriculture, commerce, and population.

The bay of San Francisco is separated from the sea by low mountain ranges. Looking from the peaks of the Sierra Nevada, the coast mountains present an apparently continuous line, with only a single gap, resembling a mountain pass. This is the entrance to the great bay, and is the only water communication from the coast to the interior country. Approaching from the sea, the coast presents a bold outline. On the south, the bordering mountains come down in a narrow ridge of broken hills, terminating in a precipitous point, against which the sea breaks heavily. On the northern side, the mountain presents a bold promontory, rising in a few miles to a height of two or three thousand feet. Between these points is the strait—about one mile broad, in the narrowest part, and five miles long from the sea to the bay. Passing through this gate,* the bay opens to the right and left, extending in each direction

* Called *Chrysoppla* (Golden Gate) on the map, on the same principle that the harbor of *Byzantium* (Constantinople afterwards) was called *Chrysoeris* (golden horn.) The form of the harbor, and its advantages for commerce, (and that before it became an entrepot of eastern commerce,) suggested the name to the Greek

l the oak region, were
and again reached sum-
the temperature at noon

re descended to the open
mento, 1,000 feet lower,
eter was 68° at sunset.
This was the best tim-
nd seen, and the more
osition near the head of
f the Sacramento, and
rators.

Francisco and dependent
of San Francisco has
on the time of its first
f the finest in the world,
l to that character even
view of a mere harbor.

accessory advantages
—fertile and picturesque
mildness, and salubrity of
with the great interior
mento and San Joaquin,
ship timber, grain and
advantages are taken
with its geographical posi-
ommunication with Asia,
ortance far above that of
deserves a particular no-
of maritime California.
on is that of Lisbon; its
southern Italy; settle-
more than half a century
; bold shores and moun-
eur; the extent and fer-
ent country give it great
culture, commerce, and

Francisco is separated
mountain ranges. Look-
of the Sierra Nevada, the
esent an apparently com-
only a single gap, resem-
ss. This is the entrance
d is the only water com-
no coast to the interior
ning from the sea, the
d outline. On the south,
ains come down in a nar-
hills, terminating in a pre-
ast which the sea breaks
orthern side, the moun-
promontory, rising in a
t of two or three thousand
se points is the strait—
d, in the narrowest part,
from the sea to the bay.
gate,* the bay opens to
tending in each direction

(Golden Gate) on the map, on
the harbor of Byzantium (Con-
stas called *Chrysoceras* (golden
harbor, and its advantages for
before it became an entrepot of
ested the name to the Greek

about 35 miles, having a total length of more
than 70, and a coast of about 275 miles. It is
divided, by straits and projecting points, into
three separate bays, of which the northern
two are called San Pablo and Suisoon bays.
Within, the view presented is of a mountain-
ous country, the bay resembling an interior
lake of deep water, lying between parallel
ranges of mountains. Islands, which have
the bold character of the shores—some mere
masses of rock, and others grass-covered,
rising to the height of three and eight hun-
dred feet—break its surface and add to its
picturesque appearance. Directly fronting
the entrance, mountains a few miles from
the shore rise about 2,000 feet above the
water, crowned by a forest of the lofty *cy-
press*, which is visible from the sea, and
makes a conspicuous landmark for vessels
entering the bay. Behind, the rugged peak
of *Mount Diablo*, nearly 4,000 feet high,
(3,770) overlooks the surrounding country
of the bay and San Joaquin.

The immediate shore of the bay derives,
from its proximate and opposite relation to
the sea, the name of *contra costa* (counter-
coast, or opposite coast). It presents a varied
character of rugged and broken hills, rolling
and undulating land, and rich alluvial shores
backed by fertile and wooded ranges, suitable
for towns, villages, and farms, with which it
is beginning to be dotted. A low alluvial
bottom land, several miles in breadth, with
occasional open woods of oak, borders the
foot of the mountains around the southern
arm of the bay, terminating on a breadth of
twenty miles in the fertile valley of St. Jo-
seph, a narrow plain of rich soil, lying be-
tween ranges from two to three thousand
feet high. The valley is openly wooded,
with groves of oak, free from underbrush,
and after the spring rains covered with grass.
Taken in connection with the valley of San
Juan, with which it forms a continuous plain,
it is fifty-five miles long and one to twenty
broad, opening into smaller valleys among
the hills. At the head of the bay it is twenty
miles broad, and about the same at the south-
ern end, where the soil is beautifully fertile,
covered in summer with four or five varieties
of wild clover several feet high. In many
places it is overgrown with wild mustard,
growing ten or twelve feet high, in almost
impenetrable fields, through which roads are
made like lanes. On both sides the moun-
tains are fertile, wooded, or covered with
grasses and scattered trees. On the west it
is protected from the chilling influence of
the northwest winds by the *cuesta de los ga-
sus*, (wild-cat ridge), which separates it from

founders of Byzantium. The form of the entrance into
the bay of San Francisco, and its advantages for com-
merce. (Asiatic inclusive.) suggest the name which is
given to this entrance.

the coast. This is a grassy and timbered
mountain, watered with small streams, and
wooded on both sides with many varieties of
trees and shrubbery. A heavier forests of
pine and cypress occupying the western
slope. Timber and shingles are now obtain-
ed from this mountain; and one of the
recently discovered quicksilver mines is on
the eastern side of the mountain, near the
Pueblo of San José. This range terminates
on the south in the *Anno Nuevo* point of
Monterey bay, and on the north declines into
a ridge of broken hills about five miles wide,
between the bay and the sea, and having the
town of San Francisco on the bay shore,
near its northern extremity.

Sheltered from the cold winds and fogs of
the sea, and having a soil of remarkable fer-
tility, the valley of St. Joseph (San José) is
capable of producing in great perfection
many fruits and grains which do not thrive
on the coast in its immediate vicinity. With-
out taking into consideration the extraordi-
nary yields which have sometimes occurred,
the fair average product of wheat is estimated
at fifty fold, or fifty for one sown. The mis-
sion establishments of *Sana Clara* and *San
José*, in the north end of the valley, were
formerly, in the prosperous days of the mis-
sions, distinguished for the superiority of
their wheat crops.

The slope of alluvial land continues en-
tirely around the eastern shore of the bay,
intersected by small streams, and offering
some points which good landing and deep
water, with advantageous positions between
the sea and interior country, indicate for
future settlement.

The strait of *Carquines*, about one mile
wide and eight or ten fathoms deep, connects
the San Pablo and Suisoon bays. Around
these bays smaller valleys open into the bor-
dering country, and some of the streams
have a short launch navigation, which serves
to convey produce to the bay. Missions and
large farms were established at the head of
navigation on these streams, which are favor-
able sites for towns or villages. The country
around the Suisoon bay presents smooth low
ridges and rounded hills, clothed with wild
oats, and more or less openly wooded on
their summits. Approaching its northern
shores from *Sonoma*, it assumes, though in
a state of nature, a cultivated and beautiful
appearance. Wild oats cover it in contin-
uous fields, and herds of cattle and bands of
horses are scattered over low hills and partly
isolated ridges, where blue mists and open-
ings among the abruptly terminating hills
indicate the neighborhood of the bay.

The *Suisoon* is connected with an expan-
sion of the river formed by the junction of
the Sacramento and San Joaquin, which en-
ter the Francisco bay in the same latitude,

nearly, as the mouth of the Tugus at Lisbon. A delta of twenty-five miles in length, divided into islands by deep channels, connects the bay with the valley of the San Joaquin and Sacramento, into the mouths of which the tide flows, and which enter the bay together as one river.

Such is the bay, and the proximate country and shores of the bay of San Francisco. It is not a mere indentation of the coast, but a little sea to itself, connected with the ocean by a defensible gate, opening out between seventy and eighty miles to the right and left, upon a breadth of ten to fifteen, deep enough for the largest ships, with bold shores suitable for towns and settlements, and fertile adjacent country for cultivation. The head of the bay is about forty miles from the sea, and there commences its connection with the noble valleys of the San Joaquin and Sacramento.

Coast country north of the bay of San Francisco.—Between the Sacramento valley and the coast, north of the bay of San Francisco, the country is broken into mountain ridges and rolling hills, with many very fertile valleys, made by lakes and small streams. In the interior it is wooded, generally with oak, and immediately along the coast presents open prairie lands, among heavily timbered forests, having a greater variety of trees, and occasionally a larger growth than the timbered region of the Sierra Nevada. In some parts it is entirely covered, in areas of many miles, with a close growth of wild oats, to the exclusion of almost every other plant. In the latter part of June and beginning of July, we found here a climate sensibly different from that of the Sacramento valley, a few miles east, being much cooler and moister. In clear weather, the mornings were like those of the Rocky mountains in August, pleasant and cool, following cold clear nights. In that part lying nearer the coast, we found the mornings sometimes cold, accompanied with chilling winds; and fogs frequently came rolling up over the ridges from the sea. These sometimes rose at evening, and continued until noon of the next day. They are not dry, but wet mists, leaving the face of the country covered as by a drizzling rain. This sometimes causes rust in wheat grown within its influence, but vegetables flourish and attain extraordinary size.

I learned from Captain Smith, a resident at *Bodega*, that the winter months make a delightful season—rainy days (generally of warm showers) alternating with mild and calm, pleasant weather, and pure bright skies—much preferable to the summer, when the fogs and strong northwest winds, which prevail during the greater part of the year, make the morning part of the day disagreeably cold.

Owing probably to the fogs, spring is earlier along the coast than in the interior, where, during the interval between the rains, the ground becomes very dry. Flowers bloom in December, and by the beginning of February grass acquires a strong and luxuriant growth, and fruit trees (peach, pear, apple, &c.) are covered with blossoms. In situations immediately open to the sea the fruit ripens late, generally at the end of August, being retarded by the chilling influence of the northwest winds: a short distance inland, where intervening ridges obstruct these winds and shelter the face of the country, there is a different climate and a remarkable difference in the time of ripening fruits; the heat of the sun has full influence on the soil, and vegetation goes rapidly to perfection.

The country in July began to present the dry appearance common to all California as the summer advances, except along the northern coast within the influence of the fogs, or where the land is sheltered by forests, and in the moist valleys of streams and areas of the hills. In some of these was an uncommonly luxuriant growth of oats, still partially green, while elsewhere they were dried up; the face of the country presenting generally a mellow and ripened appearance, and the small streams beginning to lose their volume, and draw up into the hills.

This northern part of the coast country is heavily timbered, more so as it goes north to the Oregon boundary, (42°) with many bold streams falling directly into the sea.

The country between the bays of San Francisco and Monterey.—In the latter part of January, 1846, a few shrubs and flowers were already in bloom on the sandy shore of Monterey bay (lat. 36° 40'). Among these were the California poppy, and *ne-mophila insignis*.

On the 5th February I found many shrubs and plants in bloom, in the coast mountains bordering St. Joseph's valley, between Monterey and the bay of San Francisco; and vegetation appeared much more green and spring-like, and further advanced, than in the plains. About the middle of February I noticed the *geranium* in flower in the valley; and from that time vegetation began generally to bloom. Cattle were obtained in February, from ranches among the neighboring hills, extremely fat, selected from the herds in the range.

During the months of January and February rainy days alternated with longer intervals of fair and pleasant weather, which is the character of the rainy season in California. The mean temperature in the valley of St. Joseph—open to the bay of San Fran-

the fogs, spring is earlier than in the interior, the interval between the rains, is very dry. Flowers and by the beginning of fires a strong and luxuriant fruit trees (peach, pear, red with blossoms. In the valley open to the sea the climate is generally at the end of the winter by the chilling influence of the winds; a short distance inland the ridges obstruct these winds, the face of the country, the climate and a remarkable amount of ripening fruits; the full influence on the coast goes rapidly to perfect-

ly began to present the same as all California as a rule, except along the coast in the influence of the ocean and is sheltered by forested valleys of streams and in some of these was an abundant growth of oaks, still to be elsewhere they were of the country presenting a very and ripened appearance and streams beginning to flow and draw up into the

part of the coast country, more so as it goes inland, the boundary, (42°), with the falling directly into the

between the bays of San Francisco and Monterey.—In the latter part a few shrubs and flowers in bloom on the sandy shore (lat. 36° 40'). Among the California poppy, and near-

ly I found many shrubs in the coast mountains of the valley, between Monterey and San Francisco; and much more green and advanced, than in the middle of February I found in flower in the valley the vegetation began to flourish. Cattle were obtained in the valleys among the neighbors, selected from the

of January and February with longer intervals of pleasant weather, which is the rainy season in California. The temperature in the valley to the bay of San Fran-

cisco—from the 13th to the 22d of February, was 50° at sunrise, and 61° at sunset. The oaks in this valley, especially along the foot of the hills, are partly covered with long trailing moss—an indication of much humidity in the climate.

We remained several days, in the latter part of February, in the upper portion of the coast mountain between St. Joseph and Santa Cruz. The place of our encampment was 2,000 feet above the sea, and was covered with a luxuriant growth of grass, a foot high in many places. At sunrise the temperature was 40°; at noon 60°; at 4 in the afternoon 65°; and 63° at sunset; with very pleasant weather. The mountains were wooded with many varieties of trees, and in some parts with heavy forests. These forests are characterized by a cypress (*taxodium*) of extraordinary dimensions, already mentioned among the trees of the Sierra Nevada, which is distinguished among the forest trees of America by its superior size and height. Among many which we measured in this part of the mountain, nine and ten feet diameter was frequent—eleven sometimes; but going beyond eleven only in a single tree, which reached fourteen feet in diameter. Above two hundred feet was a frequent height. In this locality the bark was very deeply furrowed, and unusually thick, being fully sixteen inches in some of the trees. The tree was now in bloom, flowering near the summit, and the flowers consequently difficult to procure. This is the staple timber tree of the country, being cut into both boards and shingles, and is the principal timber sawed at the mills. It is soft, and easily worked, wearing away too quickly to be used for floors. It seems to have all the durability which anciently gave the cypress so much celebrity. Posts which have been exposed to the weather for three quarters of a century (since the foundation of the missions) show no marks of decay in the wood, and are now converted into beams and posts for private buildings. In California this tree is called the *palo colorado*. It is the king of trees.

Among the oaks is a handsome lofty evergreen species, specifically different from those of the lower grounds, and in its general appearance much resembling hickory. The bark is smooth, of a white color, and the wood hard and close-grained. It seems to prefer the north hill sides, where some were nearly four feet in diameter and a hundred feet high.

Another remarkable tree of these woods is called in the language of the country *mañono*. It is a beautiful evergreen, with large, thick, and glossy digitate leaves, the trunk and branches reddish colored, and having a smooth and singularly naked appear-

ance, as if the bark had been stripped off. In its green state the wood is brittle, very heavy, hard, and close-grained; it is said to assume a red color when dry, sometimes variegated, and susceptible of a high polish. This tree was found by us only in the mountains. Some measured nearly four feet in diameter, and were about sixty feet high.

A few scattered flowers were now showing throughout the forests, and on the open ridges shrubs were flowering; but the bloom was not yet general.

On the 25th February, we descended to the coast near the northwestern point of Monterey bay, losing our fine weather, which in the evening changed into a cold southeasterly storm, continuing with heavy and constant rains for several days.

During this time the mean temperature was 53° at sunrise, 56° at 9h. a. m., 57° at noon, 54° at 2h. in the afternoon, 53° at 4, and 52° at sunset. On the 28th, a thick fog was over the bay and on the mountains at sunrise, and the thermometer was at 38°—15° below the ordinary temperature—rising at 9 o'clock to 59°. These fogs prevail along the coast during a great part of the summer and autumn, but do not cross the ridges into the interior. This locality is celebrated for the excellence and great size of its vegetables, (especially the Irish potato and onions,) with which, for this reason, it has for many years supplied the shipping which visits Monterey. A forest of *palo colorado* at the foot of the mountains in this vicinity, is noted for the great size and height of the trees. I measured one which was 275 feet in height and fifteen feet in diameter, three feet above the base. Though this was distinguished by the greatest girth, other surrounding trees were but little inferior in size and still taller. Their colossal height and massive bulk give an air of grandeur to the forest.

These trees grow tallest in the bottom lands, and prefer moist soils and north hill-sides. In situations where they are protected from the prevailing northwest winds, they shoot up to a great height; but wherever their heads are exposed, these winds appear to chill them and stop their growth. They then assume a spreading shape, with larger branches, and an apparently broken summit.

The rain storm closed with February, and the weather becoming fine, on the 1st of March we resumed our progress along the coast. Over the face of the country between Santa Cruz and Monterey, and around the plains of St. John, the grass, which had been eaten down by the large herds of cattle, was now every where springing up; flowers began to show their bloom, and in the valleys of the mountains bordering the Salinas plains, (a plain of some fifty miles in length, made

by the Salinas river,) wild oats were three feet high, and well headed, by the 6th of March.

During three days that we remained on one of these mountains, at an elevation of 2,200 feet above the sea, and in sight of Monterey, the mean temperature was 44° at sunrise, 55° at 9 in the morning, 60° at noon, 62° at 2 in the afternoon, 57° at 4, and 53° at sunset. At the same hours the dew point was 42°.0, 48°.1, 52°.8, 54°.9, 52°.9, 51°.6, and the quantity of moisture in a cubic foot of air, 3.283 grs., 3.982 grs., 4.726 grs., 4.972 grs., 4.682 grs., and 4.558 grs., respectively. The weather remained bright and pleasant; fogs sometimes covering the mountains at sunrise, but going off in a few hours. These are open mountains, untimbered, but fertile in oats and other grasses, affording fine range for cattle. Oaks and pines are scattered thinly over their upper parts, and in the higher and more exposed situations the evergreen oaks show the course and influence of the northwest winds, stunted and blighted by their chillness, bent to the ground by their force, and growing in that form.

Descending into the valley of the San Joaquin, (March 11th,) we found almost a summer temperature, and the country clothed in the floral beauty of advanced spring.

Southern country and rainy season, (latitudes 32°—35°.—South of Point Conception the climate and general appearance of the country exhibit a marked change. The coast from that cape trends almost directly east, the face of the country has a more southern exposure, and is sheltered by ranges of low mountains from the violence and chilling effect of the northwest winds; hence the climate is still more mild and genial, fostering a richer variety of productions, differing in kind from those of the northern coast.

The face of the country along the coast is generally naked, the lower hills and plains devoid of trees, during the summer heats parched and bare, and water sparsely distributed. The higher ridges and the country in their immediate vicinity are always more or less, and sometimes prettily, wooded. These usually afford water and good green grass throughout the year. When the plains have become dry, parched and bare of grass, the cattle go up into these ridges, where, with cooler weather and shade, they find water and good pasture. In the driest part of the year we found sheep and cattle fat, and saw flowers blooming in all the months of the year. Along the foot of the main ridges the soil is rich and comparatively moist, wooded, with grass and water abundant; and many localities would afford beautiful and productive farms. The ranges of the *Sierra Nevada* (here approaching its ter-

mination) still remain high—some peaks always retaining snow—and afford copious streams, which run all the year. Many of these streams are absorbed in the light soil of the larger plains before they reach the sea. Properly directed, the water of these rivers is sufficient to spread cultivation over the plains. Throughout the country every farm or *rancho* has its own spring or running stream sufficient for the support of stock, which hitherto has made the chief object of industry in California.

The soil is generally good, of a sandy or light character, easily cultivated, and in many places of extraordinary fertility. Cultivation has always been by irrigation, and the soil seems to require only water to produce vigorously. Among the arid brush-covered hills south of San Diego we found little valleys converted by a single spring into crowded gardens, where pears, peaches, quinces, pomegranates, grapes, olives, and other fruits grow luxuriantly together, the little stream acting upon them like a principle of life. The southern frontier of this portion of California seems eminently adapted to the cultivation of the vine and the olive. A single vine has been known to yield a barrel of wine; and the olive trees are burdened with the weight of fruit.

During the month of August the days are bright and hot, the sky pure and entirely cloudless, and the nights cool and beautifully serene. In this month fruits generally ripen—melons, pears, peaches, prickly fig, (*cactus tuba*,) &c.—and large bunches of ripe grapes are scattered numerous through the vineyards, but do not reach maturity until the following month. After the vintage, grapes are hung up in the houses and so kept for use throughout the winter.

The mornings in September are cool and generally delightful—we sometimes found them almost cold enough to freeze—the mid-day hours bright and hot, but a breeze usually made the shade pleasant; the evenings calm, and nights cool and clear when unobscured by fogs. We reached the southern country at the end of July; and the first clouds we saw appeared on the 6th September at sunset, gradually spreading over the sky, and the morning was cloudy, but clear again before noon. Lightning at this time was visible in the direction of Sonora, where the rainy season had already commenced, and the cloudy weather was perhaps indicative of its approach here. On some nights the dews were remarked to be heavy; and as we were journeying along the coast between San Diego and Santa Barbara, fogs occasionally obscured the sunset over the ocean, and rose next morning with the sun. On the wooded plain, at the foot of the San Gabriel mountains, in the neighborhood of Santa Bar

tain high—some peaks
snow—and afford copious
all the year. Many of
absorbed in the light soil
before they reach the
ected, the water of these
to spread cultivation over
throughout the country every
its own springs or run-
nient for the support of
to has made the chief ob-
California.

erally good, of a sandy or
ily cultivated, and in many
ary fertility. Cultivation
y irrigation, and the soil
only water to produce
ng the arid brush-covered
Diego we found little val-
single spring into crowded
rs, peaches, quinces, pome-
olives, and other fruits
together, the little stream
like a principle of life.
ier of this portion of Cali-
ntly adapted to the culti-
and the olive. A single
own to yield a barrel of
e trees are burdened with

th of August the days are
e sky pure and entirely
ights cool and beauti-
his month fruits generally
ars, peaches, prickly fig,
—and large bunches of
attered numerously through
t do not reach maturity
month. After the vin-
ng up in the houses and
throughout the winter.

n September are cool and
ul—we sometimes found
nough to freeze—the mid-
nd hot, but a breeze usually
asant; the evenings calm,
d clear when unobscured
ched the southern country
; and the first clouds we
e 6th September at sunset,
ng over the sky, and the
ly, but clear again before
nt this time was visible in
Sonora, where the rainy
dy commenced, and the
ns perhaps indicative of
e. On some nights the
ed to be heavy; and as we
along the coast between
Santa Barbara, fogs occa-
the sunset over the ocean,
ning with the sun. On the
the foot of the San Gabriel
neighborhood of Santa Bar

bara, and frequently along the way, the
trees were found to be partly covered with
moss.

Country between the Santa Barbara moun-
tain and Monterey, (lat. $34^{\circ} 30'$ to $36^{\circ} 30'$.)—
About the middle of September we encamped
near the summit of the Cuesta de Santa Ines,
(Santa Barbara mountain,) on a little creek
with cold water, good fresh grass, and much
timber; and thenceforward north along the
mountain behind the Santa Ines mission, the
country assumed a better appearance, gener-
ally well wooded and tolerably well covered
with grass of good quality—very different
from the dry, naked and parched appearance
of the country below Santa Barbara. The
neighboring mountain exhibited large timber,
redwood or pine, probably the latter. Water
was frequent in small running streams.
Crossing the fertile valley of San Luis
Obispo, (lat. 35° .) a sheltered valley noted
for the superiority of its olives, we entered
the Santa Lucia range, which lies between
the coast and the Salinas, or Buena Ventura
river (of the bay of Monterey.) We found
this a beautiful mountain, covered thickly
with wild oats, prettily wooded, and having
on the side we ascended (which is the water-
shed) in every little hollow a running stream
of cool water, which the weather made de-
lightful. The days were hot, at evening
cool, and the morning weather clear and ex-
hilarating. Descending into the valley, we
found it open and handsome, making a pleas-
ing country well wooded, and every where
covered with grass of a good quality. The
coast range is wooded on both sides and to
the summit with varieties of oaks and pines.
The upper part of the Salinas valley, where
we are now travelling, would afford excel-
lent stock farms, and is particularly well
suited to sheep. The country never becomes
dry in the rainy season, and none are lost
by cold in the mild winter.

The good range, grass and acorns, made
game abundant, and deer and grisly bear
were numerous. Twelve of the latter were
killed by the party in one thicket.

Lower down, in the neighborhood of San
Miguel, the country changed its appearance,
losing its timbered and grassy character, and
showing much sand. The past year had
been one of unusual drought, and the river
had almost entirely disappeared, leaving a
bare sandy bed with a few pools of water.
About fifteen miles below San Miguel it en-
ters a gorge of the hills, making broad thickly
wooded bottoms, and affording a good range
and abundance of water, the bed being shel-
tered by the thick timber. The lower hills
and spurs from the ranges, bordering the
river, are very dry and bare, affording little
or no grass. Approaching the mission of
Soledad the river valley widens, making

fertile bottoms and plains of arable land,
some fifteen to twenty miles broad, extending
to Monterey bay, and bordered by ranges of
mountain from two to three thousand feet
high. These ranges have the character of
fertile mountains, their hills being covered
with grass and scattered trees, and their val-
leys producing fields of wild oats, and wooded
with oak groves. Being unsheltered by
woods, water is not abundant in the dry sen-
son, but at the end of September we found
springs among the hills, and water remained
in the creek beds.

On the evening of the 25th September,
cumuli made their appearance in the sky, and
the next morning was cloudy with a warm
southerly wind and a few drops of rain—
the first of the rainy season. The weather
then continued uninterruptedly dry through
all October—fair and bright during the first
part, but cloudy during the latter half. At
the end of the month the rainy season set in
fully, consisting generally of rain squalls
with bright weather intervening, and occa-
sional southeasterly storms continuing sever-
al days. The previous seasons had been
very short and light for several years, and the
country had suffered from the consequent
drought. The present season commenced
early, and was very favorable. Much rain
fell in the low country, and snow accumu-
lated to a great depth in the high mountains.
The first rains changed the face of the
country. Grass immediately began to shoot
up rapidly, and by the end of the first week
of November the dead hue of the hills around
Monterey had already given place to green.

A brief sketch of the weather during a
journey in this year from the mission of San
Juan Baptista (latitude 37°) to Los Angeles
will exhibit the ordinary character of the
season.

In the valley of San Juan, during the lat-
ter half of November, there was no rain; the
weather, generally, pleasant and bright, with
occasional clouds. The night clear and
cool, occasionally cold; the mornings clear
and sharp, with hoar frost sometimes cover-
ing the ground. The days were warm and
pleasant, and the evenings mild and calm.
On some mornings a thick fog settled down
immediately after sunrise, but in a few hours
cleared off into a pleasant day.

The falling weather recommenced on the
30th, with a stormy day of spring; blue sky
in spots, rapidly succeeded by masses of dark
clouds and pouring rain, which fell heavily
during greater part of the night.

The morning of the 1st December was
partially clear, but rain recommenced in a
few hours, with sky entirely clouded. The
weather brightened at noon, and from a
high point of the hills bordering the St. Juan
river valley, up which we were travelling,

snow was visible on summits of the dividing range between the San Joaquin valley and the coast. It rained heavily and incessantly during the night, and continued all the next day. In the night the sky cleared off bright with a north wind, but clouded up at morning, with rain and a broken sky. There were showers of rain during the day, with intervals of bright and hot sun; and the sky at sunset was without a cloud.

During the day and night of the 4th, there were occasional showers. The sky was tolerably clear on the morning of the 5th, with a prospect of fair weather. The tents were frozen, and snow appeared on the near ridges. We were then in a small interior valley of the mountains, bordering the *Salinas* river, and about 1,000 feet above the sea.

December the 6th was a beautiful day, followed by a cold frosty night.

The next day we descended to the valley of the *Salinas* river, the weather continuing clear and pleasant during the day. Snow appeared on the mountains on both sides of the valley, and a cloud from some of them gave a slight shower during the night. Several successive days were clear, with hot sun; the nights cold, starry, and frosty. The new grass on the hills was coming out vigorously. The morning of the 10th was keen and clear, with scattered clouds, and a southerly wind, which brought up showers of rain at night, followed by fog in the morning.

On the 12th, at the mission of *Santa Margarita*, in the head of the *Salinas* valley, rain began in the afternoon, with a cold wind, and soon increased to a southeasterly storm, with heavy rain during all the night. The 13th was cloudy, with occasional showers. During the night the weather became very bad, and by morning had increased to a violent and cold southeasterly rain storm. In the afternoon the storm subsided, and was followed by several days of variable weather.

By the 19th, the country where we were travelling between *San Luis Obispo* and the *Cuesta of Santa Ines*, showed a handsome covering of grass, which required two weeks more to become excellent. There were several days of warm weather, with occasional showers and hot sun, and cattle began to seek the shade.

The 23d was a day of hard rain, followed by fine weather on the 24th, and a cold southeasterly rain storm on the 25th.

During the remainder of the year, the weather continued fair and cool.

No rain fell during the first half of *January*, which we passed between *Santa Barbara* and *Los Angeles*: the days were bright and very pleasant, with warm sun; and the nights, generally, cold. In the neglected orchards of the *San Buenaventura* and Fer-

nando missions, the olive trees remained loaded with the abundant fruit, which continued in perfectly good condition.

About the 14th, a day of rain succeeded by an interval of fine weather, again interrupted by a rainy, disagreeable southeaster on the 23d. During the remainder of the month the days were bright and pleasant—almost of summer—sun and clouds varying; the nights clear, but sometimes a little cold; and much snow showing on the mountain overlooking the plains of *San Gabriel*.

In the first part of *February*, at *Los Angeles*, there were some foggy and misty mornings, with showers of rain at intervals of a week. The weather then remained for several weeks uninterrupted and beautifully serene, the sky remarkably pure, the air soft and grateful, and it was difficult to imagine any climate more delightful. In the meantime the processes of vegetation went on with singular rapidity, and, by the end of the month, the face of the country was beautiful with the great abundance of pasture, covered with a luxuriant growth of *geranium*, (*erodium cicutarium*), so esteemed as food for cattle and horses, and all grazing animals. The orange trees were crowded with flowers and fruit in various sizes, and along the foot of the mountain, bordering the *San Gabriel* plain, fields of orange-colored flowers were visible at the distance of fifteen miles from *Los Angeles*.

In the midst of the bright weather there was occasionally a cold night. In the morning of *March 9*, new snow appeared on the *San Gabriel* mountain, and there was frost in the plain below; but these occasionally cold nights seemed to have no influence on vegetation.

On the 23d and 27th of *March* there were some continued and heavy showers of rain, about the last of the season in the southern country. In the latter part of *April* fogs began to be very frequent, rising at midnight and continuing until 9 or 10 of the following morning. About the beginning of *May* the mornings were regularly foggy until near noon; the remainder of the day sunny, frequently accompanied with high wind.

The climate of maritime California is greatly modified by the structure of the country, and under this aspect may be considered in three divisions—the *southern*, below *Point Conception* and the *Santa Barbara* mountain, about latitude 35°; the *northern*, from *Cape Mendocino*, latitude 41°, to the *Oregon* boundary; and the *middle*, including the bay and basin of *San Francisco* and the coast between *Point Conception* and *Cape Mendocino*. Of these three divisions the rainy season is longest and heaviest in the north and lightest in the south. Vegetation is governed accordingly—coming with the

the olive trees remained abundant fruit, which was in good condition.

On a day of rain succeeded fine weather, again interrupted by disagreeable southeasterly winds, the remainder of the day being bright and pleasant—sun and clouds varying; but sometimes a little cold; showing on the mountain plains of San Gabriel.

On the 1st of February, at Los Angeles, some foggy and misty showers of rain at intervals. The weather then remained for some days uninterrupted and beautiful, the sky remarkably pure, the air clear and refreshing, and it was difficult to find a more delightful climate. In the processes of vegetation, the rapidity, and, by the result, the face of the country, with the great abundance of vegetation (with a luxuriant growth of *ium cicutarium*), so early for cattle and horses, and all

The orange trees were in flower and fruit in various places on the foot of the mountain, on the San Gabriel plain, fields of flowers were visible at the distance of several miles from Los Angeles. On the 1st of the bright weather there was a cold night. In the morning new snow appeared on the mountain, and there was frost in the morning; but these occasionally had no influence on

On the 27th of March there were heavy showers of rain, and the season in the southern part of April foggy and frequent, rising at midnight until 9 or 10 of the following month the beginning of May was regularly foggy until near the end of the day sunny, frequently with high wind.

The climate of maritime California is diversified by the structure of the coast. Under this aspect may be considered three divisions—the southern, between the latitude 35°; the northern, between the latitude 41°, to the north; and the middle, including the bay of San Francisco and the point of Conception and Cape Mendocino. These three divisions are the longest and heaviest in the north. Vegetation accordingly—coming with the

rains—decaying where they fall. Summer and winter, in our sense of the terms, are not applicable to this part of the country. It is not heat and cold, but wet and dry, which mark the seasons; and the winter months, instead of killing vegetation, revive it. The dry season makes a period of consecutive drought, the only winter in the vegetation of this country, which can hardly be said at any time to cease. In forests, where the soil is sheltered; in low lands of streams and hilly country, where the ground remains moist, grass continues constantly green and flowers bloom in all the months of the year. In the southern half of the country the long summer drought has rendered irrigation necessary, and the experience of the missions, in their prosperous day, has shown that, in California, as elsewhere, the driest plains are made productive, and the heaviest crops produced by that mode of cultivation. With irrigation a succession of crops may be produced throughout the year. Salubrity and a regulated mildness characterize the climate; there being no prevailing diseases, and the extremes of heat during the summer being checked by sea breezes during the day, and by light airs from the Sierra Nevada during the night. The nights are generally cool and refreshing, as is the shade during the hottest day.

California, below the Sierra Nevada, is about the extent of Italy, geographically considered in all the extent of Italy from the Alps to the termination of the peninsula. It is of the same length, about the same breadth, consequently the same area (about one hundred thousand square miles), and presents much similarity of climate and productions. Like Italy, it lies north and south, and presents some differences of climate and productions, the effect of difference of latitude, proximity of high mountains, and configuration of the coast. Like Italy, it is a country of mountains and valleys: different from it in its internal structure, it is formed for unity; its large rivers being concentric, and its large valleys appurtenant to the great central bay of San Francisco, within the area of whose waters the dominating power must be found.

Geographically, the position of this California is one of the best in the world; lying on the coast of the Pacific, fronting Asia, on the line of an American road to Asia, and possessed of advantages to give full effect to its grand geographical position.

All which is respectfully submitted:

J. CHARLES FREMONT.

WASHINGTON, June, 1848.

T
a
fi
th
R
fi
l
N
c
e
s
h
v
C
P
t

r
d
v
r
s
7
e
t
f
s
l
s
c
t
v
r
t
l
l

A REPORT
ON
AN EXPLORATION OF THE COUNTRY
LYING BETWEEN THE
MISSOURI RIVER AND THE ROCKY MOUNTAINS,
ON THE LINE OF
THE KANSAS AND GREAT PLATTE RIVERS.

WASHINGTON, March 1, 1843.
To Colonel J. J. ABERT,

Chief of the Corps of Top. Eng:

SIR: Agreeably to your orders to explore and report upon the country between the frontiers of Missouri and the South Pass in the Rocky mountains, and on the line of the Kansas and Great Platte rivers, I set out from Washington city on the 2d day of May, 1842, and arrived at St. Louis, by way of New York, the 22d of May, where the necessary preparations were completed, and the expedition commenced. I proceeded in a steamboat to Chouteau's landing, about four hundred miles by water from St. Louis, and near the mouth of the Kansas river, whence we proceeded twelve miles to Mr. Cyprian Chouteau's trading house, where we completed our final arrangements for the expedition.

Bad weather, which interfered with astronomical observations, delayed us several days in the early part of June at this post, which is on the right bank of the Kansas river, about ten miles above the mouth, and six beyond the western boundary of Missouri. The sky cleared off at length, and we were enabled to determine our position in longitude $94^{\circ} 25' 46''$, and latitude $39^{\circ} 5' 57''$. The elevation above the sea is about 700 feet. Our camp, in the meantime, presented an animated and bustling scene. All were busily occupied in completing the necessary arrangements for our campaign in the wilderness, and profiting by this short delay on the verge of civilisation, to provide ourselves with all the little essentials to comfort in the nomadic life we were to lead for the ensuing summer months. Gradually, however, everything—the *matériel* of the camp, men, horses, and even mules—settled into its place, and by the 10th we were ready to de-

part; but, before we mount our horses, I will give a short description of the party with which I performed this service.

I had collected in the neighborhood of St. Louis twenty-one men, principally Creole and Canadian *voyageurs*, who had become familiar with prairie life in the service of the fur companies in the Indian country. Mr. Charles Preuss, a native of Germany, was my assistant in the topographical part of the survey. L. Maxwell, of Kaakaskia, had been engaged as hunter, and Christopher Carson (more familiarly known, for his exploits in the mountains, as Kit Carson) was our guide. The persons engaged in St. Louis were:

Clément Lambert, J. B. L'Esperance, J. B. Lefèvre, Benjamin Potra, Louis Gouin, J. B. Dumés, Basil Lajeunesse, François Tessier, Benjamin Cadotte, Joseph Clément, Daniel Simonds, Leonard Benoit, Michel Morly, Baptiste Bernier, Honoré Ayot, François Latulippe, François Badeau, Louis Ménard, Joseph Ruelle, Moise Chardonnais, Auguste Janisse, Raphael Proue.

In addition to these, Henry Brant, son of Col. J. B. Brant, of St. Louis, a young man of nineteen years of age, and Randolph, a lively boy of twelve, son of the Hon. Thomas H. Benton, accompanied me, for the development of mind and body which such an expedition would give. We were all well armed and mounted, with the exception of eight men, who conducted as many carts, in which were packed our stores, with the baggage and instruments, and which were each drawn by two mules. A few loose horses, and four oxen, which had been added to our stock of provisions, completed the train. We set out on the morning of the 10th, which happened to be Friday—a circumstance which our men did not fail to remember and recall during

the hardships and vexations of the ensuing journey. Mr. Cyprian Chouteau, to whose kindness, during our stay at his house, we were much indebted, accompanied us several miles on our way, until we met an Indian, whom he had engaged to conduct us on the first thirty or forty miles, where he was to consign us to the ocean of prairie, which, we were told, stretched without interruption almost to the base of the Rocky mountains.

From the belt of wood which borders the Kansas, in which we had passed several good-looking Indian farms, we suddenly emerged on the prairies, which received us at the outset with some of their striking characteristics; for here and there rode an Indian, and but a few miles distant heavy clouds of smoke were rolling before the fire. In about ten miles we reached the Santa Fé road, along which we continued for a short time, and encamped early on a small stream; having travelled about eleven miles. During our journey, it was the customary practice to encamp an hour or two before sunset, when the carts were disposed so as to form a sort of barricade around a circle some eighty yards in diameter. The tents were pitched, and the horses hobbled and turned loose to graze; and but a few minutes elapsed before the cooks of the messes, of which there were four, were busily engaged in preparing the evening meal. At nightfall, the horses, mules, and oxen, were driven in and picketed—that is, secured by a halter, of which one end was tied to a small steel-shod picket, and driven into the ground; the halter being twenty or thirty feet long, which enabled them to obtain a little food during the night. When we had reached a part of the country where such a precaution became necessary, the carts being regularly arranged for defending the camp, guard was mounted at eight o'clock, consisting of three men, who were relieved every two hours; the morning watch being horse guard for the day. At daybreak, the camp was roused, the animals turned loose to graze, and breakfast generally over between six and seven o'clock, when we resumed our march, making regularly a halt at noon for one or two hours. Such was usually the order of the day, except when accident of country forced a variation; which, however, happened but rarely. We travelled the next day along the Santa Fé road, which we left in the afternoon, and encamped late in the evening on a small creek, called by the Indians Mishmagwi. Just as we arrived at camp, one of the horses set off at full speed on his return, and was followed by others. Several men were sent in pursuit, and returned with the fugitives about midnight, with the exception of one man, who did not make his appearance until morning. He had lost his way in the dark-

ness of the night, and slept on the prairie. Shortly after midnight it began to rain heavily, and, as our tents were of light and thin cloth, they offered but little obstruction to rain; we were all well soaked, and glad when morning came. We had a rainy march on the 12th, but the weather grew fine as the day advanced. We encamped in a remarkably beautiful situation on the Kansas bluffs, which commanded a fine view of the river valley, here from three to four miles wide. The central portion was occupied by a broad belt of heavy timber, and nearer the hills the prairies were of the richest verdure. One of the oxen was killed here for food.

We reached the ford of the Kansas late in the afternoon of the 14th, where the river was two hundred and thirty yards wide, and commenced immediately preparations for crossing. I had expected to find the river fordable; but it had been swollen by the late rains, and was sweeping by with an angry current, yellow and turbid as the Missouri. Up to this point, the road we had travelled was a remarkably fine one, well beaten, and level—the usual road of a prairie country. By our route, the ford was one hundred miles from the mouth of the Kansas river. Several mounted men led the way into the stream, to swim across. The animals were driven in after them, and in a few minutes all had reached the opposite bank in safety, with the exception of the oxen, which swam some distance down the river, and, returning to the right bank, were not got over until the next morning. In the meantime, the carts had been unloaded and dismantled, and an India-rubber boat, which I had brought with me for the survey of the Platte river, placed in the water. The boat was twenty feet long and five broad, and on it were placed the body and wheels of a cart, with the load belonging to it, and three men with paddles.

The velocity of the current, and the inconvenient freight, rendering it difficult to be managed, Basil Lajeunesse, one of our best swimmers, took in his teeth a line attached to the boat, and swam ahead in order to reach a footing as soon as possible, and assist in drawing her over. In this manner, six passages had been successfully made, and as many carts with their contents, and a greater portion of the party, deposited on the left bank; but night was drawing near, and, in our anxiety to have all over before the darkness closed in, I put upon the boat the remaining two carts, with their accompanying load. The man at the helm was timid on water, and, in his alarm, capsized the boat. Carts, barrels, boxes, and bales, were in a moment floating down the current; but all the men who were on the shore jumped into the water, without stopping to

and slept on the prairie. When it began to rain heavily, the tents were of light and thin material, but little obstruction to the wind, and all soaked, and glad when it cleared away. We had a rainy march on the 14th, and the weather grew fine as we encamped in a remarkable position on the Kansas bluffs, where we had a fine view of the river, which was three to four miles wide. The prairie was occupied by a broad river, and nearer the hills the soil was the richest verdure. One of the men died here for food.

At the ford of the Kansas late in the afternoon of the 14th, where the river was thirty yards wide, and immediately preparations for crossing were expected to find the river swollen by the late rains. We were helped by with an angry current as turbid as the Missouri. The road we had travelled was a fine one, well beaten, and led to a prairie country. The ford was one hundred yards across the Kansas river, and then led the way into the prairie. The animals were driven across, and in a few minutes were on the opposite bank in safety. One of the oxen, which swam in the river, and returning to the shore were not got over until the evening.

In the meantime, the boats were loaded and dismantled, and the men, which I had brought with me, of the Platte river, were put on the boat. The boat was twenty feet long, and on it were placed the wheels of a cart, with the axle to it, and three men with

the current, and the inconvenience of it difficult to be overcome, one of our best men, with his teeth a line attached to the boat ahead in order to pull it soon as possible, and as the boat came over. In this manner, the boat was successfully made, and with their contents, and the party, deposited on the prairie at night was drawing near, and we had to have all over before us. I put upon the boat the men, with their accoutrements, and a man at the helm was appointed, in his alarm, capsized the barrels, boxes, and bales, floating down the current; and who were on the shore, and who were on the shore, without stopping to

think if they could swim, and almost everything—even heavy articles, such as guns and loads—was recovered.

Two of the men, who could not swim, came nearly being drowned, and all the sugar belonging to one of the men was wasted its sweetness on the muddy waters; but our heaviest loss was a bag of coffee, which contained nearly all our provision. It was a loss which none but a traveller in a strange and inhospitable country can appreciate; and often afterward, when excessive toil and long marching had overcome us with fatigue and weariness, we remembered and mourned over our loss in the Kansas. Carson and Maxwell had been much in the water yesterday, and both, in consequence, were taken ill. The former continuing so, I remained in camp. A number of Kansas Indians visited us to-day. Going up to one of the groups who were scattered among the trees, I found one sitting on the ground, among some of the men, gravely and fluently speaking French, with as much facility and as little embarrassment as any of my own party, who were nearly all of French origin.

On all sides was heard the strange language of his own people, wild, and harmonizing well with their appearance. I listened to him for some time with feelings of strange curiosity and interest. He was now apparently thirty-five years of age; and, on inquiry, I learned that he had been at St. Louis when a boy, and there had learned the French language. From one of the Indian women I obtained a fine cow and calf in exchange for a yoke of oxen. Several of them brought us vegetables, pumpkins, onions, beans, and lettuce. One of them brought butter, and from a half-breed near the river I had the good fortune to obtain some twenty or thirty pounds of coffee. The dense timber in which we had encamped interfered with astronomical observations, and our wet and damaged stores required exposure to the sun. Accordingly, the tents were struck early the next morning, and leaving camp at six o'clock, we moved about seven miles up the river, to a handsome, open prairie, some twenty feet above the water, where the fine grass afforded a luxurious repast to our horses.

During the day we occupied ourselves in making astronomical observations, in order to lay down the country to this place; it being our custom to keep up our map regularly in the field, which we found attended with many advantages. The men were kept busy in drying the provisions, painting the cart covers, and otherwise completing our equipage, until the afternoon, when powder was distributed to them, and they spent some hours in firing at a mark. We were now fairly in the Indian country, and it be-

gan to be time to prepare for the chances of the wilderness.

Friday, June 17.—The weather yesterday had not permitted us to make the observations I was desirous to obtain here, and I therefore did not move to-day. The people continued their target firing. In the steep bank of the river here, were nests of innumerable swallows, into one of which a large prairie snake had got about half his body, and was occupied in eating the young birds. The old ones were flying about in great distress, darting at him, and vainly endeavoring to drive him off. A shot wounded him, and, being killed, he was cut open, and eighteen young swallows were found in his body. A sudden storm, that burst upon us in the afternoon, cleared away in a brilliant sunset, followed by a clear night, which enabled us to determine our position in longitude 95° 38' 05", and in latitude 39° 06' 40".

A party of emigrants to the Columbia river, under the charge of Dr. White, an agent of the Government in Oregon Territory, were about three weeks in advance of us. They consisted of men, women, and children. There were sixty-four men, and sixteen or seventeen families. They had a considerable number of cattle, and were transporting their household furniture in large heavy wagons. I understood that there had been much sickness among them, and that they had lost several children. One of the party who had lost his child, and whose wife was very ill, had left them about one hundred miles hence on the prairies; and as a hunter, who had accompanied them, visited our camp this evening, we availed ourselves of his return to the States to write to our friends.

The morning of the 18th was very unpleasant. A fine rain was falling, with cold wind from the north, and mists made the river hills look dark and gloomy. We left our camp at seven, journeying along the foot of the hills which border the Kansas valley, generally about three miles wide, and extremely rich. We halted for dinner, after a march of about thirteen miles, on the banks of one of the many little tributaries to the Kansas, which look like trenches in the prairie, and are usually well timbered. After crossing this stream, I rode off some miles to the left, attracted by the appearance of a cluster of butts near the mouth of the Vermillion. It was a large but deserted Kansas village, scattered in an open wood, along the margin of the stream, on a spot chosen with the customary Indian fondness for beauty of scenery. The Pawnees had attacked it in the early spring. Some of the houses were burnt, and others blackened with smoke, and weeds were already getting possession of the cleared places. Riding up

the Vermillion river, I reached the ford in time to meet the carts, and, crossing, encamped on its western side. The weather continued cool, the thermometer being this evening as low as 49°; but the night was sufficiently clear for astronomical observations, which placed us in longitude 96° 04' 07", and latitude 39° 15' 19". At sunset, the barometer was at 28.845, thermometer 54°.

We breakfasted the next morning at half past five, and left our encampment early. The morning was cool, the thermometer being at 45°. Quitting the river bottom, the road ran along the uplands, over a rolling country, generally in view of the Kansas from eight to twelve miles distant. Many large boulders, of a very compact sandstone, of various shades of red, some of them four or five tons in weight, were scattered along the hills; and many beautiful plants in flower, among which the *amorpha canescens* was a characteristic, enlivened the green of the prairie. At the heads of the ravines I remarked, occasionally, thickets of *salix longifolia*, the most common willow of the country. We travelled nineteen miles, and pitched our tents at evening on the head waters of a small creek, now nearly dry, but having in its bed several fine springs. The barometer indicated a considerable rise in the country—here about fourteen hundred feet above the sea—and the increased elevation appeared already to have some slight influence upon the vegetation. The night was cold, with a heavy dew; the thermometer at 10 p. m. standing at 46°, barometer 28.483. Our position was in longitude 96° 14' 49", and latitude 39° 30' 40".

The morning of the 20th was fine, with a southerly breeze and a bright sky; and at seven o'clock we were on the march. The country to-day was rather more broken, rising still, and covered everywhere with fragments of siliceous limestone, particularly on the summits, where they were small, and thickly strewn as pebbles on the shore of the sea. In these exposed situations grew but few plants; though, whenever the soil was good and protected from the winds, in the creek bottoms and ravines, and on the slopes, they flourished abundantly; among them the *amorpha*, still retaining its characteristic place. We crossed at 10 a. m., the Big Vermillion, which has a rich bottom of about one mile in breadth, one-third of which is occupied by timber. Making our usual halt at noon, after a day's march of twenty-four miles, we reached the Big Blue, and encamped on the uplands of the western side, near a small creek, where was a fine large spring of very cold water. This is a clear and handsome stream, about one hundred and twenty feet wide, running, with a

rapid current, through a well-timbered valley. To-day antelope were seen running over the hills, and at evening Carson brought us a fine deer. Longitude of the camp 96° 32' 35", latitude 39° 45' 08". Thermometer at sunset 75°. A pleasant southerly breeze and fine morning had given place to a gale, with indications of bad weather; when, after a march of ten miles, we halted to noon on a small creek, where the water stood in deep pools. In the bank of the creek limestone made its appearance in a stratum about one foot thick. In the afternoon, the people seemed to suffer for want of water. The road led along a high dry ridge; dark lines of timber indicated the heads of streams in the plains below; but there was no water near, and the day was very oppressive, with a hot wind, and the thermometer at 90°. Along our route the *amorpha* has been in very abundant but variable bloom—in some places bending beneath the weight of purple clusters; in others without a flower. It seems to love best the sunny slopes, with a dark soil and southern exposure. Everywhere the rose is met with, and reminds us of cultivated gardens and civilisation. It is scattered over the prairies in small bouquets, and, when glittering in the dews and waving in the pleasant breeze of the early morning, is the most beautiful of the prairie flowers. The *artemisia*, absinth, or prairie sage, as it is variously called, is increasing in size, and glittera like silver, as the southern breeze turns up its leaves to the sun. All these plants have their insect inhabitants, variously colored; taking generally the hue of the flower on which they live. The *artemisia* has its small fly accompanying it through every change of elevation and latitude; and wherever I have seen the *asclepias tuberosa*, I have always remarked, too, on the flower a large butterfly, so nearly resembling it in color as to be distinguishable at a little distance only by the motion of its wings. Travelling on, the fresh traces of the Oregon emigrants relieve a little the loneliness of the road; and to-night, after a march of twenty-two miles, we halted on a small creek, which had been one of their encampments. As we advance westward, the soil appears to be getting more sandy, and the surface rock, an erratic deposit of sand and gravel, rests here on a bed of coarse yellow and grey and very friable sandstone. Evening closed over with rain and its usual attendant hordes of mosquitoes, with which we were annoyed for the first time.

June 22.—We enjoyed at breakfast this morning a luxury, very unusual in this country, in a cup of excellent coffee, with cream from our cow. Being milked at night, cream was thus had in the morning.

ugh a well-timbered val-
lope were seen running
t evening Carson brought
ngitude of the camp 96°
9° 45' 08." Thermome-
A pleasant southerly
rning had given place to
ications of bad weather;
h of ten miles, we halted
t creek, where the water
ols. In the bank of the
ade its appearance in a
foot thick. In the after-
eemed to suffer for want
ad led along a high dry
of timber indicated the
in the plains below; but
r near, and the day was
with a hot wind, and the
°. Along our route the
in very abundant but va-
some places bending be-
of purple clusters; in oth-
er. It seems to love best
with a dark soil and south-
erywhere the rose is met
us of cultivated garden
It is scattered over the
nquets, and, when glitter-
d waving in the pleasant
ly morning, is the most
rairie flowers. The *arte-*
prairie sage, as it is va-
creasing in size, and glit-
the southern breeze turns
e sun. All these plants
habitants, variously color-
lly the hue of the flower
e. The *artemisia* has its
anying it through every
n and latitude; and wher-
the *asclepias tuberosa*, I
arked, too, on the flower a
nearly resembling it in
inguishable at a little dis-
motion of its wings. Tra-
sh traces of the Oregon
a little the loneliness of
-night, after a march of
, we halted on a small
been one of their encamp-
dvance westward, the soil
ting more sandy, and the
rratic deposits of sand and
on a bed of coarse yellow
friable sandstone. Even-
with rain and its usual at-
f mosquitoes, with which
for the first time.
enjoyed at breakfast this
y, very unusual in this
of excellent coffee, with
cow. Being milked at
thus had in the morning.

Our mid-day halt was at Wyeth's creek, in the bed of which were numerous boulders of dark ferruginous sandstone, mingled with others of the red sandstone already mentioned. Here a pack of cards, lying loose on the grass, marked an encampment of our Oregon emigrants; and it was at the close of the day when we made our bivouac in the midst of some well-timbered ravines near the Little Blue, twenty-four miles from our camp of the preceding night. Crossing the next morning a number of handsome creeks, with clear water and sandy beds, we reached, at 10 a. m., a very beautiful wooded stream, about thirty-five feet wide, called Sandy creek, and sometimes, as the Ottos frequently winter there, the Otto fork. The country has become very sandy, and the plants less varied and abundant, with the exception of the *amorpha*, which rivals the grass in quantity, though not so forward as it has been found to the eastward.

At the Big Trees, where we had intended to noon, no water was to be found. The bed of the little creek was perfectly dry, and, on the adjacent sandy bottom, *cacti*, for the first time, made their appearance. We made here a short delay in search of water; and, after a hard day's march of twenty-eight miles, encamped, at 5 o'clock, on the Little Blue, where our arrival made a scene of the Arabian desert. As fast as they arrived, men and horses rushed into the stream, where they bathed and drank together in common enjoyment. We were now in the range of the Pawnees, who were accustomed to infest this part of the country, stealing horses from companies on their way to the mountains, and, when in sufficient force, openly attacking and plundering them, and subjecting them to various kinds of insult. For the first time, therefore, guard was mounted to-night. Our route the next morning lay up the valley, which, bordered by hills with graceful slopes, looked uncommonly green and beautiful. The stream was about fifty feet wide, and three or four deep, fringed by cotton wood and willow, with frequent groves of oak tenanted by flocks of turkeys. Game here, too, made its appearance in greater plenty. Elk were frequently seen on the hills, and now and then an antelope bounded across our path, or a deer broke from the groves. The road in the afternoon was over the upper prairies, several miles from the river, and we encamped at sunset on one of its small tributaries, where an abundance of *prêle* (*eguisetum*) afforded fine forage to our tired animals. We had travelled thirty-one miles. A heavy bank of black clouds in the west came on us in a storm between nine and ten, preceded by a violent wind. The rain fell in such torrents that it was difficult to breathe facing the wind, the thunder rolled

incessantly, and the whole sky was tremulous with lightning; now and then illuminated by a blinding flash, succeeded by pitchy darkness. Carson had the watch from ten to midnight, and to him had been assigned our young *compagnons de voyage*, Messrs. Brant and R. Ben on. This was their first night on guard, and such an introduction did not augur very auspiciously of the pleasures of the expedition. Many things conspired to render their situation uncomfortable; stories of desperate and bloody Indian fights were rife in the camp; our position was badly chosen, surrounded on all sides by timbered hollows, and occupying an area of several hundred feet, so that necessarily the guards were far apart; and now and then I could hear Randolph, as if relieved by the sound of a voice in the darkness, calling out to the sergeant of the guard, to direct his attention to some imaginary alarm; but they stood it out, and took their turn regularly afterward.

The next morning we had a specimen of the false alarms to which all parties in these wild regions are subject. Proceeding up the valley, objects were seen on the opposite hills, which disappeared before a glass could be brought to bear upon them. A man, who was a short distance in the rear, came spurting up in great haste, shouting Indians! Indians! He had been near enough to see and count them, according to his report, and had made out twenty-seven. I immediately halted; arms were examined and put in order; the usual preparations made; and Kit Carson, springing upon one of the hunting horses, crossed the river, and galloped off into the opposite prairies, to obtain some certain intelligence of their movements.

Mounted on a fine horse, without a saddle, and scouring bareheaded over the prairies, Kit was one of the finest pictures of a horseman I have ever seen. A short time enabled him to discover that the Indian war party of twenty-seven, consisted of six elk, who had been gazing curiously at our caravan as it passed by, and were now scampering off at full speed. This was our first alarm, and its excitement broke agreeably on the monotony of the day. At our noon halt, the men were exercised at a target; and in the evening we pitched our tents at a Pawnee encampment of last July. They had apparently killed buffalo here, as many bones were lying about, and the frames where the hides had been stretched were yet standing. The road of the day had kept the valley, which is sometimes rich and well timbered, though the country is generally sandy. Mingled with the usual plants, a thistle (*carduus leucographus*) had for the last day or two made its appearance and

along the river bottom, *tridescanta* (*virginica*) and milk plant (*asclepias syriaca**) in considerable quantities.

Our march to-day had been twenty-one miles, and the astronomical observations gave us a chrometric longitude of 98° 22' 12", and latitude 40° 26' 50". We were moving forward at seven in the morning, and in about five miles reached a fork of the Blue, where the road leaves that river, and crosses over to the Platte. No water was to be found on the dividing ridge, and the caasks were filled, and the animals here allowed a short repose. The road led across a high and level prairie ridge, where were but few plants, and those principally thistle (*carduus leucographus*), and a kind of dwarf artemisia. Antelope were seen frequently during the morning, which was very stormy. Squalls of rain, with thunder and lightning, were around us in every direction; and while we were enveloped in one of them, a flash, which seemed to scorch our eyes as it passed, struck in the prairie within a few hundred feet, sending up a column of dust.

Crossing on the way several Pawnee roads to the Arkansas, we reached, in about twenty-one miles from our halt on the Blue, what is called the coast of the Nebraska, or Platte river. This had seemed in the distance a range of high and broken hills; but on a nearer approach were found to be elevations of forty to sixty feet, into which the wind had worked the sand. They were covered with the usual fine grasses of the country, and bordered the eastern side of the ridge on a breadth of about two miles. Change of soil and country appeared here to have produced some change in the vegetation. *Cacti* were numerous, and all the plants of the region appeared to flourish among the warm hills. Among them the *amorpha*, in full bloom, was remarkable for its large and luxuriant purple clusters. From the foot of the coast, a distance of two miles across the level bottom brought us to our encampment on the shore of the river, about twenty miles below the head of Grand Island, which lay extended before us, covered with dense and heavy woods. From the mouth of the Kansas, according to our reckoning, we had travelled three hundred and twenty-eight miles; and the geological formation of the country we had passed over

* "This plant is very odoriferous, and in Canada alarms the traveller, especially when passing through woods in the evening. The French there eat the tender shoots in the spring, as we do asparagus. The natives make a sugar of the flowers, gathering them in the morning when they are covered with dew, and collect the cotton from their pods to fill their beds. On account of the alkaliness of this cotton, Parkinson calls the plant Virginian silk."—*Louden's Encyclopaedia of Plants*.

The Sioux Indians of the Upper Platte eat the young pods of this plant, boiling them with the meat of the buffalo.

consisted of lime and sandstone, covered by the same erratic deposit of sand and gravel which forms the surface rock of the prairies between the Missouri and Mississippi rivers. Except in some occasional limestone boulders, I had met with no fossils. The elevation of the Platte valley above the sea is here about two thousand feet. The astronomical observations of the night placed us in longitude 98° 45' 49", latitude 40° 41' 06".

June 27.—The animals were somewhat fatigued by their march of yesterday, and, after a short journey of eighteen miles along the river bottom, I encamped near the head of Grand Island, in longitude, by observation, 99° 05' 24", latitude 40° 39' 32". The soil here was light but rich, though in some places rather sandy; and, with the exception of a scattered fringe along the bank, the timber, consisting principally of poplar (*populus monilifera*), elm, and hackberry (*celtis crassifolia*), is confined almost entirely to the islands.

June 28.—We halted to noon at an open reach of the river, which occupies rather more than a fourth of the valley, here only about four miles broad. The camp had been disposed with the usual precaution, the horses grazing at a little distance, attended by the guard, and we were all sitting quietly at our dinner on the grass, when suddenly we heard the startling cry "*du monde!*" In an instant, every man's weapon was in his hand, the horses were driven in, hobbled and picketed, and horsemen were galloping at full speed in the direction of the new comers, screaming and yelling with the wildest excitement. "Get ready, my lads!" said the leader of the approaching party to his men, when our wild-looking horsemen were discovered bearing down upon them; "*nous allons attraper des coups de baguette.*" They proved to be a small party of fourteen, under the charge of a man named John Lee, and, with their baggage and provisions strapped to their backs, were making their way on foot to the frontier. A brief account of their fortunes will give some idea of navigation in the Nebraska. Sixty days since, they had left the mouth of Laramie's fork, some three hundred miles above, in barges laden with the furs of the American Fur Company. They started with the annual flood, and, drawing but nine inches water, hoped to make a speedy and prosperous voyage to St. Louis; but, after a lapse of forty days, found themselves only one hundred and thirty miles from their point of departure. They came down rapidly as far as Scott's bluffs, where their difficulties began. Sometimes they came upon places where the water was spread over a great extent, and here they toiled from morning until night, endeavoring

and sandstone, covered by a deposit of sand and gravel surface rock of the prairiesouri and Mississippi rivers. occasional limestone boulders with no fossils. The elevation valley above the sea is thousand feet. The astronomical observations of the night placed us 45° 49', latitude 40° 41'

The animals were somewhat scarce on the march of yesterday, and we encamped near the head of the valley, by observation, latitude 40° 39' 32". The soil is light but rich, though in places sandy; and, with the exception of a fringe along the bank, the vegetation principally of poplar, cedar, elm, and hackberry, is confined almost entirely

We halted to noon at an open prairie, which occupies rather the middle of the valley, here only a few miles broad. The camp had been chosen with the usual precaution, the distance, attended by us, and we were all sitting quietly on the grass, when suddenly a shout was heard, "du monde!" In the confusion, a man's weapon was in the hands of the men, who were driven in, hobbled and disarmed. The horsemen were galloping in the direction of the new camp, yelling with the wildest exultation, "ready, my lads!" said the approaching party to his men. The horsemen were dismounted upon them; "nous sommes coups de baguette." They were a small party of fourteen, under the command of a man named John Lee, and with arms and provisions strapped on their backs were making their way on. A brief account of their adventures some idea of navigation in the Sixty days since, they had descended the Laramie's fork, some three miles above, in barges laden with furs for the American Fur Company. With the annual flood, and with the six inches water, hoped to make a prosperous voyage to St. Louis in a lapse of forty days, found that it would require one hundred and thirty days to reach the point of departure. They had travelled as far as Scott's bluffs, and difficulties began. Sometimes in places where the water was very shallow, and here they were obliged to stop until night, endeavoring

to drag their boat through the sands, making only two or three miles in as many days. Sometimes they would enter an arm of the river, where there appeared a fine channel, and, after descending prosperously for eight or ten miles, would come suddenly upon dry sands, and be compelled to return, dragging their boat for days against the rapid current; and at others, they came upon places where the water lay in holes, and, getting out to float off their boat, would fall into water up to their necks, and the next moment tumble over against a sandbar. Discouraged, at length, and finding the Platte growing every day more shallow, they discharged the principal part of their cargoes one hundred and thirty miles below Fort Laramie, which they secured as well as possible, and, leaving a few men to guard them, attempted to continue their voyage, laden with some light furs and their personal baggage. After fifteen or twenty days more struggling in the sands, during which they made but one hundred and forty miles, they sunk their barges, made a cache of their remaining furs and property, in trees on the bank, and, packing on his back what each man could carry, had commenced, the day before we encountered them, their journey on foot to St. Louis.

We laughed then at their forlorn and vagabond appearance, and, in our turn, a month or two afterwards, furnished the same occasion for merriment to others. Even their stock of tobacco, that *sine qua non* of a voyageur, without which the night fire is gloomy, was entirely exhausted. However, we shortened their homeward journey by a small supply from our own provision. They gave us the welcome intelligence that the buffalo were abundant some two days' march in advance, and made us a present of some choice pieces, which were a very acceptable change from our salt pork. In the interchange of news, and the renewal of old acquaintanceships, we found wherewithal to fill a busy hour; then we mounted our horses, and they shouldered their packs, and we shook hands and parted. Among them, I had found an old companion on the northern prairie, a hardened and hardly served veteran of the mountains, who had been as much hacked and scarred as an old *moustache* of Napoleon's "old guard." He flourished in the sobriquet of La Tulipe, and his real name I never knew. Finding that he was going to the States only because his company was bound in that direction, and that he was rather more willing to return with me, I took him again into my service. We travelled this day but seventeen miles.

At our evening camp, about sunset, three figures were discovered approaching, which our glasses made out to be Indians. They proved to be Cheyennes—two men, and a

boy of thirteen. About a month since, they had left their people on the south fork of the river, some three hundred miles to the westward, and a party of only four in number had been to the Pawnee villages on a horse-stealing excursion, from which they were returning unsuccessful. They were miserably mounted on wild horses from the Arkansas plains, and had no other weapons than bows and long spears; and had they been discovered by the Pawnees, could not, by any possibility, have escaped. They were mortified by their ill success, and said the Pawnees were cowards, who shut up their horses in their lodges at night. I invited them to supper with me, and Randolph and the young Cheyenne, who had been eyeing each other suspiciously and curiously, soon became intimate friends. After supper, we sat down on the grass, and I placed a sheet of paper between us, on which they traced rudely, but with a certain degree of relative truth, the watercourses of the country which lay between us and their villages, and of which I desired to have some information. Their companions, they told us, had taken a nearer route over the hills; but they had mounted one of the summits to spy out the country, whence they had caught a glimpse of our party, and, confident of good treatment at the hands of the whites, hastened to join company. Latitude of the camp 40° 39' 51".

We made the next morning sixteen miles. I remarked that the ground was covered in many places with an efflorescence of salt, and the plants were not numerous. In the bottoms were frequently seen *tridacantia*, and on the dry benches were *carduus*, *cactus*, and *amorpha*. A high wind during the morning had increased to a violent gale from the northwest, which made our afternoon ride cold and unpleasant. We had the welcome sight of two buffaloes on one of the large islands, and encamped at a clump of timber about seven miles from our noon halt, after a day's march of twenty-two miles.

The air was keen the next morning at sunrise, the thermometer standing at 44°, and it was sufficiently cold to make overcoats very comfortable. A few miles brought us into the midst of the buffalo, swarming in immense numbers over the plains, where they had left scarcely a blade of grass standing. Mr. Preuss, who was sketching at a little distance in the rear, had at first noted them as large groves of timber. In the sight of such a mass of life, the traveller feels a strange emotion of grandeur. We had heard from a distance a dull and confused murmuring, and, when we came in view of their dark masses, there was not one among us who did not feel his heart beat quicker. It was the early part of the day,

when the herds are feeding; and everywhere they were in motion. Here and there a huge old bull was rolling in the grass, and clouds of dust rose in the air from various parts of the bands, each the scene of some obstinate fight. Indians and buffalo make the poetry and life of the prairie, and our camp was full of their exhilaration. In place of the quiet monotony of the march, relieved only by the cracking of the whip, and an "avance donc! enfant de garce!" shouts and songs resounded from every part of the line, and our evening camp was always the commencement of a feast, which terminated early with our departure on the following morning. At any time of the night might be seen pieces of the most delicate and choicest meat, roasting *en appolas*, on sticks around the fire, and the guard were never without company. With pleasant weather and no enemy to fear, an abundance of the most excellent meat, and no scarcity of bread or tobacco, they were enjoying the oasis of a voyager's life. Three cows were killed to-day. Kit Carson had shot one, and was continuing the chase in the midst of another herd, when his horse fell headlong, but sprang up and joined the flying band. Though considerably hurt, he had the good fortune to break no bones; and Maxwell, who was mounted on a fleet hunter, captured the runaway after a hard chase. He was on the point of shooting him, to avoid the loss of his bridle, (a handsomely mounted Spanish one), when he found that his horse was able to come up with him. Animals are frequently lost in this way; and it is necessary to keep close watch over them, in the vicinity of the buffalo, in the midst of which they scour off to the plains, and are rarely retaken. One of our mules took a sudden freak into his head, and joined a neighboring band to-day. As we were not in a condition to lose horses, I sent several men in pursuit, and remained in camp, in the hope of recovering him; but lost the afternoon to no purpose, as we did not see him again. Astronomical observations placed us in longitude $100^{\circ} 05' 47''$, latitude $40^{\circ} 49' 55''$.

July 1.—Along our road to-day the prairie bottom was more elevated and dry, and the hills which border the right side of the river higher, and more broken and picturesque in the outline. The country, too, was better timbered. As we were riding quietly along the bank, a grand herd of buffalo, some seven or eight hundred in number, came crowding up from the river, where they had been to drink, and commenced crossing the plain slowly, eating as they went. The wind was favorable; the coolness of the morning invited to exercise; the ground was apparently good, and the distance across the prairie (two

or three miles) gave us a fine opportunity to charge them before they could get among the river hills. It was too fine a prospect for a chase to be lost; and, halting for a few moments, the hunters were brought up and saddled, and Kit Carson, Maxwell, and I, started together. They were now somewhat less than half a mile distant, and we rode easily along until within about three hundred yards, when a sudden agitation, a wavering in the band, and a galloping to and fro of some which were scattered along the skirts, gave us the intimation that we were discovered. We started together at a hand gallop, riding steadily abreast of each other, and here the interest of the chase became so engrossingly intense, that we were sensible to nothing else. We were now closing upon them rapidly, and the front of the mass was already in rapid motion for the hills, and in a few seconds the movement had communicated itself to the whole herd.

A crowd of bulls, as usual, brought up the rear, and every now and then some of them faced about, and then dashed on after the band a short distance, and turned and looked again, as if more than half inclined to stand and fight. In a few moments, however, during which we had been quickening our pace, the rout was universal, and we were going over the ground like a hurricane. When at about thirty yards, we gave the usual shout (the hunter's *pas de charge*), and broke into the herd. We entered on the side, the mass giving way in every direction in their heedless course. Many of the bulls, less active and less fleet than the cows, paying no attention to the ground, and occupied solely with the hunter, were precipitated to the earth with great force, rolling over and over with the violence of the shock, and hardly distinguishable in the dust. We separated on entering, each singling out his game.

My horse was a trained hunter, famous in the west under the name of Proveau, and, with his eyes flashing, and the foam flying from his mouth, sprang on after the cow like a tiger. In a few moments he brought me alongside of her, and rising in the stirrups, I fired at the distance of a yard, the ball entering at the termination of the long hair, and passing near the heart. She fell headlong to the report of the gun, and, checking my horse, I looked around for my companions. At a little distance, Kit was on the ground, engaged in tying his horse to the horns of a cow which he was preparing to cut up. Among the scattered bands, at some distance below, I caught a glimpse of Maxwell; and while I was looking, a light wreath of white smoke curled away from his gun, from which I was too far to hear the report. Nearer, and between me and the hills, towards which they were directing their course, was the

body
rein,
of d
my
me.
and
with
more
rush
could
most
the
horn
every
the o
us as
far b
her n
a tre
than
band
place
into
Age,
or fou
occup
miles
one c
the lo
along
march
night
end o
arm
eight
feet i
a ma
His p
pany
leaving
Thee
the h
was t
ally.
as us
some
grou
volv
the b
durin
In th
dista
our c
Ju
Our
inere
of co
dred
pine,
of cl
cross
lows,
(accr
in a

us a fine opportunity to they could get among the too fine a prospect for a and, halting for a few mo- were brought up and sad- on, Maxwell, and I, started were now somewhat less istant, and we rode easily about three hundred yards, itation, a wavering in the pping to and fro of some red along the skirts, gave that we were discovered. er at a hand gallop, riding each other, and here the e became so engrossingly re sensible to nothing else. ing upon them rapidly, and mass was already in rapid s, and in a few seconds the m communicated itself to the

e, as usual, brought up the w and then some of them then dashed on after the ee, and turned and looked than half inclined to stand few moments, however, dull been quickening our pace, ersal, and we were going ke a hurricane. When at e, we gave the usual short de charge), and broke into entered on the side, the mass ery direction in their heed- ny of the bulls, less active n the cows, paying no at- ound, and occupied solely ere precipitated to the earth rolling over and over with he shock, and hardly dis- e dust. We separated on ngling out his game.

a trained hunter, famous in the name of Proveau, and, shing, and the foam flying prang on after the cow like w moments he brought me and rising in the stirrups, I ce of a yard, the ball enter- ation of the long hair, and heart. She fell headlong he gun, and, checking my ound for my companions. ce, Kit was on the ground, g his horse to the horns of was preparing to cut up. red bands, at some distance glimpse of Maxwell; and ng, a light wreath of white y from his gun, from which ear the report. Nearer, and the hills, towards which ting their course, was the

body of the herd, and, giving my horse the rein, we dashed after them. A thick cloud of dust hung upon their rear, which filled my mouth and eyes, and nearly smothered me. In the midst of this I could see nothing, and the buffalo were not distinguishable until within thirty feet. They crowded together more densely still as I came upon them, and rushed along in such a compact body, that I could not obtain an entrance—the horse almost leaping upon them. In a few moments the mass divided to the right and left, the horns clattering with a noise heard above everything else, and my horse darted into the opening. Five or six bulls charged on us as we dashed along the line, but were left far behind; and, singling out a cow, I gave her my fire, but struck too high. She gave a tremendous leap, and scoured on swifter than before. I reined up my horse, and the band swept on like a torrent, and left the place quiet and clear. Our chase had led us into dangerous ground. A prairie dog-village, so thickly settled that there were three or four holes in every twenty yards square, occupied the whole bottom for nearly two miles in length. Looking around, I saw only one of the hunters, nearly out of sight, and the long dark line of our caravan crawling along, three or four miles distant. After a march of twenty-four miles, we encamped at nightfall, one mile and a half above the lower end of Brady's Island. The breadth of this arm of the river was eight hundred and eighty yards, and the water nowhere two feet in depth. The island bears the name of a man killed on this spot some years ago. His party had encamped here, three in company, and one of the number went off to hunt, leaving Brady and his companion together. These two had frequently quarrelled, and on the hunter's return he found Brady dead, and was told that he had shot himself accidentally. He was buried here on the bank; but, as usual, the wolves had torn him out, and some human bones that were lying on the ground we supposed were his. Troops of wolves, that were hanging on the skirts of the buffalo, kept up an uninterrupted howling during the night, venturing almost into camp. In the morning, they were sitting at a short distance, barking, and impatiently waiting our departure, to fall upon the bones.

July 2.—The morning was cool and smoky. Our road led closer to the hills, which here increased in elevation, presenting an outline of conical peaks three hundred to five hundred feet high. Some timber, apparently pine, grows in the ravines, and streaks of clay or sand whiten their slopes. We crossed during the morning a number of hollows, timbered principally with box elder (*acer negundo*), poplar and elm. Brady's island is well wooded, and all the river along

which our road led to-day may, in general, be called tolerably well timbered. We passed near an encampment of the Oregon emigrants, where they appeared to have reposed several days. A variety of household articles were scattered about, and they had probably disburdened themselves here of many things not absolutely necessary. I had left the usual road before the mid-day halt, and in the afternoon, having sent several men in advance to reconnoitre, marched directly for the mouth of the South fork. On our arrival, the horsemen were sent in and scattered about the river to search the best fording places, and the carts followed immediately. The stream is here divided by an island into two channels. The southern is four hundred and fifty feet wide, having eighteen or twenty inches water in the deepest places. With the exception of a few dry bars, the bed of the river is generally quicksands, in which the carts began to sink rapidly so soon as the mules halted, so that it was necessary to keep them constantly in motion.

The northern channel, two thousand two hundred and fifty feet wide, was somewhat deeper, having frequently three feet water in the numerous small channels, with a bed of coarse gravel. The whole breadth of the Nebraska, immediately below the junction, is five thousand three hundred and fifty feet. All our equipage had reached the left bank safely at 6 o'clock, having to-day made twenty miles. We encamped at the point of land immediately at the junction of the North and South forks. Between the streams is a low rich prairie, extending from their confluence eighteen miles westwardly to the bordering hills, where it is five and a half miles wide. It is covered with a luxuriant growth of grass, and along the banks is a slight and scattered fringe of cottonwood and willow. In the buffalo trails and wallows, I remarked saline efflorescences, to which a rapid evaporation in the great heat of the sun probably contributes, as the soil is entirely unprotected by timber. In the vicinity of these places there was a bluish grass, which the cattle refuse to eat, called by the voyageurs "*herbs salées*" (salt grass). The latitude of the junction is 41° 04' 47", and longitude, by chronometer and lunar distances, 100° 49' 43". The elevation above the sea is about two thousand seven hundred feet. The hunters came in with a fat cow; and, as we had labored hard, we enjoyed well a supper of roasted ribs and *boudins*, the *chef-d'œuvre* of a prairie cook. Mosquitoes thronged about us this evening; but, by 10 o'clock, when the thermometer had fallen to 47°, they had all disappeared.

July 3.—As this was to be a point in our homeward journey, I made a *cache* (a term used in all this country for what is hidden in the ground) of a barrel of pork. It was im-

possible to conceal such a proceeding from the sharp eyes of our Cheyenne companions, and I therefore told them to go and see what it was they were burying. They would otherwise have not failed to return and destroy our cache in expectation of some rich booty; but pork they dislike, and never eat. We left our camp at 9, continuing up the South fork, the prairie bottom affording us a fair road; but in the long grass we roused myriads of mosquitoes and flies, from which our horses suffered severely. The day was smoky, with a pleasant breeze from the south, and the plains on the opposite side were covered with buffalo. Having travelled twenty-five miles, we encamped at 6 in the evening; and the men were sent across the river for wood, as there is none here on the left bank. Our fires were partially made of the *bois de rache*, the dry excrement of the buffalo, which, like that of the camel in the Arabian deserts, furnishes to the traveller a very good substitute for wood, burning like turf. Wolves in great numbers surrounded us during the night, crossing and recrossing from the opposite herds to our camp, and howling and trotting about in the river until morning.

July 4.—The morning was very smoky, the sun shining dimly and red, as in a thick fog. The camp was roused with a salute at daybreak, and from our scanty store a portion of what our Indian friends called the "red fire water" served out to the men. While we were at breakfast, a buffalo calf broke through the camp, followed by a couple of wolves. In its fright, it had probably mistaken us for a band of buffalo. The wolves were obliged to make a circuit around the camp, so that the calf got a little the start, and strained every nerve to reach a large herd at the foot of the hills, about two miles distant; but first one, and then another, and another wolf joined in the chase, until his pursuers amounted to twenty or thirty, and they ran him down before he could reach his friends. There were a few bulls near the place, and one of them attacked the wolves, and tried to rescue him; but was driven off immediately, and the little animal fell an easy prey, half devoured before he was dead. We watched the chase with the interest always felt for the weak; and had there been a saddled horse at hand, he would have fared better. Leaving camp, our road soon approached the hills, in which strata of a marl like that of the Chimney rock, hereafter described, make their appearance. It is probably of this rock that the hills on the right bank of the Platte, a little below the junction, are composed, and which are worked by the winds and rains into sharp peaks and cones, giving them, in contrast to the surrounding level region, something of a picturesque ap-

pearance. We crossed this morning numerous beds of the small creeks which, in the time of rains and melting snow, pour down from the ridge, bringing down with them always great quantities of sand and gravel, which have gradually raised their beds four to ten feet above the level of the prairie, which they cross, making each one of them a miniature Po. Raised in this way above the surrounding prairie, without any bank, the long yellow and winding line of their beds resembles a causeway from the hills to the river. Many spots on the prairie are yellow with sunflower (*helianthus*).

As we were riding slowly along this afternoon, clouds of dust in the ravines, among the hills to the right, suddenly attracted our attention, and in a few minutes a column of buffalo came galloping down, making directly to the river. By the time the leading herds had reached the water, the prairie was darkened with the dense masses. Immediately before us, when the bands first came down into the valley, stretched an unbroken line, the head of which was lost among the river hills on the opposite side; and still they poured down from the ridge on our right. From hill to hill, the prairie bottom was certainly not less than two miles wide; and, allowing the animals to be ten feet apart, and only ten in a line, there were already eleven thousand in view. Some idea may thus be formed of their number when they had occupied the whole plain. In a short time they surrounded us on every side; extending for several miles in the rear, and forward as far as the eye could reach; leaving around us, as we advanced, an open space of only two or three hundred yards. This movement of the buffalo indicated to us the presence of Indians on the north fork.

I halted earlier than usual, about forty miles from the junction, and all hands were soon busily engaged in preparing a feast to celebrate the day. The kindness of our friends at St. Louis had provided us with a large supply of excellent preserves and rich fruit cake; and when these were added to a macaroni soup, and variously prepared dishes of the choicest buffalo meat, crowned with a cup of coffee, and enjoyed with prairie appetite, we felt, as we sat in barbaric luxury around our smoking supper on the grass, a greater sensation of enjoyment than the Roman epicure at his perfumed feast. But most of all it seemed to please our Indian friends, who, in the unrestrained enjoyment of the moment, demanded to know if our "medicine days came often." No restraint was exercised at the hospitable board, and, to the great delight of his elders, our young Indian lad made himself extremely drunk.

sed this morning nume-
small creeks which, in the
melting snow, pour down
ging down with them al-
ies of sand and gravel,
ly raised their beds four
the level of the prairie,
aking each one of them
aised in this way above
airie, without any bank,
nd winding line of their
nseway from the hills to
spots on the prairie are
ver (*helianthus*).

ng slowly along this after-
st in the ravines, among
it, suddenly attracted our
few minutes column after
came galloping down,
the river. By the time
ad reached the water, the
ed with the dense masses.
us, when the bands first
e valley, stretched an un-
head of which was lost
illa on the opposite side;
d down from the ridge on
ill to hill, the prairie bot-
not less than two miles
ng the animals to be ten
ten in a line, there were
ousand in view. Some
formed of their number
occupied the whole plain.
y surrounded us on every
several miles in the rear,
as the eye could reach;
as we advanced, an open
or three hundred yards.
the buffalo indicated to
of Indians on the north

than usual, about forty
ction, and all hands were
d in preparing a feast to

The kindness of our
s had provided us with a
cellent preserves and rich
en these were added to a
d variously prepared dish-
t buffalo meat, crowned
e, and enjoyed with pral-
it, as we sat in barbaric
smoking supper on the
sation of enjoyment than
e at his perfumed feast.
seemed to please our In-
in the unrestrained enjoy-
ent, demanded to know if
ys came often." No re-
ed at the hospitable board,
delight of his elders, our
made himself extremely

Our encampment was within a few miles
of the place where the road crosses to the
north fork, and various reasons led me to di-
vide my party at this point. The north fork
was the principal object of my survey; but
I was desirous to ascend the south branch,
with a view of obtaining some astronomical
positions, and determining the mouths of its
tributaries as far as St. Vrain's fort, estimat-
ed to be some two hundred miles further up
the river, and near to Long's peak. There
I hoped to obtain some mules, which I found
would be necessary to relieve my horses. In a
military point of view, I was desirous to form
some opinion of the country relative to the es-
tablishment of posts on a line connecting the
settlements with the south pass of the
Rocky mountains, by way of the Arkansas
and the south and Laramie forks of the
Platte. Crossing the country northwest-
wardly from St. Vrain's fort, to the Ameri-
can company's fort at the mouth of the La-
ramie, would give me some acquaintance
with the affluents which head in the moun-
tains between the two; I therefore deter-
mined to set out the next morning, accompa-
nied by Mr. Prouss and four men, Maxwell,
Bernier, Ayot, and Basil Lajeunesse. Our
Cheyennes, whose village lay up this river,
also decided to accompany us. The party I
left in charge of Clément Lambert, with or-
ders to cross to the north fork; and at some
convenient place, near to the *Coulée des*
Frènes, make a *cache* of everything not ab-
solutely necessary to the further progress
of our expedition. From this point, using
the most guarded precaution in his march
through the country, he was to proceed to
the American company's fort at the mouth
of the Laramie's fork, and await my arrival,
which would be prior to the 16th, as on that
and the following night would occur some
occultations which I was desirous to obtain
at that place.

July 5.—Before breakfast all was ready.
We had one led horse in addition to those
we rode, and a packed mule, destined to car-
ry our instruments, provisions, and baggage;
the last two articles not being of very great
weight. The instruments consisted of a
sextant, artificial horizon, &c., a barometer,
spy glass, and compass. The chronometer I
of course kept on my person, I had ordered
the cook to put up for us some flour, coffee,
and sugar, and our rifles were to furnish the
rest. One blanket, in addition to his saddle
and saddle blanket, furnished the materials
for each man's bed, and every one was pro-
vided with a change of linen. All were
armed with rifles or double barrelled guns;
and, in addition to these, Maxwell and my-
self were furnished with excellent pistols.
Thus accoutred, we took a parting breakfast
with our friends, and set forth.

Our journey the first day afforded nothing
of any interest. We shot a buffalo toward
sunset, and having obtained some meat for
our evening meal, encamped where a little
timber afforded us the means of making a
fire. Having disposed our meat on roasting
sticks, we proceeded to unpack our hales in
search of coffee and sugar, and flour for
bread. With the exception of a little parched
coffee, unground, we found nothing. Our
cook had neglected to put it up, or it had
been somehow forgotten. Tired and hun-
gry, with tough bull meat without salt (for
we had not been able to kill a cow), and a
little bitter coffee, we sat down in silence to
our miserable fare, a very disconsolate party;
for yesterday's feast was yet fresh in our
memories, and this was our first brush with
misfortune. Each man took his blanket,
and laid himself down silently; for the worst
part of these mishaps is, that they unako
people ill-humored. To-day we had travel-
led about thirty-six miles.

July 6.—Finding that our present excu-
sion would be attended with considerable
hardship, and unwilling to expose more per-
sons than necessary, I determined to send
Mr. Prouss back to the party. His horse,
too, appeared in no condition to support the
journey; and accordingly, after breakfast,
he took the road across the hills, attended
by one of my most trusty men, Bernier. The
ridge between the rivers is here about fifteen
miles broad, and I expected he would proba-
bly strike the fork near their evening camp.
At all events he would not fail to find their
trail, and rejoin them the next day.

We continued our journey, seven in num-
ber, including the three Cheyennes. Our
general course was southwest, up the valley
of the river, which was sandy, bordered on
the northern side of the valley by a low
ridge; and on the south, after seven or eight
miles, the river hills became higher. Six
miles from our resting place we crossed the
bed of a considerable stream, now entirely
dry—a bed of sand. In a grove of willows,
near the mouth, were the remains of a con-
siderable fort, constructed of trunks of large
trees. It was apparently very old, and had
probably been the scene of some hostile en-
counter among the roving tribes. Its soli-
tude formed an impressive contrast to the
picture which our imaginations involunta-
rily drew of the busy scene which had been
enacted here. The timber appeared to have
been much more extensive formerly than
now. There were but few trees, a kind of
long-leaved willow, standing; and numerous
trunks of large trees were scattered about
on the ground. In many similar places I
had occasion to remark an apparent progres-
sive decay in the timber. Ten miles far-
ther we reached the mouth of Lodge Pole

creek, a clear and handsome stream, running through a broad valley. In its course through the bottom it has a uniform breadth of twenty-two feet, and six inches in depth. A few willows on the banks strike pleasantly on the eye, by their greenness, in the midst of the hot and barren sands.

The *amorpha* was frequent among the ravines, but the sunflower (*helianthus*) was the characteristic; and flowers of deep warm colors seem most to love the sandy soil. The impression of the country travelled over to-day was one of dry and barren sands. We turned in towards the river at noon, and gave our horses two hours for food and rest. I had no other thermometer than the one attached to the barometer, which stood at 89°, the height of the column in the barometer being 26.235 at meridian. The sky was clear, with a high wind from the south. At 2, we continued our journey; the wind had moderated, and it became almost unendurably hot, and our animals suffered severely. In the course of the afternoon, the wind rose suddenly, and blew hard from the southwest, with thunder and lightning, and squalls of rain; these were blown against us with violence by the wind; and, halting, we turned our backs to the storm until it blew over. Antelope were tolerably frequent, with a large grey hare; but the former were shy, and the latter hardly worth the delay of stopping to shoot them; so, as the evening drew near, we again had recourse to an old bull, and encamped at sunset on an island in the Platte.

We ate our meat with a good relish this evening, for we were all in fine health, and had ridden nearly all of a long summer's day, with a burning sun reflected from the sands. My companions slept rolled up in their blankets, and the Indians lay in the grass near the fire; but my sleeping place generally had an air of more pretension. Our rifles were tied together near the muzzle, the butts resting on the ground, and a knife laid on the rope, to cut away in case of an alarm. Over this, which made a kind of frame, was thrown a large India rubber cloth, which we used to cover our packs. This made a tent sufficiently large to receive about half of my bed, and was a place of shelter for my instruments; and as I was careful always to put this part against the wind, I could lie here with a sensation of satisfied enjoyment, and hear the wind blow, and the rain patter close to my head, and know that I should be at least half dry. Certainly I never slept more soundly. The barometer at sunset was 26.010, thermometer 81°, and cloudy; but a gale from the west sprang up with the setting sun, and in a few minutes swept away every cloud from the sky. The evening was very fine,

and I remained up to take some astronomical observations, which made our position in latitude 40° 51' 17", and longitude 103° 07' 00".

July 7.—At our camp this morning, at 6 o'clock, the barometer was at 26.183, thermometer 69°, and clear, with a light wind from the southwest. The past night had been squally, with high winds, and occasionally a few drops of rain. Our cooking did not occupy much time, and we left camp early. Nothing of interest occurred during the morning. The same dreary barrenness, except that a hard marly clay had replaced the sandy soil. Buffalo absolutely covered the plain on both sides the river, and whenever we ascended the hills, scattered herds gave life to the view in every direction. A small drove of wild horses made their appearance on the low river bottoms, a mile or two to the left, and I sent off one of the Indians (who seemed very eager to catch one) on my led horse, a spirited and fleet animal. The savage manœuvred a little to get the wind of the horses, in which he succeeded—approaching within a hundred yards without being discovered. The chase for a few minutes was interesting. My hunter easily overtook and passed the hindmost of the wild drove, which the Indian did not attempt to *lasso*; all his efforts being directed to the capture of the leader. But the strength of the horse, weakened by the insufficient nourishment of grass, failed in a race, and all the drove escaped. We halted at noon on the bank of the river, the barometer at that time being 26.192, and the thermometer 103°, with a light air from the south, and clear weather.

In the course of the afternoon, dust rising among the hills at a particular place, attracted our attention; and, riding up, we found a band of eighteen or twenty buffalo bulls engaged in a desperate fight. Though butting and goring were bestowed liberally, and without distinction, yet their efforts were evidently directed against one—a huge gaunt old bull, very lean, while his adversaries were all fat and in good order. He appeared very weak, and had already received some wounds, and, while we were looking on, was several times knocked down and badly hurt and a very few moments would have put an end to him. Of course, we took the side of the weaker party, and attacked the herd; but they were so blind with rage, that they fought on, utterly regardless of our presence, although on foot and on horseback we were firing in open view within twenty yards of them. But this did not last long. In a very few seconds, we created a commotion among them. One or two were knocked over by the balls, jumped up and ran off into the hills; and they began to retreat slowly

to take some astronomical observations, which made our position latitude 41° 17", and longitude 103°

camp this morning, at 6 o'clock the barometer was at 26.183, therefore clear, with a light wind from the east. The past night had high winds, and occasional rain. Our cooking did not succeed, and we left camp at 10 o'clock. The interest occurred during the day, the dreary barrenness of the country, the clay had replaced the sandstone absolutely covered the hills, and whenever hills, scattered herds gave in every direction. A small stream made their appearance at intervals, a mile or two to the west of one of the Indians (I was eager to catch one) on my horse and fleet animal. The Indians made a little to get the wind which he succeeded—about a hundred yards without the chase for a few minutes. My hunter easily overtook the hindmost of the wild Indian did not attempt to turn being directed to the rear. But the strength of the wind by the insufficient nourishment in a race, and all the time we halted at noon on the barometer at that time was the thermometer 103°, from the south, and clear

the afternoon, dust rising at a particular place, attention; and, riding up, we fought eighteen or twenty buffalo in a desperate fight. Though we were bestowed liberally, yet their efforts were against one—a huge gaunt Indian, while his adversaries were in good order. He appeared to have already received some wounds, and we were looking on, was knocked down and badly hurt. Moments would have put an end to the course, we took the side of the Indian and attacked the herd; but the Indian with rage, that they were regardless of our presence, and on horseback we were within twenty yards of the Indian did not last long. In a very short time a commotion among the herd was knocked up and ran off into the distance, and began to retreat slowly

along a broad ravine to the river, fighting furiously as they went. By the time they had reached the bottom, we had pretty well dispersed them, and the old bull hobbled off to lie down somewhere. One of his enemies remained on the ground where we had first fired upon them, and we stopped there for a short time to cut from him some meat for our supper. We had neglected to secure our horses, thinking it an unnecessary precaution in their fatigued condition; but our mule took it into his head to start, and away he went, followed at full speed by the pack horse, with all the baggage and instruments on his back. They were recovered and brought back, after a chase of a mile. Fortunately, everything was well secured, so that nothing, not even the barometer, was in the least injured.

The sun was getting low, and some narrow lines of timber four or five miles distant promised us a pleasant camp, where, with plenty of wood for fire, and comfortable shelter, and rich grass for our animals, we should find clear cool springs, instead of the warm water of the Platte. On our arrival, we found the bed of a stream fifty to one hundred feet wide, sunk some thirty feet below the level of the prairie, with perpendicular banks, bordered by a fringe of green cottonwood, but not a drop of water. There were several small forks to the stream, all in the same condition. With the exception of the Platte bottom, the country seemed to be of a clay formation, dry, and perfectly devoid of any moisture, and baked hard by the sun. Turning off towards the river, we reached the bank in about a mile, and were delighted to find an old tree, with thick foliage and spreading branches, where we encamped. At sunset, the barometer was at 25.950, thermometer 81°, with a strong wind from S. 20° E., and the sky partially covered with heavy masses of cloud, which settled a little towards the horizon by 10 o'clock, leaving it sufficiently clear for astronomical observations, which placed us in latitude 40° 33' 26", and longitude 103° 30' 37".

July 8.—The morning was very pleasant. The breeze was fresh from S. 50° E. with few clouds; the barometer at 6 o'clock standing at 25.970, and the thermometer at 70°. Since leaving the forks, our route had passed over a country alternately clay and sand, each presenting the same naked waste. On leaving camp this morning, we struck again a sandy region, in which the vegetation appeared somewhat more vigorous than that which we had observed for the last few days; and on the opposite side of the river were some tolerably large groves of timber.

Journeying along, we came suddenly upon a place where the ground was covered with horses' tracks, which had been made since

the rain, and indicated the immediate presence of Indians in our neighborhood. The buffalo, too, which the day before had been so numerous, were nowhere in sight—another sure indication that there were people near. Riding on, we discovered the carcass of a buffalo recently killed—perhaps the day before. We scanned the horizon carefully with the glass, but no living object was to be seen. For the next mile or two, the ground was dotted with buffalo carcasses, which showed that the Indians had made a surround here, and were in considerable force. We went on quickly and cautiously, keeping the river bottom, and carefully avoiding the hills; but we met with no interruption, and began to grow careless again. We had already lost one of our horses, and here Basil's mule showed symptoms of giving out, and finally refused to advance, being what the Canadians call *resté*. He therefore dismounted, and drove her along before him; but this was a very slow way of travelling. We had inadvertently got about half a mile in advance, but our Cheyennes, who were generally a mile or two in the rear, remained with him. There were some dark-looking objects among the hills, about two miles to the left, here low and undulating, which we had seen for a little time, and supposed to be buffalo coming in to water: but, happening to look behind, Maxwell saw the Cheyennes whipping up furiously, and another glance at the dark objects showed them at once to be Indians coming up at speed.

Had we been well mounted, and disencumbered of instruments, we might have set them at defiance; but as it was, we were fairly caught. It was too late to rejoin our friends, and we endeavored to gain a clump of timber about half a mile ahead; but the instruments and the tired state of our horses did not allow us to go faster than a steady canter, and they were gaining on us fast. At first, they did not appear to be more than fifteen or twenty in number, but group after group darted into view at the top of the hills, until all the little eminences seemed in motion, and, in a few minutes from the time they were first discovered, two or three hundred, naked to the breech cloth, were sweeping across the prairie. In a few hundred yards we discovered that the timber we were endeavoring to make was on the opposite side of the river; and before we could reach the bank, down came the Indians upon us.

I am inclined to think that in a few seconds more the leading man, and perhaps some of his companions, would have rolled in the dust; for we had jerked the covers from our guns, and our fingers were on the triggers; men in such cases generally act from instinct, and a charge from three hundred naked savages is a circumstance not

well calculated to promote a cool exercise of judgment. Just as he was about to fire, Maxwell recognized the leading Indian, and shouted to him in the Indian language, "You're a fool, G—damn you, don't you know me?" The sound of his own language seemed to shock the savage, and, swerving his horse a little, he passed us like an arrow. He wheeled, as I rode out toward him, and gave me his hand, striking his breast and exclaiming "Arapahó!" They proved to be a village of that nation, among whom Maxwell had resided as a trader a year or two previously, and recognized him accordingly. We were soon in the midst of the band, answering as well as we could a multitude of questions; of which the very first was, of what tribe were our Indian companions who were coming in the rear? They seemed disappointed to know that they were Cheyennes, or they had fully anticipated a grand dance around a Pawnee scalp that night.

The chief showed us his village at a grove on the river six miles ahead, and pointed out a band of buffalo on the other side of the Platte, immediately opposite us, which he said they were going to surround. They had seen the band early in the morning from their village, and had been making a large circuit, to avoid giving them the wind, when they discovered us. In a few minutes the women came galloping up, astride on their horses, and naked from their knees down, and the hips up. They followed the men, to assist in cutting up and carrying off the meat.

The wind was blowing directly across the river, and the chief requested us to halt where we were for awhile, in order to avoid raising the herd. We therefore unsaddled our horses, and sat down on the bank to view the scene; and our new acquaintances rode a few hundred yards lower down, and began crossing the river. Scores of wild-looking dogs followed, looking like troops of wolves, and having, in fact, but very little of the dog in their composition. Some of them remained with us, and I checked one of the men, whom I found aiming at one, which he was about to kill for a wolf. The day had become very hot. The air was clear, with a very slight breeze; and now, at 12 o'clock, while the barometer stood at 25.920, the attached thermometer was at 108°. Our Cheyennes had learned that with the Arapaho village were about twenty lodges of their own, including their own families; they therefore immediately commenced making their toilette. After bathing in the river, they invested themselves in some handsome calico shirts, which I afterward learned they had stolen from my own men, and spent some time in arranging their hair and painting themselves with some vermilion I had given them. While they were engaged in this satisfactory manner, one of their half-

wild horses, to which the crowd of prancing animals which had just passed had recalled the freedom of her existence among the wild droves on the prairie, suddenly dashed into the hills at the top of her speed. She was their pack horse, and had on her back all the worldly wealth of our poor Cheyennes, all their accoutrements, and all the little articles which they had picked up among us, with some few presents I had given them. The loss which they seemed to regret most were their spears and shields, and some tobacco which they had received from me. However, they bore it all with the philosophy of an Indian, and laughingly continued their toilette. They appeared, however, a little mortified at the thought of returning to the village in such a sorry plight. "Our people will laugh at us," said one of them, "returning to the village on foot, instead of driving back a drove of Pawnee horses." He demanded to know if I loved my sorrel hunter very much; to which I replied, he was the object of my most intense affection. Far from being able to give, I was myself in want of horses; and any suggestion of parting with the few I had valuable, was met with a peremptory refusal. In the meantime, the slaughter was about to commence on the other side. So soon as they reached it, the Indians separated into two bodies. One party proceeded directly across the prairie, towards the hills, in an extended line, while the other went up the river; and instantly as they had given the wind to the herd, the chase commenced. The buffalo started for the hills, but were intercepted and driven back toward the river broken and running in every direction. The clouds of dust soon covered the whole scene preventing us from having any but an occasional view. It had a very singular appearance to us at a distance, especially when looking with the glass. We were too far to hear the report of the guns, or any sound, and at every instant, through the clouds of dust, which the sun made luminous, we could see for a moment two or three buffalo dashing along, and close behind them an Indian with his long spear, or other weapon, and instantly again they disappeared. The apparent silence, and the dimly seen figures flitting by with such rapidity, gave it a kind of dreamy effect, and seemed more like a picture than a scene of real life. It had been a large herd when the *cérce* commenced, probably three or four hundred in number; but, though I watched them closely, I did not see one emerge from the fatal cloud where the work of destruction was going on. After remaining here about an hour, we resumed our journey in the direction of the village.

Gradually, as we rode on, Indian after Indian came dropping along, laden with meat; and by the time we had reached the lodges,

in the crowd of prancing
just passed had recalled
existence among the wild
e, suddenly dashed into
of her speed. She was
I had on her back all the
ur poor Cheyennes all
and all the little arti-les
ked up among us, with
had given them. He
ned to regret most were
fields, and some tobacco
ved from me. However,
the philosophy of an In-
continued their toilette.
ever, a little mortified at
ing to the village in such
ur people will laugh at
m, "returning to the vil-
of driving back a drove
He demanded to know
I hunter very much; to
was the object of my
on. Far from being able
lf in want of horses; and
arting with the few I had
with a preemptory refusal.
e slaughter was about to
other side. So soon as
e Indians separated, the
party proceeded direct-ly
towards the hills, and
e the other went up the
ly as they had given the
chase commenced. The
the hills, but were inter-
back toward the river
in every direction. The
covered the whole scene
having any but an occa-
d a very singular appear-
istance, especially wher-
ass. We were too far to
the guns, or any sound,
at, through the clouds of
made luminous, we could
vo or three buffalo dashing
hind them an Indian with
their weapon, and instantly
eared. The apparent sil-
ly seen figures flitting by
gave it a kind of dreamy
more like a picture than a
It had been a large herd
ommenced, probably three
number; but, though I
osely, I did not see one
atal cloud where the work
going on. After remain-
n hour, we resumed our
ection of the village.
e rode on, Indian after In-
g along, laden with meat;
ve had reached the lodges,

the backward road was covered with the re-
turning horsemen. It was a pleasant con-
trast with the desert road we had been trav-
elling. Several had joined company with
us, and one of the chiefs invited us to his
lodge. The village consisted of about one
hundred and twenty-five lodges, of which
twenty were Cheyennes; the latter pitched
a little apart from the Arapahoes. They
were disposed in a scattering manner on both
sides of a broad irregular street, about one
hundred and fifty feet wide, and running
along the river. As we rode along, I re-
marked near some of the lodges a kind of
tripod frame, formed of three slender poles of
birch, scraped very clean, to which were
affixed the shield and spear, with some other
weapons of a chief. All were scrupulously
clean, the spear head was burnished bright,
and the shield white and stainless. It re-
minded me of the days of feudal chivalry;
and when, as I rode by, I yielded to the pass-
ing impulse, and touched one of the spotless
shields with the muzzle of my gun, I almost
expected a grim warrior to start from the
lodge and resent my challenge. The master
of the lodge spread out a robe for me to sit
upon, and the squaws set before us a large
wooden dish of buffalo meat. He had lit his
pipe in the mean while, and when it had
been passed around, we commenced our din-
ner while he continued to smoke. Grad-
ually, five or six other chiefs came in, and
took their seats in silence. When we had
finished, our host asked a number of ques-
tions relative to the object of our journey,
of which I made no concealment; telling him
simply that I had made a visit to see the
country, preparatory to the establishment of
military posts on the way to the mountains.
Although this was information of the high-
est interest to them, and by no means calcu-
lated to please them, it excited no expres-
sion of surprise, and in no way altered the
grave courtesy of their demeanor. The
others listened and smoked. I remarked,
that in taking the pipe for the first time,
each had turned the stem upward, with a
rapid glance, as in offering to the Great
Spirit, before he put it in his mouth. A
storm had been gathering for the past hour,
and some pattering drops on the lodge
warned us that we had some miles to our
camp. Some Indian had given Maxwell a
bundle of dried meat, which was very ac-
ceptable, as we had nothing; and, springing
upon our horses, we rode off at dusk in the
face of a cold shower and driving wind.
We found our companions under some
densely foliaged old trees, about three miles
up the river. Under one of them lay the
trunk of a large cotton-wood, to leeward of
which the men had kindled a fire, and we
sat here and roasted our meat in tolerable

shelter. Nearly opposite was the mouth of
one of the most considerable affluents of the
South fork, *la Fourche aux Castors* (Beaver
fork), heading off in the ridge to the south-
east.

July 9.—This morning we caught the
first faint glimpse of the Rocky mountains,
about sixty miles distant. Though a toler-
ably bright day, there was a slight mist, and
we were just able to discern the snowy sum-
mit of "Long's peak" ("*les deux oreilles*"
of the Canadians), showing like a small
cloud near the horizon. I found it easily
distinguishable, there being a perceptible
difference in its appearance from the white
clouds that were floating about the sky. I
was pleased to find that among the traders
and voyageurs the name of "Long's peak"
had been adopted and become familiar in the
country. In the ravines near this place, a
light brown sandstone made its first appear-
ance. About 8, we discerned several per-
sons on horseback a mile or two ahead, on
the opposite side of the river. They turned
in towards the river, and we rode down to
meet them. We found them to be two
white men, and a mulatto named Jim Beck-
with, who had left St. Louis when a boy,
and gone to live with the Crow Indians.
He had distinguished himself among them
by some acts of daring bravery, and had
risen to the rank of a chief, but had now, for
some years, left them. They were in search
of a band of horses that had gone off from a
camp some miles above, in charge of Mr.
Chabonard. Two of them continued down
the river, in search of the horses, and the
American turned back with us, and we rode
on towards the camp. About eight miles
from our sleeping place we reached Bijou's
fork, an affluent of the right bank. Where
we crossed it, a short distance from the
Platte, it has a sandy bed about four hun-
dred yards broad; the water in various
small streams, a few inches deep. Seven
miles further brought us to a camp of some
four or five whites (New Englanders, I be-
lieve), who had accompanied Captain Wyeth
to the Columbia river, and were independent
trappers. All had their squaws with them,
and I was really surprised at the number of
little fat buffalo-fed boys that were tumbling
about the camp, all apparently of the same
age, about three or four years old. They
were encamped on a rich bottom, covered
with a profusion of fine grass, and had a
large number of fine-looking horses and
mules. We rested with them a few min-
utes, and in about two miles arrived at Cha-
bonard's camp, on an island in the Platte.
On the heights above, we met the first Span-
iard I had seen in the country. Mr. Chabo-
nard was in the service of Bent and St.
Vrain's company, and had left their fort

come forty or fifty miles above, in the spring, with boats laden with the furs of the last year's trade. He had met the same fortune as the voyageurs on the North fork, and, finding it impossible to proceed, had taken up his summer's residence on this island, which he had named St. Helena. The river hills appeared to be composed entirely of sand, and the Platte had lost the muddy character of its waters, and here was tolerably clear. From the mouth of the South fork, I had found it occasionally broken up by small islands; and at the time of our journey, which was at a season of the year when the waters were at a favorable stage, it was not navigable for anything drawing six inches water. The current was very swift—the bed of the stream a coarse gravel.

From the place at which we had encountered the Arapahoes, the Platte had been tolerably well fringed with timber, and the island here had a fine grove of very large cotton-woods, under whose broad shade the tents were pitched. There was a large drove of horses in the opposite prairie bottom; smoke was rising from the scattered fires, and the encampment had quite a patriarchal air. Mr. C. received us hospitably. One of the people was sent to gather mint, with the aid of which he concocted very good julep; and some boiled buffalo tongue, and coffee with the luxury of sugar, were soon set before us. The people in his employ were generally Spaniards, and among them I saw a young Spanish woman from Taos, whom I found to be Beckwith's wife.

July 10.—We parted with our hospitable host after breakfast the next morning, and reached St. Vrain's Fort, about forty-five miles from St. Helena, late in the evening. This post is situated on the South fork of the Platte, immediately under the mountains, about seventeen miles east of Long's peak. It is on the right bank, on the verge of the upland prairie, about forty feet above the river, of which the immediate valley is about six hundred yards wide. The stream is divided into various branches by small islands, among which it runs with a swift current. The bed of the river is sand and gravel, the water very clear, and here may be called a mountain stream. This region appears to be entirely free from the limestones and marls which give to the Lower Platte its yellow and dirty color. The Black hills lie between the stream and the mountains, whose snowy peaks glitter a few miles beyond. At the fort we found Mr. St. Vrain, who received us with much kindness and hospitality. Maxwell had spent the last two or three years between this post and the village of Taos; and here he was at home, and among his friends. Spaniards frequently

come over in search of employment; and several came in shortly after our arrival. They usually obtain about six dollars a month, generally paid to them in goods. They are very useful in a camp, in taking care of horses and mules; and I engaged one, who proved to be an active, laborious man, and was of very considerable service to me. The elevation of the Platte here is five thousand four hundred feet above the sea. The neighboring mountains did not appear to enter far the region of perpetual snow, which was generally confined to the northern side of the peaks. On the southern, I remarked very little. Here it appeared, so far as I could judge in the distance, to descend but a few hundred feet below the summits.

I regretted that time did not permit me to visit them; but the proper object of my survey lay among the mountains further north; and I looked forward to an exploration of their snowy recesses with great pleasure. The piney region of the mountains to the south was enveloped in smoke, and I was informed had been on fire for several months. Pike's peak is said to be visible from this place, about one hundred miles to the southward; but the smoky state of the atmosphere prevented my seeing it. The weather continued overcast during my stay here, so that I failed in determining the latitude, but obtained good observations for time on the mornings of the 11th and 12th. An assumed latitude of $40^{\circ} 22' 30''$ from the evening position of the 12th, enabled me to obtain, for a tolerably correct longitude, $105^{\circ} 12' 12''$.

July 12.—The kindness of Mr. St. Vrain had enabled me to obtain a couple of horses and three good mules; and, with a further addition to our party of the Spaniard whom I had hired, and two others, who were going to obtain service at Laramie's fork, we resumed our journey at 10, on the morning of the 12th. We had been able to procure nothing at the post, in the way of provision. An expected supply from Taos had not yet arrived, and a few pounds of coffee was all that could be spared to us. In addition to this, we had dried meat enough for the first day; on the next, we expected to find buffalo. From this post, according to the estimate of the country, the fort at the mouth of Laramie's fork, which was our next point of destination, was nearly due north, distant about one hundred and twenty-five miles.

For a short distance, our road lay down the valley of the Platte, which resembled a garden in the splendor of fields of varied flowers, which filled the air with fragrance. The only timber I noticed, consisted of poplar, birch, cotton-wood, and willow. In

of employment; and shortly after our arrival about six dollars a day to them in goods. In a camp, in taking mules; and I engaged an active, laborious man to render considerable service in the Platte here is a hundred feet above the surrounding mountains did not the region of perpetual snow generally confined to the peaks. On the south side little. Here it appears to be in the distance, a hundred feet below the

he did not permit me to proper object of my surmountains further north; and to an exploration of the mountains to the west in smoke, and I was in a fire for several months. to be visible from this distance to the south state of the atmosphere it. The weather during my stay here, so that the latitude, but observations for time on the 10th and 12th. An assumption of 30' from the evening enabled me to obtain exact longitude, 105° 12'

kindness of Mr. St. Vrain obtain a couple of horses; and, with a further assistance of the Spaniard whom others, who were going to Laramie's fork, we reached at 10, on the morning of the 10th, I had been able to procure in the way of provision. from Taos had not yet found of coffee was all to us. In addition to meat enough for the first we expected to find buffalo, according to the estimate, the fort at the mouth of which was our next destination, was nearly due north, a distance of a hundred and twenty-five

distance, on a road lay down the Platte, which resembled a garden of fields of varied colors and the air with fragrance. I noticed, consisted of poplar, willow, and

something less than three miles, we crossed Thompson's creek, one of the tributaries to the left bank of the South fork—a fine stream about sixty-five feet wide, and three feet deep. Journeying on, the low dark line of the Black hills lying between us and the mountains to the left, in about ten miles from the fort, we reached *Cache à la Poudre*, where we halted at noon. This is a very beautiful mountain stream, about one hundred feet wide, flowing with a full swift current over a rocky bed. We halted under the shade of some cotton-woods, with which the stream is wooded scatteringly. In the upper part of its course, it runs amid the widest mountain scenery, and, breaking through the Black hills, falls into the Platte about ten miles below this place. In the course of our late journey, I had managed to become the possessor of a very untractable mule—a perfect vixen—and her I had turned over to my Spaniard. It occupied us about half an hour to-day to get the saddle upon her; but, once on her back, José could not be dismounted, realizing the accounts given of Mexican horses and horsemanship; and we continued our route in the afternoon.

At evening, we encamped on Crow (?) creek, having travelled about twenty-eight miles. None of the party were well acquainted with the country, and I had great difficulty in ascertaining what were the names of the streams we crossed between the North and South forks of the Platte. This I supposed to be Crow creek. It is what is called a salt stream, and the water stands in pools, having no continuous course. A fine-grained sandstone made its appearance in the banks. The observations of the night placed us in latitude 40° 42', longitude 104° 57' 49". The barometer at sunset was 25.231; attached thermometer at 66°. Sky clear, except in the east, with a light wind from the north.

July 13.—There being no wood here, we used last night the *bois de vache*, which is very plentiful. At our camp this morning, the barometer was at 25.235; the attached thermometer 60°. A few clouds were moving through a deep blue sky, with a light wind from the west. After a ride of twelve miles, in a northerly direction, over a plain covered with innumerable quantities of *cacti*, we reached a small creek in which there was water, and where several herds of buffalo were scattered about among the ravines, which always afford good pasturage. We seem now to be passing along the base of a plateau of the Black hills, in which the formation consists of marls, some of them white and laminated; the country to the left rising suddenly, and falling off gradually and uniformly to the right. In five or six miles of

a northeasterly course, we struck a high ridge, broken into conical peaks, on whose summits large boulders were gathered in heaps. The magnetic direction of the ridge is northwest and southeast, the glittering white of its precipitous sides making it visible for many miles to the south. It is composed of a soft earthy limestone and marls, resembling that, hereafter described, in the neighborhood of the Chimney rock, on the North fork of the Platte, easily worked by the winds and rains, and sometimes moulded into very fantastic shapes. At the foot of the northern slope was the bed of a creek, some forty feet wide, coming, by frequent falls, from the bench above. It was shut in by high perpendicular banks, in which were strata of white laminated marl. Its bed was perfectly dry, and the leading feature of the whole region is one of remarkable aridity, and perfect freedom from moisture. In about six miles we crossed the bed of another dry creek; and, continuing our ride over a high level prairie, a little before sundown we came suddenly upon a beautiful creek, which revived us with a feeling of delighted surprise by the pleasant contrast of the deep verdure of its banks with the parched desert we had passed. We had suffered much to-day, both men and horses, for want of water; having met with it but once in our uninterrupted march of forty miles, and an exclusive meat diet creates much thirst.

"*Las bestias tienen mucha hambre,*" said the young Spaniard, inquiringly; "*y la gente también,*" said I, "*amigo,* we'll camp here." A stream of good and clear water ran winding about through the little valley, and a herd of buffalo were quietly feeding a little distance below. It was quite a hunter's paradise; and while some ran down toward the bank to kill one for supper, others collected *bois de vache* for a fire, there being no wood; and I amused myself with hunting for plants among the grass.

It will be seen, by occasional remarks on the geological formation, that the constituents of the soil in these regions are good, and every day served to strengthen the impression in my mind, confirmed by subsequent observation, that the barren appearance of the country is due almost entirely to the extreme dryness of the climate. Along our route, the country had seemed to increase constantly in elevation. According to the indication of the barometer, we were at our encampment 5,440 feet above the sea.

The evening was very clear, with a fresh breeze from the south, 50° east. The barometer at sunset was 24.862, the thermometer attached showing 68°. I supposed this to be a fork of Lodge Pole creek, so far as I could determine from our uncertain means of information. Astronomical observations

gave for the camp a longitude of $104^{\circ} 39' 37''$, and latitude $41^{\circ} 08' 31''$.

July 14.—The wind continued fresh from the same quarter in the morning; the day being clear, with the exception of a few clouds in the horizon. At our camp at 6 o'clock, the height of the barometer was 24.830, the attached thermometer 61° . Our course this morning was directly north by compass, the variation being 15° or 16° easterly. A ride of four miles brought us to Lodge Pole creek, which we had seen at its mouth on the South fork; crossing on the way two dry streams, in eighteen miles from our encampment of the past night, we reached a high bleak ridge, composed entirely of the same earthy limestone and marl previously described. I had never seen anything which impressed so strongly on my mind a feeling of desolation. The valley, through which ran the waters of Horse creek, lay in view to the north, but too far to have any influence on the immediate view. On the peak of the ridge where I was standing, some six or seven hundred feet above the river, the wind was high and bleak; the barren and arid country seemed as if it had been swept by fires, and in every direction the same dull ash-colored hue, derived from the formation, met the eye. On the summits were some stunted pines, many of them dead, all wearing the same ashen hue of desolation. We left the place with pleasure; and, after we had descended several hundred feet, halted in one of the ravines, which, at the distance of every mile or two, cut the flanks of the ridge with little rushing streams, wearing something of a mountain character. We had already begun to exchange the comparatively barren lands for those of a more fertile character. Though the sandstone formed the broken banks of the creek, yet they were covered with a thin grass; and the fifty or sixty feet which formed the bottom land of the little stream were clothed with very luxuriant grass, among which I remarked willow and cherry (*cerasus virginiana*); and a quantity of gooseberry and currant bushes occupied the greater part.

The creek was three or four feet broad, and about six inches deep, with a swift current of clear water, and tolerably cool. We had struck it too low down to reach the cold water, which we should have enjoyed nearer to its sources. At 2, p. m., the barometer was at 25.050, the attached thermometer 104° . A day of hot sunshine, with clouds, and moderate breeze from the south. Continuing down the stream, in about four miles we reached its mouth, at one of the main branches of Horse creek. Looking back upon the ridge, whose direction appeared to be a little to the north of east, we saw it seamed at frequent intervals with the dark

lines of wooded streams, affluents of the river that flowed so far as we could see along its base. We crossed, in the space of twelve miles from our noon halt, three or four forks of Horse creek, and encamped at sunset on the most easterly.

The fork on which we encamped appeared to have followed an easterly direction up to this place; but here it makes a very sudden bend to the north, passing between two ranges of precipitous hills, called, as I was informed, Goshen's hole. There is somewhere in or near this locality a place so called, but I am not certain that it was the place of our encampment. Looking back upon the spot, at the distance of a few miles to the northward, the hills appear to shut in the prairie, through which runs the creek, with a semi-circular sweep, which might very naturally be called a hole in the hills. The geological composition of the ridge is the same which constitutes the rock of the Court-house and Chimney, on the North fork, which appeared to me a continuation of this ridge. The winds and rains work this formation into a variety of singular forms. The pass into Goshen's hole is about two miles wide, and the hill on the western side imitates, in an extraordinary manner, a massive fortified place, with a remarkable fulness of detail. The rock is marl and earthy limestone, white, without the least appearance of vegetation, and much resembles masonry at a little distance; and here it sweeps around a level area two or three hundred yards in diameter, and in the form of a half moon, terminating on either extremity in enormous bastions. Along the whole line of the parapets appear domes and slender minarets, forty or fifty feet high, giving it every appearance of an old fortified town. On the waters of White river, where this formation exists in great extent, it presents appearances which excite the admiration of the solitary voyageur, and form a frequent theme of their conversation when speaking of the wonders of the country. Sometimes it offers the perfectly illusive appearance of a large city, with numerous streets and magnificent buildings, among which the Canadians never fail to see their *cabaret*; and sometimes it takes the form of a solitary house, with many large chambers, into which they drive their horses at night, and sleep in these natural defences perfectly secure from any attack of prowling savages. Before reaching our camp at Goshen's hole, in crossing the immense detritus at the foot of the Castle rock, we were involved amidst winding passages cut by the waters of the hill; and where, with a breadth scarcely large enough for the passage of a horse, the walls rise thirty and forty feet perpendicularly. This formation supplies the discoloration of the Platte. At sunset, the height of the

ns, affluents of the river
ve could see along its
n the space of twelve
alt, three or four forks
ncamped at sunset on

we encamped appeared
asterly direction up to
t makes a very sudden
passing between two
hills, called, as I was
ole. There is some-
locality a place so call-
in that it was the place
Looking back upon
e of a few miles to the
appear to shut in the
runs the creek, with
, which might very na-
ble in the hills. The
n of the ridge is the
s the rock of the Court-
n the North fork, which
tinuation of this ridge.
ork this formation into
forms. The pass into
nt two miles wide, and
rn side imitates, in an
r, a massive fortified
able fulness of detail,
rthy limestone, white,
pearance of vegetation,
masonry at a little dis-
weeps around a level
dred yards in diameter,
half moon, terminating
in enormous bastions.
of the parapets appear
minarets, forty or fifty
every appearance of an
n the waters of White
ation exists in great
pearances which excite
solitary voyager, and
e of their conversation
wonders of the coun-
ffers the perfectly illu-
large city, with nume-
ficent buildings, among
never fail to see their
es it takes the form of
many large chambers,
their horses at night,
rual defences perfectly
k of prowling savages.
camp at Goshen's hole,
use detritus at the foot
e were involved amidst
t by the waters of the
h a breadth scarcely
assage of a horse, the
rty feet perpendicular-
applies the discoloration
meet, the height of the

mercurial column was 25.500, the attached thermometer 80°, and wind moderate from S. 33° E. Clouds covered the sky with the rise of the moon, but I succeeded in obtaining the usual astronomical observations, which placed us in latitude 41° 40' 13", and longitude 104° 24' 36".

July 15.—At 6 this morning, the barometer was at 25.515, the thermometer 72°; the day was fine, with some clouds looking dark on the south, with a fresh breeze from the same quarter. We found that in our journey across the country we had kept too much to the eastward. This morning, accordingly, we travelled by compass some 15 or 20 to the west of north, and struck the Platte some thirteen miles below Fort Laramie. The day was extremely hot, and among the hills the wind seemed to have just issued from an oven. Our horses were much distressed, as we had travelled hard; and it was with some difficulty that they were all brought to the Platte; which we reached at 1 o'clock. In riding in towards the river, we found the trail of our carts, which appeared to have passed a day or two since.

After having allowed our animals two hours for food and repose, we resumed our journey, and towards the close of the day came in sight of Laramie's fork. Issuing from the river hills, we came first in view of Fort Platte, a post belonging to Messrs. Sybille, Adams & Co., situated immediately in the point of land at the junction of Laramie with the Platte. Like the post we had visited on the South fork, it was built of earth, and still unfinished, being enclosed with walls (or rather houses) on three of the sides, and open on the fourth to the river. A few hundred yards brought us in view of the post of the American Fur Company, called Fort John, or Laramie. This was a large post, having more the air of military construction than the fort at the mouth of the river. It is on the left bank, on a rising ground some twenty-five feet above the water; and its lofty walls, whitewashed and picketed, with the large bastions at the angles, gave it quite an imposing appearance in the uncertain light of evening. A cluster of lodges, which the language told us belonged to Sioux Indians, was pitched under the walls, and, with the fine back ground of the Black hills and the prominent peak of Laramie mountain, strongly drawn in the clear light of the western sky, where the sun had already set, the whole formed at the moment a strikingly beautiful picture. From the company at St. Louis I had letters for Mr. Boudeau, the gentleman in charge of the post, by whom I was received with great hospitality and an efficient kindness, which was invaluable to me during my stay in the country. I found

our people encamped on the bank, a short distance above the fort. All were well; and, in the enjoyment of a bountiful supper, which coffee and bread made luxurious to us, we soon forgot the fatigues of the last ten days.

July 16.—I found that, during my absence, the situation of affairs had undergone some change; and the usual quiet and somewhat monotonous regularity of the camp had given place to excitement and alarm. The circumstances which occasioned this change will be found narrated in the following extract from the journal of Mr. Preuss, which commences with the day of our separation on the South fork of the Platte.

Extract from the journal of Mr. Preuss.

July 6.—We crossed the plateau or highland between the two forks in about six hours. I let my horse go as slow as he liked, to indemnify us both for the previous hardship; and about noon we reached the North fork. There was no sign that our party had passed; we rode, therefore, to some pine trees, unsaddled the horses, and stretched our limbs on the grass, awaiting the arrival of our company. After remaining here two hours, my companion became impatient, mounted his horse again, and rode off down the river to see if he could discover our people. I felt so marode yet, that it was a horrible idea to me to bestride that saddle again; so I lay still. I knew they could not come any other way, and then my companion, one of the best men of the company, would not abandon me. The sun went down; he did not come. Uneasy I did not feel, but very hungry; I had no provisions, but I could make a fire; and as I espied two doves in a tree, I tried to kill one; but it needs a better marksman than myself to kill a little bird with a rifle. I made a large fire, however, lighted my pipe—this true friend of mine in every emergency—lay down, and let my thoughts wander to the far east. It was not many minutes after when I heard the tramp of a horse, and my faithful companion was by my side. He had found the party, who had been delayed by making their cache, about seven miles below. To the good supper which he brought with him I did ample justice. He had forgotten salt, and I tried the soldier's substitute in time of war, and used gunpowder; but it answered badly—bitter enough, but no flavor of kitchen salt. I slept well; and was only disturbed by two owls, which were attracted by the fire, and took their place in the tree under which we slept. Their music seemed as disagreeable to my companion as to myself; he fired his rifle twice, and then they let us alone.

"July 7.—At about 10 o'clock, the party arrived; and we continued our journey through a country which offered but little interest to the traveller. The soil was much more sandy than in the valley below the confluence of the forks, and the face of the country no longer presented the refreshing green which had hitherto characterized it. The rich grass was now found only in dispersed spots, on low grounds, and on the bottom land of the streams. A long drought, joined to extreme heat, had so parched up the upper prairies, that they were in many places bald, or covered only with a thin growth of yellow and poor grass. The nature of the soil renders it extremely susceptible to the vicissitudes of the climate. Between the forks, and from their junction to the Black hills, the formation consists of marl and a soft earthy limestone, with granitic sandstone. Such a formation cannot give rise to a sterile soil; and, on our return in September, when the country had been watered by frequent rains, the valley of the Platte looked like a garden; so rich was the verdure of the grasses, and so luxuriant the bloom of abundant flowers. The wild sage begins to make its appearance, and timber is so scarce that we generally made our fires of the *bois de vache*. With the exception of now and then an isolated tree or two, standing like a light-house on the river bank, there is none whatever to be seen.

"July 8.—Our road to-day was a solitary one. No game made its appearance—not even a buffalo or a stray antelope; and nothing occurred to break the monotony until about 5 o'clock, when the caravan made a sudden halt. There was a galloping in of scouts and horsemen from every side—a hurrying to and fro in noisy confusion; rifles were taken from their cover; bullet pouches examined: in short, there was the cry of 'Indians,' heard again. I had become so much accustomed to these alarms, that now they made but little impression on me; and before I had time to become excited, the new comers were ascertained to be whites. It was a large party of traders and trappers, conducted by Mr. Bridger, a man well known in the history of the country. As the sun was low, and there was a fine grass patch not far ahead, they turned back and encamped for the night with us. Mr. Bridger was invited to supper; and, after the *table cloth* was removed, we listened with eager interest to an account of their adventures. What they had met, we would be likely to encounter; the chances which had befallen them, would probably happen to us; and we looked upon their life as a picture of our own. He informed us that the condition of the country had become exceedingly dangerous. The Sioux, who had been

badly disposed, had broken out into open hostility, and in the preceding autumn his party had encountered them in a severe engagement, in which a number of lives had been lost on both sides. United with the Cheyenne and Gros Ventre Indians, they were scouring the upper country in war parties of great force, and were at this time in the neighborhood of the *Red Buttes*, a famous landmark, which was directly on our path. They had declared war upon every living thing which should be found westward of that point; though their main object was to attack a large camp of whites and Snake Indians, who had a rendezvous in the Sweet Water valley. Availing himself of his intimate knowledge of the country, he had reached Laramie by an unusual route through the Black hills, and avoided coming into contact with any of the scattered parties. This gentleman offered his services to accompany us so far as the head of the Sweet Water; but the absence of our leader, which was deeply regretted by us all, rendered it impossible for us to enter upon such arrangements. In a camp consisting of men whose lives had been spent in this country, I expected to find every one prepared for occurrences of this nature; but, to my great surprise, I found, on the contrary, that this news had thrown them all into the greatest consternation; and, on every side, I heard only one exclamation, '*Il n'y aura pas de vie pour nous.*' All the night, scattered groups were assembled around the fires, smoking their pipes, and listening with the greatest eagerness to exaggerated details of Indian hostilities; and in the morning I found the camp dispirited, and agitated by a variety of conflicting opinions. A majority of the people were strongly disposed to return; but Clément Lambert, with some five or six others, professed their determination to follow Mr. Fremont to the uttermost limit of his journey. The others yielded to their remonstrances, and, somewhat ashamed of their cowardice, concluded to advance at least so far as Laramie fork, eastward of which they were aware no danger was to be apprehended. Notwithstanding the confusion and excitement, we were very early on the road, as the days were extremely hot, and we were anxious to profit by the freshness of the morning. The soft marly formation, over which we were now journeying, frequently offers to the traveller views of remarkable and picturesque beauty. To several of these localities, where the winds and the rain have worked the bluffs into curious shapes, the voyageurs have given names according to some fancied resemblance. One of these, called the *Court-house*, we passed about six miles from our encampment of last night, and toward noon came in sight of the

broken out into open preceding autumn his them in a severe ena number of lives had sides. United with the Ventro Indians, they per country in war and were at this time in the *Red Buttes*, a fa- ch was directly on our elared war upon every ould be found westward h their main object was p of whites and Snake endevous in the Sweet ling himself of his inti- the country, he had n unusual route through avoided coming into the scattered parties. red his services to ac- the head of the Sweet nee of our leader, which l by us all, rendered it o enter upon such ar- ramp consisting of men n spent in this country, ery one prepared for oc- ture; but, to my great the contrary, that this m all into the greatest on every side, I heard s, ' *Il n'y aura pas de vie* night, scattered groups and the fires, smoking ning with the greatest rated details of Indian e morning I found the agitated by a variety of A majority of the peo- isposed to return; but ith some five or six oth- letermination to follow uttermost limit of his rs yielded to their re- somewhat ashamed of eluded to advance at amie fork, eastward of are no danger was to be ithstanding the confu- we were very early on ys were extremely hot, s to profit by the fresh- The soft marly form- were now journeying, e traveller views of re- sse beauty. To seve- s, where the winds and l the bluffs into curious s have given names ac- ed resemblance. One *Court-house*, we passed our encampment of last on came in sight of the

celebrated *Chimney rock*. It looks, at this distance of about thirty miles, like what is called—the long chimney of a steam factory establishment, or a shot tower in Baltimore. Nothing occurred to interrupt the quiet of the day, and we encamped on the river, after a march of twenty-four miles. Buffalo had become very scarce, and but one cow had been killed, of which the meat had been cut into thin slices and hung around the carts to dry.

"July 10.—We continued along the same fine plainly beaten road, which the smooth surface of the country afforded us, for a distance of six hundred and thirty miles, from the frontiers of Missouri to the Laramie fork. In the course of the day we met some whites, who were following along in the train of Mr. Bridger; and, after a day's journey of twenty-four miles, encamped about sunset at the Chimney rock. It consists of marl and earthy limestone, and the weather is rapidly diminishing its height, which is now not more than two hundred feet above the river. Travellers who visited it some years since placed its height at upwards of 500 feet.

"July 11.—The valley of the North fork is of a variable breadth, from one to four, and sometimes six miles. Fifteen miles from the Chimney rock we reached one of those places where the river strikes the bluffs, and forces the road to make a considerable circuit over the uplands. This presented an escarpment on the river of about nine hundred yards in length, and is familiarly known as Scott's bluffs. We had made a journey of thirty miles before we again struck the river, at a place where some scanty grass afforded an insufficient pasturage to our animals. About twenty miles from the Chimney rock we had found a very beautiful spring of excellent and cold water; but it was in such a deep ravine, and so small, that the animals could not profit by it, and we therefore halted only a few minutes, and found a resting place ten miles further on. The plain between Scott's bluffs and Chimney rock was almost entirely covered with drift wood, consisting principally of cedar, which we were informed, had been supplied from the Black hills, in a flood five or six years since.

"July 12.—Nine miles from our encampment of yesterday we crossed Horse creek, a shallow stream of clear water, about seventy yards wide, falling into the Platte on the right bank. It was lightly timbered, and great quantities of drift wood were piled up on the banks, appearing to be supplied by the creek from above. After a journey of twenty-six miles, we encamped on a rich bottom, which afforded fine grass to our animals. Buffalo have entirely disappeared, and we live now upon the dried meat, which

is exceedingly poor food. The marl and earthy limestone, which constituted the formation for several days past, had changed during the day into a compact white or greyish white limestone, sometimes containing hornstone; and at the place of our encampment this evening, some strata in the river hills cropped out to the height of thirty or forty feet, consisting of a fine-grained granitic sandstone; one of the strata closely resembling gneiss.

"July 13.—To-day, about 4 o'clock, we reached Fort Laramie, where we were cordially received; we pitched our camp a little above the fort, on the bank of the Laramie river, in which the pure and clear water of the mountain stream looked refreshingly cool, and made a pleasant contrast to the muddy, yellow waters of the Platte."

I walked up to visit our friends at the fort, which is a quadrangular structure, built of clay, after the fashion of the Mexicans, who are generally employed in building them. The walls are about fifteen feet high, surmounted with a wooden palisade, and form a portion of ranges of houses, which entirely surround a yard of about one hundred and thirty feet square. Every apartment has its door and window—all, of course, opening on the inside. There are two entrances, opposite each other, and midway the wall, one of which is a large and public entrance; the other smaller and more private—a sort of postern gate. Over the great entrance is a square tower with loopholes, and, like the rest of the work, built of earth. At two of the angles, and diagonally opposite each other, are large square bastions, so arranged as to sweep the four faces of the walls.

This post belongs to the American Fur Company, and, at the time of our visit, was in charge of Mr. Boudeau. Two of the company's clerks, Messrs. Galpin and Kellogg, were with him, and he had in the fort about sixteen men. As usual, these had found wives among the Indian squaws; and, with the usual accompaniment of children, the place had quite a populous appearance. It is hardly necessary to say, that the object of the establishment is trade with the neighboring tribes, *viz.*, in the course of the year, generally make two or three visits to the fort. In addition to this, traders, with a small outfit, are constantly kept amongst them. The articles of trade consist, on the one side, almost entirely of buffalo robes; and, on the other, of blankets, calicoes, guns, powder and lead, with such cheap ornaments as glass beads, looking-glasses, rings, vermilion for painting, tobacco, and principally, and in spite of the prohibition, of spirits, brought into the country in the form of alcohol, and diluted with water before sold. While mentioning this fact, it is but

justice to the American Fur Company to state, that, throughout the country, I have always found them strenuously opposed to the introduction of spirituous liquors. But, in the present state of things, when the country is supplied with alcohol, when a keg of it will purchase from an Indian everything he possesses—his furs, his lodge, his horses, and even his wife and children—and when any vagabond who has money enough to purchase a mule can go into a village and trade against them successfully, without withdrawing entirely from the trade, it is impossible for them to discontinue its use. In their opposition to this practice, the company is sustained, not only by their obligation to the laws of the country and the welfare of the Indians, but clearly, also, on grounds of policy; for, with heavy and expensive outfits, they contend at manifestly great disadvantage against the numerous independent and unlicensed traders, who enter the country from various avenues, from the United States and from Mexico, having no other stock in trade than some kegs of liquor, which they sell at the modest price of thirty-six dollars per gallon. The difference between the regular trader and the *coureur des bois* (as the French call the itinerant or peddling traders), with respect to the sale of spirits, is here, as it always has been, fixed and permanent, and growing out of the nature of their trade. The regular trader looks ahead, and has an interest in the preservation of the Indians, and in the regular pursuit of their business, and the preservation of their arms, horses, and everything necessary to their future and permanent success in hunting: the *coureur des bois* has no permanent interest, and gets what he can, and for what he can, from every Indian he meets, even at the risk of disabling him from doing anything more at hunting.

The fort had a very cool and clean appearance. The great entrance, in which I found the gentlemen assembled, and which was floored, and about fifteen feet long, made a pleasant, shaded seat, through which the breeze swept constantly; for this country is famous for high winds. In the course of conversation, I learned the following particulars, which will explain the condition of the country: For several years the Cheyennes and Sioux had gradually become more and more hostile to the whites, and in the latter part of August, 1841, had had a rather severe engagement with a party of sixty men, under the command of Mr. Frapp, of St. Louis. The Indians lost eight or ten warriors, and the whites had their leader and four men killed. This fight took place on the waters of Snake river; and it was this party, on their return under Mr. Bridger, which had spread so much alarm among my

people. In the course of the spring, two other small parties had been cut off by the Sioux—one on their return from the Crow nation, and the other among the Black hills. The emigrants to Oregon and Mr. Bridger's party met here, a few days before our arrival. Divisions and misunderstandings had grown up among them; they were already somewhat disheartened by the fatigue of their long and wearisome journey, and the feet of their cattle had become so much worn as to be scarcely able to travel. In this situation, they were not likely to find encouragement in the hostile attitude of the Indians, and the new and unexpected difficulties which sprang up before them. They were told that the country was entirely swept of grass, and that few or no buffaloes were to be found on their line of route; and, with their weakened animals, it would be impossible for them to transport their heavy wagons over the mountains. Under these circumstances, they disposed of their wagons and cattle at the forts; selling them at the prices they had paid in the States, and taking in exchange coffee and sugar at one dollar a pound, and miserable worn-out horses, which died before they reached the mountains. Mr. Boudreau informed me that he had purchased thirty, and the lower fort eighty head of fine cattle, some of them of the Durham breed. Mr. Fitzpatrick, whose name and high reputation are familiar to all who interest themselves in the history of this country, had reached Laramie in company with Mr. Bridger; and the emigrants were fortunate enough to obtain his services to guide them as far as the British post of Fort Hall, about two hundred and fifty miles beyond the South Pass of the mountains. They had started for this post on the 4th of July, and immediately after their departure, a war party of three hundred and fifty braves set out upon their trail. As their principal chief or partisan had lost some relations in the recent fight, and had sworn to kill the first whites on his path, it was supposed that their intention was to attack the party, should a favorable opportunity offer; or, if they were foiled in their principal object by the vigilance of Mr. Fitzpatrick, content themselves with stealing horses and cutting off stragglers. These had been gone but a few days previous to our arrival.

The effect of the engagement with Mr. Frapp had been greatly to irritate the hostile spirit of the savages; and immediately subsequent to that event, the Gross Ventre Indians had united with the Oglallahs and Cheyennes, and taken the field in great force—so far as I could ascertain, to the amount of eight hundred lodges. Their object was to make an attack on a camp of Snake and Crow Indians, and a body of

rise of the spring, two had been cut off by the return from the Crow among the Black hills. and Mr. Bridger's few days before our arrival; misunderstandings had them; they were already tired by the fatigue of a long journey, and they had become so much unable to travel. It was not likely to find the hostile attitude of the few and unexpected difficulties up before them. The country was entirely that few or no buffalo their line of route; and animals, it would be to transport their heavy mountains. Under these disposed of their wagons and selling them at the States, and taking and sugar at one miserable worn-out horses, they reached the mountain informed me that he, and the lower fort cattle, some of them of Mr. Fitzpatrick, whose are familiar to all selves in the history of Laramie in company; and the emigrants to obtain his services as the British post of hundred and fifty miles Pass of the mountains. r this post on the 4th of after their departure, three hundred and fifty n their trail. As their artisan had lost some fight, and had sworn to on his path, it was supposition was to attack the orable opportunity offer; led in their principal ob- of Mr. Fitzpatrick, con- th stealing horses and s. These had been gone ous to our arrival. o engagement with Mr. atly to irritate the hostile s; and immediately sub- t, the Gros Ventre In- with the Oglallahs and ken the field in great could ascertain, to the adred lodges. Their ob- an attack on a camp of ndians, and a body of

about one hundred whites, who had made a rendezvous somewhere in the Green river valley, or on the Sweet Water. After spending some time in buffalo hunting in the neighborhood of the Medicine Bow mountain, they were to cross over to the Green river waters, and return to Laramie by way of the South Pass and the Sweet Water valley. According to the calculation of the Indians, Mr. Boudeau informed me they were somewhere near the head of the Sweet Water. I subsequently learned that the party led by Mr. Fitzpatrick were overtaken by their pursuers near Rock Independence, in the valley of the Sweet Water; but his skill and resolution saved them from surprise, and, small as his force was, they did not venture to attack him openly. Here they lost one of their party by an accident, and, continuing up the valley, they came suddenly upon the large village. From these they met with a doubtful reception. Long residence and familiar acquaintance had given to Mr. Fitzpatrick great personal influence among them, and a portion of them were disposed to let him pass quietly; but by far the greater number were inclined to hostile measures; and the chiefs spent the whole of one night, during which they kept the little party in the midst of them, in council, debating the question of attacking them the next day; but the influence of "the Broken Hand," as they called Mr. Fitzpatrick (one of his hands having been shattered by the bursting of a gun), at length prevailed, and obtained for them an unobscured passage; but they sternly assured him that this path was no longer open, and that any party of whites which should hereafter be found upon it would meet with certain destruction. From all that I have been able to learn, I have no doubt that the emigrants owe their lives to Mr. Fitzpatrick.

Thus it would appear that the country was swarming with scattered war parties; and when I heard, during the day, the various contradictory and exaggerated rumors which were incessantly repeated to them, I was not surprised that so much alarm prevailed among my men. Carson, one of the best and most experienced mountaineers, fully supported the opinion given by Bridger of the dangerous state of the country, and openly expressed his conviction that we could not escape without some sharp encounters with the Indians. In addition to this, he made his will; and among the circumstances which were constantly occurring to increase their alarm, this was the most unfortunate; and I found that a number of my party had become so much intimidated, that they had requested to be discharged at this place. I dined to-day at Fort Platte, which has been mentioned as situated at the

junction of Laramie river with the Nebraska. Here I heard a confirmation of the statements given above. The party of warriors, which had started a few days since on the trail of the emigrants, was expected back in fourteen days, to join the village with which their families and the old men had remained. The arrival of the latter was hourly expected; and some Indians have just come in who had left them on the Laramie fork, about twenty miles above. Mr. Bissonette, one of the traders belonging to Fort Platte, urged the propriety of taking with me an interpreter and two or three old men of the village; in which case, he thought there would be little or no hazard in encountering any of the war parties. The principal danger was in being attacked before they should know who we were.

They had a confused idea of the numbers and power of our people, and dreaded to bring upon themselves the military force of the United States. This gentleman, who spoke the language fluently, offered his services to accompany me so far as the Red Buttes. He was desirous to join the large party on its return, for purposes of trade, and it would suit his views, as well as my own, to go with us to the Buttes; beyond which point it would be impossible to prevail on a Sioux to venture, on account of their fear of the Crows. From Fort Laramie to the Red Buttes, by the ordinary road, is one hundred and thirty-five miles; and, though only on the threshold of danger, it seemed better to secure the services of an interpreter for the partial distance, than to have none at all.

So far as frequent interruption from the Indians would allow, we occupied ourselves in making some astronomical calculations, and bringing up the general map to this stage of our journey; but the tent was generally occupied by a succession of our ceremonious visitors. Some came for presents, and others for information of our object in coming to the country; now and then, one would dart up to the tent on horseback, jerk off his trappings, and stand silently at the door, holding his horse by the halter, signifying his desire to trade. Occasionally a savage would stalk in with an invitation to a feast of honor, a dog feast, and deliberately sit down and wait quietly until I was ready to accompany him. I went to one; the women and children were sitting outside the lodge, and we took our seats on buffalo robes spread around. The dog was in a large pot over the fire, in the middle of the lodge, and immediately on our arrival was dished up in large wooden bowls, one of which was handed to each. The flesh appeared very glutinous, with something of the flavor and appearance of mutton. Feeling something move behind me, I looked round,

and found that I had taken my seat among a litter of fat young puppies. Had I been wise in such matters, the prejudices of civilisation might have interfered with my tranquillity; but, fortunately, I am not of delicate nerves, and continued quietly to empty my platter.

The weather was cloudy at evening, with a moderate south wind, and the thermometer at 6 o'clock 85°. I was disappointed in my hope of obtaining an observation of an occultation, which took place about midnight. The moon brought with her heavy banks of clouds, through which she scarcely made her appearance during the night.

The morning of the 18th was cloudy and calm, the thermometer at 6 o'clock at 64°. About 9, with a moderate wind from the west, a storm of rain came on, accompanied by sharp thunder and lightning, which lasted about an hour. During the day the expected village arrived, consisting principally of old men, women, and children. They had a considerable number of horses, and large troops of dogs. Their lodges were pitched near the fort, and our camp was constantly crowded with Indians of all sizes, from morning until night; at which time some of the soldiers generally came to drive them all off to the village. My tent was the only place which they respected. Here only came the chiefs and men of distinction, and generally one of them remained to drive away the women and children. The numerous strange instruments, applied to still stranger uses, excited awe and admiration among them, and those which I used in talking with the sun and stars they looked upon with especial reverence, as mysterious things of "great medicine." Of the three barometers which I had brought with me thus far successfully, I found that two were out of order, and spent the greater part of the 19th in repairing them—an operation of no small difficulty in the midst of the incessant interruptions to which I was subjected. We had the misfortune to break here a large thermometer, graduated to show fifths of a degree, which I used to ascertain the temperature of boiling water, and with which I had promised myself some interesting experiments in the mountains. We had but one remaining, on which the graduation extended sufficiently high; and this was too small for exact observations. During our stay here, the men had been engaged in making numerous repairs, arranging pack-saddles, and otherwise preparing for the chances of a rough road and mountain travel. All things of this nature being ready, I gathered them around me in the evening, and told them that "I had determined to proceed the next day. They were all well armed. I had engaged the services of Mr. Bissonette as interpreter, and

had taken, in the circumstances, every possible means to insure our safety. In the rumors we had heard, I believed there was much exaggeration, and then they were men accustomed to this kind of life and to the country; and that these were the dangers of every day occurrence, and to be expected in the ordinary course of their service. They had heard of the unsettled condition of the country before leaving St. Louis, and therefore could not make it a reason for breaking their engagements. Still, I was unwilling to take with me, on a service of some certain danger, men on whom I could not rely; and as I had understood that there were among them some who were disposed to cowardice, and anxious to return, they had but to come forward at once, and state their desire, and they would be discharged with the amount due to them for the time they had served." To their honor be it said, there was but one among them who had the face to come forward and avail himself of the permission. I asked him some few questions, in order to expose him to the ridicule of the men, and let him go. The day after our departure, he engaged himself to one of the forts, and set off with a party to the Upper Missouri. I did not think that the situation of the country justified me in taking our young companions, Messrs. Brant and Benton, along with us. In case of misfortune, it would have been thought, at the least, an act of great imprudence; and therefore, though reluctantly, I determined to leave them. Randolph had been the life of the camp, and the "*petit garçon*" was much regretted by the men, to whom his buoyant spirits had afforded great amusement. They all, however, agreed in the propriety of leaving him at the fort, because, as they said, he might cost the lives of some of the men in a fight with the Indians.

July 21.—A portion of our baggage, with our field notes and observations, and several instruments, were left at the fort. One of the gentlemen, Mr. Galpin, took charge of a barometer, which he engaged to observe during my absence; and I entrusted to Randolph, by way of occupation, the regular winding up of two of my chronometers, which were among the instruments left. Our observations showed that the chronometer which I retained for the continuation of our voyage had preserved its rate in a most satisfactory manner. As deduced from it, the longitude of Fort Laramie is 7h. 01' 21", and from lunar distance 7h. 01' 29"; giving for the adopted longitude 104° 47' 43". Comparing the barometrical observations made during our stay here, with those of Dr. G. Engleman at St. Louis, we find for the elevation of the fort above the Gulf of Mexico 4,470 feet. The winter climate here is re-

mark
weat
brate
is we
south
acco

W
struc
saddl
the s
lent
pleas
cool
had l
from
of th
their
sitio
they

"
blés
de n
le pe
solen
qu'il
pren
tour
vous
qu'i
ger.
teur
part
"

"
de l
Noi

"
sem
was
you
tur
are
as
in
ma
dut
chi
tho
thi
"

H
Ni

circumstances, every possible means for our safety. In the morning, I believed there was a storm, and then they were men of a different kind of life and to the westward these were the dangers of the season, and to be expected in the course of their service. They were in a unsettled condition of the mind, and therefore St. Louis, and therefore it was a reason for breaking up.

Still, I was unwilling to leave a service of some certainty, in whom I could not rely; and I understood that there were some who were disposed to return, they had been at once, and state their own affairs could be discharged with them for the time they had spent. Their honor be it said, there were some who had the face to avail himself of the permission to ask some few questions, and to him to the ridicule of the others. The day after our departure I engaged myself to one of the party with a party to the Upper Missouri, and did not think that the situation justified me in taking leave of them, Messrs. Brant and others. In case of misfortune, I have been thought, at the time of my imprudence; and there-fore, I determined to avail myself of the life of the "petit garçon" was much to him, to whom his buoyant spirit afforded great amusement. They were in the propriety of leaving because, as they said, he was one of the men in the party.

On the morning of our baggage, with several observations, and several left at the fort. One of the men, Galpin, took charge of a party engaged to observe the country; and I entrusted to Ran-son the regular occupation, the regular occupation of my chronometers, which instruments are left. Our observations that the chronometer was in the continuation of our observations, and its rate in a most satisfactory manner.

As deduced from it, the longitude is 7h. 01' 21", and the latitude 7h. 01' 29"; giving a longitude of 104° 47' 43". The astronomical observations were made here, with those of Dr. Lewis, we find for the elevation of the Gulf of Mexico the climate here is re-

markably mild for the latitude; but rainy weather is frequent, and the place is celebrated for winds, of which the prevailing one is west. An east wind in summer, and a south wind in winter, are said to be always accompanied with rain.

We were ready to depart; the tents were struck, the mules geared up, and our horses saddled, and we walked up to the fort to take the *stirrup cup* with our friends in an excellent home-brewed preparation. While thus pleasantly engaged, seated in one of the little cool chambers, at the door of which a man had been stationed to prevent all intrusion from the Indians, a number of chiefs, several of them powerful fine-looking men, forced their way into the room in spite of all opposition. Handing me the following letter, they took their seats in silence:

"FORT PLATTE, *Juillet 1, 1842.*

"MR. FREMONT: Les chefs s'étant assemblés présentement me disent de vous avertir de ne point vous mettre en route, avant que le parti de jeunes gens, qui est en dehors, soient de retour. De plus, ils me disent qu'ils sont très certains qu'ils feront feu à la première rencontre. Ils doivent être de retour dans sept à huit jours. Excusez si je vous fais ces observations, mais il me semble qu'il est mon devoir de vous avertir du danger. Même de plus, les chefs sont les porteurs de ce billet, qui vous défendent de partir avant le retour des guerriers.

"Je suis votre obéissant serviteur,

"JOSEPH BISSONETTE,

"Par L. B. CHARTRAIN.

"Les noms de quelques chefs.—Le Chapeau de Loure, le Casseur de Flèches, la Nuit Noire, la Queue de Beuf."

[Translation.]

"FORT PLATTE, *July 1, 1842.*

"MR. FREMONT: The chiefs, having assembled in council, have just told me to warn you not to set out before the party of young men which is now out shall have returned. Furthermore, they tell me that they are very sure they will fire upon you as soon as they meet you. They are expected back in seven or eight days. Excuse me for making these observations, but it seems my duty to warn you of danger. Moreover, the chiefs who prohibit your setting out before the return of the warriors are the bearers of this note.

"I am your obedient servant,

"JOSEPH BISSONETTE,

"By: L. B. CHARTRAIN.

"Names of some of the chiefs.—The Otter Hat, the Breaker of Arrows, the Black Night, the Bull's Tail."

After reading this, I mentioned its purport to my companions; and, seeing that all were fully possessed of its contents, one of the Indians rose up, and, having first shaken hands with me, spoke as follows:

"You have come among us at a bad time. Some of our people have been killed, and our young men, who are gone to the mountains, are eager to avenge the blood of their relations, which has been shed by the whites. Our young men are bad, and, if they meet you, they will believe that you are carrying goods and ammunition to their enemies, and will fire upon you. You have told us that this will make war. We know that our great father has many soldiers and big guns, and we are anxious to have our lives. We love the whites, and are desirous of peace. Thinking of all these things, we have determined to keep you here until our warriors return. We are glad to see you among us. Our father is rich, and we expected that you would have brought presents to us—horses, guns, and blankets. But we are glad to see you. We look upon your coming as the light which goes before the sun; for you will tell our great father that you have seen us, and that we are naked and poor, and have nothing to eat; and he will send us all these things." He was followed by the others, to the same effect.

The observations of the savage appeared reasonable; but I was aware that they had in view only the present object of detaining me, and were unwilling I should go further into the country. In reply, I asked them, through the interpretation of Mr. Boudeau, to select two or three of their number to accompany us until we should meet their people—they should spread their robes in my tent and eat at my table, and on our return I would give them presents in reward of their services. They declined, saying that there were no young men left in the village, and that they were too old to travel so many days on horseback, and preferred now to smoke their pipes in the lodge, and let the warriors go on the war path. Besides, they had no power over the young men, and were afraid to interfere with them. In my turn I addressed them: "You say that you love the whites; why have you killed so many already this spring? You say that you love the whites, and are full of many expressions of friendship to us; but you are not willing to undergo the fatigue of a few days' ride to save our lives. We do not believe what you have said, and will not listen to you. Whatever a chief among us tells his soldiers to do, is done. We are the soldiers of the great chief, your father. He has told us to come here and see this country, and all the Indians, his children. Why should we not go? Before we came, we heard that you had killed the

people, and ceased to be his children; but we came among you peaceably, holding out our hands. Now we find that the stories we heard are not lies, and that you are no longer his friends and children. We have thrown away our bodies, and will not turn back. When you told us that your young men would kill us, you did not know that our hearts were strong, and you did not see the rifles which my young men carry in their hands. We are few, and you are many, and may kill us all; but there will be much crying in your villages, for many of your young men will stay behind, and forget to return with your warriors from the mountains. Do you think that our great chief will let his soldiers die, and forget to cover their graves? Before the snows melt again, his warriors will sweep away your villages as the fire does the prairie in the autumn. See! I have pulled down my *white houses*, and my people are ready: when the sun is ten paces higher, we shall be on the march. If you have anything to tell us, you will say it soon." I broke up the conference, as I could do nothing with these people; and, being resolved to proceed, nothing was to be gained by delay. Accompanied by our hospitable friends, we returned to the camp. We had mounted our horses, and our parting salutations had been exchanged, when one of the chiefs (the Bull's Tail) arrived to tell me that they had determined to send a young man with us; and if I would point out the place of our evening camp, he should join us there. "The young man is poor," said he; "he has no horse, and expects you to give him one." I described to him the place where I intended to encamp, and, shaking hands, in a few minutes we were among the hills, and this last habitation of whites shut out from our view.

The road led over an interesting plateau between the North fork of the Platte on the right, and Laramie river on the left. At the distance of ten miles from the fort, we entered the sandy bed of a creek, a kind of defile, shaded by precipitous rocks, down which we wound our way for several hundred yards, to a place where, on the left bank, a very large spring gushes with considerable noise and force out of the limestone rock. It is called "the Warm Spring," and furnishes to the hitherto dry bed of the creek a considerable rivulet. On the opposite side, a little below the spring, is a lofty limestone escarpment, partially shaped by a grove of large trees, whose green foliage, in contrast with the whiteness of the rock, renders this a picturesque locality. The rock is fossiliferous, and, so far as I was able to determine the character of the fossils, belongs to the carboniferous limestone of the Missouri river, and is probably the western limit of that for-

mation. Beyond this point I met with no fossils of any description.

I was desirous to visit the Platte near the point where it leaves the Black hills, and therefore followed this stream, for two or three miles, to the mouth; where I encamped on a spot which afforded good grass and *prêle* (*equisetum*) for our animals. Our tents having been found too thin to protect ourselves and the instruments from the rains, which in this elevated country are attended with cold and unpleasant weather, I had procured from the Indians at Laramie a tolerably large lodge, about eighteen feet in diameter, and twenty feet in height. Such a lodge, when properly pitched, is, from its conical form, almost perfectly secure against the violent winds which are frequent in this region, and, with a fire in the centre, is a dry and warm shelter in bad weather. By raising the lower part, so as to permit the breeze to pass freely, it is converted into a pleasant summer residence, with the extraordinary advantage of being entirely free from mosquitoes, one of which I have never seen in an Indian lodge. While we were engaged very unskillfully in erecting this, the interpreter, Mr. Bissonette, arrived, accompanied by the Indian and his wife. She laughed at our awkwardness, and offered her assistance, of which we were frequently afterward obliged to avail ourselves, before the men acquired sufficient experience to pitch it without difficulty. From this place we had a fine view of the gorge where the Platte issues from the Black hills, changing its character abruptly from a mountain stream into a river of the plains. Immediately around us the valley of the stream was tolerably open; and at the distance of a few miles, where the river had cut its way through the hills, was the narrow cleft, on one side of which a lofty precipice of bright red rock rose vertically above the low hills which lay between us.

July 22.—In the morning, while breakfast was being prepared, I visited this place with my favorite man, Basil Lajeunesse. Entering so far as there was footing for the mules, we dismounted, and, tying our animals, continued our way on foot. Like the whole country, the scenery of the river had undergone an entire change, and was in this place the most beautiful I have ever seen. The breadth of the stream, generally near that of its valley, was from two to three hundred feet, with a swift current, occasionally broken by rapids, and the water perfectly clear. On either side rose the red precipices, vertical, and sometimes overhanging, two and four hundred feet in height, crowned with green summits, on which were scattered a few pines. At the foot of the rocks was the usual detritus, formed of masses fallen from

at this point I met with no objection.

I visited the Platte near the mouth of the Black hills, and this stream, for two or three miles; where I encamped, afforded good grass and water for our animals. Our tents were pitched too thin to protect our persons from the rains, and the country around us attended to the weather, I had provisions at Laramie a tolerable quantity in height. Such a camp is, from its position, perfectly secure against fire, which are frequent in this country in bad weather. By a slight alteration, so as to permit the tents to be pitched higher, it is converted into a residence, with the extra advantage of being entirely free from fire, which I have never seen.

While we were engaged in erecting this, the interpreter arrived, accompanied by his wife. She laughed at our offer of her assistance, and frequently afterward obliged me before the men acquired the art to pitch it without difficulty. We had a fine view of the Platte issues from the camp, its character abruptly changing into a river of the valley around us, the valley of the river is tolerably open; and at the distance of a few miles, where the river had a narrow channel, was the narrow precipice of which a lofty precipice rose vertically above the camp between us.

The morning, while breakfast was eating, I visited this place with a young man named Lajeunesse. Enterprising as he was, he was footing for the mules, and tying our animals, and a foot. Like the whole of the river had undergone, and was in this place I have ever seen. The camp, generally near that of two to three hundred feet, occasionally broken by water perfectly clear. On the red precipices, vertical, overhanging, two and four feet high, crowned with green grass were scattered a few of the rocks was the mass of masses fallen from

above. Among the pines that grew here, and on the occasional banks, were the cherry (*Cerasus virginiana*), currants, and grains of beef (*shepherdia argentea*). Viewed in the sunshine of a pleasant morning, the scenery was of a most striking and romantic beauty, which arose from the picturesque disposition of the objects, and the vivid contrast of colors. I thought with much pleasure of our approaching descent in the canoe through such interesting places; and, in the expectation of being able at that time to give to them a full examination, did not now dwell so much as might have been desirable upon the geological formations along the line of the river, where they are developed with great clearness. The upper portion of the red strata consists of very compact clay, in which are occasionally seen imbedded large pebbles. Below was a stratum of compact red sandstone, changing a little above the river into a very hard siliceous limestone. There is a small but handsome open prairie immediately below this place, on the left bank of the river, which would be a good locality for a military post. There are some open groves of cottonwood on the Platte. The small stream which comes in at this place is well timbered with pine, and good building rock is abundant.

If it is in contemplation to keep open the communications with Oregon territory, a show of military force in this country is absolutely necessary; and a combination of advantages renders the neighborhood of Fort Laramie the most suitable place, on the line of the Platte, for the establishment of a military post. It is connected with the mouth of the Platte and the Upper Missouri by excellent roads, which are in frequent use, and would not in any way interfere with the range of the buffalo, on which the neighboring Indians mainly depend for support. It would render any posts on the Lower Platte unnecessary; the ordinary communication between it and the Missouri being sufficient to control the intermediate Indians. It would operate effectually to prevent any such coalitions as are now formed among the Gros Ventres, Sioux, Cheyennes, and other Indians, and would keep the Oregon road through the valley of the Sweet Water and the South Pass of the mountains constantly open. It lies at the foot of a broken and mountainous region, along which, by the establishment of small posts in the neighborhood of St. Vrain's fort, on the South fork of the Platte, and Bent's fort, on the Arkansas, a line of communication would be formed, by good wagon roads, with our southern military posts, which would entirely command the mountain passes, hold some of the most troublesome tribes in check, and protect and facilitate our intercourse with the neighboring Spanish settlements. The valleys of the

river on which they would be situated are fertile; the country, which supports immense herds of buffalo, is admirably adapted to grazing; and herds of cattle might be maintained by the posts, or obtained from the Spanish country, which already supplies a portion of their provisions to the trading posts mentioned above.

Just as we were leaving the camp this morning, our Indian came up, and stated his intention of not proceeding any further until he had seen the horse which I intended to give him. I felt strongly tempted to drive him out of the camp; but his presence appeared to give confidence to my men, and the interpreter thought it absolutely necessary. I was therefore obliged to do what he requested, and pointed out the animal, with which he seemed satisfied, and we continued our journey. I had imagined that Mr. Bissonette's long residence had made him acquainted with the country, and, according to his advice, proceeded directly forward, without attempting to regain the usual road. He afterward informed me that he had rarely ever lost sight of the fort; but the effect of the mistake was to involve us for a day or two among the hills, where, although we lost no time, we encountered an exceedingly rough road.

To the south, along our line of march today, the main chain of the Black or Laramie hills rises precipitously. Time did not permit me to visit them; but, from comparative information, the ridge is composed of the coarse sandstone or conglomerate hereafter described. It appears to enter the region of clouds, which are arrested in their course, and lie in masses along the summits. An inverted cone of black cloud (cumulus) rested during all the forenoon on the lofty peak of Laramie mountain, which I estimated to be about two thousand feet above the fort, or six thousand five hundred above the sea. We halted to noon on the *Fourche Amère*, so called from being timbered principally with the *liard amère* (a species of poplar), with which the valley of the little stream is tolerably well wooded, and which, with large expansive summits, grows to the height of sixty or seventy feet.

The bed of the creek is sand and gravel, the water dispersed over the broad bed in several shallow streams. We found here, on the right bank, in the shade of the trees, a fine spring of very cold water. It will be remarked that I do not mention, in this portion of the journey, the temperature of the air, sand, springs, &c.—an omission which will be explained in the course of the narrative. In my search for plants, I was well rewarded at this place.

With the change in the geological formation on leaving Fort Laramie, the whole face

of the country has entirely altered its appearance. Eastward of that meridian, the principal objects which strike the eye of a traveller are the absence of timber, and the immense expanse of prairie, covered with the verdure of rich grasses, and highly adapted for pasturage. Wherever they are not disturbed by the vicinity of man, large herds of buffalo give animation to this country. Westward of Laramie river, the region is sandy, and apparently sterile; and the place of the grass is usurped by the *artemisia* and other odoriferous plants, to whose growth the sandy soil and dry air of this elevated region seem highly favorable.

One of the prominent characteristics in the face of the country is the extraordinary abundance of the *artemisia*s. They grow everywhere—on the hills, and over the river bottoms, in tough, twisted, wiry clumps; and, wherever the beaten track was left, they rendered the progress of the carts rough and slow. As the country increased in elevation on our advance to the west, they increased in size; and the whole air is strongly impregnated and saturated with the odor of camphor and spirits of turpentine which belongs to this plant. This climate has been found very favorable to the restoration of health, particularly in cases of consumption; and possibly the respiration of air so highly impregnated with aromatic plants may have some influence.

Our dried meat had given out, and we began to be in want of food; but one of the hunters killed an antelope this evening, which afforded some relief, although it did not go far among so many hungry men. At 8 o'clock at night, after a march of twenty-seven miles, we reached our proposed encampment on the *Fer-à-Cheval*, or Horse-shoe creek. Here we found good grass, with a great quantity of *prêle*, which furnished good food for our tired animals. This creek is well timbered, principally with *liard anère*, and, with the exception of Deer creek which we had not yet reached, is the largest affluent of the right bank between Laramie and the mouth of the Sweet Water.

July 23.—The present year had been one of unparalleled drought, and throughout the country the water had been almost dried up. By availing themselves of the annual rise, the traders had invariably succeeded in carrying their furs to the Missouri; but this season, as has already been mentioned, on both forks of the Platte they had entirely failed. The greater number of the springs, and many of the streams, which made halting places for the *voyageurs*, had been dried up. Everywhere the soil looked parched and burnt; the scanty yellow grass crisped under the foot, and even the hardiest plants were destroyed by want of moisture. I

think it necessary to mention this fact, because to the rapid evaporation in such an elevated region, nearly five thousand feet above the sea, almost wholly unprotected by timber, should be attributed much of the sterile appearance of the country, in the destruction of vegetation, and the numerous saline efflorescences which covered the ground. Such I afterward found to be the case.

I was informed that the roving villages of Indians and travellers had never met with difficulty in finding an abundance of grass for their horses; and now it was after great search that we were able to find a scanty patch of grass, sufficient to keep them from sinking; and in the course of a day or two they began to suffer very much. We found none to-day at noon; and, in the course of our search on the Platte, came to a grove of cotton-wood, where some Indian village had recently encamped. Boughs of the cotton-wood yet green covered the ground, which the Indians had cut down to feed their horses upon. It is only in the winter that recourse is had to this means of sustaining them; and their resort to it at this time was a striking evidence of the state of the country. We followed their example, and turned our horses into a grove of young poplars. This began to present itself as a very serious evil, for on our animals depended altogether the further prosecution of our journey.

Shortly after we had left this place, the scouts came galloping in with the alarm of Indians. We turned in immediately toward the river, which here had a steep high bank, where we formed with the carts a very close barricade, resting on the river, within which the animals were strongly hobbled and picketed. The guns were discharged and reloaded, and men thrown forward, under cover of the bank, in the direction by which the Indians were expected. Our interpreter, who, with the Indian, had gone to meet them, came in, in about ten minutes, accompanied by two Sioux. They looked sulky, and we could obtain from them only some confused information. We learned that they belonged to the party which had been on the trail of the emigrants, whom they had overtaken at Rock Independence, on the Sweet Water. Here the party had disagreed, and came nigh fighting among themselves. One portion were desirous of attacking the whites, but the others were opposed to it; and finally they had broken up into small bands, and dispersed over the country. The greater portion of them had gone over into the territory of the Crows, and intended to return by the way of the Wind river valley, in the hope of being able to fall upon some small parties of Crow Indians. The remainder were returning down the Platte, in scattered parties of

to mention this fact, be-
evaporation in such an
early five thousand feet
at wholly unprotected by
attributed much of the
of the country, in the de-
sion, and the numerous
s which covered the
terward found to be the

at the roving villages of
ers had never met with
an abundance of grass
d now it was after great
able to find a scanty
cient to keep them from
course of a day or two
very much. We found
; and, in the course of
atte, came to a grove of
some Indian village had
Boughs of the cotton-
covered the ground, which
down to feed their horses
the winter that recourse
us of sustaining them ;
at this time was a strike
e state of the country.
example, and turned our
of young poplars. This
self as a very serious evil,
depended altogether the
of our journey.

had left this place, the
ing in with the alarm of
d in immediately toward
e had a steep high bank,
with the carts a very close
n the river, within which
rongly hobbled and pick-
vere discharged and re-
own forward, under cover
e direction by which the
ected. Our interpreter,
n, had gone to meet them,
on minutes, accompanied
ey looked sulky, and we
hem only some confused
earned that they belonged
had been on the trail of
m they had overtaken at
e, on the Sweet Water.
ad disagreed, and came
g themselves. One por-
of attacking the whites,
ere opposed to it; and
ken up into small bands,
the country. The greater
gone over into the terri-
and intended to return by
d river valley, in the hope of
on some small parties of
e remainder were return-
e, in scattered parties of

ten and twenty; and those whom we had
encountered belonged to those who had ad-
vocated an attack on the emigrants. Sev-
eral of the men suggested shooting them on
the spot; but I promptly discountenanced
any such proceeding. They further inform-
ed me that buffalo were very scarce, and
little or no grass to be found. There had
been no rain, and innumerable quantities of
grasshoppers had destroyed the grass. The
insects had been so numerous since leaving
Fort Laramie, that the ground seemed alive
with them; and in walking, a little moving
cloud preceded our footsteps. This was bad
news. No grass, no buffalo—food for nei-
ther horse nor man. I gave them some
plugs of tobacco, and they went off, appar-
ently well satisfied to be clear of us; for
my men did not look upon them very loving-
ly, and they glanced suspiciously at our war-
like preparations, and the little ring of rifles
which surrounded them. They were evi-
dently in a bad humor, and shot one of their
horses when they had left us a short dis-
tance.

We continued our march, and, after a
journey of about twenty-one miles, encamped
on the Platte. During the day, I had occa-
sionally remarked among the hills the *psora-*
lea esculenta, the bread root of the Indians.
The Sioux use this root very extensively, and
I have frequently met with it among them,
cut into thin slices and dried. In the
course of the evening we were visited by six
Indians, who told us that a large party was
encamped a few miles above. Astronomical
observations placed us in longitude 104°
 $59' 59''$, and latitude $42^{\circ} 39' 25''$.

We made the next day twenty-two miles,
and encamped on the right bank of the
Platte, where a handsome meadow afforded
tolerably good grass. There were the re-
mains of an old fort here, thrown up in some
sudden emergency, and on the opposite side
was a picturesque bluff of ferruginous sand-
stone. There was a handsome grove a lit-
tle above, and scattered groups of trees bor-
dered the river. Buffalo made their appear-
ance this afternoon, and the hunters came in,
shortly after we had encamped, with three
fine cows. The night was fine, and obser-
vations gave for the latitude of the camp,
 $42^{\circ} 47' 40''$.

July 25.—We made but thirteen miles
this day, and encamped about noon in a
pleasant grove on the right bank. Low
scaffolds were erected, upon which the meat
was laid, cut up into thin strips, and small
fires kindled below. Our object was to profit
by the vicinity of the buffalo, to lay in a
stock of provisions for ten or fifteen days.
In the course of the afternoon the hunters
brought in five or six cows, and all hands
were kept busily employed in preparing the

meat, to the drying of which the guard at-
tended during the night. Our people had
recovered their gaiety, and the busy figures
around the blazing fires gave a picturesque
air to the camp. A very serious accident
occurred this morning, in the breaking of
one of the barometers. These had been the
object of my constant solicitude, and, as I
had intended them principally for mountain
service, I had used them as seldom as pos-
sible; taking them always down at night,
and on the occurrence of storms, in order to
lessen the chances of being broken. I was
reduced to one, a standard barometer of
Troughton's construction. This I deter-
mined to preserve, if possible. The latitude is
 $42^{\circ} 51' 35''$, and by a mean of the results
from chronometer and lunar distances, the
adopted longitude of this camp is $105^{\circ} 50'$
 $45''$.

July 26.—Early this morning we were
again in motion. We had a stock of pro-
visions for fifteen days carefully stored away
in the carts, and this I resolved should only
be encroached upon when our rifles should
fail to procure us present support. I de-
termined to reach the mountains, if it were
in any way possible. In the meantime, buf-
falo were plenty. In six miles from our
encampment (which, by way of distinction,
we shall call Dried Meat camp), we cross-
ed a handsome stream, called *La Fourche*
Boisé. It is well timbered, and, among the
flowers in bloom on its banks, I remarked
several *asters*.

Five miles further, we made our noon halt
on the banks of the Platte, in the shade of
some cotton-woods. There were here, as
generally now along the river, thickets of
hippocha, the *grains de bœuf* of the coun-
try. They were of two kinds—one bearing
a red berry (the *shepherdia argentia* of
Nuttall); the other a yellow berry, of
which the Tartars are said to make a kind
of rob.

By a meridian observation, the latitude of
the place was $42^{\circ} 50' 08''$. It was my daily
practice to take observations of the sun's
meridian altitude; and why they are not
given, will appear in the sequel. Eight
miles further we reached the mouth of Deer
creek, where we encamped. Here was an
abundance of rich grass, and our animals
were compensated for past privations. This
stream was at this time twenty feet broad,
and well timbered with cotton-wood of an
uncommon size. It is the largest tributary
of the Platte, between the mouth of the
Sweet Water and the Laramie. Our astro-
nomical observations gave for the mouth of
the stream a longitude of $106^{\circ} 08' 24''$, and
latitude $42^{\circ} 52' 24''$.

July 27.—Nothing worthy of mention oc-
curred on this day; we travelled later than

usual, having spent some time in searching for grass, crossing and re-crossing the river before we could find a sufficient quantity for our animals. Toward dusk, we encamped among some artemisia bushes, two and three feet in height, where some scattered patches of short tough grass afforded a scanty supply. In crossing, we had occasion to observe that the river was frequently too deep to be forded, though we always succeeded in finding a place where the water did not enter the carts. The stream continued very clear, with two or three hundred feet breadth of water, and the sandy bed and banks were frequently covered with large round pebbles. We had travelled this day twenty-seven miles. The main chain of the Black hills was here only about seven miles to the south, on the right bank of the river, rising abruptly to the height of eight and twelve hundred feet. Patches of green grass in the ravines on the steep sides marked the presence of springs, and the summits were clad with pines.

July 28.—In two miles from our encampment, we reached the place where the regular road crosses the Platte. There was two hundred feet breadth of water at this time in the bed, which has a variable width of eight to fifteen hundred feet. The channels were generally three feet deep, and there were large angular rocks on the bottom, which made the ford in some places a little difficult. Even at its low stages, this river cannot be crossed at random, and this has always been used as the best ford. The low stage of the waters the present year had made it fordable in almost any part of its course, where access could be had to its bed.

For the satisfaction of travellers, I will endeavor to give some description of the nature of the road from Laramie to this point. The nature of the soil may be inferred from its geological formation. The limestone at the eastern limit of this section is succeeded by limestone without fossils, a great variety of sandstone, consisting principally of red sandstone and fine conglomerates. The red sandstone is argillaceous, with compact white gypsum or alabaster, very beautiful. The other sandstones are grey, yellow, and ferruginous, sometimes very coarse. The apparent sterility of the country must therefore be sought for in other causes than the nature of the soil. The face of the country cannot with propriety be called hilly. It is a succession of long ridges, made by the numerous streams which come down from the neighboring mountain range. The ridges have an undulating surface, with some such appearance as the ocean presents in an ordinary breeze.

The road which is now generally followed

through this region is therefore a very good one, without any difficult ascents to overcome. The principal obstructions are near the river, where the transient waters of heavy rains have made deep ravines with steep banks, which renders frequent circuits necessary. It will be remembered that wagons pass this road only once or twice a year, which is by no means sufficient to break down the stubborn roots of the innumerable artemisia bushes. A partial absence of these is often the only indication of the track; and the roughness produced by their roots in many places gives the road the character of one newly opened in a wooded country. This is usually considered the worst part of the road east of the mountains; and, as it passes through an open prairie region, may be much improved, so as to avoid the greater part of the inequalities it now presents.

From the mouth of the Kansas to the Green river valley, west of the Rocky mountains, there is no such thing as a mountain road on the line of communication.

We continued our way, and four miles beyond the ford Indians were discovered again; and I halted while a party were sent forward to ascertain who they were. In a short time they returned, accompanied by a number of Indians of the Oglallah band of Sioux. From them we received some interesting information. They had formed part of the great village, which they informed us had broken up, and was on its way home. The greater part of the village, including the Arapahoes, Cheyennes, and Oglallahs, had crossed the Platte eight or ten miles below the mouth of the Sweet Water, and were now behind the mountains to the south of us, intending to regain the Platte by way of Deer creek. They had taken this unusual route in search of grass and game. They gave us a very discouraging picture of the country. The great drought, and the plague of grasshoppers, had swept it so that scarce a blade of grass was to be seen, and there was not a buffalo to be found in the whole region. Their people, they further said, had been nearly starved to death, and we would find their road marked by lodges which they had thrown away in order to move more rapidly, and by the carcasses of the horses which they had eaten, or which had perished by starvation. Such was the prospect before us.

When he had finished the interpretation of these things, Mr. Bissonette immediately rode up to me, and urgently advised that I should entirely abandon the further prosecution of my exploration. "*Le meilleure avis que je pourrais vous donner c'est de tirer de suite.*" "The best advice I can give you, is to turn back at once." It was his own

is therefore a very good efficient ascents to over- al obstructions are near the transient waters of made deep ravines with renders frequent circuits be remembered that wa- l only once or twice a no means sufficient to born roots of the innu- bushes. A partial ab- then the only indication of roughness produced by places gives the road the wly opened in a wooded usually considered the ad east of the mountains; through an open prairie uch improved, so as to art of the inequalities it

of the Kansas to the west of the Rocky moun- ch thing as a mountain communication.

ur way, and four miles ndians were discovered while a party were sent a who they were. In a rned, accompanied by a of the Oglallah band of we received some inter-

They had formed part which they informed us l was on its way home. the village, including the nes, and Oglallahs, had eight or ten miles below Sweet Water, and were ountains to the south of ain the Platte by way of y had taken this unusual grass and game. They ouraging picture of the at drought, and the plague ad swept it so that scarce as to be seen, and there o be found in the whole ple, they further said, had d to death, and we would cked by lodges which they in order to move more r- carcasses of the horses ten, or which had perished uch was the prospect be-

inished the interpretation r. Bissonette immediately d urgently advised that I the further prosecu- tion. "*Le meilleure avis us donner c'est de vivre de est advice I can give you, t once.*" It was his own

intention to return, as we had now reached the point to which he had engaged to attend me. In reply, I called up my men, and communicated to them fully the information I had just received. I then expressed to them my fixed determination to proceed to the end of the enterprise on which I had been sent; but as the situation of the country gave me some reason to apprehend that it might be attended with an unfortunate result to some of us, I would leave it optional with them to continue with me or to return.

Among them were some five or six who I knew would remain. We had still ten days' provisions; and, should no game be found, when this stock was expended, we had our horses and mules, which we could eat when other means of subsistence failed. But not a man flinched from the undertaking. "We'll eat the mules," said Basil Lajeunesse; and thereupon we shook hands with our interpreter and his Indians, and parted. With them I sent back one of my men, Dumés, whom the effects of an old wound in the leg rendered incapable of continuing the journey on foot, and his horse seemed on the point of giving out. Having resolved to disencumber ourselves immediately of every- thing not absolutely necessary to our future operations, I turned directly in toward the river, and encamped on the left bank, a little above the place where our council had been held, and where a thick grove of willows offered a suitable spot for the object I had in view.

The carts having been discharged, the covers and wheels were taken off, and, with the frames, carried into some low places among the willows, and concealed in the dense foliage in such a manner that the glitter of the iron work might not attract the observation of some straggling Indian. In the sand, which had been blown up into waves among the willows, a large hole was then dug, ten feet square, and six deep. In the meantime, all our effects had been spread out upon the ground, and whatever was designed to be carried along with us separated and laid aside, and the remaining part carried to the hole and carefully covered up. As much as possible, all traces of our proceedings were obliterated, and it wanted but a rain to render our *cache* safe beyond discovery. All the men were now set at work to arrange the pack-saddles and make up the packs.

The day was very warm and calm, and the sky entirely clear, except where, as usual along the summits of the mountainous ridge opposite, the clouds had congregated in masses. Our lodge had been planted, and on account of the heat, the ground pins had been taken out, and the lower part slightly raised. Near to it was standing the

barometer, which swung in a tripod frame; and within the lodge, where a small fire had been built, Mr. Preuss was occupied in observing the temperature of boiling water. At this instant, and without any warning until it was within fifty yards, a violent gust of wind dashed down the lodge, burying under it Mr. Preuss and about a dozen men, who had attempted to keep it from being carried away. I succeeded in saving the barometer, which the lodge was carrying off with itself, but the thermometer was broken. We had no others of a high graduation, none of those which remained going higher than 135° Fahrenheit. Our astronomical observations gave to this place, which we named *Cache* camp, a longitude of 106° 38' 26'', latitude 42° 50' 53''.

July 29.—All our arrangements having been completed, we left the encampment at 7 o'clock this morning. In this vicinity the ordinary road leaves the Platte, and crosses over to the Sweet Water river, which it strikes near Rock Independence. Instead of following this road, I had determined to keep the immediate valley of the Platte so far as the mouth of the Sweet Water, in the expectation of finding better grass. To this I was further prompted by the nature of my instructions. To Mr. Carson was assigned the office of guide, as we had now reached a part of the country with which, or a great part of which, long residence had made him familiar. In a few miles we reached the Red Buttes, a famous landmark in this country, whose geological composition is red sandstone, limestone, and calcareous sandstone and pudding stone.

The river here cuts its way through a ridge; on the eastern side of it are the lofty escarpments of red argillaceous sandstone, which are called the Red Buttes. In this passage the stream is not much compressed or pent up, there being a bank of considerable though variable breadth on either side. Immediately on entering, we discovered a band of buffalo. The hunters failed to kill any of them; the leading hunter being thrown into a ravine, which occasioned some delay, and in the meantime the herd clambered up the steep face of the ridge. It is sometimes wonderful to see these apparently clumsy animals make their way up and down the most rugged and broken precipices. We halted to noon before we had cleared this passage, at a spot twelve miles distant from *Cache* camp, where we found an abundance of grass. So far, the account of the Indians was found to be false. On the banks were willow and cherry trees. The cherries were not yet ripe, but in the thickets were numerous fresh tracks of the grizzly bear, which are very fond of this fruit. The soil here is red, the composition

being derived from the red sandstone. About seven miles brought us through the ridge, in which the course of the river is north and south. Here the valley opens out broadly, and high walls of the red formation present themselves among the hills to the east. We crossed here a pretty little creek, an affluent of the right bank. It is well timbered with cotton-wood in this vicinity, and the absinth has lost its shrub-like character, and becomes small trees six and eight feet in height, and sometimes eight inches in diameter. Two or three miles above this creek we made our encampment, having travelled to-day twenty-five miles. Our animals fared well here, as there is an abundance of grass. The river bed is made up of pebbles, and in the bank, at the level of the water, is a conglomerate of coarse pebbles about the size of ostrich eggs, and which I remarked in the banks of the Laramie fork. It is overlaid by a soil of mixed clay and sand, six feet thick. By astronomical observations, our position is in longitude $106^{\circ} 54' 32''$, and latitude $42^{\circ} 38'$.

July 30.—After travelling about twelve miles this morning, we reached a place where the Indian village had crossed the river. Here were the poles of discarded lodges and skeletons of horses lying about. Mr. Carson, who had never been higher up than this point on the river, which has the character of being exceedingly rugged, and walled in by precipices above, thought it advisable to camp near this place, where we were certain of obtaining grass, and to-morrow make our crossing among the rugged hills to the Sweet Water river. Accordingly we turned back and descended the river to an island near by, which was about twenty acres in size, covered with a luxuriant growth of grass. The formation here I found highly interesting. Immediately at this island the river is again shut up in the rugged hills, which come down to it from the main ridge in a succession of spurs three or four hundred feet high, and alternated with green level *prairillons* or meadows, bordered on the river banks with thickets of willow, and having many plants to interest the traveller. The island lies between two of these ridges, three or four hundred yards apart, of which that on the right bank is composed entirely of red argillaceous sandstone, with thin layers of fibrous gypsum. On the left bank, the ridge is composed entirely of siliceous pudding stone, the pebbles in the numerous strata increasing in size from the top to the bottom, where they are as large as a man's head. So far as I was able to determine, these strata incline to the northeast, with a dip of about 15° . This pudding stone, or conglomerate formation, I was enabled to trace through an extended range of country, from a few miles east of

the meridian of Fort Laramie to where I found it superposed on the granite of the Rocky mountains, in longitude $109^{\circ} 00'$. From its appearance, the main chain of the Laramie mountain is composed of this rock, and in a number of places I found isolated hills, which served to mark a former level which had been probably swept away.

These conglomerates are very friable, and easily decomposed; and I am inclined to think this formation is the source from which was derived the great deposit of sand and gravel which forms the surface rock of the prairie country west of the Mississippi.

Crossing the ridge of red sandstone, and traversing the little prairie which lies to the southward of it, we made in the afternoon an excursion to a place which we have called the Hot Spring Gate. This place has much the appearance of a gate, by which the Platte passes through a ridge composed of a white and calcareous sandstone. The length of the passage is about four hundred yards, with a smooth green prairie on either side. Through this place, the stream flows with a quiet current, unbroken by any rapid, and is about seventy yards wide between the walls, which rise perpendicularly from the water. To that on the right bank, which is the lower, the barometer gave a height of three hundred and sixty feet. This place will be more particularly described hereafter, as we passed through it on our return.

We saw here numerous herds of mountain sheep, and frequently heard the volley of rattling stones which accompanied their rapid descent down the steep hills. This was the first place at which we had killed any of these animals; and, in consequence of this circumstance, and of the abundance of these sheep or goats (for they are called by each name), we gave to our encampment the name of Goat Island. Their flesh is much esteemed by the hunters, and has very much the flavor of the Allegany mountain sheep. I have frequently seen the horns of this animal three feet long and seventeen inches in circumference at the base, weighing eleven pounds. But two or three of these were killed by our party at this place, and of these the horns were small. The use of these horns seems to be to protect the animal's head in pitching down precipices to avoid pursuing wolves—their only safety being in places where they cannot be followed. The bones are very strong and solid, the marrow occupying but a very small portion of the bone in the leg, about the thickness of a rye straw. The hair is short, resembling the winter color of our common deer, which it nearly approaches in size and appearance. Except in the horns, it has no resemblance whatever to the goat. The longitude of this place, resulting from chronometer and lunar

Fort Laramie to where I
ed on the granite of the
in longitude 109° 00'.
ce, the main chain of the
is composed of this rock,
of places I found isolated
to mark a former level
obably swept away.

rates are very friable, and
; and I am inclined to
n is the source from which
great deposit of sand and
the surface rock of the
st of the Mississippi.

edge of red sandstone, and
e prairie which lies to the
e made in the afternoon an
ace which we have called
te. This place has much
d a gate, by which the
gh a ridge composed of a
us sandstone. The length
about four hundred yards,
een prairie on either side.

e, the stream flows with a
roken by any rapid, and is
s wide between the walls,
adicularly from the water.
right bank, which is the
ight gave a height of three
feet. This place will be
described hereafter, as we
on our return.

umerous herds of mountain
ntly heard the volley of
ch accompanied their rapid
steep hills. This was the
ch we had killed any of
nd, in consequence of this
of the abundance of these
they are called by each
our encampment the name
Their flesh is much es-
nters, and has very much
Allegany mountain sheep.
seen the horns of this ani-
g and seventeen inches in
the base, weighing eleven
o or three of these were
y at this place, and of these
small. The use of these

to protect the animal's
down precipices to avoid
their only safety being in
cannot be followed. The
ong and solid, the marrow
very small portion of the
about the thickness of a rye
r is short, resembling the
ur common deer, which it
s in size and appearance.
rns, it has no resemblance
coat. The longitude of this
om chronometer and lunar

distances, and an occultation of Arietis, is
107° 13' 29", and the latitude 42° 33' 27".
One of our horses, which had given out, we
left to receive strength on the island, intend-
ing to take her, perhaps, on our return.

July 31.—This morning we left the course
of the Platte, to cross over to the Sweet Wa-
ter. Our way, for a few miles, lay up the
sandy bed of a dry creek, in which I found
several interesting plants. Leaving this, we
wound our way to the summit of the hills,
of which the peaks are here eight hundred
feet above the Platte, bare and rocky. A
long and gradual slope led from these hills
to the Sweet Water, which we reached in
fifteen miles from Goat Island. I made an
early encampment here, in order to give the
hunters an opportunity to procure a supply
from several bands of buffalo, which made
their appearance in the valley near by. The
stream here is about sixty feet wide, and at
this time twelve to eighteen inches deep,
with a very moderate current.

The adjoining prairies are sandy, but the
immediate river bottom is a good soil, which
afforded an abundance of soft green grass to
our horses, and where I found a variety of
interesting plants, which made their appear-
ance for the first time. A rain to-night
made it unpleasantly cold; and there was no
tree here, to enable us to pitch our single
tent, the poles of which had been left at
Cache camp. We had, therefore, no shelter
except what was to be found under cover of
the *absinthe* bushes, which grew in many
thick patches, one or two and sometimes
three feet high.

August 1.—The hunters went ahead this
morning, as buffalo appeared tolerably abun-
dant, and I was desirous to secure a small
stock of provisions; and we moved about
seven miles up the valley, and encamped one
mile below Rock Independence. This is an
isolated granite rock, about six hundred and
fifty yards long, and forty in height. Except
in a depression of the summit, where a little
soil supports a scanty growth of shrubs, with
a solitary dwarf pine, it is entirely bare.
Everywhere within six or eight feet of the
ground, where the surface is sufficiently
smooth, and in some places sixty or eighty
feet above, the rock is inscribed with the
names of travellers. Many a name famous
in the history of this country, and some well
known to science, are to be found mixed
among those of the traders and of travellers
for pleasure and curiosity, and of missiona-
ries among the savages. Some of these
have been washed away by the rain, but the
greater number are still very legible. The
position of this rock is in longitude 107° 56',
latitude 42° 29' 36". We remained at our
camp of August 1st until noon of the next
day, occupied in drying meat. By observa-

tion, the longitude of the place is 107° 25'
23", latitude 42° 29' 56".

August 2.—Five miles above Rock Inde-
pendence we came to a place called the
Devil's Gate, where the Sweet Water cuts
through the point of a granite ridge. The
length of the passage is about three hundred
yards, and the width thirty-five yards. The
walls of rock are vertical, and about four
hundred feet in height; and the stream in
the gate is almost entirely choked up by
masses which have fallen from above. In the
wall, on the right bank, is a dike of trap rock,
cutting through a fine-grained grey granite.
Near the point of this ridge crop out some
strata of the valley formation, consisting of a
greyish micaceous sandstone, and fine-grained
conglomerate, and marl. We encamped eight
miles above the Devil's Gate. There was
no timber of any kind on the river, but good
fires were made of drift wood, aided by the
bois de vache.

We had to-night no shelter from the rain,
which commenced with squalls of wind about
sunset. The country here is exceedingly
picturesque. On either side of the valley,
which is four or five miles broad, the moun-
tains rise to the height of twelve and fifteen
hundred or two thousand feet. On the south
side, the range appears to be timbered, and
to-night is luminous with fires—probably the
work of the Indians, who have just passed
through the valley. On the north, broken
and granite masses rise abruptly from the
green award of the river, terminating in a
line of broken summits. Except in the crev-
ices of the rock, and here and there on a
ledge or bench of the mountain, where a few
hardy pines have clustered together, these
are perfectly bare and destitute of vegetation.

Among these masses, where there are
sometimes isolated hills and ridges, green
valleys open in upon the river, which sweeps
the base of these mountains for thirty-six
miles. Everywhere its deep verdure and
profusion of beautiful flowers is in pleasing
contrast with the sterile grandeur of the rock
and the barrenness of the sandy plain, which,
from the right bank of the river, sweeps up
to the mountain range that forms its south-
ern boundary. The great evaporation on the
sandy soil of this elevated plain, and the sa-
line efflorescences which whiten the ground,
and shine like lakes reflecting the sun, make
a soil wholly unfit for cultivation.

August 3.—We were early on the road
the next morning, travelling along the up-
land part of the valley, which is overgrown
with *artemisia*. Scattered about on the
plain are occasional small isolated hills.
One of these which I have examined, about
fifty feet high, consisted of white clay and
marl, in nearly horizontal strata. Several
bands of buffalo made their appearance to-

day, with herds of antelope; and a grizzly bear—the only one we encountered during the journey—was seen scrambling up among the rocks. As we passed over a slight rise near the river, we caught the first view of the Wind river mountains, appearing, at this distance of about seventy miles, to be a low and dark mountainous ridge. The view dissipated in a moment the pictures which had been created in our minds, by many descriptions of travellers, who have compared these mountains to the Alps in Switzerland, and speak of the glittering peaks which rise in icy majesty amidst the eternal glaciers nine or ten thousand feet into the region of eternal snows. The nakedness of the river was relieved by groves of willows, where we encamped at night, after a march of twenty-six miles; and numerous bright-colored flowers had made the river bottom look gay as a garden. We found here a horse, which had been abandoned by the Indians, because his hoofs had been so much worn that he was unable to travel; and during the night a dog came into the camp.

August 4.—Our camp was at the foot of the granite mountains, which we climbed this morning to take some barometrical heights; and here among the rocks was seen the first magpie. On our return, we saw one at the mouth of the Platte river. We left here one of our horses, which was unable to proceed farther. A few miles from the encampment we left the river, which makes a bend to the south, and traversing an undulating country, consisting of a greyish micaceous sandstone and fine-grained conglomerates, struck it again, and encamped, after a journey of twenty-five miles. Astronomical observations placed us in latitude $42^{\circ} 32' 30''$, and longitude $108^{\circ} 30' 13''$.

August 5.—The morning was dark, with a driving rain, and disagreeably cold. We continued our route as usual; but the weather became so bad, that we were glad to avail ourselves of the shelter offered by a small island, about ten miles above our last encampment, which was covered with a dense growth of willows. There was fine grass for our animals, and the timber afforded us comfortable protection and good fire. In the afternoon, the sun broke through the clouds for a short time, and the barometer at 5, p. m., was at 23.713, the thermometer 60° , with the wind strong from the northwest. We availed ourselves of the fine weather to make excursions in the neighborhood. The river, at this place, is bordered by hills of the valley formation. They are of moderate height; one of the highest peaks on the right bank being, according to the barometer, one hundred and eighty feet above the river. On the left bank they are higher. They consist of a fine white clayey sandstone, a white

calcareous sandstone, and coarse sandstone or pudding stone.

August 6.—It continued steadily raining all the day; but, notwithstanding, we left our encampment in the afternoon. Our animals had been much refreshed by their repose, and an abundance of rich, soft grass, which had been much improved by the rains. In about three miles, we reached the entrance of a *kanyon*, where the Sweet Water issues upon the more open valley we had passed over. Immediately at the entrance, and superimposed directly upon the granite, are strata of compact calcareous sandstone and chert, alternating with fine white and reddish white, and fine grey and red sandstones. These strata dip to the eastward at an angle of about 18° , and form the western limit of the sandstone and limestone formations on the line of our route. Here we entered among the primitive rocks. The usual road passes to the right of this place; but we wound, or rather scrambled, our way up the narrow valley for several hours. Wildness and disorder were the character of this scenery. The river had been swollen by the late rains, and came rushing through with an impetuous current, three or four feet deep, and generally twenty yards broad. The valley was sometimes the breadth of the stream, and sometimes opened into little green meadows, sixty yards wide, with open groves of aspen. The stream was bordered throughout with aspen, beech, and willow; and tall pines grew on the sides and summits of the crags. On both sides, the granite rocks rose precipitously to the height of three hundred and five hundred feet, terminating in jagged and broken pointed peaks; and fragments of fallen rock lay piled up at the foot of the precipices. Gneiss, mica slate, and a white granite, were among the varieties I noticed. Here were many old traces of beaver on the stream; remnants of dams, near which were lying trees, which they had cut down, one and two feet in diameter. The hills entirely shut up the river at the end of about five miles, and we turned up a ravine that led to a high prairie, which seemed to be the general level of the country. Hence, to the summit of the ridge, there is a regular and very gradual rise. Blocks of granite were piled up at the heads of the ravines, and small bare knolls of mica slate and milky quartz protruded at frequent intervals on the prairie, which was whitened in occasional spots with small salt lakes, where the water had evaporated, and left the bed covered with a shining incrustation of salt. The evening was very cold, a northwest wind driving a fine rain in our faces; and at nightfall we descended to a little stream, on which we encamped, about two miles from the Sweet Water. Here had recently been a very

ne, and coarse sandstone
 continued steadily raining
 notwithstanding, we left on
 afternoon. Our animals
 refreshed by their repose,
 of rich, soft grass, which
 proved by the rains. In
 we reached the entrance
 the Sweet Water issues
 the valley we had passed
 at the entrance, and su-
 ly upon the granite, are
 calcareous sandstone and
 with fine white and reddish
 grey and red sandstones.
 to the eastward at an angle
 form the western limit of
 limestone formations on
 route. Here we entered
 the rocks. The usual road
 of this place; but we
 scrambled, our way up the
 several hours. Wildness
 of the character of this
 had been swollen by the
 rushing through with
 ent, three or four feet deep,
 yards broad. The val-
 leys the breadth of the stream,
 ed into little green mead-
 ows, with open groves of
 which was bordered through-
 out by beech, and willow; and tall
 sides and summits of the
 hills, the granite rocks rose
 to a height of three hundred
 feet, terminating in jagged
 peaks; and fragments of
 granite were piled up at the foot of the pre-
 mica slate, and a white
 granite of the varieties I noticed.
 I noticed traces of beaver on the
 banks of dams, near which were
 their had cut down, one
 meter. The hills entirely
 at the end of about five
 led up a ravine that led to
 which seemed to be the gener-
 ally. Hence, to the sum-
 mit there is a regular and very
 series of granite were piled up
 in the ravines, and small bare
 and milky quartz pro-
 ments on the prairie,
 ed in occasional spots with
 here the water had evapo-
 rated covered with a shin-
 ing salt. The evening was
 west wind driving a fine
 and at nightfall we de-
 scended stream, on which we en-
 tered miles from the Sweet
 Water recently been a very

large camp of Snake and Crow Indians; and some large poles lying about afforded the means of pitching a tent, and making other places of shelter. Our fires to-night were made principally of the dry branches of the artemisia, which covered the slopes. It burns quickly, with a clear oily flame, and makes a hot fire. The hills here are composed of hard, compact mica slate, with veins of quartz.

August 7.—We left our encampment with the rising sun. As we rose from the bed of the creek, the snow line of the mountains stretched grandly before us, the white peaks glittering in the sun. They had been hidden in the dark weather of the last few days, and it had been snowing on them, while it rained in the plains. We crossed a ridge, and again struck the Sweet Water—here a beautiful, swift stream, with a more open valley, timbered with beech and cotton wood. It now began to lose itself in the many small forks which make its head; and we continued up the main stream until near noon, when we left it a few miles, to make our noon halt on a small creek among the hills, from which the stream issues by a small opening. Within was a beautiful grassy spot, covered with an open grove of large beech trees, among which I found several plants that I had not previously seen.

The afternoon was cloudy, with squalls of rain; but the weather became fine at sunset, when we again encamped on the Sweet Water, within a few miles of the South Pass. The country over which we have passed to-day consists principally of the compact mica slate, which crops out on all ridges, making the uplands very rocky and slaty. In the escarpments which border the creeks, it is seen alternating with a light-colored granite, at an inclination of 45°; the beds varying in thickness from two or three feet to six or eight hundred. At a distance, the granite frequently has the appearance of irregular lumps of clay, hardened by exposure. A variety of *asters* may now be numbered among the characteristic plants, and the artemisia continues in full glory; but *cacti* have become rare, and mosses begin to dispute the hills with them. The evening was damp and unpleasant; the thermometer, at 10 o'clock, being at 36°, and the grass wet with a heavy dew. Our astronomical observations placed this encampment in longitude 109° 21' 32", and latitude 42° 27' 15".

Early in the morning we resumed our journey, the weather still cloudy, with occasional rain. Our general course was west, as I had determined to cross the dividing ridge by a bridle path among the broken country more immediately at the foot of the mountains, and return by the wagon road,

two and a half miles to the south of the point where the trail crosses.

About six miles from our encampment brought us to the summit. The ascent had been so gradual, that, with all the intimate knowledge possessed by Carson, who had made this country his home for seventeen years, we were obliged to watch very closely to find the place at which we had reached the culminating point. This was between two low hills, rising on either hand fifty or sixty feet. When I looked back at them from the foot of the immediate slope on the western plain, their summits appeared to be about one hundred and twenty feet above. From the impression on my mind at this time, and subsequently on our return, I should compare the elevation which we surmounted immediately at the Pass, to the ascent of the Capitol hill from the avenue, at Washington. It is difficult for me to fix positively the breadth of this pass. From the broken ground where it commences, at the foot of the Wind river chain, the view to the southeast is over a champaign country, broken, at the distance of nineteen miles, by the Table rock; which, with the other isolated hills in its vicinity, seems to stand on a comparative plain. This I judged to be its termination, the ridge recovering its rugged character with the Table rock. It will be seen that it in no manner resembles the places to which the term is commonly applied—nothing of the gorge-like character and winding ascents of the Alleghany passes in America; nothing of the Great St. Bernard and Simplon passes in Europe. Approaching it from the mouth of the Sweet Water, a sandy plain, one hundred and twenty miles long, conducts, by a gradual and regular ascent, to the summit, about seven thousand feet above the sea; and the traveller, without being reminded of any change by toilsome ascents, suddenly finds himself on the waters which flow to the Pacific ocean. By the route we had travelled, the distance from Fort Laramie is three hundred and twenty miles, or nine hundred and fifty from the mouth of the Kansas.

Continuing our march, we reached, in eight miles from the Pass, the Little Sandy, one of the tributaries of the Colorado, or Green river of the Gulf of California. The weather had grown fine during the morning, and we remained here the rest of the day, to dry our baggage and take some astronomical observations. The stream was about forty feet wide, and two or three deep, with clear water and a full swift current, over a sandy bed. It was timbered with a growth of low bushy and dense willows, among which were little verdant spots, which gave our animals fine grass, and where I found a number of interesting plants. Among the

neighboring hills I noticed fragments of granite containing magnetic iron. Longitude of the camp was $109^{\circ} 37' 59''$, and latitude $42^{\circ} 37' 34''$.

August 9.—We made our noon halt today on Big Sandy, another tributary of Green river. The face of the country traversed was of a brown sand of granite materials, the *detritus* of the neighboring mountains. Strata of the milky quartz cropped out, and blocks of granite were scattered about, containing magnetic iron. On Sandy creek the formation was of parti-colored sand, exhibited in escarpments fifty to eighty feet high. In the afternoon we had a severe storm of hail, and encamped at sunset on the first New Fork. Within the space of a few miles, the Wind mountains supply a number of tributaries to Green river, which are called the New Forks. Near our camp were two remarkable isolated hills, one of them sufficiently large to merit the name of mountain. They are called the Two Buttes, and will serve to identify the place of our encampment, which the observations of the evening placed in longitude $109^{\circ} 58' 11''$, and latitude $42^{\circ} 42' 46''$. On the right bank of the stream, opposite to the large hill, the strata which are displayed consist of decomposing granite, which supplies the brown sand of which the face of the country is composed to a considerable depth.

August 10.—The air at sunrise is clear and pure, and the morning extremely cold, but beautiful. A lofty snow peak of the mountain is glittering in the first rays of the sun, which has not yet reached us. The long mountain wall to the east, rising two thousand feet abruptly from the plain, behind which we see the peaks, is still dark, and cuts clear against the glowing sky. A fog, just risen from the river, lies along the base of the mountain. A little before sunrise, the thermometer was at 35° , and at sunrise 33° . Water froze last night, and fires are very comfortable. The scenery becomes hourly more interesting and grand, and the view here is truly magnificent; but, indeed, it needs something to repay the long prairie journey of a thousand miles. The sun has just shot above the wall, and makes a magical change. The whole valley is glowing and bright, and all the mountain peaks are gleaming like silver. Though these snow mountains are not the Alps, they have their own character of grandeur and magnificence, and will doubtless find pens and pencils to do them justice. In the scene before us, we feel how much wood improves a view. The pines on the mountain seemed to give it much additional beauty. I was agreeably disappointed in the character of the streams on this side of the ridge. Instead of the creeks, which description had led me to expect, I

find bold, broad streams, with three or four feet water, and a rapid current. The fork on which we are encamped is upwards of a hundred feet wide, timbered with groves or thickets of the low willow. We were now approaching the loftiest part of the Wind river chain; and I left the valley a few miles from our encampment, intending to penetrate the mountains as far as possible with the whole party. We were soon involved in very broken ground, among long ridges covered with fragments of granite. Winding our way up a long ravine, we came unexpectedly in view of a most beautiful lake, set like a gem in the mountains. The sheet of water lay transversely across the direction we had been pursuing, and, descending the steep, rocky ridge, where it was necessary to lead our horses, we followed its banks to the southern extremity. Here a view of the utmost magnificence and grandeur burst upon our eyes. With nothing between us and their feet to lessen the effect of the whole height, a grand bed of snow-capped mountains rose before us, pile upon pile, glowing in the bright light of an August day. Immediately below them lay the lake, between two ridges, covered with dark pines, which swept down from the main chain to the spot where we stood. Here, where the lake glittered in the open sunlight, its banks of yellow sand and the light foliage of aspen groves contrasted well with the gloomy pines. "Never before," said Mr. Preuss, "in this country or in Europe, have I seen such magnificent, grand rocks." I was so much pleased with the beauty of the place, that I determined to make the main camp here, where our animals would find good pasture, and explore the mountains with a small party of men. Proceeding a little further, we came suddenly upon the outlet of the lake, where it found its way through a narrow passage between low hills. Dark pines, which overhung the stream, and masses of rock, where the water foamed along, gave it much romantic beauty. Where we crossed, which was immediately at the outlet, it is two hundred and fifty feet wide, and so deep that with difficulty we were able to ford it. Its bed was an accumulation of rocks, boulders, and broad slabs, and large angular fragments, among which the animals fell repeatedly.

The current was very swift, and the water cold, and of a crystal purity. In crossing this stream, I met with a great misfortune in having my barometer broken. It was the only one. A great part of the interest of the journey for me was in the exploration of these mountains, of which so much had been said that was doubtful and contradictory; and now their snowy peaks rose majestically before me, and the only means of giving them authentically to science, the

ams, with three or four rapid current. The fork camped is upwards of a timbered with groves or willow. We were now the best part of the Wind left the valley a few miles, intending to penetrate as far as possible with the were soon involved in among long ridges covered granite. Winding our we came unexpected beautiful lake, set like rains. The sheet of water across the direction we and, descending the where it was necessary to followed its banks to the Here a view of the utmost grandeur burst upon nothing between us and the effect of the whole of snow-capped mountain pile upon pile, glowing of an August day. In lay the lake, between with dark pines, which the main chain to the spot ere, where the lake glit-erlight, its banks of yellow foliage of aspen groves with the gloomy pines. said Mr. Preuss, "in this e, have I seen such mag-ke." I was so muchauty of the place, that I e the main camp here, would find good pastur-mountains with a small ceeding a little further, upon the outlet of the its way through a narrow stream, and masses of er foamed along, gave it ty. Where we crossed. ely at the outlet, it is two et wide, and so deep that ere able to ford it. Its ation of rocks, boulders, large angular fragments, animals fell repeatedly. very swift, and the water al purity. In crossing with a great misfortune eter broken. It was the part of the interest of was in the exploration of f which so much had doubtful and contradict snow peaks rose ina, and the only means of antically to science, the

object of my anxious solicitude by night and day, was destroyed. We had brought this barometer in safety a thousand miles, and broke it almost among the snow of the mountains. The loss was felt by the whole camp—all had seen my anxiety, and aided me in preserving it. The height of these mountains, considered by the hunters and traders the highest in the whole range, had been a theme of constant discussion among them; and all had looked forward with pleasure to the moment when the instrument, which they believed to be true as the sun, should stand upon the summits, and decide their disputes. Their grief was only inferior to my own.

The lake is about three miles long, and of very irregular width, and apparently great depth, and is the head water of the third New Fork, a tributary to Green river, the Colorado of the west. In the narrative, I have called it Mountain lake. I encamped on the north side, about three hundred and fifty yards from the outlet. This was the most western point at which I obtained astronomical observations, by which this place, called Bernier's encampment, is made in $110^{\circ} 08' 03''$ west longitude from Greenwich, and latitude $43^{\circ} 49' 49''$. The mountain peaks, as laid down, were fixed by bearings from this and other astronomical points. We had no other compass than the small ones used in sketching the country; but from an azimuth, in which one of them was used, the variation of the compass is 18° east. The correction made in our field work by the astronomical observations indicates that this is a very correct observation.

As soon as the camp was formed, I set about endeavoring to repair my barometer. As I have already said, this was a standard cistern barometer, of Troughton's construction. The glass cistern had been broken about midway; but as the instrument had been kept in a proper position, no air had found its way into the tube, the end of which had always remained covered. I had with me a number of vials of tolerably thick glass, some of which were of the same diameter as the cistern, and I spent the day in slowly working on these, endeavoring to cut them of the requisite length; but, as my instrument was a very rough file, I invariably broke them. A groove was cut in one of the trees, where the barometer was placed during the night, to be out of the way of any possible danger, and in the morning I commenced again. Among the powder horns in the camp, I found one which was very transparent, so that its contents could be almost as plainly seen as through glass. This I boiled and stretched on a piece of wood to the requisite diameter and scraped

it very thin, in order to increase to the utmost its transparency. I then secured it firmly in its place on the instrument, with strong glue made from a buffalo, and filled it with mercury, properly heated. A piece of skin, which had covered one of the vials, furnished a good pocket, which was well secured with strong thread and glue, and then the brass cover was screwed to its place. The instrument was left some time to dry; and when I reversed it, a few hours after, I had the satisfaction to find it in perfect order; its indications being about the same as on the other side of the lake before it had been broken. Our success in this little incident diffused pleasure throughout the camp; and we immediately set about our preparations for ascending the mountains.

As will be seen on reference to a map, on this short mountain chain are the head waters of four great rivers of the continent; namely, the Colorado, Columbia, Missouri, and Platte rivers. It had been my design, after having ascended the mountains, to continue our route on the western side of the range, and crossing through a pass at the northwestern end of the chain, about thirty miles from our present camp, return along the eastern slope, across the heads of the Yellowstone river, and join on the line to our station of August 7, immediately at the foot of the ridge. In this way, I should be enabled to include the whole chain, and its numerous waters, in my survey; but various considerations induced me, very reluctantly, to abandon this plan.

I was desirous to keep strictly within the scope of my instructions; and it would have required ten or fifteen additional days for the accomplishment of this object; our animals had become very much worn out with the length of the journey; game was very scarce; and, though it does not appear in the course of the narrative (as I have avoided dwelling upon trifling incidents not connected with the objects of the expedition), the spirits of the men had been much exhausted by the hardships and privations to which they had been subjected. Our provisions had wellnigh all disappeared. Bread had been long out of the question; and of all our stock, we had remaining two or three pounds of coffee, and a small quantity of maccaroni, which had been husbanded with great care for the mountain expedition we were about to undertake. Our daily meal consisted of dry buffalo meat, cooked in tallow; and, as we had not dried this with Indian skill, part of it was spoiled, and what remained of good, was as hard as wood, having much the taste and appearance of so many pieces of bark. Even of this, our stock was rapidly diminishing in a camp which was capable of consuming two buffaloes in every twenty-four hours. These animals

had entirely disappeared; and it was not possible that we should fall in with them again until we returned to the Sweet Water.

Our arrangements for the ascent were rapidly completed. We were in a hostile country, which rendered the greatest vigilance and circumspection necessary. The pass at the north end of the mountain was generally infested by Blackfeet; and immediately opposite was one of their forts, on the edge of a little thicket, two or three hundred feet from our encampment. We were posted in a grove of beech, on the margin of the lake, and a few hundred feet long, with a narrow *prairillon* on the inner side, bordered by the rocky ridge. In the upper end of this grove we cleared a circular space about forty feet in diameter, and, with the felled timber and interwoven branches, surrounded it with a breastwork five feet in height. A gap was left for a gate on the inner side, by which the animals were to be driven in and secured, while the men slept around the little work. It was half hidden by the foliage; and, garrisoned by twelve resolute men, would have set at defiance any band of savages which might chance to discover them in the interval of our absence. Fifteen of the best mules, with fourteen men, were selected for the mountain party. Our provisions consisted of dried meat for two days, with our little stock of coffee and some macaroni. In addition to the barometer and a thermometer, I took with me a sextant and spy-glass, and we had of course our compasses. In charge of the camp I left Bernier, one of my most trustworthy men, who possessed the most determined courage.

August 12.—Early in the morning we left the camp, fifteen in number, well armed, of course, and mounted on our best mules. A pack animal carried our provisions, with a coffee pot and kettle, and three or four tin cups. Every man had a blanket strapped over his saddle, to serve for his bed, and the instruments were carried by turns on their backs. We entered directly on rough and rocky ground; and, just after crossing the ridge, had the good fortune to shoot an antelope. We heard the roar, and had a glimpse of a waterfall as we rode along; and, crossing in our way two fine streams, tributary to the Colorado, in about two hours' ride we reached the top of the first row or range of the mountains. Here, again, a view of the most romantic beauty met our eyes. It seemed as if, from the vast expanse of uninteresting prairie we had passed over, Nature had collected all her beauties together in one chosen place. We were overlooking a deep valley, which was entirely occupied by three lakes, and from the brink the surrounding ridges rose precipitously five hundred and a thousand feet, covered with the dark green of

the balsam pine, relieved on the border of the lake with the light foliage of the aspen. They all communicated with each other; and the green of the waters, common to mountain lakes of great depth, showed that it would be impossible to cross them. The surprise manifested by our guides when these impassable obstacles suddenly barred our progress proved that they were among the hidden treasures of the place, unknown even to the wandering trappers of the region. Descending the hill, we proceeded to make our way along the margin to the southern extremity. A narrow strip of angular fragments of rock sometimes afforded a rough pathway for our mules, but generally we rode along the shelving side, occasionally scrambling up, at a considerable risk of tumbling back into the lake.

The slope was frequently 300; the pines grew densely together, and the ground was covered with the branches and trunks of trees. The air was fragrant with the odor of the pines; and I realized this delightful morning the pleasure of breathing that mountain air which makes a constant theme of the hunter's praise, and which now made us feel as if we had all been drinking some exhilarating gas. The depths of this unexplored forest were a place to delight the heart of a botanist. There was a rich undergrowth of plants, and numerous gay-colored flowers in brilliant bloom. We reached the outlet at length, where some freshly barked willows that lay in the water showed that beaver had been recently at work. There were some small brown squirrels jumping about in the pines, and a couple of large mallard ducks swimming about in the stream.

The hills on this southern end were low, and the lake looked like a mimic sea, as the waves broke on the sandy beach in the force of a strong breeze. There was a pretty open spot, with fine grass for our mules; and we made our noon halt on the beach, under the shade of some large hemlocks. We resumed our journey after a halt of about an hour, making our way up the ridge on the western side of the lake. In search of smoother ground, we rode a little inland; and, passing through groves of aspen, soon found ourselves again among the pines. Emerging from these, we struck the summit of the ridge above the upper end of the lake.

We had reached a very elevated point; and in the valley below, and among the hills, were a number of lakes at different levels; some two or three hundred feet above others, with which they communicated by foaming torrents. Even to our great height, the roar of the cataracts came up, and we could see them leaping down in lines of snowy foam. From this scene of busy waters, we turned abruptly into the stillness of a forest.

loved on the border of the
at foliage of the aspen,
ated with each other; and
ers common to mountain
, showed that it would be
s them. The surprise
guides when these impu-
sely barred our progress
were among the hidden
ce, unknown even to the
of the region. Descend-
ceeded to make our way
to the southern extremity.
ngular fragments of rock
a rough pathway for our
y we rode along the shelv-
ly scrambling up, at a
f tumbling back into the

frequently 300; the pines
her, and the ground was
branches and trunks of
as fragrant with the odor
I realized this delightful
asure of breathing that
n makes a constant theme
ise, and which now made
all been drinking some ex-
The depths of this unex-
a place to delight the heart
ere was a rich undergrowth
erous gay-colored flowers
We reached the outlet at
e freshly barked willows
er showed that beaver had
work. There were some
rels jumping about in the
le of large mallard ducks
the stream.

the southern end were low,
d like a mimic sea, as the
e sandy beach in the force
There was a pretty open
ass for our mules; and
a halt on the beach, under
large hemlocks. We re-
after a halt of about an
way up the ridge on the
the lake. In search of
we rode a little inland;
gh groves of aspen, soon
again among the pines.
ese, we struck the summit
the upper end of the lake.
d a very elevated point;
elow, and among the hills,
lakes at different levels;
hundred feet above oth-
ny communicated by foam-
n to our great height, the
ts came up, and we could
down in lines of snowy
scene of busy waters, we
to the stillness of a forest,

where we rode among the open bolls of the
pines, over a lawn of verdant grass, having
strikingly the air of cultivated grounds.
This led us, after a time, among masses of
rock which had no vegetable earth but in
hollows and crevices, though still the pine
forest continued. Toward evening, we
reached a defile, or rather a hole in the
mountains, entirely shut in by dark pine-
covered rocks.

A small stream, with a scarcely percepti-
ble current, flowed through a level bottom
of perhaps eighty yards width, where the
grass was saturated with water. Into this
the mules were turned, and were neither
hobbled nor picketed during the night, as the
fine pasturage took away all temptation to
stray; and we made our bivouac in the
pines. The surrounding masses were all
of granite. While supper was being pre-
pared, I set out on an excursion in the
neighborhood, accompanied by one of my
men. We wandered about among the crags
and ravines until dark, richly repaid for our
walk by a fine collection of plants, many of
them in full bloom. Ascending a peak to
find the place of our camp, we saw that the
little defile in which we lay, communicated
with the long green valley of some stream,
which, here locked up in the mountains, far
away to the south, found its way in a dense
forest to the plains.

Looking along its upward course, it seem-
ed to conduct, by a smooth gradual slope,
directly toward the peak, which, from long
consultation as we approached the mountain,
we had decided to be the highest of the
range. Pleased with the discovery of so fine
a road for the next day, we hastened down to
the camp where we arrived just in time for
supper. Our table service was rather scant;
and we held the meat in our hands, and clean
rocks made good plates, on which we spread
our macaroni. Among all the strange places
on which we had occasion to encamp
during our long journey, none have left so
vivid an impression on my mind as the camp
of this evening. The disorder of the masses
which surrounded us; the little hole through
which we saw the stars over head; the dark
pines where we slept; and the rocks lit up
with the glow of our fires, made a night
picture of very wild beauty.

August 13.—The morning was bright and
pleasant, just cool enough to make exercise
agreeable, and we soon entered the defile I
had seen the preceding day. It was smooth-
ly carpeted with a soft grass, and scattered
over with groups of flowers, of which yellow
was the predominant color. Sometimes we
were forced, by an occasional difficult pass,
to pick our way on a narrow ledge along the
side of the defile, and the mules were fre-
quently on their knees; but these obstruc-

tions were rare, and we journeyed on in the
sweet morning air, delighted at our good for-
tune in having found such a beautiful en-
trance to the mountains. This road contin-
ued for about three miles, when we suddenly
reached its termination in one of the grand
views which, at every turn, meet the travel-
ler in this magnificent region. Here the de-
file up which we had travelled opened out
into a small lawn, where, in a little lake, the
stream had its source.

There were some fine *asters* in bloom, but
all the flowering plants appeared to seek the
shelter of the rocks, and to be of lower
growth than below, as if they loved the
warmth of the soil, and kept out of the way
of the winds. Immediately at our feet a
precipitous descent led to a confusion of de-
files, and before us rose the mountains as
we have represented them in the annexed
view. It is not by the splendor of far-off
views, which have lent such a glory to the
Alps, that these impress the mind; but by a
gigantic disorder of enormous masses, and a
savage sublimity of naked rock, in wonder-
ful contrast with innumerable green spots
of a rich floral beauty, shut up in their stern
recesses. Their wildness seems well suited
to the character of the people who inhabit
the country.

I determined to leave our animals here,
and make the rest of our way on foot. The
peak appeared so near, that there was no
doubt of our returning before night; and a
few men were left in charge of the mules,
with our provisions and blankets. We took
with us nothing but our arms and instru-
ments, and, as the day had become warm,
the greater part left our coats. Having
made an early dinner, we started again.
We were soon involved in the most ragged
precipices, nearing the central chain very
slowly, and rising but little. The first ridge
hid a succession of others; and when, with
great fatigue and difficulty, we had climbed
up five hundred feet, it was but to make an
equal descent on the other side; all these in-
tervening places were filled with small deep
lakes, which met the eye in every direction,
descending from one level to another, some-
times under bridges formed by huge frag-
ments of granite, beneath which was heard
the roar of the water. These constantly ob-
structed our path, forcing us to make long
détours; frequently obliged to retrace our
steps, and frequently falling among the rocks.
Maxwell was precipitated toward the face
of a precipice, and saved himself from going
over by throwing himself flat on the ground.
We clambered on, always expecting, with
every ridge that we crossed, to reach the foot
of the peaks, and always disappointed, until
about four o'clock, when, pretty well worn
out, we reached the shore of a little lake in

which was a rocky island. We remained here a short time to rest, and continued on around the lake, which had in some places a beach of white sand, and in others was bound with rocks, over which the way was difficult and dangerous, as the water from innumerable springs made them very slippery.

By the time we had reached the further side of the lake, we found ourselves all exceedingly fatigued, and, much to the satisfaction of the whole party, we encamped. The spot we had chosen was a broad flat rock, in some measure protected from the winds by the surrounding crags, and the trunks of fallen pines afforded us bright fires. Near by was a foaming torrent, which tumbled into the little lake about one hundred and fifty feet below us, and which, by way of distinction, we have called Island lake. We had reached the upper limit of the piney region; as, above this point, no tree was to be seen, and patches of snow lay everywhere around us on the cold sides of the rocks. The flora of the region we had traversed since leaving our mules was extremely rich, and, among the characteristic plants, the scarlet flowers of the *dodecatheon dentatum* everywhere met the eye in great abundance. A small green ravine, on the edge of which we were encamped, was filled with a profusion of alpine plants in brilliant bloom. From barometrical observations, made during our three days' sojourn at this place, its elevation above the Gulf of Mexico is 10,000 feet. During the day, we had seen no sign of animal life; but among the rocks here, we heard what was supposed to be the bleat of a young goat, which we searched for with hungry activity, and found to proceed from a small animal of a grey color, with short ears and no tail—probably the Siberian squirrel. We saw a considerable number of them, and, with the exception of a small bird like a sparrow, it is the only inhabitant of this elevated part of the mountains. On our return, we saw, below this lake, large flocks of the mountain goat. We had nothing to eat to-night. Lajeunesse, with several others, took their guns, and sallied out in search of a goat; but returned unsuccessful. At sunset, the barometer stood at 20.522; the attached thermometer 50°. Here we had the misfortune to break our thermometer, having now only that attached to the barometer. I was taken ill shortly after we had encamped, and continued so until late in the night, with violent headache and vomiting. This was probably caused by the excessive fatigue I had undergone, and want of food, and perhaps, also, in some measure, by the rarity of the air. The night was cold, as a violent gale from the north had sprung up at sunset, which

entirely blew away the heat of the fires. The cold, and our granite beds, had not been favorable to sleep, and we were glad to see the face of the sun in the morning. Not being delayed by any preparation for breakfast, we set out immediately.

On every side as we advanced we heard the roar of waters, and of a torrent, which we followed up a short distance, until it expanded into a lake about one mile in length. On the northern side of the lake was a bank of ice, or rather of snow covered with a crust of ice. Carson had been our guide into the mountains, and, agreeably to his advice, we left this little valley, and took to the ridges again; which we found extremely broken, and where we were again involved among precipices. Here were ice fields; among which we were all dispersed, seeking each the best path to ascend the peak. Mr. Preuss attempted to walk along the upper edge of one of these fields, which sloped away at an angle of about twenty degrees, but his feet slipped from under him, and he went plunging down the plane. A few hundred feet below, at the bottom, were some fragments of sharp rock, on which he landed; and though he turned a couple of somersets, fortunately received no injury beyond a few bruises. Two of the men, Clement Lambert and Descoteaux, had been taken ill, and lay down on the rocks a short distance below; and at this point I was attacked with headache and giddiness, accompanied by vomiting, as on the day before. Finding myself unable to proceed, I sent the barometer over to Mr. Preuss, who was in a gap two or three hundred yards distant, desiring him to reach the peak, if possible, and take an observation there. He found himself unable to proceed further in that direction, and took an observation, where the barometer stood at 19.401; attached thermometer 50°, in the gap. Carson, who had gone over to him, succeeded in reaching one of the snowy summits of the main ridge, whence he saw the peak towards which all our efforts had been directed, towering eight or ten hundred feet into the air above him. In the meantime, finding myself grow rather worse than better, and doubtful how far my strength would carry me, I sent Basil Lajeunesse, with four men, back to the place where the mules had been left.

We were now better acquainted with the topography of the country, and I directed him to bring back with him, if it were in any way possible, four or five mules, with provisions and blankets. With me were Maxwell and Ayer; and after we had remained nearly an hour on the rock, it became so unpleasantly cold, though the day was bright, that we set out on our return to the camp, at which we all arrived safely,

by the heat of the fires. The granite beds, had not been melted, and we were glad to see them in the morning. Not being in preparation for breakfast immediately.

We advanced and heard the sound of a torrent, which at a short distance, until it extended about one mile in length. The edge of the lake was a bank of snow covered with a person. My son had been our guide, and, agreeably to his wishes, I led him to a little valley, and took to the path which we found extremely difficult, and in which we were again involved.

Here were ice fields; and we were all dispersed, seeking to ascend the peak. Mr. Preuss, who had been our guide, to walk along the upper edge of these fields, which sloped downwards at about twenty degrees from under him, and he was blown down the plane. A few sharp rocks, at the bottom, were sharp rocks, on which he fell, and he turned a couple of days, and he received no injury besides. Two of the men, Cleve and Descoteaux, had been blown down on the rocks a short distance at this point I was at the edge and giddiness, accompanied, as on the day before. Unable to proceed, I sent the Mr. Preuss, who was in a hundred yards distant, to descend the peak, if possible, and to return there. He found him- self unable to proceed further in that direction, where the barometer stood 9.401; attached thermometer. Carson, who had succeeded in reaching one summit of the main ridge, the peak towards which all were directed, towering eight hundred feet into the air above him. Finding myself grow rather weak, and doubtful how far my horse would carry me, I sent Basil Larocque and men, back to the place where they had been left.

After being better acquainted with the country, and I directed them to go with him, if it were in four or five miles, with blankets. With me were two mules; and after we had returned on the rock, it being very cold, though the day was clear, we set out on our return to the place where we all arrived safely,

straggling in one after the other. I continued ill during the afternoon, but became better towards sundown, when my recovery was completed by the appearance of Basil and four men, all mounted. The men who had gone with him had been too much fatigued to return, and were relieved by those in charge of the horses; but in his powers of endurance Basil resembled more a mountain goat than a man. They brought blankets and provisions, and we enjoyed well our dried meat and a cup of good coffee. We rolled ourselves up in our blankets, and, with our feet turned to a blazing fire, slept soundly until morning.

August 15.—It had been supposed that we had finished with the mountains; and the evening before, it had been arranged that Carson should set out at daylight, and return to breakfast at the Camp of the Mules, taking with him all but four or five men, who were to stay with me and bring back the mules and instruments. Accordingly, at the break of day they set out. With Mr. Preuss and myself remained Basil Lajeunesse, Clément Lambert, Janisse, and Descoteaux. When we had secured strength for the day by a hearty breakfast, we covered what remained, which was enough for one meal, with rocks, in order that it might be safe from any marauding bird; and, saddling our mules, turned our faces once more towards the peaks. This time we determined to proceed quietly and cautiously, deliberately resolved to accomplish our object if it were within the compass of human means. We were of opinion that a long defile which lay to the left of yesterday's route would lead us to the foot of the main peak. Our mules had been refreshed by the fine grass in the little ravine at the Island camp, and we intended to ride up the defile as far as possible, in order to husband our strength for the main ascent. Though this was a fine passage, still it was a defile of the most rugged mountains known, and we had many a rough and steep slippery place to cross before reaching the end. In this place the sun rarely shone; snow lay along the border of the small stream which flowed through it, and occasional icy passages made the footing of the mules very insecure, and the rocks and ground were moist with the trickling waters in this spring of mighty rivers. We soon had the satisfaction to find ourselves riding along the huge wall which forms the central summits of the chain. There at last it rose by our sides, a nearly perpendicular wall of granite, terminating 2,000 to 3,000 feet above our heads in a serrated line of broken, jagged cones. We rode on until we came almost immediately below the main peak, which I denominated the Snow peak, as it exhibited more snow

to the eye than any of the neighboring summits. Here were three small lakes of a green color, each of perhaps a thousand yards in diameter, and apparently very deep. These lay in a kind of chasm; and, according to the barometer, we had attained but a few hundred feet above the Island lake. The barometer here stood at 20.450, attached thermometer 70°.

We managed to get our mules up to a little bench about a hundred feet above the lakes, where there was a patch of good grass, and turned them loose to graze. During our rough ride to this place, they had exhibited a wonderful surefootedness. Parts of the defile were filled with angular, sharp fragments of rock, three or four and eight or ten feet cube; and among these they had worked their way, leaping from one narrow point to another, rarely making a false step, and giving us no occasion to dismount. Having divested ourselves of every unnecessary encumbrance, we commenced the ascent. This time, like experienced travellers, we did not press ourselves, but climbed leisurely, sitting down so soon as we found breath beginning to fail. At intervals we reached places where a number of springs gushed from the rocks, and about 1,800 feet above the lakes came to the snow line. From this point our progress was uninterrupted climbing. Hitherto I had worn a pair of thick moccasins, with soles of *parfleche*; but here I put on a light thin pair, which I had brought for the purpose, as now the use of our toes became necessary to a further advance. I availed myself of a sort of comb of the mountain, which stood against the wall like a buttress, and which the wind and the solar radiation, joined to the steepness of the smooth rock, had kept almost entirely free from snow. Up this I made my way rapidly. Our cautious method of advancing in the outset had spared my strength; and, with the exception of a slight disposition to headache, I felt no remains of yesterday's illness. In a few minutes we reached a point where the buttress was overhanging, and there was no other way of surmounting the difficulty than by passing around one side of it, which was the face of a vertical precipice of several hundred feet.

Putting hands and feet in the crevices between the blocks, I succeeded in getting over it, and, when I reached the top, found my companions in a small valley below. Descending to them, we continued climbing, and in a short time reached the crest. I sprang upon the summit, and another step would have precipitated me into an immense snow field five hundred feet below. To the edge of this field was a sheer icy precipice; and then, with a gradual fall, the field sloped off for about a mile, until it struck the foot

of another lower ridge. I stood on a narrow crest, about three feet in width, with an inclination of about 20° N. 51° E. As soon as I had gratified the first feelings of curiosity, I descended, and each man ascended in his turn; for I would only allow one at a time to mount the unstable and precarious slab, which it seemed a breath would hurl into the abyss below. We mounted the barometer in the snow of the summit, and, fixing a ramrod in a crevice, unfurled the national flag to wave in the breeze where never flag waved before. During our morning's ascent, we had met no sign of animal life, except the small sparrow-like bird already mentioned. A stillness the most profound and a terrible solitude forced themselves constantly on the mind as the great features of the place. Here, on the summit, where the stillness was absolute, unbroken by any sound, and the solitude complete, we thought ourselves beyond the region of animated life; but while we were sitting on the rock, a solitary bee (*bromus*, the *humble bee*) came winging his flight from the eastern valley, and lit on the knee of one of the men.

It was a strange place, the icy rock and the highest peak of the Rocky mountains, for a lover of warm sunshine and flowers; and we pleased ourselves with the idea that he was the first of his species to cross the mountain barrier—a solitary pioneer to foretell the advance of civilisation. I believe that a moment's thought would have made us let him continue his way unharmed; but we carried out the law of this country, where all animated nature seems at war; and, seizing him immediately, put him in at least a fit place—in the leaves of a large book, among the flowers we had collected on our way. The barometer stood at 18.293, the attached thermometer at 44° ; giving for the elevation of this summit 13,570 feet above the Gulf of Mexico, which may be called the highest flight of the bee. It is certainly the highest known flight of that insect. From the description given by Mackenzie of the mountains where he crossed them, with that of a French officer still farther to the north, and Colonel Long's measurements to the south, joined to the opinion of the oldest traders of the country, it is presumed that this is the highest peak of the Rocky mountains. The day was sunny and bright, but a slight shining mist hung over the lower plains, which interfered with our view of the surrounding country. On one side we overlooked innumerable lakes and streams, the spring of the Colorado of the Gulf of California; and on the other was the Wind river valley, where were the heads of the Yellowstone branch of the Missouri; far to the north, we just could discover the snowy heads of the *Trois Tetons*, where were the

sources of the Missouri and Columbia rivers; and at the southern extremity of the ridge, the peaks were plainly visible, among which were some of the springs of the Nebraska or Platte river. Around us, the whole scene had one main striking feature, which was that of terrible convulsion. Parallel to its length, the ridge was split into chasms and fissures; between which rose the thin lofty walls, terminated with slender minarets and columns. According to the barometer, the little crest of the wall on which we stood was three thousand five hundred and seventy feet above that place, and two thousand seven hundred and eighty above the little lakes at the bottom, immediately at our feet. Our camp at the Two Hills (an astronomical station) bore south 3° east, which, with a bearing afterward obtained from a fixed position, enabled us to locate the peak. The bearing of the *Trois Tetons* was north 50° west, and the direction of the central ridge of the Wind river mountains south 39° east. The summit rock was gneiss, succeeded by sienitic gneiss. Sienite and feldspar succeeded in our descent to the snow line, where we found a feldspathic granite. I had remarked that the noise produced by the explosion of our pistols had the usual degree of loudness, but was not in the least prolonged, expiring almost instantaneously. Having now made what observations our means afforded, we proceeded to descend. We had accomplished an object of laudable ambition, and beyond the strict order of our instructions. We had climbed the loftiest peak of the Rocky mountains, and looked down upon the snow a thousand feet below, and, standing where never human foot had stood before, felt the exultation of first explorers. It was about 2 o'clock when we left the summit; and when we reached the bottom, the sun had already sunk behind the wall, and the day was drawing to a close. It would have been pleasant to have lingered here and on the summit longer; but we hurried away as rapidly as the ground would permit, for it was an object to regain our party as soon as possible, not knowing what accident the next hour might bring forth.

We reached our deposit of provisions at nightfall. Here was not the inn which awaits the tired traveller on his return from Mont Blanc, or the orange groves of South America, with their refreshing juices and soft fragrant air; but we found our little *cache* of dried meat and coffee undisturbed. Though the moon was bright, the road was full of precipices, and the fatigue of the day had been great. We therefore abandoned the idea of rejoining our friends, and lay down on the rock, and, in spite of the cold, slept soundly.

August 16.—We left our encampment

souri and Columbia rivers; in extremity of the ridge, only visible, among which springs of the Nebraska around us, the whole scene being feature, which was convulsion. Parallel to its was split into chasms and which rose the thin lofty with slender minarets and ing to the barometer, the wall on which we stood five hundred and seventy place, and two thousand eighty above the little immediately at our feet. Two Hills (an astronomical h 3° east, which, with a obtained from a fixed po- to locate the peak. The *Point Tetons* was north 50° of the central ridge mountains south 39° east. was gneiss, succeeded by Sienite and feldspar suc- scent to the snow line, a feldspathic granite. I the noise produced by the stols had the usual degree was not in the least pro- almost instantaneously. e what observations our we proceeded to descend. had an object of laudable and the strict order of our had climbed the loftiest ty mountains, and looked ow a thousand feet below, re never human foot had the exultation of first ex- about 2 o'clock when we and when we reached the d already sunk behind the was drawing to a close. n pleasant to have lingered nmit longer; but we hur- dly as the ground would s an object to regain our sible, not knowing what our might bring forth. r deposit of provisions at was not the inn which aveller on his return from e orange groves of South r refreshing juices and soft ve found our little *cache* of fee undisturbed. Though ght, the road was full of e fatigue of the day had therefore abandoned the r friends, and lay down on a spite of the cold, slept

We left our encampment

with the daylight. We saw on our way large flocks of the mountain goat looking down on us from the cliffs. At the crack of a rifle, they would bound off among the rocks, and in a few minutes make their appearance on some lofty peak, some hundred or a thousand feet above. It is needless to attempt any further description of the country; the portion over which we travelled this morning was rough as imagination could picture it, and to us seemed equally beautiful. A con- course of lakes and rushing waters, moun- tains of rocks naked and destitute of vegeta- ble earth, dells and ravines of the most exquisite beauty, all kept green and fresh by the great moisture in the air, and sown with brilliant flowers, and everywhere thrown around all the glory of most magnificent scenes: these constitute the features of the place, and impress themselves vividly on the mind of the traveller. It was not until 11 o'clock that we reached the place where our animals had been left, when we first attempt- ed the mountains on foot. Near one of the still burning fires we found a piece of meat, which our friends had thrown away, and which furnished us a mouthful—a very scanty breakfast. We continued directly on, and reached our camp on the mountain lake at dusk. We found all well. Nothing had occurred to interrupt the quiet since our departure, and the fine grass and good cool water had done much to re-establish our animals. All heard with great delight the order to turn our faces homeward; and toward sundown of the 17th, we encamped again at the Two Buttes.

In the course of this afternoon's march, the barometer was broken past remedy. I regretted it, as I was desirous to compare it again with Dr. Engleman's barometers at St. Louis, to which mine were referred; but it had done its part well, and my objects were mainly fulfilled.

August 19.—We left our camp on Little Sandy river about 7 in the morning, and tra- versed the same sandy, undulating country. The air was filled with the turpentine scent of the various *artemisia*s, which are now in bloom, and, numerous as they are, give much gaiety to the landscape of the plains. At 10 o'clock, we stood exactly on the divide in the pass, where the wagon road crosses, and, descending immediately upon the Sweet Water, halted to take a meridian observation of the sun. The latitude was 42° 24' 32".

In the course of the afternoon we saw buf- falo again and at our evening halt on the Sweet Water the roasted ribs again made their appearance around the fires; and, with them, good humor, and laughter, and song, were restored to the camp. Our coffee had been expended, but we now made a kind of tea from the roots of the wild cherry tree.

August 23.—Yesterday evening we reach- ed our encampment at Rock Independence, where I took some astronomical observations. Here, not unmindful of the custom of early travellers and explorers in our country, I en- graved on this rock of the Far West a sym- bol of the Christian faith. Among the thickly inscribed names, I made on the hard granite the impression of a large cross, which I covered with a black preparation of India rubber, well calculated to resist the influence of wind and rain. It stands amidst the names of many who have long since found their way to the grave, and for whom the huge rock is a giant gravestone.

One George Weymouth was sent out to Maine by the Earl of Southampton, Lord Arundel, and others; and in the narrative of their discoveries, he says: "The next day, we ascended in our pinnace that part of the river which lies more to the westward, carry- ing with us a cross—a thing never omitted by any Christian traveller—which we erected at the ultimate end of our route." This was in the year 1605; and in 1842 I obeyed the feeling of early travellers, and left the im- pression of the cross deeply engraved on the vast rock one thousand miles beyond the Mississippi, to which discoverers have given the national name of *Rock Independence*.

In obedience to my instructions to survey the river Platte, if possible, I had determined to make an attempt at this place. The India rubber boat was filled with air, placed in the water, and loaded with what was necessary for our operations; and I embarked with Mr. Prens and a party of men. When we had dragged our boat for a mile or two over the sands, I abandoned the impossible undertak- ing, and waited for the arrival of the party, when we packed up our boat and equipage and at 9 o'clock were again moving along on our land journey. We continued along the valley on the right bank of the Sweet Water, where the formation, as already de- scribed, consists of a greyish micaceous sand- stone, and fine-grained conglomerate, and marl. We passed over a ridge which bor- ders or constitutes the river hills of the Platte, consisting of huge blocks, sixty or eighty feet cube, of decomposing granite. The cement which united them was proba- bly of easier decomposition, and has disap- peared and left them isolate, and separated by small spaces. Numerous horns of the mountain goat were lying among the rocks; and in the ravines were cedars, whose trunks were of extraordinary size. From this ridge we descended to a small open plain at the mouth of the Sweet Water, which rushed with a rapid current into the Platte, here flowing along in a broad, and apparently deep stream, which seemed, from its turbid appearance, to be considerably swollen. †

obtained here some astronomical observations, and the afternoon was spent in getting our boat ready for navigation the next day.

August 24.—We started before sunrise, intending to breakfast at Goat Island. I had directed the land party, in charge of Bernier, to proceed to this place, where they were to remain, should they find no note to apprise them of our having passed. In the event of receiving this information, they were to continue their route, passing by certain places which had been designated. Mr. Preuss accompanied me, and with us were five of my best men, viz: C. Lambert, Basil Lajeunesse, Honoré Ayot, Benoist, and Descoteaux. Here appeared no scarcity of water, and we took on board, with various instruments and baggage, provisions for ten or twelve days. We paddled down the river rapidly, for our little craft was light as a duck on the water; and the sun had been some time risen, when we heard before us a hollow roar, which we supposed to be that of a fall, of which we had heard a vague rumor, but whose exact locality no one had been able to describe to us. We were approaching a ridge, through which the river passes by a place called "cañon" (pronounced *kanyon*), a Spanish word, signifying a piece of artillery, the barrel of a gun, or any kind of tube; and which, in this country, has been adopted to describe the passage of a river between perpendicular rocks of great height, which frequently approach each other so closely overhead as to form a kind of tunnel over the stream, which foams along below, half choked up by fallen fragments. Between the mouth of the Sweet Water and Goat Island, there is probably a fall of 300 feet, and that was principally made in the cañons before us; as, without them, the water was comparatively smooth. As we neared the ridge, the river made a sudden turn, and swept squarely down against one of the walls of the cañon with a great velocity, and so steep a descent, that it had, to the eye, the appearance of an inclined plane. When we launched into this, the men jumped overboard, to check the velocity of the boat, but were soon in water up to their necks, and our boat ran on; but we succeeded in bringing her to a small point of rocks on the right, at the mouth of the cañon. Here was a kind of elevated sand beach, not many yards square, backed by the rocks, and around the point the river swept at a right angle. Trunks of trees deposited on jutting points 20 or 30 feet above, and other marks, showed that the water here frequently rose to a considerable height. The ridge was of the same decomposing granite already mentioned, and the water had worked the surface, in many places, into a wavy surface of ridges and holes. We ascended the rocks to recon-

noitre the ground, and from the summit the passage appeared to be a continued cataract foaming over many obstructions, and broken by a number of small falls. We saw nowhere a fall answering to that which had been described to us as having 20 or 25 feet, but still concluded this to be the place in question, as, in the season of floods, the rush of the river against the wall would produce a great rise, and the waters, reflected squarely off, would descend through the passage in a sheet of foam, having every appearance of a large fall. Eighteen years previous to this time, as I have subsequently learned from himself, Mr. Fitzpatrick, somewhere above on this river, had embarked with a valuable cargo of beaver. Unacquainted with the stream, which he believed would conduct him safely to the Missouri, he came unexpectedly into this cañon, where he was wrecked, with the total loss of his furs. It would have been a work of great time and labor to pack our baggage across the ridge, and I determined to run the cañon. We all again embarked, and at first attempted to check the way of the boat; but the water swept through with so much violence that we narrowly escaped being swamped, and were obliged to let her go in the full force of the current, and trust to the skill of the boatmen. The dangerous places in this cañon were where huge rocks had fallen from above, and hemmed in the already narrow pass of the river to an open space of three or four and five feet. These obstructions raised the water considerably above, which was sometimes precipitated over in a fall; and at other places, where this dam was too high, rushed through the contracted opening with tremendous violence. Had our boat been made of wood, in passing the narrows she would have been staved; but her elasticity preserved her unhurt from every shock, and she seemed fairly to leap over the falls.

In this way we passed three cataracts in succession, where, perhaps 100 feet of smooth water intervened; and, finally, with a shout of pleasure at our success, issued from our tunnel into the open day beyond. We were so delighted with the performance of our boat, and so confident in her powers, that we would not have hesitated to leap a fall of ten feet with her. We put to shore for breakfast at some willows on the right bank, immediately below the mouth of the cañon; for it was now 8 o'clock, and we had been working since daylight, and were all wet, fatigued, and hungry. While the men were preparing breakfast, I went out to reconnoitre. The view was very limited. The course of the river was smooth, so far as I could see; on both sides were broken hills; and but a mile or two below was another high ridge. The

and from the summit the
to be a continued cataract
obstructions, and broken
fall falls. We saw no-
thing to that which had
as having 20 or 25 feet,
this to be the place in
season of floods, the rush
the wall would produce
waters, reflected squarely
through the passage in a
ing every appearance of a
in years previous to this
subsequently learned from
atrick, somewhere above
embarked with a valuable
Unacquainted with the
believed would conduct
Missouri, he came unex-
cañon, where he was
total loss of his furs. It
work of great time and
uggage across the ridge,
run the cañon. We all
and at first attempted to
the boat; but the water
n so much violence that
eed being swamped, and
her go in the full force of
st to the skill of the boat-
ons places in this cañon
cks had fallen from above,
e already narrow pass of
n space of three or four
se obstructions raised the
above, which was some-
ver in a fall; and at other
dam was too high, rushed
cted opening with tremen-
nd our boat been made of
e narrows she would have
er elasticity preserved her
shock, and she seemed
the falls.
passed three cataracts in
perhaps 100 feet of smooth
and, finally, with a shout
success, issued from our
n day beyond. We were
the performance of our
ent in her powers, that we
sitated to leap a fall of ten
e put to shore for break-
vs on the right bank, im-
e mouth of the cañon; for
ck, and we had been work-
and were all wet, fatigued,
ile the men were prepar-
nt out to reconnoitre. The
ited. The course of the
so far as I could see; on
oken hills; and but a mile
another high ridge. The

rock at the mouth of the cañon was still the decomposing granite, with great quantities of mica, which made a very glittering sand.

We re-embarked at 9 o'clock, and in about twenty minutes reached the next cañon. Landing on a rocky shore at its commencement, we ascended the ridge to reconnoitre. Portage was out of the question. So far as we could see, the jagged rocks pointed out the course of the cañon, on a winding line of seven or eight miles. It was simply a narrow, dark chasm in the rock; and here the perpendicular faces were much higher than in the previous pass, being at this end two to three hundred, and further down, as we afterwards ascertained, five hundred feet in vertical height. Our previous success had made us bold, and we determined again to run the cañon. Everything was secured as firmly as possible; and having divested ourselves of the greater part of our clothing, we pushed into the stream. To save our chronometer from accident, Mr. Preuss took it, and attempted to proceed along the shore on the masses of rock, which in places were piled up on either side; but, after he had walked about five minutes, everything like shore disappeared, and the vertical wall came squarely down into the water. He therefore waited until we came up. An ugly pass lay before us. We had made fast to the stern of the boat a strong rope about fifty feet long; and three of the men clambered along among the rocks, and with this rope let her down slowly through the pass. In several places high rocks lay scattered about in the channel; and in the narrows it required all our strength and skill to avoid staving the boat on the sharp points. In one of these, the boat proved a little too broad, and stuck fast for an instant, while the water flew over us; fortunately, it was but for an instant, as our united strength forced her immediately through. The water swept overboard only a sextant and a pair of saddlebags. I caught the sextant as it passed by me; but the saddlebags became the prey of the whirlpools. We reached the place where Mr. Preuss was standing, took him on board, and, with the aid of the boat, put the men with the rope on the succeeding pile of rocks. We found this passage much worse than the previous one, and our position was rather a bad one. To go back, was impossible; before us, the cataract was a sheet of foam; and shut up in the chasm by the rocks, which, in some places, seemed almost to meet overhead, the roar of the water was deafening. We pushed off again; but, after making a little distance, the force of the current became too great for the men on shore, and two of them let go the rope. Lajeunesse, the third man, lung on, and was jerked headforemost into the river from a rock

about twelve feet high; and down the boat shot like an arrow, Basil following us in the rapid current, and exerting all his strength to keep in mid channel—his head only seen occasionally like a black spot in the white foam. How far we went, I do not exactly know, but we succeeded in turning the boat into an eddy below. "*Cré Dieu,*" said Basil Lajeunesse, as he arrived immediately after us, "*Je crois bien que j'ai nagé un demi mille.*" He had owed his life to his skill as a swimmer, and I determined to take him and the two others on board, and trust to skill and fortune to reach the other end in safety. We placed ourselves on our knees, with the short paddles in our hands, the most skillful boatman being at the bow; and again we commenced our rapid descent. We cleared rock after rock, and shot past fall after fall, our little boat seeming to play with the cataract. We became flushed with success, and familiar with the danger; and, yielding to the excitement of the occasion, broke forth together into a Canadian boat song. Singing, or rather shouting, we dashed along; and were, I believe, in the midst of the chorus, when the boat struck a concealed rock immediately at the foot of a fall, which whirled her over in an instant. Three of my men could not swim, and my first feeling was to assist them, and save some of our effects; but a sharp concussion or two convinced me that I had not yet saved myself. A few strokes brought me into an eddy, and I landed on a pile of rocks on the left side. Looking around, I saw that Mr. Preuss had gained the shore on the same side, about twenty yards below; and a little climbing and swimming soon brought him to my side. On the opposite side, against the wall, lay the boat bottom up; and Lambert was in the act of saving Descoteaux, whom he had grasped by the hair, and who could not swim; "*Lâche pas,*" said he, as I afterwards learned, "*lâche pas, cher frère.*" "*Crains pas,*" was the reply, "*Je m'en vais mourir avant que de te lâcher.*" Such was the reply of courage and generosity in this danger. For a hundred yards below the current was covered with floating books and boxes, bales of blankets, and scattered articles of clothing; and so strong and boiling was the stream, that even our heavy instruments, which were all in cases, kept on the surface, and the sextant, circle, and the long black box of the telescope, were in view at once. For a moment, I felt somewhat disheartened. All our books—almost every record of the journey—our journals and registers of astronomical and barometrical observations—had been lost in a moment. But it was no time to indulge in regrets, and I immediately set about endeavoring to save something from the wreck. Making

ourselves understood as well as possible by signs (for nothing could be heard in the roar of waters), we commenced our operations. Of everything on board, the only article that had been saved was my double barrelled gun, which Descoteaux had caught, and clung to with drowning tenacity. The men continued down the river on the left bank. Mr. Preuss and myself descended on the side we were on; and Lajeunesse, with a paddle in his hand, jumped on the boat alone, and continued down the cañon. She was now light, and cleared every bad place with much less difficulty. In a short time he was joined by Lambert, and the search was continued for about a mile and a half, which was as far as the boat could proceed in the pass.

Here the walls were about five hundred feet high, and the fragments of rocks from above had choked the river into a hollow pass, but one or two feet above the surface. Through this and the interstices of the rock, the water found its way. Favored beyond our expectations, all of our registers had been recovered, with the exception of one of my journals, which contained the notes and incidents of travel, and topographical descriptions, a number of scattered astronomical observations, principally meridian altitudes of the sun, and our barometrical register west of Laramie. Fortunately, our other journals contained duplicates of the most important barometrical observations which had been taken in the mountains. These, with a few scattered notes, were all that had been preserved of our meteorological observations. In addition to these, we saved the circle; and these, with a few blankets, constituted everything that had been rescued from the waters.

The day was running rapidly away, and it was necessary to reach Goat island, whither the party had preceded us, before night. In this uncertain country, the traveller is so much in the power of chance, that we became somewhat uneasy in regard to them. Should anything have occurred, in the brief interval of our separation, to prevent our rejoining them, our situation would be rather a desperate one. We had not a morsel of provisions—our arms and ammunition were gone—and we were entirely at the mercy of any straggling party of savages, and not a little in danger of starvation. We therefore set out at once in two parties. Mr. Preuss and myself on the left, and the men on the opposite side of the river. Climbing out of the cañon, we found ourselves in a very broken country, where we were not yet able to recognize any locality. In the course of our descent through the cañon, the rock, which at the upper end was of the decomposing granite, changed into a varied sandstone formation. The hills and points of the

ridges were covered with fragments of a yellow sandstone, of which the strata were sometimes displayed in the broken ravines which interrupted our course, and made our walk extremely fatiguing. At one point of the cañon the red argillaceous sandstone rose in a wall of five hundred feet, surmounted by a stratum of white sandstone; and in an opposite ravine a column of red sandstone rose, in form like a steeple, about one hundred and fifty feet high. The scenery was extremely picturesque, and notwithstanding our forlorn condition, we were frequently obliged to stop and admire it. Our progress was not very rapid. We had emerged from the water half naked, and, on arriving at the top of the precipice, I found myself with only one moccasin. The fragments of rock made walking painful, and I was frequently obliged to stop and pull out the thorns of the *cactus*, here the prevailing plant, and with which a few minutes' walk covered the bottom of my feet. From this ridge the river emerged into a smiling prairie, and, descending to the bank for water, we were joined by Benoist. The rest of the party were out of sight, having taken a more inland route. We crossed the river repeatedly—sometimes able to ford it, and sometimes swimming—climbed over the ridges of two more cañons, and towards evening reached the cut, which we here named the Hot Spring gate. On our previous visit in July, we had not entered this pass, reserving it for our descent in the boat; and when we entered it this evening, Mr. Preuss was a few hundred feet in advance. Heated with the long march, he came suddenly upon a fine bold spring gushing from the rock, about ten feet above the river. Eager to enjoy the crystal water, he threw himself down for a hasty draught, and took a mouthful of water almost boiling hot. He said nothing to Benoist, who laid himself down to drink; but the steam from the water arrested his eagerness, and he escaped the hot draught. We had no thermometer to ascertain the temperature, but I could hold my hand in the water just long enough to count two seconds. There are eight or ten of these springs discharging themselves by streams large enough to be called runs. A loud hollow noise was heard from the rock, which I supposed to be produced by the fall of the water. The strata immediately where they issue is a fine white and calcareous sandstone, covered with an incrustation of common salt. Leaving this Thermopylae of the west, in a short walk we reached the red ridge which has been described as lying just above Goat Island. Ascending this, we found some fresh tracks and a button, which showed that the other men had already arrived. A shout from the man who first reached the top of the ridge, responded to

red with fragments of a
of which the strata were
ed in the broken ravines
our course, and made our
tugging. At one point of
d argillaceous sandstone
ve hundred feet, surmount-
white sandstone; and in
a column of red sandstone
steeply, about one hundred
feet. The scenery was extreme-
ly notwithstanding our fore-
were frequently obliged to
it. Our progress was not
ad emerged from the water
on arriving at the top of the
myself with only one moun-
tains of rock made walk-
was frequently obliged to
the thorns of the *cactus*,
g plant, and with which a
covered the bottom of my
ridge the river emerged
iric, and, descending to the
ve were joined by Benoist.
party were out of sight,
more inland route. We
er repeatedly—sometimes
and sometimes swimming—
ridges of two more cañons,
ling reached the cut, which
the Hot Spring gate. On
in July, we had not enter-
ing it for our descent in
en we entered it this even-
was a few hundred feet in
d with the long march, he
on a fine bold spring gush-
, about ten feet above the
enjoy the crystal water, he
an for a hasty draught, and
of water almost boiling hot.
o Benoist, who laid himself
ut the steam from the water
rness, and he escaped the
e had no thermometer to
nperature, but I could hold
water just long enough to
s. There are eight or ten
discharging themselves by
ugh to be called runs. A
e was heard from the rock,
to be produced by the fall
e strata immediately where
fine white and calcareous
d with an incrustation of
aving this Thermopylæ of
ort walk we reached the red
een described as lying just
nd. Ascending this, we
tracks and a button, which
other men had already ar-
from the man who first
of the ridge, responded to

from below, informed us that our friends were all on the island; and we were soon among them. We found some pieces of buffalo standing around the fire for us, and managed to get some dry clothes among the people. A sudden storm of rain drove us into the best shelter we could find, where we slept soundly, after one of the most fatiguing days I have ever experienced.

August 25.—Early this morning Lajenne was sent to the wreck for the articles which had been saved, and about noon we left the island. The mare which we had left here in July had much improved in condition, and she served us well again for some time, but was finally abandoned at a subsequent part of the journey. At 10 in the morning of the 26th we reached Cache camp, where we found everything undisturbed. We disinterred our deposit, arranged our carts which had been left here on the way out, and, travelling a few miles in the afternoon, encamped for the night at the ford of the Platte.

August 27.—At midday we halted at the place where we had taken dinner on the 27th of July. The country which, when we passed up, looked as if the hard winter frosts had passed over it, had now assumed a new face, so much of vernal freshness had been given to it by the late rains. The Platte was exceedingly low—a mere line of water among the sandbars. We reached Laramie fort on the last day of August, after an absence of forty-two days, and had the pleasure to find our friends all well. The fortieth day had been fixed for our return; and the quick eyes of the Indians, who were on the lookout for us, discovered our flag as we wound among the hills. The fort saluted us with repeated discharges of its single piece, which we returned with scattered volleys of our small arms, and felt the joy of a home reception in getting back to this remote station, which seemed so far off as we went out.

On the morning of the 3d of September we bade adieu to our kind friends at the fort, and continued our homeward journey down the Platte, which was glorious with the autumnal splendor of innumerable flowers in full and brilliant bloom. On the warm sands, among the *helianthi*, one of the characteristic plants, we saw great numbers of rattlesnakes, of which five or six were killed in the morning's ride. We occupied ourselves in improving our previous survey of the river; and, as the weather was fine, astronomical observations were generally made at night and at noon.

We halted for a short time on the afternoon of the 5th with a village of Sioux Indians, some of whose chiefs we had met at Laramie. The water in the Platte was extremely low; in many places, the large ex-

pense of sands, with some occasional stunted trees on the banks, gave it the air of the sea-coast; the bed of the river being merely a succession of sandbars, among which the channel was divided into rivulets a few inches deep. We crossed and recrossed with our carts repeatedly and at our pleasure; and, whenever an obstruction barred our way, in the shape of precipitous bluffs that came down upon the river, we turned directly into it, and made our way along the sandy bed, with no other inconvenience than the frequent quicksands, which greatly fatigued our animals. Disinterring on the way the *cache* which had been made by our party when they ascended the river, we reached without accident, on the evening of the 12th of September, our old encampment of the 2d of July, at the junction of the forks. Our *cache* of the barrel of pork was found undisturbed, and proved a seasonable addition to our stock of provisions. At this place I had determined to make another attempt to descend the Platte by water, and accordingly spent two days in the construction of a bull boat. Men were sent out on the evening of our arrival, the necessary number of bulls killed, and their skins brought to the camp. Four of the best of them were strongly sewed together with buffalo sinew, and stretched over a basket frame of willow. The seams were then covered with ashes and tallow, and the boat left exposed to the sun for the greater part of one day, which was sufficient to dry and contract the skin, and make the whole work solid and strong. It had a rounded bow, was eight feet long and five broad, and drew with four men about four inches water. On the morning of the 15th we embarked in our hide boat, Mr. Preuss and myself, with two men. We dragged her over the sands for three or four miles, and then left her on a bar, and abandoned entirely all further attempts to navigate this river. The names given by the Indians are always remarkably appropriate; and certainly none was ever more so than that which they have given to this stream—"the Nebraska, or Shallow river." Walking steadily the remainder of the day, a little before dark we overtook our people at their remaining camp, about twenty-one miles below the junction. The next morning we crossed the Platte, and continued our way down the river bottom on the left bank, where we found an excellent plainly beaten road.

On the 18th we reached Grand Island, which is fifty-two miles long, with an average breadth of one mile and three-quarters. It has on it some small eminences, and is sufficiently elevated to be secure from the annual floods of the river. As has been already remarked, it is well timbered, with an excellent soil, and recommends itself to

notice as the best point for a military position on the Lower Platte.

On the 22d we arrived at the village of the Grand Pawnees, on the right bank of the river, about thirty miles above the mouth of the Loup fork. They were gathering in their corn, and we obtained from them a very welcome supply of vegetables.

The morning of the 24th we reached the Loup fork of the Platte. At the place where we forded it, this stream was four hundred and thirty yards broad, with a swift current of clear water; in this respect, differing from the Platte, which has a yellow muddy color, derived from the limestone and marl formation, of which we have previously spoken. The ford was difficult, as the water was so deep that it came into the body of the carts, and we reached the opposite bank after repeated attempts, ascending and descending the bed of the river in order to avail ourselves of the bars. We encamped on the left bank of the fork, in the point of land at its junction with the Platte. During the two days that we remained here for astronomical observations, the bad weather permitted us to obtain but one good observation for the latitude—a meridian altitude of the sun, which gave for the latitude of the mouth of the Loup fork, $41^{\circ} 22' 11''$.

Five or six days previously, I had sent forward C. Lambert, with two men, to Bellevue, with directions to ask from Mr. P. Sarpy, the gentleman in charge of the American Company's establishment at that place, the aid of his carpenters in constructing a boat, in which I proposed to descend the Missouri. On the afternoon of the 27th we met one of the men, who had been despatched by Mr. Sarpy with a welcome supply of provisions and a very kind note, which gave us the very gratifying intelligence that our boat was in rapid progress. On the evening of the 30th we encamped in an almost impenetrable undergrowth on the left bank of the Platte, in the point of land at its confluence with the Missouri—three hundred and fifteen miles, according to our reckoning, from the junction of the forks, and five hundred and twenty from Fort Laramie.

From the junction we had found the bed of the Platte occupied with numerous islands, many of them very large, and all well tim-

bered; possessing, as well as the bottom lands of the river, a very excellent soil. With the exception of some scattered groves on the banks, the bottoms are generally without timber. A portion of these consist of low grounds, covered with a profusion of fine grasses, and are probably inundated in the spring; the remaining part is high river prairie, entirely beyond the influence of the floods. The breadth of the river is usually three-quarters of a mile, except where it is enlarged by islands. That portion of its course which is occupied by Grand Island has an average breadth, from shore to shore, of two and a half miles.

October 1.—I rose this morning long before daylight, and heard with a feeling of pleasure the tinkling of cow-bells at the settlements on the opposite side of the Missouri. Early in the day we reached Mr. Sarpy's residence; and, in the security and comfort of his hospitable mansion, felt the pleasure of being again within the pale of civilization. We found our boat on the stocks; a few days sufficed to complete her; and, in the afternoon of the 4th, we embarked on the Missouri. All our equipage—horses, carts, and the *materiel* of the camp—had been sold at public auction at Bellevue. The strength of my party enabled me to man the boat with ten oars, relieved every hour; and we descended rapidly. Early on the morning of the tenth, we halted to make some astronomical observations at the mouth of the Kansas, exactly four months since we had left the trading post of Mr. Cyprian Chouteau, on the same river, ten miles above. On our descent to this place, we had employed ourselves in surveying and sketching the Missouri, making astronomical observations regularly at night and at midday, whenever the weather permitted. These operations on the river were continued until our arrival at the city of St. Louis, Missouri, on the 17th. At St. Louis, the sale of our remaining effects was made; and, leaving that city by steamboat on the 18th, I had the honor to report to you at the city of Washington on the 29th of October.

Very respectfully, sir,

Your obedient servant,

J. C. FREMONT,

2d Lieut. Corps of Topog'l Engineers

ASTRONOMICAL OBSERVATIONS.

The longitudes given in the subjoined table are referred to the meridian of Greenwich.

For the determination of astronomical positions, we were provided with the following instruments:

One telescope, magnifying power 120.
One circle, by Gambey, Paris.
One sextant, by Gambey, Paris.
One sextant, by Troughton.
One box chronometer, No. 7,810, by French.
One Brockbank pocket chronometer.
One small watch with a light chronometer balance, No. 4,632, by Arnold & Dent.

The rate of the chronometer 7,810, is exhibited in the following statement:

"New York, May 5, 1842.
"Chronometer No. 7,810, by French, is this day at noon—
"Slow of Greenwich mean time 11' 4"
"Fast of New York mean time 4h. 45' 1"
"Losses per day 2"⁷/₁₀
"ARTHUR STEWART,
"74 Merchants' Exchange."

An accident among some rough ground in the neighborhood of the Kansas river, strained the balance of this chronometer, (No. 7,810,) and rendered it useless during the remainder of the campaign. From the 9th of June to the 24th of August, inclusively, the longitudes depend upon the Brockbank pocket chronometer; the rate of which, on leaving St. Louis, was fourteen seconds. The rate obtained by observations at Fort Laramie, 14".05, has been used in calculation.

From the 24th of August until the termination of the journey, No. 4,632 (of which the rate was 35".79) was used for the same purposes. The rate of this watch was irregular, and I place but little confidence in the few longitudes which depend upon it, though, so far as we have any means of judging, they appear tolerably correct.

Table of latitudes and longitudes, deduced from observations made during the journey.

Date.	Station.	Latitude.	Longitude.
		Deg. min. sec.	Deg. min. sec.
1842.			
May 27	St. Louis, residence of Colonel Brant - - -	38 37 34	
June 8	Chouteau's lower trading post, Kansas river - -	39 05 57	94 25 46
16	Left bank of the Kansas river, seven miles above the ford - - - - -	39 06 40	95 38 05
18	Vermilion creek - - - - -	39 15 19	96 04 07
19	Cold Springs, near the road to Laramie - - -	39 30 40	96 14 49
20	Big Blue river - - - - -	39 45 08	96 32 35
25	Little Blue river - - - - -	40 26 50	98 22 12
26	Right bank of Platte river - - - - -	40 41 06	98 45 49
27	Right bank of Platte river - - - - -	40 39 32	99 05 24
28	Right bank of Platte river - - - - -	40 39 51	
30	Right bank of Platte river - - - - -	40 39 55	100 05 47
July 2	Junction of north and south forks of the Nebraska or Platte river - - - - -	41 05 05	100 49 43
4	South fork of Platte river, left bank - - -	40 51 17	103 07
6	South fork of Platte river, island - - - - -	40 53 26	103 30 37
7	South fork of Platte river, left bank - - -	40 22 35	105 12 12
11	South fork of Platte river, St. Yrain's fort - -	40 41 59	104 57 49
12	Crow creek - - - - -	41 08 30	104 39 37
13	On a stream, name unknown - - - - -	41 40 13	104 24 36
14	Horse creek, Goshen's hole? - - - - -	42 12 10	104 47 43
16	Fort Laramie, near the mouth of Laramie's fork -	42 39 25	104 59 59
23	North fork of Platte river - - - - -	42 47 40	
24	North fork of Platte river - - - - -	42 51 35	105 50 45
25	North fork of Platte river, Dried Meat camp - -	42 50 08	
26	North fork of Platte river, noon halt - - -	42 52 24	106 08 24
26	North fork of Platte river, mouth of Deer creek -	42 50 53	106 38 26
28	North fork of Platte river, Cache camp - - -	42 38 01	106 54 32
29	North fork of Platte river, left bank - - -		

as well as the bottom
a very excellent soil.
of some scattered groves
bottoms are generally
A portion of these consist
covered with a profusion of
re probably inundated in
maining part is high river
yond the influence of the
th of the river is usually
mile, except where it is
ls. That portion of its
occupied by Grand island
adth, from shore to shore,
miles.
se this morning long be
heard with a feeling of
ng of cow-bells at the set-
posite side of the Missouri.
we reached Mr. Sarpy's
the security and comfort
nansion, felt the pleasure
ain the pale of civilisa-
our boat on the stocks;
l to complete her; and, in
the 4th, we embarked on
l our equipage—horses,
aterial of the camp—had
lic auction at Bellevue.
y party enabled me to man-
oars, relieved every hour;
d rapidly. Early on the
enth, we halted to make
observations at the mouth
ctly four months since we
ing post of Mr. Cyprian
e same river, ten miles
descent to this place, we
rselves in surveying and
ssouri, making astronomi-
regularly at night and at
r the weather permitted.
on the river were conti-
val at the city of St. Louis,
17th. At St. Louis, the
aining effects was made;
city by steamboat on the
onor to report to you at the
on on the 29th of October.
lly, sir,
ur obedient servant,
J. C. FREMONT,
orps of Topog'l Engineers

Table of latitudes and longitudes—Continued.

Date.	Station.	Latitude.		Longitude.	
		Deg.	min. sec.	Deg.	min. sec.
1842.					
July 30	North fork of Platte river, Goat island - - -	42	33 27	107	13 29
Aug. 1	Sweet Water river, one mile below Rock Independence - - -	42	29 56	107	25 23
4	Sweet Water river - - - - -	42	32 31	108	30 13
7	Sweet Water river - - - - -	42	27 15	109	21 32
8	Little Sandy creek, tributary to the Colorado of the West - - - - -	42	27 34	109	37 59
9	New fork, tributary to the Colorado - - - - -	42	42 46	109	58 11
10	Mountain lake - - - - -	42	49 49	110	08 03
15	Highest peak of the Wind river mountains.				
19	Sweet Water, noon halt - - - - -	42	24 32		
19	Sweet Water river - - - - -	42	22 22		
20	Sweet Water river - - - - -	42	31 46		
22	Sweet Water river, noon halt - - - - -	42	26 10		
22	Sweet Water river, at Rock Independence - - -	42	29 36		
23	North fork of Platte river, mouth of Sweet Water -	42	27 18		
30	Horse-shoe creek, noon halt - - - - -	42	24 24		
Sept. 3	North fork of Platte river, right bank - - - - -	42	01 40		
4	North fork of Platte river, near Scott's bluffs -	41	54 36		
5	North fork of Platte river, right bank, six miles above Chinney rock - - - - -	41	43 36		
8	North fork of Platte river, mouth of Ash creek -	41	17 19		
9	North fork of Platte river, right bank - - - - -	41	14 30		
10	North fork of Platte river, Cedar bluffs - - - -	41	10 16		
16	Platte river, noon halt - - - - -	40	54 31		
16	Platte river, left bank - - - - -	40	52 34		
17	Platte river, left bank - - - - -	40	43 38		
18	Platte river, left bank - - - - -	40	40 21		
19	Platte river, left bank - - - - -	40	39 44		
20	Platte river, noon halt, left bank - - - - -	40	48 19		
20	Platte river, left bank - - - - -	40	54 02		
21	Platte river, left bank - - - - -	41	05 37		
23	Platte river, noon halt, left bank - - - - -	41	20 20		
23	Platte river, left bank - - - - -	41	22 52		
25	Platte river, mouth of Loup fork - - - - -	41	22 11		
25	Platte river, mouth of Elk Horn river - - - -	41	09 34		
29	Platte river, left bank - - - - -	41	02 15		
Oct. 2	Bellevue, at the post of the American Fur Company, right bank of the Missouri river - - - - -	41	08 24	95	20
4	Left bank of the Missouri, opposite to the right bank of the mouth of the Platte - - - - -	41	02 11		
5	Missouri river - - - - -	40	34 08		
6	Bertholet's island, noon halt - - - - -	40	27 08		
6	Missouri river, mouth of Nishnabotona river - -	40	16 40		
8	Missouri river, left bank - - - - -	39	36 02		
10	Missouri river, mouth of the Kansas river - - -	39	06 03		

inued.

Latitude.		Longitude.	
min. sec.	Deg. min. sec.	min. sec.	Deg. min. sec.
33 27	107 13 29		
29 56	107 25 23		
32 31	108 30 13		
27 15	109 21 32		
27 34	109 37 59		
42 46	109 58 11		
49 49	110 08 03		
24 32			
22 22			
31 46			
36 10			
29 36			
27 18			
24 24			
01 40			
54 38			
43 36			
17 19			
14 30			
10 16			
54 31			
52 34			
42 38			
40 21			
39 44			
48 19			
54 02			
05 37			
20 20			
22 52			
22 11			
09 34			
02 15			
08 24	95 20		
02 11			
34 08			
27 08			
16 40			
36 02			
06 03			

A REPORT

OF

THE EXPLORING EXPEDITION

TO

OREGON AND NORTH CALIFORNIA

IN THE YEARS 1843-44.

WASHINGTON CITY, March 1, 1849.
Colonel J. J. ABERT, Chief of the
Corps of Topographical Engineers :

Sir:—In pursuance of your instructions, to connect the reconnoissance of 1842, which I had the honor to conduct, with the surveys of Commander Wilkes on the coast of the Pacific ocean, so as to give a connected survey of the interior of our continent, I proceeded to the Great West early in the spring of 1843, and arrived, on the 17th of May, at the little town of Kansas, on the Missouri frontier, near the junction of the Kansas river with the Missouri river, where I was detained near two weeks in completing the necessary preparations for the extended explorations which my instructions contemplated.

My party consisted principally of Creole and Canadian French, and Americans, amounting in all to 39 men; among whom you will recognise several of those who were with me in my first expedition, and who have been favorably brought to your notice in a former report. Mr. Thomas Fitzpatrick, whom many years of hardship and exposure in the western territories, had rendered familiar with a portion of the country it was designed to explore, had been selected as our guide; and Mr. Charles Preuss, who had been my assistant in the previous journey, was again associated with me in the same capacity on the present expedition. Agreeably to your directions, Mr. Theodore Talbot, of Washington city, had been attached to the party, with a view to advancement in his profession; and at St. Louis I had been joined by Mr. Frederick Dwight, a gentleman of Springfield, Massachusetts, who availed himself of our overland journey, to visit the Sandwich

Islands and China, by way of Fort Vancouver.

The men engaged for the service were :

Alexis Ayot,	Louis Ménard,
François Badeau,	Louis Montreuil,
Oliver Beaulieu,	Samuel Neal,
Baptiste Bernier,	Alexis Pera,
John A. Campbell,	François Pera,
John G. Campbell,	James Power,
Manuel Chapman,	Raphael Proue,
Ransom Clark,	Oscar Sarpy,
Philibert Courteau,	Baptiste Tabeau,
Michel Crélis,	Charles Taplin,
William Creuss,	Baptiste Tesson,
Clinton Deforest,	Auguste Vasquez,
Baptiste Derossier,	Joseph Verrot,
Basil Lajeunesse,	Patrick White,
François Lajeunesse,	Tiery Wright,
Henry Lee,	Louis Zindel, and

Jacob Dodson, a free young colored man of Washington city, who volunteered to accompany the expedition, and performed his duty manfully throughout the voyage. Two Delaware Indians—a fine-looking old man and his son—were engaged to accompany the expedition as hunters, through the kindness of Major Cummins, the excellent Indian agent. L. Maxwell, who had accompanied the expedition as one of the hunters in 1842, being on his way to Taos, in New Mexico, also joined us at this place.

The party was armed generally with Hall's carbines, which, with a brass 12-lb. howitzer, had been furnished to me from the United States arsenal at St. Louis, agreeably to the orders of Colonel S. W. Kearney, commanding the 3d military division. Three men were especially detailed for the management of this piece, under the charge of Louis Zindel, a native of Germany, who had been 19 years a non-commissioned officer

of artillery in the Prussian army, and regularly instructed in the duties of his profession. The camp equipage and provisions were transported in twelve carts, drawn each by two mules; and a light covered wagon, mounted on good springs, had been provided for the safer carriage of instruments. These were:

One refracting telescope, by Fraunhofer.

One reflecting circle, by Gambey.

Two sextants, by Troughton.

One pocket chronometer, No. 837, by Goffe, Falinouth.

One pocket chronometer, No. 730, by Brockbank.

One syphon barometer, by Hunten, Paris.

One cistern barometer, by Frye & Shaw, New York.

Six thermometers, and a number of small compasses.

To make the exploration as useful as possible, I determined, in conformity to your general instructions, to vary the route to the Rocky mountains from that followed in the year 1842. The route was then up the valley of the Great Platte river to the South Pass, in north latitude 42°; the route now determined on was up the valley of the Kansas river, and to the head of the Arkansas river, and to some pass in the mountains, if any could be found, at the sources of that river.

By making this deviation from the former route, the problem of a new road to Oregon and California, in a climate more genial, might be solved; and a better knowledge obtained of an important river, and the country it drained, while the great object of the expedition would find its point of commencement at the termination of the former, which was at that great gate in the ridge of the Rocky mountains called the South Pass, and on the lofty peak of the mountain which overlooks it, deemed the highest peak in the ridge, and from the opposite sides of which four great rivers take their rise, and flow to the Pacific or the Mississippi.

Various obstacles delayed our departure until the morning of the 29th, when we commenced our long voyage; and at the close of a day, rendered disagreeably cold by incessant rain, encamped about four miles beyond the frontier, on the verge of the great prairies.

Resuming our journey on the 31st, after the delay of a day to complete our equipment and furnish ourselves with some of the comforts of civilized life, we encamped in the evening at Elm Grove, in company with several emigrant wagons, constituting a party which was proceeding to Upper California, under the direction of Mr. J. B. Childs, of Missouri. The wagons were variously freighted with goods, furniture, and

farming utensils, containing among other things an entire set of machinery for a mill which Mr. Childs designed erecting on the waters of the Sacramento river emptying into the bay of San Francisco.

We were joined here by Mr. William Gilpin, of Missouri, who, intending this year to visit the settlements in Oregon, had been invited to accompany us, and proved a useful and agreeable addition to the party. From this encampment, our route until the 3d of June was nearly the same as that described to you in 1842. Trains of wagons were almost constantly in sight; giving to the road a populous and animated appearance, although the greater portion of the emigrants were collected at the crossing, or already on their march beyond the Kansas river.

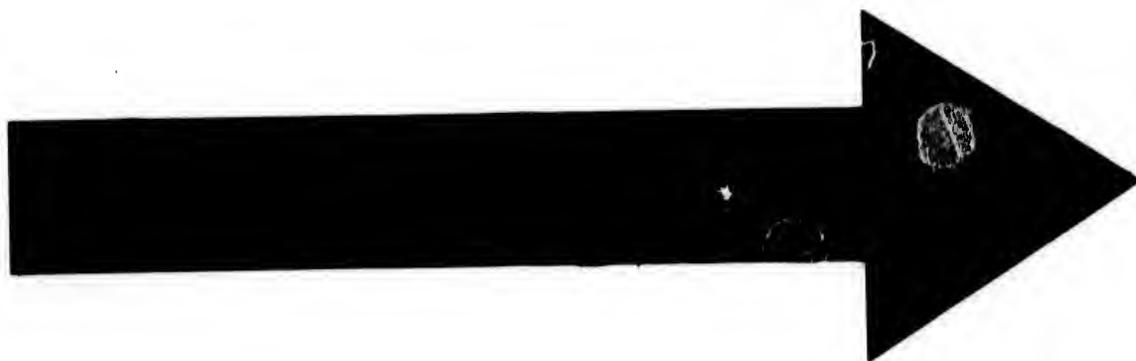
Leaving at the ford the usual emigrant road to the mountains, we continued our route along the southern side of the Kansas, where we found the country much more broken than on the northern side of the river, and where our progress was much delayed by the numerous small streams, which obliged us to make frequent bridges. On the morning of the 4th, we crossed a handsome stream, called by the Indians Otter creek, about 130 feet wide, where a flat stratum of limestone, which forms the bed, made an excellent ford. We met here a small party of Kansas and Delaware Indians, the latter returning from a hunting and trapping expedition on the upper waters of the river; and on the heights above were five or six Kansas women, engaged in digging prairie potatoes, (*psoralea esculenta*.) On the afternoon of the 6th, while busily engaged in crossing a wooded stream, we were thrown into a little confusion by the sudden arrival of Maxwell, who entered the camp at full speed at the head of a war party of Osage Indians, with gay red blankets, and heads shaved to the scalp lock. They had run him a distance of about nine miles, from a creek on which we had encamped the day previous, and to which he had returned in search of a runaway horse belonging to Mr. Dwight, which had taken the homeward road, carrying with him saddle, bridle, and holster pistols. The Osages were probably ignorant of our strength, and, when they charged into the camp, drove off a number of our best horses; but we were fortunately well mounted, and, after a hard chase of seven or eight miles, succeeded in recovering them all. This accident, which occasioned delay and trouble, and threatened danger and loss, and broke down some good horses at the start, and actually endangered the expedition, was a first fruit of having gentlemen in company—very estimable, to be sure, but who are not trained to the care

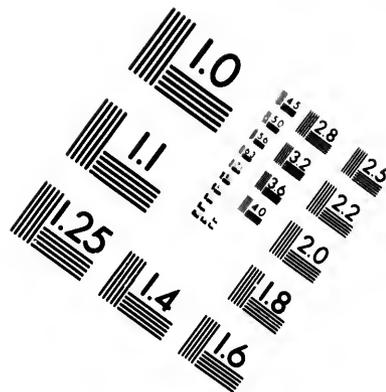
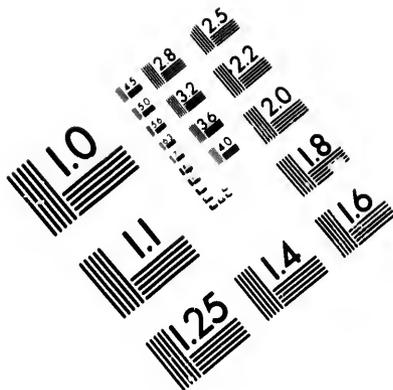
[1843

containing among other
of machinery for a mill
designed erecting on the
Sacramento river emptying
San Francisco.

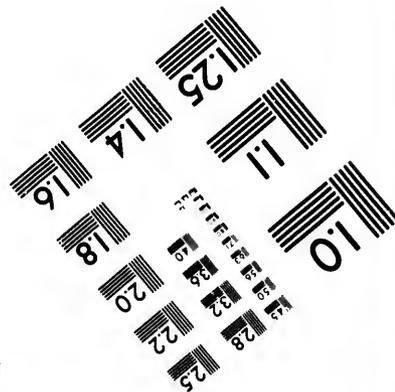
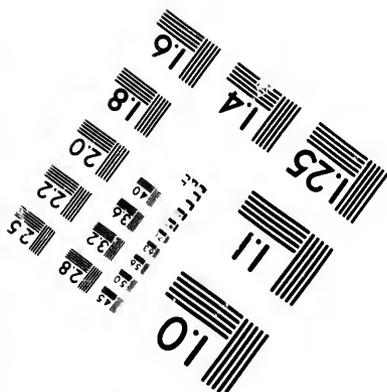
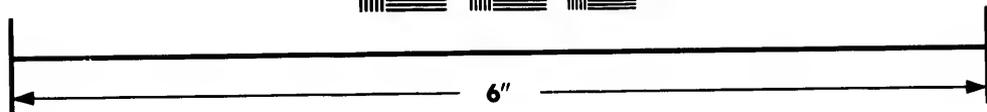
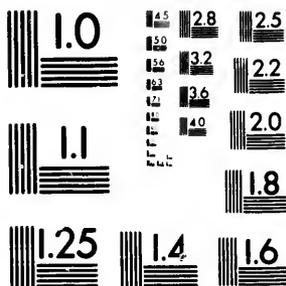
here by Mr. William
Perry, who, intending this
settlements in Oregon, had
brought us, and proved
a valuable addition to the par-
ty. Our route un-
was nearly the same as
before in 1842. Trains of
wagons constantly in sight;
a populous and animated
country, the greater portion of
which collected at the cross-
ings, their march beyond the

ford the usual emigrant
trains, we continued our
march on the southern side of the Kan-
sas, the country much more
fertile on the northern side of the
river. Our progress was much
impeded by numerous small streams,
and we made frequent bridges.
On the 4th, we crossed a
stream called by the Indians Ot-
ter, 100 feet wide, where a flat
meadow, which forms the bed,
is a ford. We met here a
party of Kansas and Delaware In-
dians returning from a hunting
expedition on the upper waters
of the heights above were
seen. Some women, engaged in dig-
ging for *psoralea esculenta*,
of the 6th, while busily
digging a wooded stream, we
saw a little confusion by the
arrival of Maxwell, who entered the
camp at the head of a war
party of Indians, with gay red blank-
ets around the scalp lock.
At a distance of about nine
miles on which we had en-
countered a runaway horse
pursued by a runaway horse
Dwight, which had taken
the lead, carrying with him sad-
dles and pistols. The Osages
were aware of our strength, and,
on our entering the camp, drove off
the best horses; but we were
discouraged, and, after a hard
march of eight miles, succeeded in
crossing it. This accident, which
indeed broke down some good
horses, and actually endangered
the party, is a first fruit of having
a company—very estimable, to
be not trained to the care





**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

28 25
22
20

**CIHM/ICMH
Microfiche
Series.**

**CIHM/ICMH
Collection de
microfiches.**



Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques

10

© 1985

an
suc
no
ter
St
wh
the
wi
th
wa
a
u
we
ca
tic
lo
of
se
th
fu
so
oc
bl
be
qu
th
of
lo
th
us
A
m
li
h
w
v
fo
e
h
a
w
c
g
n
h
in
li
2
n
t
w
t
r
a
r
t
c
n
l
v
i
c
n

and vigilance and self-dependence which such an expedition required, and who are not subject to the orders which enforce attention and exertion. We arrived on the 8th at the mouth of the Smoky-hill fork, which is the principal southern branch of the Kansas; forming here, by its junction with the Republican, or northern branch, the main Kansas river. Neither stream was fordable, and the necessity of making a raft, together with bad weather, detained us here until the morning of the 11th; when we resumed our journey along the Republican fork. By our observations, the junction of the streams is in latitude $39^{\circ} 03' 38''$, longitude $96^{\circ} 24' 56''$, and at an elevation of 926 feet above the gulf of Mexico. For several days we continued to travel along the Republican, through a country beautifully watered with numerous streams, handsomely timbered; and rarely an incident occurred to vary the monotonous resemblance which one day on the prairies here bears to another, and which scarcely require a particular description. Now and then, we caught a glimpse of a small herd of elk; and occasionally a band of antelopes, whose curiosity sometimes brought them within rifle range, would circle round us, and then scour off into the prairies. As we advanced on our road, these became more frequent; but as we journeyed on the line usually followed by the trapping and hunting parties of the Kansas and Delaware Indians, game of every kind continued very shy and wild. The bottoms which form the immediate valley of the main river were generally about three miles wide; having a rich soil of black vegetable mould, and, for a prairie country, well interspersed with wood. The country was everywhere covered with a considerable variety of grasses, occasionally poor and thin, but far more frequently luxuriant and rich. We had been gradually and regularly ascending in our progress westward, and on the evening of the 14th, when we encamped on a little creek in the valley of the Republican, 265 miles by our travelling road from the mouth of the Kansas, we were at an elevation of 1,520 feet. That part of the river where we were now encamped is called by the Indians the *Big Timber*. Hitherto our route had been laborious and extremely slow, the unusually wet spring and constant rain having so saturated the whole country that it was necessary to bridge every water-course, and, for days together, our usual march averaged only five or six miles. Finding that at such a rate of travel it would be impossible to comply with your instructions, I determined at this place to divide the party, and, leaving Mr. Fitzpatrick with twenty-five men in charge of the

provisions and heavier baggage of the camp, to proceed myself in advance, with a light party of fifteen men, taking with me the howitzer and the light wagon which carried the instruments.

Accordingly, on the morning of the 18th, the parties separated; and, bearing a little out from the river, with a view of heading some of the numerous affluents, after a few hours' travel over somewhat broken ground, we entered upon an extensive and high level prairie, on which we encamped towards evening at a little stream, where a single dry cotton-wood afforded the necessary fuel for preparing supper. Among a variety of grasses which to-day made their first appearance, I noticed bunch-grass, (*festuca*.) and buffalo-grass, (*sesleria dactyloides*.) *Amorpha canescens* (*lead plant*) continued the characteristic plant of the country, and a narrow-leaved *lathyrus* occurred during the morning in beautiful patches. *Sida coccinea* occurred frequently, with a *psoralia* near *psoralia floribunda*, and a number of plants not hitherto met, just verging into bloom. The water on which we had encamped belonged to Solomon's fork of the Smoky-hill river, along whose tributaries we continued to travel for several days.

The country afforded us an excellent road, the route being generally over high and very level prairies; and we met with no other delay than being frequently obliged to bridge one of the numerous streams, which were well timbered with ash, elm, cottonwood, and a very large oak—the latter being occasionally five and six feet in diameter, with a spreading summit. *Sida coccinea* is very frequent in vermilion-colored patches on the high and low prairie; and I remarked that it has a very pleasant perfume.

The wild sensitive plant (*schrankia angustata*) occurs frequently, generally on the dry prairies, in valleys of streams, and frequently on the broken prairie bank. I remark that the leaves close instantly to a very light touch. *Asorpha*, with the same *psoralea*, and a dwarf species of *lupinus*, are the characteristic plants.

On the 19th, in the afternoon, we crossed the Pawnee road to the Arkansas, and travelling a few miles onward, the monotony of the prairies was suddenly dispelled by the appearance of five or six buffalo bulls, forming a vanguard of immense herds, among which we were travelling a few days afterwards. Prairie dogs were seen for the first time during the day; and we had the good fortune to obtain an antelope for supper. Our elevation had now increased to 1,900 feet. *Sida coccinea* was a characteristic on the creek bottoms, and buffalo grass is be-

coming abundant on the higher parts of the ridges.

June 21.—During the forenoon we travelled up a branch of the creek on which we had encamped, in a broken country, where, however, the dividing ridges always afforded a good road. Plants were few; and with the short sward of the buffalo grass, which now prevailed everywhere, giving to the prairies a smooth and mossy appearance, were mingled frequent patches of a beautiful red grass, (*aristida pallens*,) which had made its appearance only within the last few days.

We halted to noon at a solitary cotton-wood in a hollow, near which was killed the first buffalo, a large old bull.

Antelope appeared in bands during the day. Crossing here to the affluents of the Republican, we encamped on a fork, about forty feet wide and one foot deep, flowing with a swift current over a sandy bed, and well wooded with ash-leaved maple, (*negundo fraxinifolium*,) elm, cotton-wood, and a few white oaks. We were visited in the evening by a very violent storm, accompanied by wind, lightning, and thunder; a cold rain falling in torrents. According to the barometer, our elevation was 2,130 feet above the gulf.

At noon, on the 23d, we descended into the valley of a principal fork of the Republican, a beautiful stream with a dense border of wood, consisting principally of varieties of ash, forty feet wide and four feet deep. It was musical with the notes of many birds, which, from the vast expanse of silent prairie around, seemed all to have collected here. We continued during the afternoon our route along the river, which was populous with prairie dogs, (the bottoms being entirely occupied with their villages,) and late in the evening encamped on its banks. The prevailing timber is a blue-foliaged ash, (*fraxinus*, near *F. Americana*,) and ash-leaved maple. With these were *fraxinus Americana*, cotton-wood, and long-leaved willow. We gave to this valley the name of Prairie Dog river. Elevation 2,350 feet. Our road on the 25th lay over high smooth ridges, 3,100 feet above the sea; buffalo in great numbers, absolutely covering the face of the country. At evening we encamped within a few miles of the main Republican, on a little creek, where the air was fragrant with the perfume of *artemisia filifolia*, which we here saw for the first time, and which was now in bloom. Shortly after leaving our encampment on the 26th, we found suddenly that the nature of the country had entirely changed. Bare sand hills everywhere surrounded us in the undulating ground along which we were moving; and the plants peculiar to a sandy

soil made their appearance in abundance. A few miles further we entered the valley of a large stream, afterwards known to be the Republican fork of the Kansas, whose shallow waters, with a depth of only a few inches, were spread out over a bed of yellowish white sand 600 yards wide. With the exception of one or two distant and detached groves, no timber of any kind was to be seen; and the features of the country assumed a desert character, with which the broad river, struggling for existence among quicksands along the treeless banks, was strikingly in keeping. On the opposite side, the broken ridges assumed almost a mountainous appearance; and fording the stream, we continued on our course among these ridges, and encamped late in the evening at a little pond of very bad water, from which we drove away a herd of buffalo that were standing in and about it. Our encampment this evening was 3,500 feet above the sea. We travelled now for several days through a broken and dry sandy region, about 4,000 feet above the sea, where there were no running streams; and some anxiety was constantly felt on account of the uncertainty of water, which was only to be found in small lakes that occurred occasionally among the hills. The discovery of these always brought pleasure to the camp, as around them were generally green flats, which afforded abundant pasturage for our animals; and here were usually collected herds of the buffalo, which now were scattered over all the country in countless numbers.

The soil of bare and hot sands supported a varied and exuberant growth of plants, which were much farther advanced than we had previously found them, and whose showy bloom somewhat relieved the appearance of general sterility. Crossing the summit of an elevated and continuous range of rolling hills, on the afternoon of the 30th of June, we found ourselves overlooking a broad and misty valley, where, about ten miles distant, and 1,000 feet below us, the South fork of the Platte was rolling magnificently along, swollen with the waters of the melting snows. It was in strong and refreshing contrast with the parched country from which we had just issued; and when, at night, the broad expanse of water grew indistinct, it almost seemed that we had pitched our tents on the shore of the sea.

Travelling along up the valley of the river, here 4,000 feet above the sea, in the afternoon of July 1, we caught a far and uncertain view of a faint blue mass in the west, as the sun sank behind it; and from our camp in the morning, at the mouth of Bijou, Long's peak and the neighboring mountains stood out into the sky, grand and

pearance in abundance. As we entered the valley afterwards known to be that of the Kansas, whose depth of only a few feet out over a bed of yellow loam, 600 yards wide. With the exception of two distant and desolate mountains of any kind was the features of the country character, with which the probability of existence among the treeless banks, was not to be expected. On the opposite side, the mountains assumed almost a mountainous character, and fording the stream, our course among these mountains was late in the evening at a very bad water, from which a herd of buffalo that were not to be seen. Our encampment was 500 feet above the sea. For several days through the sandy region, about 4,000 feet, where there were no trees, and some anxiety was occasioned by the uncertainty of the water, which was only to be found in small streams occasionally among the rocks. The recovery of these always led us to the camp, as around the green flats, which afforded pasture for our animals; and the scattered herds of the buffalo were scattered over all the plains.

The hot sands supported a scanty growth of plants, and farther advanced than we had been, and whose showy appearance relieved the appearance of the country. Crossing the summit of an enormous range of rolling mountains on the 30th of June, overlooking a broad and fertile plain, about ten miles distant, we saw the South fork of the river flowing magnificently along the waters of the melting snows, a strong and refreshing breeze parched country from the north; and when, at the expense of water grew intense, it seemed that we had reached the shore of the

up the valley of the river, about a mile above the sea, in the evening, we caught a fair and a faint blue mass in the air behind it; and from the morning, at the mouth of the river, and the neighboring mountains into the sky, grand and

luminously white, covered to their bases with glittering snow.

On the evening of the 3d, as we were journeying along the partially overflowed bottoms of the Platte, where our passage stirred up swarms of mosquitoes, we came unexpectedly on an Indian, who was perched upon a bluff, curiously watching the movements of our caravan. He belonged to a village of Oglallah Sioux, who had lost all their animals in the severity of the preceding winter, and were now on their way up the Bijou fork to beg horses from the Arapahoes, who were hunting buffalo at the head of that river. Several came into our camp at noon; and, as they were hungry, as usual, they were provided with buffalo meat, of which the hunters had brought in an abundant supply.

About noon, on the 4th of July, we arrived at the fort, where Mr. St. Vrain received us with his customary kindness, and invited us to join him in a feast which had been prepared in honor of the day.

Our animals were very much worn out, and our stock of provisions entirely exhausted when we arrived at the fort; but I was disappointed in my hope of obtaining relief, as I found it in a very impoverished condition; and we were able to procure only a little unbolted Mexican flour, and some salt, with a few pounds of powder and lead.

As regarded provisions, it did not much matter in a country where rarely the day passed without seeing some kind of game, and where it was frequently abundant. It was a rare thing to lie down hungry, and we had already learned to think bread a luxury; but we could not proceed without animals, and our own were not capable of prosecuting the journey beyond the mountains without relief.

I had been informed that a large number of mules had recently arrived at Taos, from Upper California; and as our friend, Mr. Maxwell, was about to continue his journey to that place, where a portion of his family resided, I engaged him to purchase for me 10 or 12 mules, with the understanding that he should pack them with provisions and other necessities, and meet me at the mouth of the *Fontaine-qui-bouit*, on the Arkansas river, to which point I would be led in the course of the survey.

Agreeably to his own request, and in the conviction that his habits of life and education had not qualified him to endure the hard life of a voyageur, I discharged here one of my party, Mr. Oscar Sarpy, having furnished him with arms and means of transportation to Fort Laramie, where he would be in the line of caravans returning to the States.

At daybreak, on the 6th of July, Maxwell was on his way to Taos; and a few hours

after we also had recommenced our journey up the Platte, which was continuously timbered with cotton-wood and willow, on a generally sandy soil. Passing on the way the remains of two abandoned forts, (one of which, however, was still in good condition,) we reached, in 10 miles, Fort Lancaster, the trading establishment of Mr. Lupton. His post was beginning to assume the appearance of a comfortable farm: stock, hogs, and cattle, were ranging about on the prairie; there were different kinds of poultry; and there was the wreck of a promising garden, in which a considerable variety of vegetables had been in a flourishing condition, but it had been almost entirely ruined by the recent high waters. I remained to spend with him an agreeable hour, and set off in a cold storm of rain, which was accompanied with violent thunder and lightning. We encamped immediately on the river, 16 miles from St. Vrain's. Several Arapahoes, on their way to the village which was encamped a few miles above us, passed by the camp in the course of the afternoon. Night set in stormy and cold, with heavy and continuous rain, which lasted until morning.

July 7.—We made this morning an early start, continuing to travel up the Platte; and in a few miles frequent bands of horses and mules, scattered for several miles round about, indicated our approach to the Arapaho village, which we found encamped in a beautiful bottom, and consisting of about 160 lodges. It appeared extremely populous, with a great number of children; a circumstance which indicated a regular supply of the means of subsistence. The chiefs, who were gathered together at the farther end of the village, received us (as probably strangers are always received to whom they desire to show respect or regard) by throwing their arms around our necks and embracing us.

It required some skill in horsemanship to keep the saddle during the performance of this ceremony, as our American horses exhibited for them the same fear they have for a bear or any other wild animal. Having very few goods with me, I was only able to make them a meager present, accounting for the poverty of the gift by explaining that my goods had been left with the wagons in charge of Mr. Fitzpatrick, who was well known to them as the White Head, or the Broken Hand. I saw here, as I had remarked in an Arapaho village the preceding year, near the lodges of the chiefs, tall tripods of white poles supporting their spears and shields, which showed it to be a regular custom.

Though disappointed in obtaining the presents which had been evidently expected, they behaved very courteously, and, after

a little conversation, I left them, and, continuing on up the river, halted to noon on the bluff, as the bottoms are almost inundated; continuing in the afternoon our route along the mountains, which were dark, misty, and shrouded—threatening a storm; the snow peaks sometimes glittering through the clouds beyond the first ridge.

We surprised a grizzly bear sauntering along the river; which, raising himself upon his hind legs, took a deliberate survey of us, that did not appear very satisfactory to him, and he scrambled into the river and swam to the opposite side. We halted for the night a little above Cherry creek; the evening cloudy, with many mosquitoes. Some indifferent observations placed the camp in latitude $39^{\circ} 43' 53''$, and chronometric longitude $105^{\circ} 24' 34''$.

July 8.—We continued to-day to travel up the Platte; the morning pleasant, with a prospect of fairer weather. During the forenoon our way lay over a more broken country, with a gravelly and sandy surface; although the immediate bottom of the river was a good soil, of a dark sandy mould, resting upon a stratum of large pebbles, or rolled stones, as at Laramie fork. On our right, and apparently very near, but probably 8 or 10 miles distant, and two or three thousand feet above us, ran the first range of the mountains, like a dark corniced line, in clear contrast with the great snowy chain which, immediately beyond, rose glittering five thousand feet above them. We caught this morning a view of Pike's peak; but it appeared for a moment only, as clouds rose early over the mountains, and shrouded them in mist and rain all the day. In the first range were visible, as at the Red Buttes on the North fork, very lofty escarpments of red rock. While travelling through this region, I remarked that always in the morning the lofty peaks were visible and bright, but very soon small white clouds began to settle around them—brewing thicker and darker as the day advanced, until the afternoon, when the thunder began to roll; and invariably at evening we had more or less of a thunder storm. At 11 o'clock, and 21 miles from St. Vrain's fort, we reached a point in this southern fork of the Platte, where the stream is divided into three forks; two of these (one of them being much the largest) issuing directly from the mountains on the west, and forming, with the easternmost branch, a river of the plains. The elevation of this point is about 5,500 feet above the sea; this river falling 2,800 feet in a distance of 316 miles, to its junction with the North fork of the Platte. In this estimate, the elevation of the junction is assumed as given by our barometrical observations in 1842.

On the easternmost branch, up which we took our way, we first came among the pines growing on the top of a very high bank, and where we halted on it to noon; quaking asp (*populus tremuloides*) was mixed with the cotton-wood, and there were excellent grass and rushes for the animals.

During the morning there occurred many beautiful flowers, which we had not hitherto met. Among them, the common blue flowering flax made its first appearance; and a tall and handsome species of *gilia*, with slender scarlet flowers, which appeared yesterday for the first time, was very frequent to-day.

We had found very little game since leaving the fort, and provisions began to get unpleasantly scant, as we had had no meat for several days; but towards sundown, when we had already made up our minds to sleep another night without supper, Lajeunesse had the good fortune to kill a fine deer, which he found feeding in a hollow near by; and as the rain began to fall, threatening an unpleasant night, we hurried to secure a comfortable camp in the timber.

To-night the camp fires, girdled with *appolas* of fine venison, looked cheerful in spite of the stormy weather.

July 9.—On account of the low state of our provisions and the scarcity of game, I determined to vary our route, and proceed several camps to the eastward, in the hope of falling in with the buffalo. This route along the dividing grounds between the South fork of the Platte and the Arkansas, would also afford some additional geographical information. This morning, therefore, we turned to the eastward, along the upper waters of the stream on which we had encamped, entering a country of picturesque and varied scenery; broken into rocky hills of singular shapes; little valleys, with pure crystal water, here leaping swiftly along, and there losing itself in the sands; green spots of luxuriant grass, flowers of all colors, and timber of different kinds—every thing to give it a varied beauty, except game. To one of these remarkably shaped hills, having on the summit a circular flat rock two or three hundred yards in circumference, some one gave the name of Poundcake, which it has been permitted to retain, as our hungry people seemed to think it a very agreeable comparison. In the afternoon a buffalo bull was killed, and we encamped on a small stream, near the road which runs from St. Vrain's fort to the Arkansas.

July 10.—Snow fell heavily on the mountains during the night, and Pike's peak this morning is luminous and grand, covered from the summit, as low down as we can see, with glittering white. Leaving the encampment at 6 o'clock, we continued our easterly course over a rolling country, near

branch, up which we first came among the top of a very high halted on it to noon; (*Asus tremuloides*) was wood, and there were bushes for the animals. There occurred many which we had not hitherto common blue flower-appearance; and a tall of *gilia*, with slender appeared yesterday very frequent to-day. A very little game since provisions began to get we had no meat out towards sundown, made up our minds to without supper, I had fortune to kill a fine feeding in a hollow rain began to fall. That night, we hurried the camp in the timber. Fires, girdled with *ap-*, looked cheerful in weather.

ent of the low state of the scarcity of game, I our route, and proceed eastward, in the hope buffalo. This route grounds between the Platte and the Arkansas, the additional geographical morning, therefore, ward, along the upper on which we had encountered country of picturesque broken into rocky hills title valleys, with pure leaping swiftly along, lf in the sands; green s, flowers of all colors, ut kinds—every thing uty, except game. To ably shaped hills, hav- circular flat rock two rds in circumference, name of Poundcake, mitted to retain, as our ed to think it a very . In the afternoon a , and we encamped on the road which runs to the Arkansas.

l heavily on the moun- and Pike's peak this and grand, covered low down as we can white. Leaving the rock, we continued our rolling country, near

to the high ridges, which are generally rough and rocky, with a coarse conglomerate displayed in masses, and covered with pines. This rock is very friable, and it is undoubtedly from its decomposition that the prairies derive their sandy and gravelly formation. In 6 miles we crossed a head water of the Kioway river, on which we found a strong fort and *coral* that had been built in the spring, and halted to noon on the principal branch of the river. During the morning our route led over a dark vegetable mould, mixed with sand and gravel, the characteristic plant being *esparcette*, (*onobrychis sativa*), a species of clover which is much used in certain parts of Germany for pasturage of stock—principally hogs. It is sown on rocky waste ground, which would otherwise be useless, and grows very luxuriantly, requiring only a renewal of the seed about once in fifteen years. Its abundance here greatly adds to the pastoral value of this region. A species of *antennaria* in flower was very common along the line of road, and the creeks were timbered with willow and pine. We encamped on Bijou's fork, the water of which, unlike the clear streams we had previously crossed, is of a whitish color, and the soil of the bottom a very hard, tough clay. There was a prairie dog village on the bottom, and, in the endeavor to unearth one of the little animals, we labored ineffectually in the tough clay until dark. After descending, with a slight inclination, until it had gone the depth of two feet, the hole suddenly turned at a sharp angle in another direction for one more foot in depth, when it again turned, taking an ascending direction to the next nearest hole. I have no doubt that all their little habitations communicate with each other. The greater part of the people were sick to-day, and I was inclined to attribute their indisposition to the meat of the bull which had been killed the previous day.

July 11.—There were no indications of buffalo having been recently in the neighborhood; and, unwilling to travel farther eastward, I turned this morning to the southward, up the valley of Bijou. *Esparcette* occurred universally, and among the plants on the river I noticed, for the first time during this journey, a few small bushes of the *absinthe* of the voyageurs, which is commonly used for fire-wood, (*artemisia tridentata*.) Yesterday and to-day the road has been ornamented with the showy bloom of a beautiful *lupinus*, a characteristic in many parts of the mountain region, on which were generally great numbers of an insect with very bright colors, (*litta vesicatoria*.)

As we were riding quietly along, eagerly searching every hollow in search of game

we discovered, at a little distance in the prairie, a large grizzly bear, so busily engaged in digging roots that he did not perceive us until we were galloping down a little hill fifty yards from him, when he charged upon us with such sudden energy, that several of us came near losing our saddles. Being wounded, he commenced retreating to a rocky piny ridge near by, from which we were not able to cut him off, and we entered the timber with him. The way was very much blocked up with fallen timber; and we kept up a running fight for some time, animated by the bear charging among the horses. He did not fall until after he had received six rifle balls. He was miserably poor, and added nothing to our stock of provisions.

We followed the stream to its head in a broken ridge, which, according to the barometer, was about 7,500 feet above the sea. This is a piny elevation, into which the prairies are gathered, and from which the waters flow, in almost every direction, to the Arkansas, Platte, and Kansas rivers; the latter stream having here its remotest sources. Although somewhat rocky and broken, and covered with pines, in comparison with the neighboring mountains, it scarcely forms an interruption to the great prairie plains which sweep up to their bases.

We had an excellent view of Pike's peak from this camp, at the distance of 40 miles. This mountain barrier presents itself to travellers on the plains, which sweep almost directly to its bases—an immense and comparatively smooth and grassy prairie, in very strong contrast with the black masses of timber, and the glittering snow above them. With occasional exceptions, comparatively so very small as not to require mention, these prairies are everywhere covered with a close and vigorous growth of a great variety of grasses, among which the most abundant is the buffalo grass, (*sestera dactyloides*.) Between the Platte and Arkansas rivers, that part of this region which forms the basin drained by the waters of the Kansas, with which our operations made us more particularly acquainted, is based upon a formation of calcareous rocks. The soil of all this country is excellent, admirably adapted to agricultural purposes, and would support a large agricultural and pastoral population. A glance at the map, along our several lines of travel, will show you that this plain is watered by many streams. Throughout the western half of the plain, these are shallow, with sandy beds, becoming deeper as they reach the richer lands approaching the Missouri river; they generally have bottom lands, bordered by bluffs varying from 50 to 500 feet in height. In all this region the timber is entirely cou-

fined to the streams. In the eastern half, where the soil is a deep, rich, vegetable mould, retentive of rain and moisture, it is of vigorous growth, and of many different kinds; and throughout the western half it consists entirely of various species of cotton-wood, which deserves to be called the tree of the desert—growing in sandy soils, where no other tree will grow; pointing out the existence of water, and furnishing to the traveller fuel, and food for his animals. Add to this, that the western border of the plain is occupied by the Sioux, Arapaho, and Cheyenne nations, and the Pawnees and other half-civilized tribes in its eastern limits, for whom the intermediate country is a war-ground, you will have a tolerably correct idea of the appearance and condition of the country. Descending a somewhat precipitous and rocky hillside among the pines, which rarely appear elsewhere than on the ridge, we encamped at its foot, where there were several springs, which you will find laid down upon the map as one of the extreme sources of the Smoky Hill fork of the Kansas. From this place the view extended over the Arkansas valley, and the Spanish peaks in the south beyond. As the greater part of the men continued sick, I encamped here for the day, and ascertained conclusively, from experiments on myself, that their illness was caused by the meat of the buffalo bull.

On the summit of the ridge, near the camp, were several rock-built forts, which in front were very difficult of approach, and in the rear were protected by a precipice entirely beyond the reach of a rifle ball. The evening was tolerably clear, with a temperature at sunset of 63°. Elevation of the camp 7,300 feet.

Turning the next day to the southwest, we reached, in the course of the morning, the wagon road to the settlements on the Arkansas river, and encamped in the afternoon on the *Fontaine-qui-bouit* (or Boiling Spring) river, where it was 50 feet wide, with a swift current. I afterwards found that the spring and river owe their names to the bubbling of the effervescing gas in the former, and not to the temperature of the water, which is cold. During the morning a tall species of *gilia*, with a slender white flower, was characteristic; and, in the latter part of the day, another variety of *esparcette*, (wild clover,) having the flower white, was equally so. We had a fine sunset of golden brown; and, in the evening, a very bright moon, with the near mountains, made a beautiful scene. Thermometer, at sunset, was 69°, and our elevation above the sea 5,800 feet.

July 13.—The morning was clear, with a northwesterly breeze, and the thermome-

ter at sunrise at 40°. There were no clouds along the mountains, and the morning sun showed very clearly their rugged character.

We resumed our journey very early down the river, following an extremely good lodge trail, which issues by the head of this stream from the bayou Salade, a high mountain valley behind Piko's peak. The soil along the road was sandy and gravelly, and the river well timbered. We halted to noon under the shade of some fine large cotton-woods, our animals luxuriating on rushes, (*equisetum hyemale*,) which, along this river, were remarkably abundant. A variety of cactus made its appearance, and among several strange plants were numerous and beautiful clusters of a plant resembling *mirabilis jalapa*, with a handsome convolvulus I had not hitherto seen, (*calystegia*.) In the afternoon we passed near the encampment of a hunter named Maurice, who had been out into the plains in pursuit of buffalo calves, a number of which I saw among some domestic cattle near his lodge. Shortly afterwards, a party of mountaineers galloped up to us—fine-looking and hardy men, dressed in skins and mounted on good fat horses; among them were several Connecticut men, a portion of Wyoth's party, whom I had seen the year before, and others were men from the western states.

Continuing down the river, we encamped at noon on the 14th at its mouth, on the Arkansas river. A short distance above our encampment, on the left bank of the Arkansas, is a *pueblo*, (as the Mexicans call their civilized Indian villages,) where a number of mountaineers, who had married Spanish women in the valley of Taos, had collected together, and occupied themselves in farming, carrying on at the same time a desultory Indian trade. They were principally Americans, and treated us with all the rude hospitality their situation admitted; but as all commercial intercourse with New Mexico was now interrupted, in consequence of Mexican decrees to that effect, there was nothing to be had in the way of provisions. They had, however, a fine stock of cattle, and furnished us an abundance of excellent milk. I learned here that Maxwell, in company with two other men, had started for Taos on the morning of the 9th, but that he would probably fall into the hands of the Utah Indians, commonly called the *Spanish Yutes*. As Maxwell had no knowledge of their being in the vicinity when he crossed the Arkansas, his chance of escape was very doubtful; but I did not entertain much apprehension for his life, having great confidence in his prudence and courage. I was further informed that there had been a popular tumult among the *pueblos*, or civil-

There were no clouds, and the morning sun shined on their rugged charac-

ter. We journeyed very early down the extremely good lodgepole pine to the head of this stream, where, on a high mountain peak, the soil along the river was sandy and gravelly, and the water was very pure. We halted at noon at a fine large cottonwood grove, luxuriating on rushes, which, along this river, were very abundant. A variety of plants were numerous and among them were several of a plant resembling *mirabilis jalapa*, a handsome convolvulus seen, (*calystegia*.) In the afternoon we encamped near the encampment of Maurice, who had been in pursuit of buffaloes, of which I saw many near his lodge. Shortly after dark, a party of mountaineers galloping and harty men, and mounted on good fat horses, were several of Wyeth's party, whom we had met before, and others were from the States.

At the mouth of the river, we encamped at a short distance above on the left bank of the *Boiling Spring*, (as the Mexicans call the valley of Taos, had been occupied themselves on at the same time a side. They were principally treated us with all the civility and respect admitted; and our intercourse with New Mexico, in consequence of that effect, there was a fine stock of cattle, and an abundance of excellent provisions here that Maxwell, and other men, had started in the morning of the 6th, but probably fall into the hands of the Indians, commonly called the *Apaches*. Maxwell had no knowledge in the vicinity when he was, his chance of escape was but I did not entertain any for his life, having great confidence and courage. I had heard that there had been a war between the *puébl*

ized Indians, residing near Taos, against the "foreigners" of that place, in which they had plundered their houses and ill-treated their families. Among those whose property had been destroyed, was Mr. Beauharnais, father-in-law of Maxwell, from whom I had expected to obtain supplies, and who had been obliged to make his escape to Santa Fé.

By this position of affairs, our expectation of obtaining supplies from Taos was cut off. I had here the satisfaction to meet our good buffalo hunter of 1842, Christopher Carson, whose services I considered myself fortunate to secure again; and as a reinforcement of mules was absolutely necessary, I dispatched him immediately, with an account of our necessities, to Mr. Charles Bent, whose principal post is on the Arkansas river, about 75 miles below *Fontainequi-bouit*. He was directed to proceed from that post by the nearest route across the country, and meet me with what animals he should be able to obtain at St. Vrain's fort. I also admitted into the party Charles Towns, a native of St. Louis, a serviceable man, with many of the qualities of a good voyager. According to our observations, the latitude of the mouth of the river is $38^{\circ} 15' 23''$; its longitude $104^{\circ} 58' 30''$; and its elevation above the sea 4,880 feet.

On the morning of the 16th, the time for Maxwell's arrival having expired, we resumed our journey, leaving for him a note, in which it was stated that I would wait for him at St. Vrain's fort until the morning of the 26th, in the event that he should succeed in his commission. Our direction was up the Boiling Spring river, it being my intention to visit the celebrated springs from which the river takes its name, and which are on its upper waters, at the foot of Pike's peak. Our animals fared well while we were on this stream, there being everywhere a great abundance of *prêle*. *Ipomœa leptophylla*, in bloom, was a characteristic plant along the river, generally in large bunches, with two to five flowers on each. Beautiful clusters of the plant resembling *mirabilis jalapa* were numerous, and *glycyrrhiza lepidota* was a characteristic of the bottoms. Currants nearly ripe were abundant, and among the shrubs which covered the bottom was a very luxuriant growth of chenopodiaceous shrubs, four to six feet high.

On the afternoon of the 17th we entered among the broken ridges at the foot of the mountains, where the river made several forks. Leaving the camp to follow slowly, I rode ahead in the afternoon in search of the springs. In the mean time, the clouds, which had been gathered all the afternoon

over the mountains, began to roll down their sides; and a storm so violent burst upon me, that it appeared I had entered the storehouse of the thunder storms. I continued, however, to ride along up the river until about sunset, and was beginning to be doubtful of finding the springs before the next day, when I came suddenly upon a large smooth rock about twenty yards in diameter, where the water from several springs was bubbling and boiling up in the midst of a white incrustation with which it had covered a portion of the rock. As this did not correspond with a description given me by the hunters, I did not stop to taste the water, but, dismounting, walked a little way up the river, and, passing through a narrow thicket of shrubbery bordering the stream, stepped directly upon a huge white rock, at the foot of which the river, already become a torrent, foamed along, broken by a small fall. A deer which had been drinking at the spring was startled by my approach, and, springing across the river, bounded off up the mountain. In the upper part of the rock, which had apparently been formed by deposition, was a beautiful white basin, overhung by currant bushes, in which the cold clear water bubbled up, kept in constant motion by the escaping gas, and overflowing the rock, which it had almost entirely covered with a smooth crust of glistening white. I had all day refrained from drinking, reserving myself for the spring; and as I could not well be more wet than the rain had already made me, I lay down by the side of the basin, and drank heartily of the delightful water. The spring is situated immediately at the foot of lofty mountains, beautifully timbered, which sweep closely round, shutting up the little valley in a kind of cove. As it was beginning to grow dark, I rode quickly down the river, on which I found the camp a few miles below.

The morning of the 18th was beautiful and clear, and, all the people being anxious to drink of these famous waters, we encamped immediately at the springs, and spent there a very pleasant day. On the opposite side of the river is another locality of springs, which are entirely of the same nature. The water has a very agreeable taste, which Mr. Preuss found very much to resemble that of the famous Selter springs in the grand duchy of Nassau, a country famous for wine and mineral waters; and it is almost entirely of the same character, though still more agreeable than that of the famous Bear springs, near Bear river of the Great Salt lake. The following is an analysis of an incrustation with which the water had covered a piece of wood lying on the rock:

Carbonate of lime	92.95
Carbonate of magnesia	1.21
Sulphate of lime	
Chloride of calcium }23
Chloride of magnesia }	
Silica	1.50
Vegetable matter20
Moisture and loss	4.61
	<hr/>
	100.00

At 11 o'clock, when the temperature of the air was 73°, that of the water in this was 60.5°; and that of the upper spring, which issued from the flat rock, more exposed to the sun, was 69°. At sunset, when the temperature of the air was 60°, that of the lower springs was 58°, and that of the upper 61°.

July 19.—A beautiful and clear morning, with a slight breeze from the northwest; the temperature of the air at sunrise being 57.5°. At this time the temperature of the lower spring was 57.8°, and that of the upper 54.3°.

The trees in the neighborhood were birch, willow, pine, and an oak resembling *quercus alba*. In the shrubbery along the river are currant bushes, (*ribes*), of which the fruit has a singular piny flavor; and on the mountain side, in a red gravelly soil, is a remarkable coniferous tree, (perhaps an *abies*), having the leaves singularly long, broad, and scattered, with bushes of *spiraea arifolia*. By our observations, this place is 6,350 feet above the sea, in latitude 38° 52' 10", and longitude 105° 22' 45".

Resuming our journey on this morning, we descended the river, in order to reach the mouth of the eastern fork, which I proposed to ascend. The left bank of the river here is very much broken. There is a handsome little bottom on the right, and both banks are exceedingly picturesque—strata of red rock, in nearly perpendicular walls, crossing the valley from north to south. About three miles below the springs, on the right bank of the river, is a nearly perpendicular limestone rock, presenting a uniformly unbroken surface, twenty to forty feet high, containing very great numbers of a large univalve shell, which appears to belong to the genus *inoceramus*.

In contact with this, to the westward, was another stratum of limestone, containing fossil shells of a different character; and still higher up on the stream were parallel strata, consisting of a compact somewhat crystalline limestone, and argillaceous bituminous limestone in thin layers. During the morning, we travelled up the eastern fork of the *Fontaine-qui-bouit* river, our road being roughened by frequent deep gullies timbered with pine, and halted to noon on a small branch of this stream, timbered principally with the narrow-leaved cotton-

wood, (*populus angustifolia*), called by the Canadians *hard amere*. On a hill, near by were two remarkable columns of a grayish-white conglomerate rock, one of which was about twenty feet high, and two feet in diameter. They are surmounted by slabs of a dark ferruginous conglomerate, forming black caps, and adding very much to their columnar effect at a distance. This rock is very destructible by the action of the weather, and the hill, of which they formerly constituted a part, is entirely abraded.

A shaft of the gun carriage was broken in the afternoon; and we made an early halt, the stream being from twelve to twenty feet wide, with clear water. As usual, the clouds had gathered to a storm over the mountains, and we had a showery evening. At sunset the thermometer stood at 62°, and our elevation above the sea was 6,530 feet.

July 20.—This morning (as we generally found the mornings under these mountains) was very clear and beautiful, and the air cool and pleasant, with the thermometer at 44°. We continued our march up the stream, along a green sloping bottom, between pine hills on the one hand, and the main Black hills on the other, towards the ridge which separates the waters of the Platte from those of the Arkansas. As we approached the dividing ridge, the whole valley was radiant with flowers; blue, yellow, pink, white, scarlet, and purple, vied with each other in splendor. *Esparecette* was one of the highly characteristic plants, and a bright-looking flower (*gaillardia aristata*) was very frequent; but the most abundant plant along our road to-day, was *geranium maculatum*, which is the characteristic plant on this portion of the dividing grounds. Crossing to the waters of the Platte, fields of blue flax added to the magnificence of this mountain garden; this was occasionally four feet in height, which was a luxuriance of growth that I rarely saw this almost universal plant attain throughout the journey. Continuing down a branch of the Platte, among high and very steep timbered hills, covered with fragments of rock, towards evening we issued from the piny region, and made a late encampment near Poundcake rock, on that fork of the river which we had ascended on the 8th of July. Our animals enjoyed the abundant rushes this evening, as the flies were so bad among the pines that they had been much harassed. A deer was killed here this evening; and again the evening was overcast, and a collection of brilliant red clouds in the west was followed by the customary squall of rain.

Achillea millefolium (milfoil) was among the characteristic plants of the river bottoms to-day. This was one of the most

agustifolia), called by the *nière*. On a hill, near by ble columns of a grayish rock, one of which was high, and two feet in diameter surmounted by slabs of conglomerate, forming a distance. This rock hill, of which they formed a part, is entirely abraded. A gun carriage was broken; and we made an early start from twelve to twenty clear water. As usual, a storm overtook us, and we had a showery evening. The thermometer stood at 50 above the sea was

in the morning (as we generally do under these mountains), and beautiful, and the air was clear, with the thermometer at 60. We continued our march up the green sloping bottom, beyond the one hand, and the other, towards the Arkansas. As we divided the ridge, the whole was covered with flowers; blue, yellow, scarlet, and purple, vied in splendor. Eupareete highly characteristic plants, the pink flower (*gaillardia*) very frequent; but the most striking along our road to-day, was the *guttatum*, which is the characteristic of this portion of the dividing range. The waters of the blue flax added to the magenta mountain garden; this was a feet in height, which was a growth that I rarely saw elsewhere. The real plant attain throughout the range, continuing down a branch of the range high and very steep timbered with fragments of rock, we issued from the pines to a late encampment near the mouth of that fork of the river on the 8th of July. The abundance of the flies were so bad among the pines they had been much harassed. We encamped here this evening; and the morning was overcast, and a contingent red clouds in the west. The customary squall of rain (*folium* (milfoil) was among the characteristic plants of the river bottom. This was one of the most

common plants during the whole of our journey, occurring in almost every variety of situation. I noticed it on the lowlands of the rivers, near the coast of the Pacific, and near to the snow among the mountains of the *Sierra Nevada*.

During this excursion, we had surveyed to its head one of the two principal branches of the upper Arkansas, 75 miles in length, and entirely completed our survey of the South fork of the Platte, to the extreme sources of that portion of the river which belongs to the plains, and heads in the broken hills of the Arkansas dividing ridge, at the foot of the mountains. That portion of its waters which were collected among these mountains, it was hoped to explore on our homeward voyage.

Reaching St. Vrain's fort on the morning of the 23d, we found Mr. Fitzpatrick and his party in good order and excellent health, and my true and reliable friend, Kit Carson, who had brought with him ten good mules, with the necessary pack-saddles. Mr. Fitzpatrick, who had often endured every extremity of want during the course of his mountain life, and knew well the value of provisions in this country, had watched over our stock with jealous vigilance, and there was an abundance of flour, rice, sugar, and coffee, in the camp; and again we fared luxuriously. Meat was, however, very scarce; and two very small pigs, which we obtained at the fort, did not go far among forty men. Mr. Fitzpatrick had been here a week, during which time his men had been occupied in refitting the camp; and the repose had been very beneficial to his animals, which were now in tolerably good condition.

I had been able to obtain no certain information in regard to the character of the passes in this portion of the Rocky mountain range, which had always been represented as impracticable for carriages, but the exploration of which was incidentally contemplated by my instructions, with the view of finding some convenient point of passage for the road of emigration, which would enable it to reach, on a more direct line, the usual ford of the Great Colorado—a place considered as determined by the nature of the country beyond that river. It is singular, that immediately at the foot of the mountains, I could find no one sufficiently acquainted with them to guide us to the plains at their western base; but the race of trappers, who formerly lived in their recesses, has almost entirely disappeared—dwindled to a few scattered individuals—some one or two of whom are regularly killed in the course of each year by the Indians. You will remember, that in the previous year I brought with me to their village

near this post, and hospitably treated on the way, several Cheyenne Indians, whom I had met on the Lower Platte. Shortly after their arrival here, these were out with a party of Indians, (themselves the principal men,) which discovered a few trappers in the neighboring mountains, whom they immediately murdered, although one of them had been nearly thirty years in the country, and was perfectly well known, as he had grown gray among them.

Through this portion of the mountains, also, are the customary roads of the war parties going out against the Utah and Shoshonee Indians; and occasionally parties from the Crow nation make their way down to the southward along this chain, in the expectation of surprising some straggling lodges of their enemies. Shortly before our arrival, one of their parties had attacked an Arapaho village in the vicinity, which they had found unexpectedly strong; and their assault was turned into a rapid flight and a hot pursuit, in which they had been compelled to abandon the animals they had rode, and escape on their war horses.

Into this uncertain and dangerous region, small parties of three or four trappers, who now could collect together, rarely ventured; and consequently it was seldom visited and little known. Having determined to try the passage by a pass through a spur of the mountains made by the *Câche-à-la-Poudre* river, which rises in the high bed of mountains around Long's peak, I thought it advisable to avoid any encumbrance which would occasion detention, and accordingly again separated the party into two divisions—one of which, under the command of Mr. Fitzpatrick, was directed to cross the plains to the mouth of Laramie river, and continuing thence its route along the usual emigrant road, meet me at Fort Hall, a post belonging to the Hudson Bay Company, and situated on Snake river, as it is commonly called in the Oregon Territory, although better known to us as Lewis's fork of the Columbia. The latter name is there restricted to one of the upper forks of the river.

Our Delaware Indians having determined to return to their homes, it became necessary to provide this party with a good hunter; and I accordingly engaged in that capacity Alexander Godey, a young man about 25 years of age, who had been in this country six or seven years, all of which time had been actively employed in hunting for the support of the posts, or in solitary trading expeditions among the Indians. In courage and professional skill he was a formidable rival to Carson, and constantly afterwards was among the best and most efficient of the party, and in difficult situations was of

incalculable value. Hiram Powers, one of the men belonging to Mr. Fitzpatrick's party, was discharged at this place.

A French engagé, at Lupton's fort, had been shot in the back on the 4th of July, and died during our absence to the Arkansas. The wife of the murdered man, an Indian woman of the Snake nation, desirous, like Naomi of old, to return to her people, requested and obtained permission to travel with my party to the neighborhood of Bear river, where she expected to meet with some of their villages. Happier than the Jewish widow, she carried with her two children, pretty little half-breeds, who added much to the liveliness of the camp. Her baggage was carried on five or six pack horses; and I gave her a small tent, for which I no longer had any use, as I had procured a lodge at the fort.

For my own party I selected the following men, a number of whom old associations rendered agreeable to me:

Charles Preuss, Christopher Carson, Basil Lajeunesse, François Badeau, J. B. Bernier, Louis Menard, Raphael Proue, Jacob Dodson, Louis Zindel, Henry Lee, J. B. Derosier, François Lajeunesse, and Auguste Vasquez.

By observation, the latitude of the post is $40^{\circ} 16' 33''$, and its longitude $105^{\circ} 12' 23''$, depending, with all the other longitudes along this portion of the line, upon a subsequent occultation of September 13, 1843, to which they are referred by the chronometer. Its distance from Kansas landing, by the road we travelled, (which, it will be remembered, was very winding along the lower Kansas river,) was 750 miles. The rate of the chronometer, determined by observations at this place for the interval of our absence, during this month, was $33.72''$, which you will hereafter see did not sensibly change during the ensuing month, and remained nearly constant during the remainder of our journey across the continent. This was the rate used in referring to St. Vrain's fort, the longitude between that place and the mouth of the *Fontaine-guibouit*.

Our various barometrical observations, which are better worthy of confidence than the isolated determination of 1842, give, for the elevation of the fort above the sea, 4,930 feet. The barometer here used was also a better one, and less liable to derangement.

At the end of two days, which was allowed to my animals for necessary repose, all the arrangements had been completed, and on the afternoon of the 26th we resumed our respective routes. Some little trouble was experienced in crossing the Platte, the waters of which were still kept up by rains and melting snow; and having travelled only

about four miles, we encamped in the evening on Thompson's creek, where we were very much disturbed by mosquitoes.

The following days we continued our march westward over comparative plains, and, fording the Cache-a-la-Poudre on the morning of the 28th, entered the Black hills, and nooned on this stream in the mountains beyond them. Passing over a fine large bottom in the afternoon, we reached a place where the river was shut up in the hills, and, ascending a ravine, made a laborious and very difficult passage around by a gap, striking the river again about dusk. A little labor, however, would remove this difficulty, and render the road to this point a very excellent one. The evening closed in dark with rain, and the mountains looked gloomy.

July 29.—Leaving our encampment about 7 in the morning, we travelled until 3 in the afternoon along the river, which, for this distance of about six miles, runs directly through a spur of the main mountains.

We were compelled by the nature of the ground to cross the river eight or nine times, at difficult, deep, and rocky fords, the stream running with great force, swollen by the rains—a true mountain torrent, only forty or fifty feet wide. It was a mountain valley of the narrowest kind—almost a chasm, and the scenery very wild and beautiful. Towering mountains rose round about; their sides sometimes dark with forests of pine, and sometimes with lofty precipices, washed by the river; while below, as if they indemnified themselves in luxuriance for the scanty space, the green river bottom was covered with a wilderness of flowers, their tall spikes sometimes rising above our heads as we rode among them. A profusion of blossoms on a white flowering vine, (*Clematis lasiantha*), which was abundant along the river, contrasted handsomely with the green foliage of the trees. The mountain appeared to be composed of a greenish gray and red granite, which in some places appeared to be in a state of decomposition, making a red soil.

The stream was wooded with cottonwood, box-elder, and cherry, with currant and serviceberry bushes. After a somewhat laborious day, during which it had rained incessantly, we encamped near the end of the pass at the mouth of a small creek, in sight of the great Laramie plains. It continued to rain heavily, and at evening the mountains were hid in mists; but there was no lack of wood, and the large fires we made to dry our clothes were very comfortable; and at night the hunters came in with a fine deer. Rough and difficult as we found the pass to-day, an excellent road may be made with a little labor. Elevation of 233

encamped in the even-
creek, where we were
by mosquitoes.

days we continued our
over comparative plains,
Cache-la-Poudre on the
b, entered the Black hills,
stream in the mountains
passing over a fine large
noon, we reached a place
as shut up in the hills,
ravine, made a laborious
passage around by a gap,
again about dusk. A little
would remove this diffi-
the road to this point a
ne. The evening closed
and the mountains looked

ing our encampment about
we travelled until 3 in the
the river, which, for this
six miles, runs directly
the main mountains.

elled by the nature of the
the river eight or nine times,
and rocky fords, the stream
eat force, swollen by the
mountain torrent, only forty
It was a mountain valley
a kind—almost a chasm,
very wild and beautiful.
ains rose round about; their
dark with forests of pine,
with lofty precipices, washed
hills below, as if they in-
elves in luxuriance for the
e green river bottom was
wilderness of flowers, their
times rising above our heads
ing them. A profusion of
white flowering vine, (*clima-*
rich was abundant along the
handsomely with the green
ness. The mountain appear-
ed of a greenish gray and
ch in some places appeared
of decomposition, making a

was wooded with cotton-
y and cherry, with currant
bushes. After a some-
day, during which it had
ly, we encamped near the
as at the mouth of a small
of the great Laramie plains.
rain heavily, and at evening
were hid in mists; but there
wood, and the large fires we
r clothes were very comfort-
ight the hunters came in with
ough and difficult as we found
an excellent road may be
the labor. Elevation of 22

camp 5,540 feet, and distance from St.
Vrain's fort 56 miles.

July 30.—The day was bright again; the
thermometer at sunrise 52°; and leaving
our encampment at 8 o'clock, in about half
a mile we crossed the *Cache-la-Poudre*
river for the last time; and, entering a
smoother country, we travelled along a kind
of *salton*, bounded on the right by red buttes
and precipices, while to the left a high rolling
country extended to a range of the
Black hills, beyond which rose the great
mountains around Long's peak.

By the great quantity of snow visible
among them, it had probably snowed heavily
there the previous day, while it had rained
on us in the valley.

We halted at noon on a small branch;
and in the afternoon travelled over a high
country, gradually ascending towards a
range of *buttes*, or high hills covered with
pines, which forms the dividing ridge be-
tween the waters we had left and those of
Laramie river.

Late in the evening we encamped at a
spring of cold water, near the summit of the
ridge, having increased our elevation to
7,520 feet. During the day we had travel-
led 24 miles. By some indifferent observa-
tions, our latitude is 41° 02' 19". A species
of *Aedeome* was characteristic along the
whole day's route.

Emerging from the mountains, we enter-
ed a region of bright, fair weather. In my
experience in this country, I was forcibly
impressed with the different character of
the climate on opposite sides of the Rocky
mountain range. The vast prairie plain on
the east is like the ocean; the rain and
clouds from the constantly evaporating snow
of the mountains rushing down into the heat-
ed air of the plains, on which you will have
occasion to remark the frequent storms of
rain we encountered during our journey.

July 31.—The morning was clear; tem-
perature 48°. A fine rolling road, among
play and grassy hills, brought us this morn-
ing into a large trail where an Indian vil-
lage had recently passed. The weather
was pleasant and cool; we were disturbed
by neither mosquitoes nor flies; and the
country was certainly extremely beautiful.
The slopes and broad ravines were abso-
lutely covered with fields of flowers of the
most exquisitely beautiful colors. Among
those which had not hitherto made their ap-
pearance, and which here were characteris-
tic, was a new *delphinium*, of a green and
lustrous metallic blue color, mingled with
compact fields of several bright-colored va-
rieties of *astragalus*, which were crowded
together in splendid profusion. This trail
conducted us through a remarkable defile,
to a little timbered creek, up which we

wound our way, passing by a singular and
massive wall of dark-red granite. The
formation of the country is a red felspathic
granite, overlying a decomposing mass of
the same rock, forming the soil of all this
region, which everywhere is red and gravelly,
and appears to be of a great floral fer-
tility.

As we emerged on a small tributary of
the Laramie river, coming in sight of its
principal stream, the flora became perfectly
magnificent; and we congratulated our-
selves, as we rode along our pleasant road,
that we had substituted this for the uninter-
esting country between Laramie hills and
the Sweet Water valley. We had no meat
for supper last night or breakfast this morn-
ing, and were glad to see Carson come in
at noon with a good antelope.

A meridian observation of the sun placed
us in latitude 41° 04' 00". In the evening
we encamped on the Laramie river, which
is here very thinly timbered with scattered
groups of cotton-wood at considerable inter-
vals. From our camp, we are able to dis-
tinguish the gorges, in which are the sources
of *Cache-la-Poudre* and Laramie rivers;
and the Medicine Bow mountain, towards
the point of which we are directing our
course this afternoon, has been in sight the
greater part of the day. By observation
the latitude was 41° 15' 02", and longitude
106° 16' 54". The same beautiful flora
continued till about four in the afternoon,
when it suddenly disappeared, with the red
soil, which became sandy and of a whitish-
gray color. The evening was tolerably
clear; temperature at sunset 64°. The
day's journey was 30 miles.

August 1.—The morning was calm and
clear, with sunrise temperature at 42°. We
travelled to-day over a plain, or open rolling
country, at the foot of the Medicine
Bow mountain; the soil in the morning be-
ing sandy, with fragments of rock abun-
dant; and in the afternoon, when we ap-
proached closer to the mountain, so stony
that we made but little way. The beautiful
plants of yesterday reappeared occasion-
ly; flax in bloom occurred during the morn-
ing, and esparcette in luxuriant abundance
was a characteristic of the stony ground in
the afternoon. The camp was roused into
a little excitement by a chase after a buffa-
lo bull, and an encounter with a war party
of Sioux and Cheyenne Indians about 30
strong. Hares and antelope were seen dur-
ing the day, and one of the latter was
killed. The Laramie peak was in sight
this afternoon. The evening was clear,
with scattered clouds: temperature 63°. The
day's journey was 26 miles.

August 2.—Temperature at sunrise 52°,
and scenery and weather made our road to-

day delightful. The neighboring mountain is thickly studded with pines, intermingled with the brighter foliage of aspens, and occasional spots like lawns between the patches of snow among the pines, and here and there on the heights. Our route below lay over a comparative plain, covered with the same brilliant vegetation, and the day was clear and pleasantly cool. During the morning, we crossed many streams, clear and rocky, and broad grassy valleys, of a strong black soil, washed down from the mountains, and producing excellent pasturage. These were timbered with the red willow and long-leaved cotton-wood, mingled with aspen, as we approached the mountain more nearly towards noon. *Esparellite* was a characteristic, and flax occurred frequently in bloom. We halted at noon on the most western fork of Laramie river—a handsome stream about sixty feet wide and two feet deep, with clear water and a swift current, over a bed composed entirely of boulders or roll stones. There was a large open bottom here, on which were many lodge poles lying about; and in the edge of the surrounding timber were three strong forts, that appeared to have been recently occupied. At this place I became first acquainted with the *yampah*, (*anethum graveolens*), which I found our Snake woman engaged in digging in the low timbered bottom of the creek. Among the Indians along the Rocky mountains, and more particularly among the Shoshonee or Snake Indians, in whose territory it is very abundant, this is considered the best among the roots used for food. To us it was an interesting plant—a little link between the savage and civilized life. Here, among the Indians, its root is a common article of food, which they take pleasure in offering to strangers; while with us, in a considerable portion of America and Europe, the seeds are used to flavor soup. It grows more abundantly, and in greater luxuriance, on one of the neighboring tributaries of the Colorado than in any other part of this region; and on that stream, to which the Snakes are accustomed to resort every year to procure a supply of their favorite plant, they have bestowed the name of *Yampah* river. Among the trappers, it is generally known as Little Snake river; but in this and other instances, where it illustrated the history of the people inhabiting the country, I have preferred to retain on the map the aboriginal name. By a meridional observation, the latitude is $41^{\circ} 45' 59''$.

In the afternoon we took our way directly across the spurs from the point of the mountain, where we had several ridges to cross; and, although the road was not rendered bad by the nature of the ground, it

was made extremely rough by the stiff tough bushes of *artemisia tridentata*,* in this country commonly called sage.

This shrub now began to make its appearance in compact fields; and we were about to quit for a long time this country of excellent pasturage and brilliant flowers. Ten or twelve buffalo bulls were seen during the afternoon; and we were surprised by the appearance of a large red ox. We gathered around him as if he had been an old acquaintance, with all our domestic feelings as much awakened as if we had come in sight of an old farm house. He had probably made his escape from some party of emigrants on Green river; and, with a vivid remembrance of some old green field, he was pursuing the straightest course for the frontier that the country admitted. We carried him along with us as a prize; and, when it was found in the morning that he had wandered off, I would not let him be pursued, for I would rather have gone through a starving time of three entire days, than let him be killed after he had successfully run the gauntlet so far among the Indians. I have been told by Mr. Bent's people of an ox born and raised at St. Vrain's fort, which made his escape from them at Elm grove, near the frontier, having come in that year with the wagons. They were on their way out, and saw occasionally places where he had eaten and lain down to rest; but did not see him for about 700 miles, when they overtook him on the road, travelling along to the fort, having unaccountably escaped Indians and every other mischance.

We encamped at evening on the principal fork of Medicine Bow river, near to an isolated mountain called the *Medicine Butte*, which appeared to be about 1,800 feet above the plain, from which it rises abruptly, and was still white, nearly to its base, with a great quantity of snow. The streams were timbered with the long-leaved cotton-wood and red willow; and during the afternoon a species of onion was very abundant. I obtained here an immersion of the first satellite of Jupiter, which, corresponding very nearly with the chronometer, placed us in longitude $106^{\circ} 47' 25''$. The latitude, by observation, was $41^{\circ} 37' 16''$; elevation above the sea, 7,800 feet, and distance from St. Vrain's fort, 147 miles.

August 3.—There was a white frost last night; the morning is clear and cool. We

* The greater portion of our subsequent journey was through a region where this shrub constituted the tree of the country; and, as it will often be mentioned in occasional descriptions, the word *artemisia* only will be used, without the specific name.

ely rough by the stiff
Artemisia tridentata,* in
only called sage.

began to make its ap-
pect fields; and we were
long time this country of
e and brilliant flowers.
falo bulls were seen dur-
and we were surprised
of a large red ox. We
him as if he had been an
with all our domestic feel-
ened as if we had come in
n house. He had proba-
pe from some party of
n river; and, with a vivid
ome old green field, he
straightest course for the
country admitted. We
with us as a prize; and,
in the morning that he
I would not let him be
ould rather have gone
time of three entire days,
led after he had success-
tlet so far among the In-
een told by Mr. Bent's
born and raised at St.
h made his escape from
e, near the frontier, hav-
year with the wagons.
r way out, and saw occa-
ere he had eaten and lain
did not see him for about
they overtook him on the
long to the fort, having
aped Indians and every

at evening on the princi-
ine How river, near to as
alled the *Medicine Butte*,
be about 1,800 feet above
ich it rises abruptly, and
early to its base, with a
snow. The streams were
long-leaved cotton-wood
nd during the afternoon a
s very abundant. I ob-
mersion of the first satel-
hich, corresponding very
hronometer, placed us in
" 25". The latitude, by
41° 37' 16"; elevation
00 feet, and distance from
47 miles.

ere was a white frost last
g is clear and cool. We

ction of our subsequent jour-
region where this shrub con-
this country; and, as it will
in occasional descriptions,
only will be used, without

were early on the road, having breakfasted
before sunrise, and in a few miles travel
entered the pass of the *Medicine Butte*,
through which led a broad trail, which had
been recently travelled by a very large party.
Immediately in the pass, the road was
broken by ravines, and we were obliged to
clear a way through groves of aspens, which
generally made their appearance when we
reached elevated regions. According to the
barometer, this was 8,300 feet; and while
we were detained in opening a road, I ob-
tained a meridional observation of the sun,
which gave 41° 35' 48" for the latitude of
the pass. The *Medicine Butte* is isolated
by a small tributary of the North fork of the
Platte, but the mountains approach each
other very nearly; the stream running at
their feet. On the south they are smooth,
with occasional streaks of pine; but the
butte itself is ragged, with escarpments of
red feldspathic granite, and dark with pines;
the snow reaching from the summit to within
a few hundred feet of the trail. The granite
here was more compact and durable than
that in the formation which we had passed
through a few days before to the eastward
of Laramie. Continuing our way over a
plain on the west side of the pass, where
the road was terribly rough with *artemisia*,
we made our evening encampment on the
creek, where it took a northern direction,
unfavorable to the course we were pursu-
ing. Bands of buffalo were discovered as
we came down upon the plain; and Carson
brought into the camp a cow which had the
fat on the fleece two inches thick. Even
in this country of rich pasturage and abun-
dant game, it is rare that the hunter chances
upon a finer animal. Our voyage had al-
ready been long, but this was the first good
buffalo meat we had obtained. We travel-
led to-day 26 miles.

August 4.—The morning was clear and
calm; and, leaving the creek, we travelled
towards the North fork of the Platte, over
a plain which was rendered rough and
broken by ravines. With the exception of
some thin grasses, the sandy soil here was
occupied almost exclusively by *artemisia*,
with its usual turpentine odor. We had ex-
pected to meet with some difficulty in cross-
ing the river, but happened to strike it
where there was a very excellent ford, and
halted to noon on the left bank, 200 miles
from St. Vrain's fort. The hunters brought
in pack animals loaded with fine meat. Ac-
cording to our imperfect knowledge of the
country, there should have been a small af-
fluent to this stream a few miles higher up;
and in the afternoon we continued our way
among the river hills, in the expectation of
encamping upon it in the evening. The
ground proved to be so exceedingly diffi-

cult, broken up into hills, terminating in es-
carpments and broad ravines, 500 or 600
feet deep, with sides so precipitous that we
could scarcely find a place to descend, that,
towards sunset, I turned directly in towards
the river, and, after nightfall, entered a sort
of ravine. We were obliged to feel our
way, and clear a road in the darkness; the
surface being much broken, and the pro-
gress of the carriages being greatly ob-
structed by the *artemisia*, which had a luxu-
riant growth of four to six feet in height.
We had scrambled along this gully for sev-
eral hours, during which we had knocked
off the carriage lamps, broken a thermome-
ter and several small articles, when, fear-
ing to lose something of more importance,
I halted for the night at 10 o'clock. Our
animals were turned down towards the river,
that they might pick up what little
grass they could find; and after a little
search, some water was found in a small
ravine, and improved by digging. We light-
ed up the ravine with fires of *artemisia*, and
about midnight sat down to a supper which
we were hungry enough to find delightful—
although the buffalo meat was crusted with
sand, and the coffee was bitter with the
wormwood taste of the *artemisia* leaves.

A successful day's hunt had kept our
hunters occupied until late, and they slept
out, but rejoined us at daybreak, when,
finding ourselves only about a mile from the
river, we followed the ravine down, and
camped in a cotton-wood grove on a beauti-
ful grassy bottom, where our animals in-
demnified themselves for the scanty fare of
the past night. It was quite a pretty and
pleasant place; a narrow strip of prairie
about five hundred yards long terminated at
the ravine where we entered by high precipi-
tous hills closing in upon the river, and
at the upper end by a ridge of low rolling
hills.

In the precipitous bluffs were displayed a
succession of strata containing fossil vege-
table remains, and several beds of coal. In
some of the beds the coal did not appear to
be perfectly mineralized; and in some of
the seams, it was compact and remarkably
lustrous. In these latter places there were
also thin layers of a very fine white salts,
in powder. As we had a large supply of
meat in the camp, which it was necessary
to dry, and the surrounding country appear-
ed to be well stocked with buffalo, which it
was probable, after a day or two, we would
not see again until our return to the Missis-
sippi waters, I determined to make here a
provision of dried meat, which would be ne-
cessary for our subsistence in the region we
were about entering, which was said to be
nearly destitute of game. Scaffolds were
accordingly soon erected, fires made, and

the meat cut into thin slices to be dried; and all were busily occupied, when the camp was thrown into a sudden tumult, by a charge from about 70 mounted Indians, over the low hills at the upper end of the little bottom. Fortunately, the guard, who was between them and our animals, had caught a glimpse of an Indian's head, as he raised himself in his stirrups to look over the hill, a moment before he made the charge; and succeeded in turning the band into the camp, as the Indians charged into the bottom with the usual yell. Before they reached us, the grove on the verge of the little bottom was occupied by our people, and the Indians brought to a sudden halt, which they made in time to save themselves from a howitzer shot, which would undoubtedly have been very effective in such a compact body; and further proceedings were interrupted by their signs for peace. They proved to be a war party of Arapaho and Cheyenne Indians and informed us that they had charged upon the camp under the belief that we were hostile Indians, and had discovered their mistake only at the moment of the attack—an excuse which policy required us to receive as true, though under the full conviction that the display of our little howitzer, and our favorable position in the grove, certainly saved our horses, and probably ourselves, from their marauding intentions. They had been on a war party, and had been defeated, and were consequently in the state of mind which aggravates their innate thirst for plunder and blood. Their excuse, however, was taken in good part, and the usual evidences of friendship interchanged. The pipe went round, provisions were spread, and the tobacco and goods furnished the customary presents, which they look for even from traders, and much more from government authorities.

They were returning from an expedition against the Shoshonee Indians, one of whose villages they had surprised, at Bridger's fort, on Ham's fork of Green river, (in the absence of the men, who were engaged in an antelope surround,) and succeeded in carrying off their horses and taking several scalps. News of the attack reached the Snakes immediately, who pursued and overtook them, and recovered their horses; and, in the running fight which ensued, the Arapahos had lost several men killed, and a number wounded, who were coming on more slowly with a party in the rear. Nearly all the horses they had brought off were the property of the whites at the fort. After remaining until nearly sunset, they took their departure; and the excitement which their arrival had afforded subsided into our usual quiet, a little enlivened by the vigilance rendered necessary by the

neighborhood of our uncertain visitors. At noon the thermometer was at 75°, at sunset 70°, and the evening clear. Elevation above the sea 6,820 feet; latitude 41° 36' 00"; longitude 107° 22' 27".

August 6.—At sunrise the thermometer was 46°, the morning being clear and calm. We travelled to-day over an extremely rugged country, barren and uninteresting—nothing to be seen but artemisia bushes; and, in the evening, found a grassy spot among the hills, kept green by several springs, where we encamped late. Within a few hundred yards was a very pretty little stream of clear cool water, whose green banks looked refreshing among the dry rocky hills. The hunters brought in a fat mountain sheep, (*ovis montana*.)

Our road the next day was through a continued and dense field of *artemisia*, which now entirely covered the country in such a luxuriant growth that it was difficult and laborious for a man on foot to force his way through, and nearly impracticable for our light carriages. The region through which we were travelling was a high plateau, constituting the dividing ridge between the waters of the Atlantic and Pacific oceans, and extending to a considerable distance southward, from the neighborhood of the Table rock, at the southern side of the South Pass. Though broken up into rugged and rocky hills of a dry and barren nature, it has nothing of a mountainous character; the small streams which occasionally occur belonging neither to the Platte nor the Colorado, but losing themselves either in the sand or in small lakes. From an eminence, in the afternoon, a mountainous range became visible in the north, in which were recognised some rocky peaks belonging to the range of the Sweet Water valley; and, determining to abandon any further attempt to struggle through this almost impracticable country, we turned our course directly north, towards a pass in the valley of the Sweet Water river. A shaft of the gun-carriage was broken during the afternoon, causing a considerable delay; and it was late in an unpleasant evening before we succeeded in finding a very poor encampment, where there was a little water in a deep trench of a creek, and some scanty grass among the shrubs. All the game here consisted in a few straggling buffalo bulls, and during the day there had been but very little grass, except in some green spots where it had collected around springs or shallow lakes. Within fifty miles of the Sweet Water, the country changed into a vast saline plain, in many places extremely level, occasionally resembling the flat sandy beds of shallow lakes. Here the vegetation consisted of a

our uncertain visitors. The thermometer was at 75° at evening clear. Elevation 8,820 feet; latitude 41° 10' 22' 27".

At sunrise the thermometer was clear and the morning being clear and the day over an extensive country, barren and unproductive to be seen but artesian wells in the evening, found in the hills, kept green by the water here we encamped late. A hundred yards was a very fine stream of clear cool water, which looked refreshing among the rocks.

The hunters brought a sheep, (*ovis montana*.)

The next day was through a large field of *artemisia*, which covered the country in such a growth that it was difficult for a man on foot to force his way nearly impracticable for a horse.

The region through which we travelled was a high plateau, the dividing ridge between the Atlantic and Pacific extending to a considerable distance, from the neighborhood of the southern pass.

Though broken by rocky hills of a dry and sterile soil, it has nothing of a mountainous appearance, the small streams which belong to neither the Colorado, but losing themselves in sand or in small lakes.

At noon, in the afternoon, a heavy fog became visible in the distance, which were recognised some distance to the range of the Rocky Mountains; and, determining to attempt to struggle through this impracticable country, we proceeded directly north, towards the mouth of the Sweet Water river.

The gun-carriage was broken in the afternoon, causing a considerable delay. It was late in the evening before we succeeded in our attempt to encampment, where we were in a deep trench of scanty grass among the rocks, the same here consisted in a few sage bushes, and during the day but very little grass, except in some spots where it had been springs or shallow lakes.

At the mouth of the Sweet Water, the country is a vast saline plain, in some places level, occasionally broken by sandy beds of shallow water. The vegetation consisted of a

shrubby growth, among which were several varieties of *chenopodium* plants; but the characteristic shrub was *Fremontia vermicularis*, with smaller saline shrubs growing with singular luxuriance, and in many places holding exclusive possession of the ground.

On the evening of the 8th, we encamped on one of these fresh-water lakes, which the traveller considers himself fortunate to find; and the next day, in latitude by observation 42° 20' 06", halted to noon immediately at the foot of the southern side of the range which walls in the Sweet Water valley, on the head of a small tributary to that river.

Continuing in the afternoon our course down the stream, which here cuts directly through the ridge, forming a very practicable pass, we entered the valley; and, after a march of about nine miles, encamped on our familiar river, endeared to us by the acquaintance of the previous expedition; the night having already closed in with a cold rain-storm. Our camp was about twenty miles above the Devil's gate, which we had been able to see in coming down the plain; and, in the course of the night, the clouds broke away around Jupiter for a short time, during which we obtained an emersion of the first satellite, the result of which agreed very nearly with the chronometer, giving for the mean longitude 107° 50' 07"; elevation above the sea 6,040 feet; and distance from St. Vrain's fort, by the road we had just travelled, 315 miles.

Here passes the road to Oregon; and the broad smooth highway, where the numerous heavy wagons of the emigrants had entirely beaten and crushed the *artemisia*, was a happy exchange to our poor animals for the sharp rocks and tough shrubs among which they had been toiling so long; and we moved up the valley rapidly and pleasantly. With very little deviation from our route of the preceding year, we continued up the valley; and on the evening of the 12th encamped on the Sweet Water, at a point where the road turns off to cross to the plains of Green river. The increased coolness of the weather indicated that we had attained a great elevation, which the barometer here placed at 7,220 feet; and during the night water froze in the lodge.

The morning of the 13th was clear and cold, there being a white frost; and the thermometer, a little before sunrise, standing at 26.5°. Leaving this encampment, (our last on the waters which flow towards the rising sun,) we took our way along the plain, towards the dividing ridge which separates the Atlantic from the Pacific waters, and crossed it by a road some miles

further south than the one we had followed on our return in 1842. We crossed very near the table mountain, at the southern extremity of the South Pass, which is near twenty miles in width, and already traversed by several different roads. Selecting as well as I could, in the scarcely distinguishable ascent, what might be considered the dividing ridge in this remarkable depression in the mountain, I took a barometrical observation, which gave 7,490 feet for the elevation above the Gulf of Mexico. You will remember that, in my report of 1842, I estimated the elevation of this pass at about 7,000 feet; a correct observation with a good barometer enables me now to give it with more precision. Its importance, as the great gate through which commerce and travelling may hereafter pass between the valley of the Mississippi and the north Pacific, justifies a precise notice of its locality and distance from leading points, in addition to this statement of its elevation. As stated in the report of 1842, its latitude at the point where we crossed is 42° 24' 32"; its longitude 109° 26' 00"; its distance from the mouth of the Kansas, by the common travelling route, 962 miles; from the mouth of the Great Platte, along the valley of that river, according to our survey of 1842, 882 miles; and its distance from St. Louis about 400 miles more by the Kansas, and about 700 by the Great Platte route; these additions being steamboat conveyance in both instances. From this pass to the mouth of the Oregon is about 1,400 miles by the common travelling route; so that, under a general point of view, it may be assumed to be about half way between the Mississippi and the Pacific ocean, on the common travelling route. Following a hollow of slight and easy descent, in which was very soon formed a little tributary to the Gulf of California, (for the waters which flow west from the South Pass go to this gulf,) we made our usual halt four miles from the pass, in latitude by observation 42° 19' 53". Entering here the valley of Green river—the great Colorado of the West—and inclining very much to the southward along the streams which form the Sandy river, the road led for several days over dry and level uninteresting plains; to which a low, scrubby growth of *artemisia* gave a uniform dull grayish color; and on the evening of the 15th we encamped in the Mexican territory, on the left bank of Green river, 60 miles from the South Pass, in longitude 110° 05' 05", and latitude 41° 53' 54", distant 1,031 miles from the mouth of the Kansas. This is the emigrant road to Oregon, which bears much to the southward, to avoid the moun-

tains about the western heads of Green river—the *Rio Verde* of the Spaniards.

August 10.—Crossing the river, here about 400 feet wide, by a very good ford, we continued to descend for seven or eight miles on a pleasant road along the right bank of the stream, of which the islands and shores are handsomely timbered with cotton-wood. The refreshing appearance of the broad river, with its timbered shores and green wooded islands, in contrast to its dry sandy plains, probably obtained for it the name of Green river, which was bestowed on it by the Spaniards who first came into this country to trade some 25 years ago. It was then familiarly known as the Seeds-kedé-agie, or Prairie Hen (*tetrao urophasianus*) river; a name which it received from the Crows, to whom its upper waters belong, and on which this bird is still very abundant. By the Shoshonee and Utah Indians, to whom belongs, for a considerable distance below, the country where we were now travelling, it was called the Bitter Root river, from the great abundance in its valley of a plant which affords them one of their favorite roots. Lower down, from Brown's hole to the southward, the river runs through lofty chasms, walled in by precipices of red rock; and even among the wilder tribes who inhabit that portion of its course, I have heard it called by Indian refugees from the Californian settlements the *Rio Colorado*. We halted to noon at the upper end of a large bottom, near some old houses, which had been a trading post, in latitude $41^{\circ} 46' 54''$. At this place the elevation of the river above the sea is 6,230 feet. That of Lewis's fork of the Columbia at Fort Hall is, according to our subsequent observations, 4,500 feet. The descent of each stream is rapid, but that of the Colorado is but little known, and that little derived from vague report. Three hundred miles of its lower part, as it approaches the gulf of California, is reported to be smooth and tranquil; but its upper part is manifestly broken into many falls and rapids. From many descriptions of trappers, it is probable that in its foaming course among its lofty precipices it presents many scenes of wild grandeur; and though offering many temptations, and often discussed, no trappers have been found bold enough to undertake a voyage which has so certain a prospect of a fatal termination. The Indians have strange stories of beautiful valleys abounding with beaver, shut up among inaccessible walls of rock in the lower course of the river; and to which the neighboring Indians, in their occasional wars with the Spaniards, and among themselves, drive their herds of cattle and flocks of sheep, leaving them to pasture in perfect security.

The road here leaves the river, which bends considerably to the east; and in the afternoon we resumed our westerly course, passing over a somewhat high and broken country; and about sunset, after a day's travel of 26 miles, reached Black's fork of the Green river—a shallow stream, with a somewhat sluggish current, about 120 feet wide, timbered principally with willow, and here and there an occasional large tree. At 3 in the morning I obtained an observation of an emersion of the first satellite of Jupiter, with other observations. The heavy wagons have so completely pulverized the soil, that clouds of fine light dust are raised by the slightest wind, making the road sometimes very disagreeable.

August 17.—Leaving our encampment at 6 in the morning, we travelled along the bottom, which is about two miles wide, bordered by low hills, in which the strata contained handsome and very distinct vegetable fossils. In a gully a short distance farther up the river, and underlying these was exposed a stratum of an impure or argillaceous limestone. Crossing on the way Black's fork, where it is one foot deep and forty wide, with clear water and a pebbly bed, in nine miles we reached Ham's fork, a tributary to the former stream, having now about sixty feet breadth, and a few inches depth of water. It is wooded with thickets of red willow, and in the bottom is a tolerably strong growth of grass. The road here makes a traverse of twelve miles across a bend of the river. Passing in the way some remarkable hills, two or three hundred feet high, with frequent and nearly vertical escarpments of a green stone, consisting of an argillaceous carbonate of lime, alternating with strata of an iron-brown limestone, and worked into picturesque forms by wind and rain, at 2 in the afternoon we reached the river again, having made to-day 21 miles. Since crossing the great dividing ridge of the Rocky mountains, plants have been very few in variety, the country being covered principally with artemisia.

August 18.—We passed on the road, this morning, the grave of one of the emigrants, being the second we had seen since falling into their trail; and halted to noon on the river, a short distance above.

The Shoshonee woman took leave of us here, expecting to find some of her relations at Bridger's fort, which is only a mile or two distant, on a fork of this stream. In the evening we encamped on a salt creek, about fifteen feet wide, having to-day travelled 32 miles.

I obtained an emersion of the first satellite under favorable circumstances, the night being still and clear.

leaves the river, which
to the east; and in the
ned our westerly course,
ewhat high and broken
ut sunset, after a day's
reached Black's fork of
a shallow stream, with a
current, about 120 feet
ncipally with willow, and
occasional large tree. At
obtained an observation
the first satellite of Jupi-
servations. The heavy
completely pulverized the
fine light dust are raised
wind, making the road
agreeable.

leaving our encampment,
g, we travelled along the
about two miles wide-
hills, in which the strata
e and very distinct vege-
a gully a short distance
er, and underlying these
stratum of an impure or
stone. Crossing on the
where it is one foot deep
with clear water and a
miles we reached Ham's
to the former stream, hav-
ty feet breadth, and a few
water. It is wooded with
willow, and in the bottom is
g growth of grass. The
a traverse of twelve miles
the river. Passing in the
kable hills, two or three
with frequent and nearly
of a green stone, con-
laccous carbonate of lime,
strata of an iron-brown
worked into picturesque
d rain, at 2 in the after-
t the river again, having
miles. Since crossing the
dge of the Rocky moun-
been very few in variety,
covered principally with

We passed on the road, this
ve of one of the emigrants,
we had seen since falling
and halted to noon on the
ance above.

A woman took leave of us
find some of her relations
which is only a mile or
fork of this stream. In
encamped on a salt creek,
wide, having to-day trav-

ersion of the first satel-
le circumstances, the night
ar.

One of our mules died here, and in this
portion of our journey we lost six or seven
of our animals. The grass which the
country had lately afforded was very poor
and insufficient; and animals which have
been accustomed to grain become soon
weak and unable to labor, when reduced to
no other nourishment than grass. The
American horses (as those are usually
called which are brought to this country
from the States) are not of any serviceable
value until after they have remained a
winter in the country, and become ac-
customed to live entirely on grass.

August 10.—Desirous to avoid every de-
lay not absolutely necessary, I sent on Car-
son in advance to Fort Hall this morning,
to make arrangements for a small supply
of provisions. A few miles from our en-
campment, the road entered a high ridge,
which the trappers called the "little moun-
tain," connecting the Utah with the Wind
river chain; and in one of the hills near
which we passed I remarked strata of a
conglomerate formation, fragments of which
were scattered over the surface. We cross-
ed a ridge of this conglomerate, the road
passing near a grove of low cedar, and de-
scended upon one of the heads of Ham's
fork, called Muddy, where we made our
mid-day halt. In the river hills at this place,
I discovered strata of fossiliferous rock,
having an *oolitic structure*, which, in con-
nection with the neighboring strata, autho-
rize us to believe that here, on the west
side of the Rocky mountains, we find re-
peated the modern formations of Great Bri-
tain and Europe, which have hitherto been
wanting to complete the system of North
American geology.

In the afternoon we continued our road,
and, searching among the hills a few miles
up the stream, and on the same bank, I dis-
covered, among alternating beds of coal and
clay, a stratum of white indurated clay,
containing very clear and beautiful impres-
sions of vegetable remains. This was the
most interesting fossil locality I had met in
the country, and I deeply regretted that
time did not permit me to remain a day or
two in the vicinity; but I could not antici-
pate the delays to which I might be exposed
in the course of our journey—or, rather, I
knew that they were many and inevitable;
and after remaining here only about an hour,
I hurried off, loaded with as many specim-
ens as I could conveniently carry.

Coal made its appearance occasionally in
the hills during the afternoon, and was dis-
played in rabbit burrows in a kind of gap,
through which we passed over some high
hills, and we descended to make our en-
campment on the same stream, where we
found but very poor grass. In the evening

a fine cow, with her calf, which had strayed
off from some emigrant party, were found
several miles from the road, and brought
into camp; and as she gave an abundance
of milk, we enjoyed to-night an excellent
cup of coffee. We travelled to-day 28
miles, and, as has been usual since crossing
the Green river, the road has been very
dusty, and the weather smoky and oppres-
sively hot. *Artemisia* was characteristic
among the few plants.

August 20.—We continued to travel up
the creek by a very gradual ascent and a
very excellent grassy road, passing on the
way several small forks of the stream. The
hills here are higher, presenting escarp-
ments of parti-colored and apparently clay
rocks, purple, dark red, and yellow, con-
taining strata of sandstone and limestone
with shells, with a bed of cemented pebbles,
the whole overlaid by beds of limestone.
The alternation of red and yellow gives a
bright appearance to the hills, one of which
was called by our people the Rainbow hill;
and the character of the country became
more agreeable, and travelling far more
pleasant, as now we found timber and very
good grass. Gradually ascending, we reach-
ed the lower level of a bed of white lime-
stone, lying upon a white clay, on the upper
line of which the whole road is abundantly
supplied with beautiful cool springs, gushing
out a foot in breadth and several inches
deep, directly from the hill side. At noon
we halted at the last main fork of the creek,
at an elevation of 7,200 feet, and in latitude,
by observation, $41^{\circ} 39' 45''$; and in the af-
ternoon continued on the same excellent
road, up the left or northern fork of the
stream, towards its head, in a pass which
the barometer placed at 8,230 feet above
the sea. This is a connecting ridge be-
tween the Utah or Bear river mountains
and the Wind river chain of the Rocky
mountains, separating the waters of the
gulf of California on the east, and those on
the west belonging more directly to the Pa-
cific, from a vast interior basin whose rivers
are collected into numerous lakes having
no outlet to the ocean. From the summit
of this pass, the highest which the road
crosses between the Mississippi and the
Western ocean, our view was over a very
mountainous region, whose rugged appear-
ance was greatly increased by the smoky
weather, through which the broken ridges
were dark and dimly seen. The ascent to
the summit of the gap was occasionally
steeper than the national road in the Alle-
ghanias; and the descent, by way of a spur
on the western side, is rather precipitous,
but the pass may still be called a good one.
Some thickets of willow in the hollows be-
low deceived us into the expectation of

finding a camp at our usual hour at the foot of the mountain; but we found them without water, and continued down a ravine, and encamped about dark at a place where the springs again began to make their appearance, but where our animals fared badly; the stock of the emigrants having razed the grass as completely as if we were again in the midst of the buffalo.

August 21.—An hour's travel this morning brought us into the fertile and picturesque valley of Bear river, the principal tributary to the Great Salt lake. The stream is here 200 feet wide, fringed with willows and occasional groups of hawthorns. We were now entering a region which for us possessed a strange and extraordinary interest. We were upon the waters of the famous lake which forms a salient point among the remarkable geographical features of the country, and around which the vague and superstitious accounts of the trappers had thrown a delightful obscurity, which we anticipated pleasure in dispelling, but which, in the mean time, left a crowded field for the exercise of our imagination.

In our occasional conversations with the few old hunters who had visited the region, it had been a subject of frequent speculation; and the wonders which they related were not the less agreeable because they were highly exaggerated and impossible.

Hitherto this lake had been seen only by trappers who were wandering through the country in search of new beaver streams, caring very little for geography; its islands had never been visited; and none were to be found who had entirely made the circuit of its shores; and no instrumental observations or geographical survey, of any description, had ever been made anywhere in the neighboring region. It was generally supposed that it had no visible outlet; but among the trappers, including those in my own camp, were many who believed that somewhere on its surface was a terrible whirlpool, through which its waters found their way to the ocean by some subterranean communication. All these things had made a frequent subject of discussion in our desultory conversations around the fires at night; and my own mind had become tolerably well filled with their indefinite pictures, and insensibly colored with their romantic descriptions, which, in the pleasure of excitement, I was well disposed to believe, and half expected to realize.

Where we descended into this beautiful valley, it is three to four miles in breadth, perfectly level, and bounded by mountainous ridges, one above another, rising suddenly from the plain.

We continued our road down the river, and at night encamped with a family of emi-

grants—two men, women, and several children—who appeared to be bringing up the rear of the great caravan. I was struck with the fine appearance of their cattle, some six or eight yoke of oxen, which really looked as well as if they had been all the summer at work on some good farm. It was strange to see one small family traveling along through such a country, so remote from civilization. Some nine years since, such a security might have been a fatal one; but since their disastrous defeats in the country a little north, the Blackfeet have ceased to visit these waters. Indians, however, are very uncertain in their localities; and the friendly feelings, also, of those now inhabiting it may be changed.

According to barometrical observation at noon, the elevation of the valley was 6,400 feet above the sea; and our encampment at night in latitude $42^{\circ} 03' 47''$, and longitude $111^{\circ} 10' 53''$, by observation—the day's journey having been 26 miles. This encampment was therefore within the territorial limit of the United States; our traveling, from the time we entered the valley of the Green river, on the 15th of August, having been to the south of the 42d degree of north latitude, and consequently on Mexican territory; and this is the route all the emigrants now travel to Oregon.

The temperature at sunset was 65° ; and at evening there was a distant thunder storm, with a light breeze from the north.

Antelope and elk were seen during the day on the opposite prairie; and there were ducks and geese in the river.

The next morning, in about three miles from our encampment, we reached Smith's fork, a stream of clear water, about 50 feet in breadth. It is timbered with cotton-wood, willow, and aspen, and makes a beautiful debouchement through a pass about 600 yards wide, between remarkable mountain hills, rising abruptly on either side, and forming gigantic columns to the gate by which it enters Bear river valley. The bottoms, which below Smith's fork had been two miles wide, narrowed, as we advanced, to a gap 500 yards wide; and during the greater part of the day we had a winding route, the river making very sharp and sudden bends, the mountains steep and rocky, and the valley occasionally so narrow as only to leave space for a passage through.

We made our halt at noon in a fertile bottom, where the common blue flax was growing abundantly, a few miles below the mouth of Thomas's fork, one of the larger tributaries of the river.

Crossing, in the afternoon, the point of a narrow spur, we descended into a beautiful bottom, formed by a lateral valley, which presented a picture of home beauty that

omen, and several children to be bringing up the caravan. I was struck by the appearance of their cattle, like oxen, which really they had been all the some good farin. It was a small family travelling such a country, so remote. Some nine years since, it had been a fatal one; disastrous defeats in the north, the Blackfeet have the waters. Indians, however, retain in their localities; things, also, of those now changed.

ometrical observation of the valley was 6,400 and our encampment at 03' 47", and longitude observation—the day's march 26 miles. This therefore within the territories of the United States; our travel we entered the valley of the Snake on the 15th of August, south of the 42d degree and consequently on the 15th is the route all the way to Oregon.

at sunset was 65°; and there was a distant thunder breeze from the north. We were seen during the day on the prairie; and there were the river.

ing, in about three miles distant, we reached Smith's clear water, about 50 feet higher than the river, and makes a beautiful pass about 600 feet high on either side, and forms the gate by which it passes to the valley. The bottoms, on the north fork had been two miles, as we advanced, to a narrow pass; and during the greater part of the day had a winding route, the sharp and sudden bends, and the narrow pass as only to leave the river.

at noon in a fertile bottom blue flax was growing in small patches a few miles below the mouth of the river, one of the larger tribu-

afternoon, the point of our ascent into a beautiful lateral valley, which is of home beauty that

went directly to our hearts. The edge of the wood, for several miles along the river, was dotted with the white covers of emigrant wagons, collected in groups at different camps, where the smokes were rising lazily from the fires, around which the women were occupied in preparing the evening meal, and the children playing in the grass; and herds of cattle, grazing about in the bottom, had an air of quiet security, and civilized comfort, that made a rare sight for the traveller in such a remote wilderness.

In common with all the emigration, they had been reposing for several days in this delightful valley, in order to recruit their animals on its luxuriant pasturage after their long journey, and prepare them for the hard travel along the comparatively sterile banks of the Upper Columbia. At the lower end of this extensive bottom, the river passes through an open cañon, where there were high vertical rocks to the water's edge, and the road here turns up a broad valley to the right. It was already near sunset; but, hoping to reach the river again before night, we continued our march along the valley, finding the road tolerably good, until we arrived at a point where it crosses the ridge by an ascent of a mile in length, which was so very steep and difficult for the gun and carriage, that we did not reach the summit until dark.

It was absolutely necessary to descend into the valley for water and grass; and we were obliged to grope our way in the darkness down a very steep, bad mountain, reaching the river at about 10 o'clock. It was late before our animals were gathered into camp, several of those which were very weak being necessarily left to pass the night on the ridge; and we sat down again to a midnight supper. The road, in the morning, presented an animated appearance. We found that we had encamped near a large party of emigrants; and a few miles below, another party was already in motion. Here the valley had resumed its usual breadth, and the river swept off along the mountains on the western side, the road continuing directly on.

In about an hour's travel we met several Shoshonee Indians, who informed us that they belonged to a large village which had just come into the valley from the mountain to the westward, where they had been hunting antelope and gathering service-berries. Glad at the opportunity of seeing one of their villages, and in the hope of purchasing from them a few horses, I turned immediately off into the plain towards their encampment, which was situated on a small stream near the river.

We had approached within something more than a mile of the village, when sud-

denly a single horseman emerged from it at full speed, followed by another, and another, in rapid succession; and then party after party poured into the plain, until, when the foremost rider reached us, all the whole intervening plain was occupied by a mass of horsemen, which came charging down upon us with guns and naked swords, lances, and bows and arrows,—Indians entirely naked, and warriors fully dressed for war, with the long red streamers of their war bonnets reaching nearly to the ground, all mingled together in the bravery of savage warfare.

They had been thrown into a sudden tumult by the appearance of our flag, which, among these people, is regarded as an emblem of hostility—it being usually borne by the Sioux, and the neighboring mountain Indians, when they come here to war; and we had, accordingly, been mistaken for a body of their enemies. A few words from the chief quieted the excitement; and the whole band, increasing every moment in number, escorted us to their encampment where the chief pointed out a place for us to encamp, near his own lodge, and made known our purpose in visiting the village. In a very short time we purchased eight horses, for which we gave in exchange blankets, red and blue cloth, beads, knives, and tobacco, and the usual other articles of Indian traffic. We obtained from them also a considerable quantity of berries of different kinds, among which service-berries were the most abundant; and several kinds of roots and seeds, which we could eat with pleasure, as any kind of vegetable food was gratifying to us. I ate here, for the first time, the *kooyah*, or *tobacco root*, (*valeriana edulis*), the principal edible root among the Indians who inhabit the upper waters of the streams on the western side of the mountains. It has a very strong and remarkably peculiar taste and odor, which I can compare to no other vegetable that I am acquainted with, and which to some persons is extremely offensive. It was characterized by Mr. Preuss as the most horrid food he had ever put in his mouth; and when, in the evening, one of the chiefs sent his wife to me with a portion which she had prepared as a delicacy to regale us, the odor immediately drove him out of the lodge; and frequently afterwards he used to beg that when those who liked it had taken what they desired, it might be sent away. To others, however, the taste is rather an agreeable one; and I was afterwards always glad when it formed an addition to our scanty meals. It is full of nutriment; and in its unprepared state is said by the Indians to have very strong poisonous qualities, of which it is deprived by a peculiar process, being baked in the ground for about two days.

The morning of the 21th was disagreeably cool, with an easterly wind and very smoky weather. We made a late start from the village, and, regaining the road, (on which, during all the day, were scattered the emigrant wagons,) we continued on down the valley of the river, bordered by high and mountainous hills, on which fires are seen at the summit. The soil appears generally good, although, with the grasses, many of the plants are dried up, probably on account of the great heat and want of rain. The common blue flax of cultivation, now almost entirely in seed—only a scattered flower here and there remaining—is the most characteristic plant of the Bear river valley. When we encamped at night on the right bank of the river, it was growing as in a sown field. We had travelled during the day 22 miles, encamping in latitude (by observation) $42^{\circ} 36' 56''$, chronometric longitude $111^{\circ} 42' 05''$.

In our neighborhood, the mountains appeared extremely rugged, giving still greater value to this beautiful natural pass.

August 25.—This was a cloudless but smoky autumn morning, with a cold wind from the SE., and a temperature of 45° at sunrise. In a few miles I noticed, where a little stream crossed the road, fragments of *scoriated basalt* scattered about—the first volcanic rock we had seen, and which now became a characteristic rock along our future road. In about six miles travel from our encampment, we reached one of the points in our journey to which we had always looked forward with great interest—the famous *Beer springs*. The place in which they are situated is a basin of mineral waters enclosed by the mountains, which sweep around a circular bend of Bear river, here at its most northern point, and which from a northern, in the course of a few miles acquires a southern direction towards the GREAT SALT LAKE. A pretty little stream of clear water enters the upper part of the basin from an open valley in the mountains, and, passing through the bottom, discharges into Bear river. Crossing this stream, we descended a mile below, and made our encampment in a grove of cedar immediately at the Beer springs, which, on account of the effervescing gas and acid taste, have received their name from the voyageurs and trappers of the country, who, in the midst of their rude and hard lives, are fond of finding some fancied resemblance to the luxuries they rarely have the fortune to enjoy.

Although somewhat disappointed in the expectations which various descriptions had led me to form of unusual beauty of situation and scenery, I found it altogether a place of very great interest; and a trav-

eller for the first time in a volcanic region remains in a constant excitement, and at every step is arrested by something remarkable and new. There is a confusion of interesting objects gathered together in a small space. Around the place of encampment the Beer springs were numerous; but, as far as we could ascertain, were entirely confined to that locality in the bottom. In the bed of the river, in front, for a space of several hundred yards, they were very abundant; the effervescing gas rising up and agitating the water in countless bubbling columns. In the vicinity round about were numerous springs of an entirely different and equally marked mineral character. In a rather picturesque spot, about 1,300 yards below our encampment, and immediately on the river bank, is the most remarkable spring of the place. In an opening on the rock, a white column of scattered water is thrown up, in form like a *jet-d'eau*, to a variable height of about three feet, and, though it is maintained in a constant supply, its greatest height is attained only at regular intervals, according to the action of the force below. It is accompanied by a subterranean noise, which, together with the motion of the water, makes very much the impression of a steamboat in motion; and, without knowing that it had been already previously so called, we gave to it the name of the *Steamboat spring*. The rock through which it is forced is slightly raised in a convex manner, and gathered at the opening into an urn-mouthed form, and is evidently formed by continued deposition from the water, and colored bright red by oxide of iron. An analysis of this deposited rock, which I subjoin, will give you some idea of the properties of the water, which, with the exception of the Beer springs, is the mineral water of the place.* It is a hot spring, and the water has a pungent and disagreeable metallic taste, leaving a burning effect on the tongue. Within perhaps two yards of the *jet-d'eau* is a small hole of about an inch in diameter, through which, at regular intervals, escapes a blast of hot air with a light wreath of smoke, accompanied by a regular noise. This hole had been noticed by Doctor Wislizenus, a gentleman who several years since passed by this place, and who remarked, with very nice observation,

* ANALYSIS.

Carbonate of lime . . .	92.55
Carbonate of magnesia . . .	0.42
Oxide of iron . . .	1.05
Silica	}
Alumina	
Water and loss	5.98
	100.00

in a volcanic region
 ant excitement, and at
 ted by something re-
 There is a confusion
 gathered together in a
 d the place of encamp-
 gs were numerous; but,
 ascertain, were entirely
 ability in the bottom. In
 in front, for a space of
 rds, they were very
 rvescing gas rising up
 water in countless bub-
 the vicinity round about
 gs of an entirely differ-
 rked mineral character.
 esque spot, about 1,300
 campment, and immedi-
 ank, is the most remark-
 lace. In an opening on
 lumn of scattered water
 m like a *jet-d'eau*, to a
 about three feet, and,
 ned in a constant supply,
 s attained only at regul-
 ing to the action of the
 accompanied by a sub-
 hich, together with the
 r, makes very much the
 amboat in motion; and,
 at it had been already
 t, we gave to it the name
 ring. The rock through
 slightly raised in a con-
 gathered at the opening
 d form, and is evidently
 ed deposition from the
 bright red by oxide of
 of this deposited rock.
 ll give you some idea of
 e water, which, with the
 eer springs, is the min-
 ace.* It is a hot spring,
 pungent and disagree-
 leaving a burning effect
 ithin perhaps two yards
 a small hole of about an
 ough which, at regular
 blast of hot air with a
 oke, accompanied by a
 is hole had been noticed
 enus, a gentleman who
 passed by this place, and
 a very nice observation,

ANALYSIS.	
.....	92.55
esia	0.42
.....	1.05
.....	5.98
.....	100.00

that smelling the gas which issued from the orifice produced a sensation of giddiness and nausea. Mr. Preuss and myself repeated the observation, and were so well satisfied with its correctness, that we did not find it pleasant to continue the experiment, as the sensation of giddiness which it produced was certainly strong and decided. A huge emigrant wagon, with a large and diversified family, had overtaken us and halted to noon at our encampment; and, while we were sitting at the spring, a band of boys and girls, with two or three young men, came up, one of whom I asked to stop down and smell the gas, desirous to satisfy myself further of its effects. But his natural caution had been awakened by the singular and auspicious features of the place, and he declined my proposal decidedly, and with a few indistinct remarks about the devil, whom he seemed to consider the *genius loci*. The ceaseless motion and the play of the fountain, the red rock, and the green trees near, make this a picturesque spot.

A short distance above the spring, and near the foot of the same spur, is a very remarkable yellow-colored rock, soft and friable, consisting principally of carbonate of lime and oxide of iron, of regular structure, which is probably a fossil coral. The rocky bank along the shore between the Steamboat spring and our encampment, along which is dispersed the water from the hills, is composed entirely of strata of a calcareous *tufa*, with the remains of moss and reed-like grasses, which is probably the formation of springs. The *Beer* or *Soda springs*, which have given name to this locality, are agreeable, but less highly flavored than the *Boiling springs* at the foot of Pike's peak, which are of the same character. They are very numerous, and half hidden by tufts of grass, which we amused ourselves in removing and searching about for more highly impregnated springs. They are some of them deep, and of various sizes—sometimes several yards in diameter, and kept in constant motion by columns of escaping gas. By analysis, one quart of the water contains as follows:

	Grains.
Sulphate of magnesia	12.10
Sulphate of lime	2.12
Carbonate of lime	3.86
Carbonate of magnesia	3.22
Chloride of calcium	1.33
Chloride of magnesium	1.12
Chloride of sodium	2.24
Vegetable extractive matter, &c.	0.85
	26.84

The carbonic acid, originally contained in the water had mainly escaped before it was

subjected to analysis; and it was not, there fore, taken into consideration.

In the afternoon I wandered about among the cedars, which occupy the greater part of the bottom towards the mountains. The soil here has a dry and calcined appearance; in some places, the open grounds are covered with saline efflorescences, and there are a number of regularly-shaped and very remarkable hills, which are formed of a succession of convex strata that have been deposited by the waters of extinct springs, the orifices of which are found on their summits, some of them having the form of funnel-shaped cones. Others of these remarkably-shaped hills are of a red-colored earth, entirely bare, and composed principally of carbonate of lime, with oxide of iron, formed in the same manner. Walking near one of them, on the summit of which the springs were dry, my attention was attracted by an underground noise, around which I circled repeatedly, until I found the spot from beneath which it came; and, removing the red earth, discovered a hidden spring, which was boiling up from below, with the same disagreeable metallic taste as the Steamboat spring. Continuing up the bottom, and crossing the little stream which has been already mentioned, I visited several remarkable red and white hills, which had attracted my attention from the road in the morning. These are immediately upon the stream, and, like those already mentioned, are formed by the deposition of successive strata from the springs. On their summits, the orifices through which the waters had been discharged were so large, that they resembled miniature craters, being some of them several feet in diameter, circular, and regularly formed as if by art. At a former time, when these dried-up fountains were all in motion, they must have made a beautiful display on a grand scale; and nearly all this basin appears to me to have been formed under their action, and should be called the *place of fountains*. At the foot of one of these hills, or rather on its side near the base, are several of these small limestone columns, about one foot in diameter at the base, and tapering upwards to a height of three or four feet; and on the summit the water is boiling up and bubbling over, constantly adding to the height of the little obelisks. In some, the water only boils up, no longer overflowing, and has here the same taste as at the Steamboat spring. The observer will remark a gradual subsidence in the water, which formerly supplied the fountains; as on all the summits of the hills the springs are now dry, and are found only low down upon their sides, or on the surrounding plain.

A little higher up the creek, its banks are

formed by strata of a very heavy and hard scoriaceous basalt, having a bright metallic lustre when broken. The mountains overlooking the plain are of an entirely different geological character. Continuing on, I walked to the summit of one of them, where the principal rock was a granular quartz. Descending the mountains, and returning towards the camp along the base of the ridge which skirts the plain, I found at the foot of a mountain spur, and issuing from a compact rock of a dark blue color, a great number of springs having the same pungent and disagreeably metallic taste already mentioned, the water of which was collected into a very remarkable basin, whose singularity, perhaps, made it appear to me very beautiful. It is large—perhaps fifty yards in circumference; and in it the water is contained at an elevation of several feet above the surrounding ground, by a wall of calcareous *tufa*, composed principally of the remains of mosses, three or four, and sometimes ten feet high. The water within is very clear and pure, and three or four feet deep, where it could be conveniently measured near the wall; and at a considerably lower level, is another pond or basin of very clear water, and apparently of considerable depth, from the bottom of which the gas was escaping in bubbling columns at many places. This water was collected into a small stream, which, in a few hundred yards, sank under ground, reappearing among the rocks between the two great springs near the river, which it entered by a little fall.

Late in the afternoon I set out on my return to the camp, and, crossing in the way a large field of a salt that was several inches deep, found on my arrival that our emigrant friends, who had been encamped in company with us, had resumed their journey, and the road had again assumed its solitary character. The temperature of the largest of the *Beer* springs at our encampment was 65° at sunset, that of the air being 62.5°. Our barometric observation gave 5,840 feet for the elevation above the gulf, being about 500 feet lower than the Boiling springs, which are of a similar nature, at the foot of Pike's peak. The astronomical observations gave for our latitude 42° 39' 57", and 111° 46' 03" for the longitude. The night was very still and cloudless, and I sat up for an observation of the first satellite of Jupiter, the emersion of which took place about midnight; but fell asleep at the telescope, awaking just a few minutes after the appearance of the star.

The morning of the 26th was calm, and the sky without clouds, but smoky; and the temperature at sunrise 28.5°. At the same time, the temperature of the large *Beer* spring, where we were encamped, was 56°

that of the Steamboat spring 87°; and that of the steam hole, near it, 81.5°. In the course of the morning, the last wagons of the emigration passed by, and we were again left in our place, in the rear.

Remaining in camp until nearly 11 o'clock, we travelled a short distance down the river, and halted to noon on the bank, at a point where the road quits the valley of Bear river, and, crossing a ridge which divides the Great Basin from the Pacific waters, reaches Fort Hall, by way of the Portneuf river, in a distance of probably fifty miles, or two and a half days' journey for wagons. An examination of the great lake which is the outlet of this river, and the principal feature of geographical interest in the basin, was one of the main objects contemplated in the general plan of our survey, and I accordingly determined at this place to leave the road, and, after having completed a reconnaissance of the lake, regain it subsequently at Fort Hall. But our little stock of provisions had again become extremely low; we had only dried meat sufficient for one meal, and our supply of flour and other comforts was entirely exhausted. I therefore immediately dispatched one of the party, Henry Lee, with a note to Carson, at Fort Hall, directing him to load a pack horse with whatever could be obtained there in the way of provisions, and endeavor to overtake me on the river. In the mean time, we had picked up along the road two tolerably well-grown calves, which would have become food for wolves, and which had probably been left by some of the earlier emigrants, none of those we had met having made any claim to them; and on these I mainly relied for support during our circuit to the lake.

In sweeping around the point of the mountain which runs down into the bend, the river here passes between perpendicular walls of basalt, which always fix the attention, from the regular form in which it occurs, and its perfect distinctness from the surrounding rocks among which it has been placed. The mountain, which is rugged and steep, and, by our measurement, 1,400 feet above the river directly opposite the place of our halt, is called the *Sheep rock*—probably because a flock of the common mountain sheep (*ovis montana*) had been seen on the craggy point.

As we were about resuming our march in the afternoon, I was attracted by the singular appearance of an isolated hill with a concave summit, in the plain, about two miles from the river, and turned off towards it, while the camp proceeded on its way to the southward in search of the lake. I found the thin and stony soil of the plain entirely underlaid by the basalt which forms

at spring 87°; and that near it, 81.5°. In the morning, the last wagons of the train, led by, and we were in the rear.

Until nearly 11 o'clock, we descended down the river on the bank, at a distance of about 10 miles from the valley of the Pacific, crossing a ridge which divides the Pacific wall, by way of the Portage of probably fifty half days' journey for the purpose of the great lake of this river, and the geographical interest in the main objects of the survey, terminated at this place, and, after having commenced the lake, regain Fort Hall. But our little party had again become exhausted, and only dried meat sufficed, and our supply of flour was entirely exhausted. I immediately dispatched one of the men, with a note to Carver, directing him to load whatever could be obtained for provisions, and endeavor to reach the river. In the mean time, I went up along the road two miles, which would be a great help for wolves, and which I had by some of the earliest of those we had met have to do with them; and on these points during our circuit.

At the point of the mountain into the bend, the distance between perpendicular cliffs always fix the attenuated form in which it occurs, distinctness from the mountain which it has been measured, which is rugged, and our measurement, 1,400 feet directly opposite the point, called the *Sheep rock*, a flock of the common *sheep* (*montana*) had been seen at this point.

Resuming our march in the morning, we were attracted by the singularly isolated hill with a flat top, on the plain, about two miles, and turned off towards the west, proceeded on its way to the mouth of the lake. I found the spongy soil of the plain, and the basalt which forms

the river walls; and when I reached the neighborhood of the hill, the surface of the plain was rent into frequent fissures and chasms of the same scoriated volcanic rock, from forty to sixty feet deep, but which there was not sufficient light to penetrate entirely, and which I had not time to descend. Arrived at the summit of the hill, I found that it terminated in a very perfect crater, of an oval, or nearly circular form, 360 paces in circumference, and 60 feet at the greatest depth. The walls, which were perfectly vertical, and disposed like masonry in a very regular manner, were composed of a brown-colored scoriaceous lava, evidently the production of a modern volcano, and having all the appearance of the lighter scoriaceous lavas of Mount *Ætna*, *Vesuvius*, and other volcanoes. The faces of the walls were reddened and glazed by the fire, in which they had been melted, and which had left them contorted and twisted by its violent action.

Our route during the afternoon was a little rough, being (in the direction we had taken) over a volcanic plain, where our progress was sometimes obstructed by fissures, and black beds composed of fragments of the rock. On both sides, the mountains appeared very broken, but tolerably well timbered.

August 26.—Crossing a point of ridge which makes in to the river, we fell upon it again before sunset, and encamped on the right bank, opposite to the encampment of three lodges of Snake Indians. They visited us during the evening, and we obtained from them a small quantity of roots of different kinds, in exchange for goods. Among them was a sweet root of very pleasant flavor, having somewhat the taste of preserved quince. My endeavors to become acquainted with the plants which furnish to the Indians a portion of their support were only gradually successful, and after long and persevering attention; and even after obtaining, I did not succeed in preserving them until they could be satisfactorily determined. In this portion of the journey, I found this particular root cut up into such small pieces, that it was only to be identified by its taste, when the bulb was met with in perfect form among the Indians lower down on the Columbia, among whom it is the highly celebrated *kamás*. It was long afterwards, on our return through Upper California, that I found the plant itself in bloom, which I supposed to furnish the *kamás* root, (*camassia esculenta*.) The root diet had a rather mournful effect at the commencement, and one of the calves was killed this evening for food. The animals fared well on rushes.

August 27.—The morning was cloudy, with appearance of rain, and the thermome-

ter at sunrise at 29°. Making an unusually early start, we crossed the river at a good ford; and, following for about three hours a trail which led along the bottom, we entered a labyrinth of hills below the main ridge, and halted to noon in the ravine of a pretty little stream, timbered with cottonwood of a large size, ash-leaved maple, with cherry and other shrubby trees. The hazy weather, which had prevented any very extended views since entering the Green river valley, began now to disappear. There was a slight rain in the earlier part of the day, and at noon, when the thermometer had risen to 70.5°, we had a bright sun, with blue sky and scattered *cumuli*. According to the barometer, our halt here among the hills was at an elevation of 5,320 feet. Crossing a dividing ridge in the afternoon, we followed down another little Bear river tributary, to the point where it emerged on an open green flat among the hills, timbered with groves, and bordered with cane thickets, but without water. A pretty little rivulet, coming out of the hill side, and overhung by tall flowering plants of a species I had not hitherto seen, furnished us with a good camping place. The evening was cloudy, the temperature at sunset 60°, and the elevation 5,140 feet. Among the plants occurring along the line of road during the day, *epinettes des prairies* (*grindelia squarrosa*) was in considerable abundance, and is among the very few plants remaining in bloom—the whole country having now an autumnal appearance, in the crisped and yellow plants, and dried-up grasses. Many cranes were seen during the day, with a few antelope, very shy and wild.

August 28.—During the night we had a thunder storm, with moderate rain, which has made the air this morning very clear, the thermometer being at 55°. Leaving our encampment at the *Cane spring*, and quitting the trail on which we had been travelling, and which would probably have afforded us a good road to the lake, we crossed some very deep ravines, and, in about an hour's travelling, again reached the river. We were now in a valley five or six miles wide, between mountain ranges, which, about thirty miles below, appeared to close up and terminate the valley, leaving for the river only a very narrow pass, or cañon, behind which we imagined that we should find the broad waters of the lake. We made the usual halt at the mouth of a small clear stream, having a slightly mineral taste, (perhaps of salt,) 4,760 feet above the gulf. In the afternoon we climbed a very steep sandy hill; and, after a slow and winding day's march of 27 miles, encamped at a slough on the river.

There were great quantities of geese and ducks, of which only a few were shot; the Indians having probably made them very wild. The men employed themselves in fishing, but caught nothing. A skunk, (*mephitis Americana*), which was killed in the afternoon, made a supper for one of the men. The river is bordered occasionally with fields of cane, which we regarded as an indication of our approach to a lake country. We had frequent showers of rain during the night, with thunder.

August 29.—The thermometer at sunrise was 64°, with air from the NW., and dark rainy clouds moving on the horizon; rain squalls and bright sunshine by intervals. I rode ahead with Basil to explore the country, and, continuing about three miles along the river, turned directly off on a trail running towards three marked gaps in the bordering range, where the mountains appeared cut through to their bases, towards which the river plain rose gradually. Putting our horses into a gallop on some fresh tracks which showed very plainly in the wet path, we came suddenly upon a small party of Shoshoneo Indians, who had fallen into the trail from the north. We could only communicate by signs; but they made us understand that the road through the chain was a very excellent one, leading into a broad valley which ran to the southward. We halted to noon at what may be called the gate of the pass; on either side of which were huge mountains of rock, between which stole a little pure water stream, with a margin just sufficiently large for our passage. From the river, the plain had gradually risen to an altitude of 5,500 feet, and, by meridian observation, the latitude of the entrance was 42°.

In the interval of our usual halt, several of us wandered along up the stream to examine the pass more at leisure. Within the gate, the rocks receded a little back, leaving a very narrow, but most beautiful valley, through which the little stream wound its way, hidden by different kinds of trees and shrubs—aspens, maple, willow, cherry, and elder; a fine verdure of smooth short grass spread over the remaining space to the bare sides of the rocky walls. These were of a blue limestone, which constitutes the mountain here; and opening directly on the grassy bottom were several curious caves, which appeared to be inhabited by root diggers. On one side was gathered a heap of leaves for a bed, and they were dry, open, and pleasant. On the roofs of the caves I remarked bituminous exudations from the rock.

The trail was an excellent one for pack horses; but, as it sometimes crossed a

shelving point, to avoid the shrubbery we were obliged in several places to open a road for the carriage through the wood. A squaw on horseback, accompanied by five or six dogs, entered the pass in the afternoon; but was too much terrified at finding herself in such unexpected company to make any pause for conversation, and hurried off at a good pace—being, of course, no further disturbed than by an accelerating shout. She was well and showily dressed and was probably going to a village encamped somewhere near, and evidently did not belong to the tribe of *root diggers*. We had now entered a country inhabited by these people; and as in the course of our voyage we shall frequently meet with them in various stages of existence, it will be well to inform you that, scattered over the great region west of the Rocky mountains, and south of the Great Snake river, are numerous Indians whose subsistence is almost solely derived from roots and seeds, and such small animals as chance and great good fortune sometimes bring within their reach. They are miserably poor, armed only with bows and arrows, or clubs; and, as the country they inhabit is almost destitute of game, they have no means of obtaining better arms. In the northern part of the region just mentioned, they live generally in solitary families; and farther to the south, they are gathered together in villages. Those who live together in villages, strengthened by association, are in exclusive possession of the more genial and richer parts of the country; while the others are driven to the rudor mountains, and to the more inhospitable parts of the country. But by simply observing, in accompanying us along our road, you will become better acquainted with these people than we could make you in any other than a very long description, and you will find them worthy of your interest.

Roots, seeds, and grass, every vegetable that affords any nourishment, and every living animal thing, insect or worm, they eat. Nearly approaching to the lower animal creation, their sole employment is to obtain food; and they are constantly occupied in a struggle to support existence.

The most remarkable feature of the pass is the *Standing rock*, which has fallen from the cliffs above, and standing perpendicularly near the middle of the valley, presents itself like a watch tower in the pass. It will give you a tolerably correct idea of the character of the scenery in this country, where generally the mountains rise abruptly up from comparatively unbroken plains and level valleys; but it will entirely fail in representing the picturesque beauty of this delightful place, where a green valley, full

void the shrubbery we
 several places to open a
 e through the wood. A
 k, accompanied by five
 the pass in the after-
 much terrified at finding
 unexpected company to
 conversation, and hur-
 pace—being, of course,
 than by an accelerating
 all and showily dressed
 ing to a village encamp-
 , and evidently did no
 of root diggers. We
 a country inhabited by
 us in the course of our
 quently meet with their
 of existence, it will be
 that, scattered over the
 f the Rocky mountains,
 Great Snake river, are
 whose subsistence is al-
 from roots and seeds,
 als as chance and great
 times bring within their
 miserably poor, armed
 arrows, or clubs; and,
 inhabit is almost desti-
 have no means of ob-
 n. In the northern part
 mentioned, they live ge-
 nually in families; and
 farther to the lower are
 gathered together in
 who live together in vil-
 l by association, are in
 on of the more genial
 the country; while the
 to the ruder mountains,
 inhospitable parts of the
 simply observing, in ac-
 ing our road, you will be
 inted with these people
 ke you in any other than
 tion, and you will find
 ur interest.

l grass, every vegetable
 nourishment, and every
 g, insect or worm, they
 aching to the lower and
 sole employment is to
 they are constantly oc-
 e to support existence.
 kable feature of the pass
 ck, which has fallen from
 standing perpendicularly
 the valley, presents it-
 tower in the pass. It
 erably correct idea of the
 scenery in this country,
 e mountains rise abruptly
 vely unbroken plains and
 it will entirely fail in
 icturesque beauty of this
 here a green valley, full

of foliage, and a hundred yards wide, con-
 trasts with naked crags that spire up into a
 blue line of pinnacles 3,000 feet above,
 sometimes crested with cedar and pine, and
 sometimes ragged and bare.

The detention that we met with in open-
 ing the road, and perhaps a willingness to
 linger on the way, made the afternoon's
 travel short; and about two miles from the
 entrance we passed through another gate,
 and encamped on the stream at the junction
 of a little fork from the southward, around
 which the mountains stooped more gently
 down, forming a small open cove.

As it was still early in the afternoon,
 Basil and myself in one direction, and Mr.
 Preuss in another, set out to explore the
 country, and ascended different neighboring
 peaks, in the hope of seeing some indica-
 tions of the lake; but though our elevation
 afforded magnificent views, the eye rang-
 ing over a long extent of Bear river, with
 the broad and fertile Cache valley in the
 direction of our search, was only to be
 seen a bed of apparently impracticable
 mountains. Among these, the trail we had
 been following turned sharply to the north-
 ward, and it began to be doubtful if it would
 not lead us away from the object of our
 destination; but I nevertheless determined
 to keep it, in the belief that it would even-
 tually bring us right. A squall of rain drove
 us out of the mountain, and it was late
 when we reached the camp. The evening
 closed in with frequent showers of rain,
 with some lightning and thunder.

August 30.—We had constant thunder
 storms during the night, but in the morn-
 ing the clouds were sinking to the horizon,
 and the air was clear and cold, with the
 thermometer at sunrise at 30°. Elevation
 by barometer 5,580 feet. We were in mo-
 tion early, continuing up the little stream
 without encountering any ascent where a
 horse would not easily gallop, and, crossing
 a slight dividing ground at the summit, de-
 scended upon a small stream, along which
 we continued on the same excellent road.
 In riding through the pass, numerous cranes
 were seen; and prairie hens, or grouse,
 (*bonasia umbellus*), which lately had been
 rare, were very abundant.

This little affluent brought us to a larger
 stream, down which we travelled through a
 more open bottom, on a level road, where
 heavily-laden wagons could pass without
 obstacle. The hills on the right grew
 lower, and, on entering a more open coun-
 try, we discovered a Shoshonee village;
 and being desirous to obtain information,
 and purchase from them some roots and
 berries, we halted on the river, which was
 lightly wooded with cherry, willow, maple,
 service berry, and aspen. A meridian ob-

serva- tion of the sun, which I obtained here
 gave 13° 14' 23" for our latitude, and the
 barometer indicated a height of 5,170 feet.
 A number of Indians came immediately
 over to visit us, and several men were sent
 to the village with goods, tobacco, knives,
 cloth, vermilion, and the usual trinkets, to
 exchange for provisions. But they had no
 game of any kind; and it was difficult to
 obtain any roots from them, as they were
 miserably poor, and had but little to spare
 from their winter stock of provisions. Sev-
 eral of the Indians drew aside their blankets,
 showing me their lean and bony figures;
 and I would not any longer tempt them with
 a display of our merchandise to part with
 their wretched subsistence, when they gave
 as a reason that it would expose them to
 temporary starvation. A great portion of
 the region inhabited by this nation formerly
 abounded in game; the buffalo ranging about
 in herds, as we had found them on the east-
 ern waters, and the plains dotted with scat-
 tered bands of antelope; but so rapidly
 have they disappeared within a few years,
 that now, as we journeyed along, an occa-
 sional buffalo skull and a few wild antelope
 were all that remained of the abundance
 which had covered the country with animal
 life.

The extraordinary rapidity with which
 the buffalo is disappearing from our territo-
 ries will not appear surprising when we re-
 member the great scale on which their de-
 struction is yearly carried on. With incon-
 siderable exceptions, the business of the
 American trading posts is carried on in their
 skins; every year the Indian villages make
 new lodges, for which the skin of the buffa-
 lo furnishes the material; and in that por-
 tion of the country where they are still
 found, the Indians derive their entire sup-
 port from them, and slaughter them with
 a thoughtless and abominable extravagance.
 Like the Indians themselves, they have
 been a characteristic of the Great West;
 and as, like them, they are visibly diminish-
 ing, it will be interesting to throw a glance
 backward through the last twenty years,
 and give some account of their former dis-
 tribution through the country, and the limit
 of their western range.

The information is derived principally
 from Mr. Fitzpatrick, supported by my own
 personal knowledge and acquaintance with
 the country. Our knowledge does not go
 farther back than the spring of 1824, at
 which time the buffalo were spread in im-
 mense numbers over the Green river and
 Bear river valleys, and through all the
 country lying between the Colorado, or
 Green river of the gulf of California, and
 Lewis's fork of the Columbia river; the
 meridian of Fort Hall then forming the

western limit of their range. The buffalo then remained for many years in that country, and frequently moved down the valley of the Columbia, on both sides of the river as far as the *Fishing falls*. Below this point they never descended in any numbers. About the year 1834 or 1835 they began to diminish very rapidly, and continued to decrease until 1838 or 1840, when, with the country we have just described, they entirely abandoned all the waters of the Pacific north of Lewis's fork of the Columbia. At that time, the Flathead Indians were in the habit of finding their buffalo on the heads of Salmon river, and other streams of the Columbia; but now they never meet with them farther west than the three forks of the Missouri or the plains of the Yellowstone river.

In the course of our journey it will be remarked that the buffalo have not so entirely abandoned the waters of the Pacific, in the Rocky-mountain region south of the Sweet Water, as in the country north of the Great Pass. This partial distribution can only be accounted for in the great pastoral beauty of that country, which bears marks of having long been one of their favorite haunts, and by the fact that the white hunters have frequented the northern than the southern region—it being north of the South Pass the hunters, trappers, and traders, have their rendezvous for many years past; from that section also the greater portion of the beaver and rich furs were taken, although always the most dangerous as well as the most profitable hunting ground.

In that region lying between the Green or Colorado river and the head waters of the Rio del Norte, over the *Yampah*, *Koo-yah*, *White*, and *Grand* rivers—all of which are the waters of the Colorado—the buffalo never extended so far to the westward as they did on the waters of the Columbia; and only in one or two instances have they been known to descend as far west as the mouth of White river. In travelling through the country west of the Rocky mountains, observation readily led me to the impression that the buffalo had, for the first time, crossed that range to the waters of the Pacific only a few years prior to the period we are considering; and in this opinion I am sustained by Mr. Fitzpatrick, and the older trappers in that country. In the region west of the Rocky mountains, we never meet with any of the ancient vestiges which, throughout all the country lying upon their eastern waters, are found in the *great highways*, continuous for hundreds of miles, always several inches and sometimes several feet in depth, which the buffalo have made in crossing from one river to another, or in traversing the mountain ranges. The Snake In-

dians, more particularly those low down upon Lewis's fork, have always been very grateful to the American trappers, for the great kindness (as they frequently expressed it) which they did to them, in driving the buffalo so low down the Columbia river.

The extraordinary abundance of the buffalo on the east side of the Rocky mountains, and their extraordinary diminution, will be made clearly evident from the following statement: At any time between the years 1834 and 1838, a traveller might start from any given point south or north in the Rocky mountain range, journeying by the most direct route to the Missouri river; and, during the whole distance, his road would be always among large bands of buffalo, which would never be out of his view until he arrived almost within sight of the abodes of civilization.

At this time, the buffalo occupy but a very limited space, principally along the eastern base of the Rocky mountains, sometimes extending at their southern extremity to a considerable distance into the plains between the Platte and Arkansas rivers, and along the eastern frontier of New Mexico as far south as Texas.

The following statement, which I owe to the kindness of Mr. Sanford, a partner in the American Fur Company, will further illustrate this subject, by extensive knowledge acquired during several years of travel through the region inhabited by the buffalo:

"The total amount of robes annually traded by ourselves and others will not be found to differ much from the following statement:

	Robes.
American Fur Company, . . .	70,000
Hudson's Bay Company, . . .	10,000
All other companies, probably	10,000

Making a total of 90,000

as an average annual return for the last eight or ten years.

"In the northwest, the Hudson's Bay Company purchase from the Indians but a very small number—their only market being Canada, to which the cost of transportation nearly equals the produce of the furs; and it is only within a very recent period that they have received buffalo robes in trade; and out of the great number of buffalo annually killed throughout the extensive regions inhabited by the Camanches and other kindred tribes, no robes whatever are furnished for trade. During only four months of the year, (from November until March,) the skins are good for dressing; those obtained in the remaining eight months being valueless to traders; and the hides of bulls are never taken off or dressed as robes at any season. Probably not more than one-

ularly those low down up- have always been very American trappers, for the they frequently expressed to them, in driving the on the Columbia river.

ary abundance of the buf- side of the Rocky moun- extraordinary diminution, arly evident from the fol- : At any time between the 1836, a traveller might start point south or north in the range, journeying by the e to the Missouri river; whole distance, his road among large bands of buf- d never be out of his view almost within sight of the tion.

the buffalo occupy but a ce, principally along the he Rocky mountains, some- at their southern extremity e distance into the plains tate and Arkansas rivers, tern frontier of New Mex- as Texas.

statement, which I owe to Mr. Sanford, a partner in ur Company, will further subject, by extensive know- uring several years of travel on inhabited by the buffalo: amount of robes annually lves and others will not be much from the following

	Robes.
ur Company, . . .	70,000
y Company, . . .	10,000
panies, probably	10,000

al of 90,000

annual return for the last

thwest, the Hudson's Bay ase from the Indians but a e— their only market being h the coat of transportation e produce of the furs; and

a very recent period that ved buffalo robes in trade; great number of buffalo an- oughout the extensive re- by the Camanches and other no robes whatever are fur- . During only four months om November until March,) ood for dressing; those ob- remaining eight months being ders; and the hides of bulls off or dressed as robes at probably not more than one-

third of the skins are taken from the animals killed, even when they are in good season, the labor of preparing and dressing the robes being very great; and it is seldom that a lodge trades more than twenty skins in a year. It is during the summer months, and in the early part of autumn, that the greatest number of buffalo are killed, and yet at this time a skin is never taken for the purpose of trade."

From these data, which are certainly limited, and decidedly within bounds, the reader is left to draw his own inference of the immense number annually killed.

In 1842, I found the Sioux Indians of the Upper Platte *démontés*, as their French traders expressed it, with the failure of the buffalo; and in the following year, large villages from the Upper Missouri came over to the mountains at the heads of the Platte, in search of them. The rapidly progressive failure of their principal and almost their only means of subsistence has created great alarm among them; and at this time there are only two modes presented to them, by which they see a good prospect for escaping starvation: one of these is to rob the settlements along the frontier of the States; and the other is to form a league between the various tribes of the Sioux nation, the Cheyennes, and Arapahoes, and make war against the Crow nation, in order to take from them their country, which is now the best buffalo country in the west. This plan they now have in consideration; and it would probably be a war of extermination, as the Crows have long been advised of this state of affairs, and say that they are perfectly prepared. These are the best warriors in the Rocky mountains, and are now allied with the Snake Indians; and it is probable that their combination would extend itself to the Utahs, who have long been engaged in war against the Sioux. It is in this section of country that my observation formerly led me to recommend the establishment of a military post.

The farther course of our narrative will give fuller and more detailed information of the present disposition of the buffalo in the country we visited.

Among the roots we obtained here, I could distinguish only five or six different kinds; and the supply of the Indians whom we met consisted principally of yampah, (*anethum, graveolens*), tobacco root, (*vale- riana*), and a large root of a species of thistle, (*cirsium Virginianum*), which now is occasionally abundant, and is a very agreeably flavored vegetable.

We had been detained so long at the village, that in the afternoon we made only five miles, and encamped on the same river after a day's journey of 19 miles. The In-

dians informed us that we should reach the big salt water after having slept twice and travelling in a south direction. The stream had here entered a nearly level plain or valley, of good soil, eight or ten miles broad, to which no termination was to be seen, and lying between ranges of mountains which, on the right, were grassy and smooth, unbroken by rock, and lower than on the left, where they were rocky and bald, increasing in height to the southward. On the creek were fringes of young willows, older trees being rarely found on the plains, where the Indians burn the surface to produce better grass. Several magpies (*pica Hudsonica*) were seen on the creek this afternoon; and a rattlesnake was killed here, the first which had been seen since leaving the eastern plains. Our camp to-night had such a hungry appearance, that I suffered the little cow to be killed, and divided the roots and berries among the people. A number of Indians from the village encamped near.

The weather the next morning was clear, the thermometer at sunrise at 44°.5, and, continuing down the valley, in about five miles we followed the little creek of our encampment to its junction with a larger stream, called *Roseaux*, or Reed river. Immediately opposite, on the right, the range was gathered into its highest peak, sloping gradually low, and running off to a point apparently some forty or fifty miles below. Between this (now become the valley stream) and the foot of the mountains, we journeyed along a handsome sloping level, which frequent springs from the hills made occasionally miry, and halted to noon at a swampy spring, where there were good grass and abundant rushes. Here the river was forty feet wide, with a considerable current; and the valley a mile and a half in breadth; the soil being generally good, of a dark color, and apparently well adapted to cultivation. The day had become bright and pleasant, with the thermometer at 71°. By observation, our latitude was 41° 59' 31", and the elevation above the sea 4,670 feet. On our left, this afternoon, the range at long intervals formed itself into peaks, appearing to terminate, about forty miles below, in a rocky cape; beyond which, several others were faintly visible; and we were disappointed when at every little rise we did not see the lake. Towards evening, our way was somewhat obstructed by fields of *artemisia*, which began to make their appearance here, and we encamped on the *Roseaux*, the water of which had acquired a decidedly salt taste, nearly opposite to a cañon gap in the mountains, through which the Bear river enters this valley. As we encamped, the night set in dark and cold, with heavy rain;

and the artemisia, which was here our only wood, was so wet that it would not burn. A poor, nearly starved dog, with a wound in his side from a ball, came to the camp, and remained with us until the winter, when he met a very unexpected fate.

September 1.—The morning was squally and cold; the sky scattered over with clouds; and the night had been so uncomfortable, that we were not on the road until 8 o'clock. Travelling between Roseaux and Bear rivers, we continued to descend the valley, which gradually expanded, as we advanced, into a level plain of good soil, about 25 miles in breadth, between mountains 3,000 and 4,000 feet high, rising suddenly to the clouds, which all day rested upon the peaks. These gleamed out in the occasional sunlight, mantled with the snow which had fallen upon them, while it rained on us in the valley below, of which the elevation here was about 4,500 feet above the sea. The country before us plainly indicated that we were approaching the lake, though, as the ground where we were travelling afforded no elevated point, nothing of it as yet could be seen; and at a great distance ahead were several isolated mountains, resembling islands, which they were afterwards found to be. On this upper plain the grass was everywhere dead; and among the shrubs with which it was almost exclusively occupied, (artemisia being the most abundant,) frequently occurred handsome clusters of several species of *dieteria* in bloom. *Purshia tridentata* was among the frequent shrubs. Descending to the bottoms of Bear river, we found good grass for the animals, and encamped about 300 yards above the mouth of Roseaux, which here makes its junction, without communicating any of its salty taste to the main stream, of which the water remains perfectly pure. On the river are only willow thickets, (*salix longifolia*), and in the bottoms the abundant plants are canes, solidago, and helianthi, and along the banks of Roseaux are fields of *malva rotundifolia*. At sunset the thermometer was at 54°.5, and the evening clear and calm; but I deferred making any use of it until 1 o'clock in the morning, when I endeavored to obtain an emersion of the first satellite; but it was lost in a bank of clouds, which also rendered our usual observations indifferent.

Among the useful things which formed a portion of our equipage, was an India-rubber boat, 18 feet long, made somewhat in the form of a bark canoe of the northern lakes. The sides were formed by two airtight cylinders, eighteen inches in diameter, connected with others forming the bow and stern. To lessen the danger from accidents to the boat, these were divided into four

different compartments, and the interior space was sufficiently large to contain five or six persons and a considerable weight of baggage. The Roseaux being too deep to be forded, our boat was filled with air, and in about one hour all the equipage of the camp, carriage and gun included, ferried across. Thinking that perhaps in the course of the day we might reach the outlet at the lake, I got into the boat with Basil Lajennesse, and paddled down Bear river, intending at night to rejoin the party, which in the mean time proceeded on its way. The river was from sixty to one hundred yards broad, and the water so deep, that even at the comparatively shallow points we could not reach the bottom with 15 feet. On either side were alternately low bottoms and willow points, with an occasional high prairie; and for five or six hours we followed slowly the winding course of the river, which crept along with a sluggish current among frequent *détours* several miles around, sometimes running for a considerable distance directly up the valley. As we were stealing quietly down the stream, trying in vain to get a shot at a strange large bird that was numerous among the willows, but very shy, we came unexpectedly upon several families of *Root Diggers*, who were encamped among the rushes on the shore, and appeared very busy about several weirs or nets which had been rudely made of canes and rushes for the purpose of catching fish. They were very much startled at our appearance, but we soon established an acquaintance; and finding that they had some roots, I promised to send some men with goods to trade with them. They had the usual very large heads, remarkable among the Digger tribe, with matted hair, and were almost entirely naked; looking very poor and miserable, as if their lives had been spent in the rushes where they were, beyond which they seemed to have very little knowledge of any thing. From the few words we could comprehend, their language was that of the Snake Indians.

Our boat moved so heavily, that we had made very little progress; and, finding that it would be impossible to overtake the camp, as soon as we were sufficiently far below the Indians, we put to the shore near a high prairie bank, hauled up the boat, and *cached* our effects in the willows. Ascending the bank, we found that our desultory labor had brought us only a few miles in a direct line; and, going out into the prairie, after a search we found the trail of the camp, which was now nowhere in sight, but had followed the general course of the river in a large circular sweep which it makes at this place. The sun was about three hours high when we

ments, and the interior
 tly large to contain five
 a considerable weight of
 beaux being too deep to
 was filled with air, and
 all the equipage of the
 nd gun included, ferried
 that perhaps in the course
 ht reach the outlet at the
 e boat with Basil Lajeu
 down Bear river, intend-
 oin the party, which is
 eeded on its way. The
 ty to one hundred yards
 er so deep, that even o
 shallow points we could
 ottom with 15 feet. On
 alternately low bottoms
 with an occasional high
 five or six hours we fol-
 e winding course of the
 pt along with a sluggish
 frequent *détours* several
 etimes running for a con-
 e directly up the valley.
 ealing quietly down the
 ain to get a shot at a
 that was numerous among
 very shy, we came unex-
 veral families of *Root Dig-*
 encamped among the rushes
 appeared very busy about
 nets which had been rude-
 and rushes for the purpose
 They were very much
 appearance, but we soon
 acquaintance; and finding that
 roots, I promised to send
 goods to trade with them
 equal very large heads, re-
 the Digger tribe, with mat-
 ere almost entirely naked;
 r and miserable, as if their
 pent in the rushes where
 nd which they seemed to
 knowledge of any thing.
 ords we could comprehend,
 was that of the Snake In-
 ed so heavily, that we had
 progress; and, finding that
 sible to overtake the camp,
 were sufficiently far below
 out to the shore near a high
 led up the boat, and *cached*
 e willows. Ascending the
 hat our desultory labor had
 a few miles in a direct line;
 to the prairie, after a search
 il of the camp, which was
 sight, but had followed the
 f the river in a large circu-
 it makes at this place. The
 hree hours high wher we

found the trail; and as our people had passed early in the day, we had the prospect of a vigorous walk before us. Immediately where we landed, the high arable plain on which we had been travelling for several days past terminated in extensive low flats, very generally occupied by salt marshes, or beds of shallow lakes, whence the water had in most places evaporated, leaving their hard surface encrusted with a shining white residuum, and absolutely covered with very small *univalve* shells. As we advanced, the whole country around us assumed this appearance; and there was no other vegetation than the shrubby chenopodiaceous and other apparently saline plants, which were confined to the rising grounds. Here and there on the river bank, which was raised like a levee above the flats through which it ran, was a narrow border of grass and short black-burnt willows; the stream being very deep and sluggish, and sometimes 600 to 800 feet wide. After a rapid walk of about 15 miles, we caught sight of the camp fires among clumps of willows just as the sun had sank behind the mountains on the west side of the valley, filling the clear sky with a golden yellow. These last rays, to us so precious, could not have revealed a more welcome sight. To the traveller and the hunter, a camp fire in the lonely wilderness is always cheering; and to ourselves, in our present situation, after a hard march in a region of novelty, approaching the *debouches* of a river, in a lake of almost fabulous reputation, it was doubly so. A plentiful supper of aquatic birds, and the interest of the scene, soon dissipated fatigue; and I obtained during the night emersions of the second, third, and fourth satellites of Jupiter, with observations for time and latitude.

September 3.—The morning was clear, with a light air from the north, and the thermometer at sunrise at 45°. At 3 in the morning, Basil was sent back with several men and horses for the boat, which, in a direct course across the flats, was not 10 miles distant; and in the mean time there was a pretty spot of grass here for the animals. The ground was so low that we could not get high enough to see across the river, on account of the willows; but we were evidently in the vicinity of the lake, and the water fowl made this morning a noise like thunder. A pelican (*pelecanus onocrotalus*) was killed as he passed by, and many geese and ducks flew over the camp. On the dry salt marsh here, is scarce any other plant than *salicornia herbacea*.

In the afternoon the men returned with the boat, bringing with them a small quantity of roots, and some meat, which the Indians had told them was bear meat.

Descending the river for about three miles in the afternoon, we found a bar to any further travelling in that direction—the stream being spread out in several branches, and covering the low grounds with water, where the miry nature of the bottom did not permit any further advance. We were evidently on the border of the lake, although the rushes and canes which covered the marshes prevented any view; and we accordingly encamped at the little *delta* which forms the mouth of Bear river; a long arm of the lake stretching up to the north between us and the opposite mountains. The river was bordered with a fringe of willows and canes, among which were interspersed a few plants; and scattered about on the marsh was a species of *uniola*, closely allied to *U. spicata* of our sea coast. The whole morass was animated with multitudes of water fowl, which appeared to be very wild—rising for the space of a mile round about at the sound of a gun, with a noise like distant thunder. Several of the people waded out into the marshes, and we had to-night a delicious supper of ducks, geese, and plover.

Although the moon was bright, the night was otherwise favorable; and I obtained this evening an emersion of the first satellite, with the usual observations. A mean result, depending on various observations made during our stay in the neighborhood, places the mouth of the river in longitude 112° 19' 30" west from Greenwich; latitude 41° 30' 29"; and, according to the barometer, in elevation 4,200 feet above the gulf of Mexico. The night was clear, with considerable dew, which I had remarked every night since the first of September. The next morning, while we were preparing to start, Carson rode into the camp with flour and a few other articles of light provision, sufficient for two or three days—a scanty but very acceptable supply. Mr. Fitzpatrick had not yet arrived, and provisions were very scarce, and difficult to be had at Fort Hall, which had been entirely exhausted by the necessities of the emigrants. He brought me also a letter from Mr. Dwight, who, in company with several emigrants, had reached that place in advance of Mr. Fitzpatrick, and was about continuing his journey to Vancouver.

Returning about five miles up the river, we were occupied until nearly sunset in crossing to the left bank—the stream, which in the last five or six miles of its course is very much narrower than above, being very deep immediately at the banks; and we had great difficulty in getting our animals over. The people with the baggage were easily crossed in the boat, and we encamped on the left bank where we crossed the

river. At sunset the thermometer was at 76°, and there was some rain during the night, with a thunder storm at a distance.

September 5.—Before us was evidently the bed of the lake, being a great salt marsh, perfectly level and bare, whitened in places by saline efflorescences, with here and there a pool of water, and having the appearance of a very level sea shore at low tide. Immediately along the river was a very narrow strip of vegetation, consisting of willows, helianthi, roses, flowering vines, and grass; bordered on the verge of the great marsh by a fringe of singular plants, which appear to be a shrubby salicornia, or a genus allied to it.

About 12 miles to the southward was one of those isolated mountains, now appearing to be a kind of peninsula, and towards this we accordingly directed our course, as it probably afforded a good view of the lake; but the deepening mud as we advanced forced us to return toward the river, and gain the higher ground at the foot of the eastern mountains. Here we halted for a few minutes at noon, on a beautiful little stream of pure and remarkably clear water, with a bed of rock *in situ*, on which was an abundant water plant with a white blossom. There was good grass in the bottoms; and, amidst a rather luxuriant growth, its banks were bordered with a large showy plant, (*eupatorium purpureum*), which I here saw for the first time. We named the stream *Clear creek*.

We continued our way along the mountain, having found here a broad plainly beaten trail, over what was apparently the shore of the lake in the spring; the ground being high and firm, and the soil excellent and covered with vegetation, among which a leguminous plant (*glycyrrhiza lepidota*) was a characteristic plant. The ridge here rises abruptly to the height of about 4,000 feet; its face being very prominently marked with a massive stratum of rose-colored granular quartz, which is evidently an altered sedimentary rock; the lines of deposition being very distinct. It is rocky and steep; divided into several mountains; and the rain in the valley appears to be always snow on their summits at this season. Near a remarkable rocky point of the mountain, at a large spring of pure water, were several hackberry trees, (*celtis*), probably a new species, the berries still green; and a short distance farther, thickets of sumach, (*rhus*.)

On the plain here I noticed blackbirds and grouse. In about seven miles from *Clear creek*, the trail brought us to a place at the foot of the mountain where there issued with considerable force ten or twelve hot springs, highly impregnated with salt.

In one of these, the thermometer stood at 136°, and in another at 132°.5; and the water, which spread in pools over the low ground, was colored red.*

At this place the trail we had been following turned to the left, apparently with the view of entering a gorge in the mountain, from which issued the principal fork of a large and comparatively well-timbered stream, called *Weber's fork*. We accordingly turned off towards the lake, and encamped on this river, which was 100 to 150 feet wide, with high banks, and very clear pure water, without the slightest indication of salt.

September 6.—Leaving the encampment early, we again directed our course for the peninsular *butte* across a low shrubby plain, crossing in the way a slough-like creek with miry banks, and wooded with thickets of thorn (*crataegus*) which were loaded with berries. This time we reached the *butte* without any difficulty, and, ascending to the summit, immediately at our feet beheld the object of our anxious search—the waters of the *Inland Sea*, stretching in still and solitary grandeur far beyond the limit of our vision. It was one of the great points of the exploration; and as we looked eagerly over the lake in the first emotions of excited pleasure, I am doubtful if the followers of Balboa felt more enthusiasm when, from the heights of the Andes, they saw for the first time the great Western ocean. It was certainly a magnificent object, and a noble *terminus* to this part of our expedition; and to travellers so long shut up among mountain ranges, a sudden view over the expanse of silent waters had in it something sublime. Several large islands raised their high rocky heads out of the waves; but whether or not they were timbered, was still left to our imagination, as the distance was too great to determine if the dark hues upon them were woodland or naked rock. During the day the clouds had been gathering black over the mountains to the westward, and, while we were looking, a storm burst down with sudden fury upon the lake, and entirely hid the islands from our view. So far as we could see, along the shores there was not a soli-

* An analysis of the red earthy matter deposited in the bed of the stream from the springs, gives the following result:

Peroxide of iron	33.50
Carbonate of magnesia	2.40
Carbonate of lime	50.43
Sulphate of lime	2.00
Chloride of sodium	3.45
Silica and alumina	3.00
Water and loss	5.22
	100.00

thermometer stood at
er at 132° 5; and the
d in pools over the low
red.

trail we had been follow-
ed, apparently with the
gorge in the mountain,
the principal fork of a
relatively well-timbered
er's fork. We accord-
wards the lake, and en-
which was 100 to 150
banks, and very clear
the slightest indication

leaving the encampment
ected our course for the
oes a low shrubby plain,
a slough-like creek with
a thicket of
wooded with thickets of
which were loaded with
e we reached the butte
ty, and, ascending to the
ly at our feet beheld the
us search—the waters of
etching in still and soli-
beyond the limit of our
of the great points of the
a we looked eagerly over
emotions of excited plea-
if the followers of Balboa
m when, from the heights
saw for the first time the
ran. It was certainly a
and a noble terminus to
pedition; and to travellers
ong mountain ranges, a
the expanse of silent
something sublime. Sever-
ed their high rocky heads
but whether or not they
still left to our imagina-
e was too great to deter-
ee upon them were wood-
k. During the day the
gathering black over the
westward, and, while we
orm burst down with sud-
ake, and entirely hid the
ew. So far as we could
eres there was not a soli-

the red earthy matter de-
the stream from the springs,
result:

33.50
2.40
50.43
2.00
3.45
3.00
5.23
100.00

tary tree, and but little appearance of grass; and on Weber's fork, a few miles below our last encampment, the timber was gathered into groves, and then disappeared entirely. As this appeared to be the nearest point to the lake where a suitable camp could be found, we directed our course to one of the groves, where we found a handsome encampment, with good grass and an abundance of rushes (*equisetum hyemale*). At sunset, the thermometer was at 55°; the evening clear and calm, with some cumuli.

September 7.—The morning was calm and clear, with a temperature at sunrise of 39° 5. The day was spent in active preparation for our intended voyage on the lake. On the edge of the stream a favorable spot was selected in a grove, and, felling the timber, we made a strong corral, or horse pen, for the animals, and a little fort for the people who were to remain. We were now probably in the country of the Utah Indians, though none reside upon the lake. The India-rubber boat was repaired with prepared cloth and gum, and filled with air, in readiness for the next day.

The provisions which Carson had brought with him being now exhausted, and our stock reduced to a small quantity of roots, I determined to retain with me only a sufficient number of men for the execution of our design; and accordingly seven were sent back to Fort Hall, under the guidance of François Lajeunesse, who, having been for many years a trapper in the country, was considered an experienced mountaineer. Though they were provided with good horses, and the road was a remarkably plain one of only four days' journey for a horseman, they became bewildered (as we afterwards learned), and, losing their way, wandered about the country in parties of one or two, reaching the fort about a week afterwards. Some straggled in of themselves, and the others were brought in by Indians who had picked them up on Snake river, about sixty miles below the fort, travelling along the emigrant road in full march for the Lower Columbia. The leader of this adventurous party was François.

Hourly barometrical observations were made during the day, and, after departure of the party for Fort Hall, we occupied ourselves in continuing our little preparations, and in becoming acquainted with the country in the vicinity. The bottoms along the river were timbered with several kinds of willow, hawthorn, and fine cotton-wood trees (*populus canadensis*) with remarkably large leaves, and sixty feet in height by measurement.

We formed now but a small family. With Mr. Preuss and myself, Carson, Bernier, and Basil Lajeunesse, had been select-

ed for the boat expedition—the first ever attempted on this interior sea; and Badeau, with Derosier, and Jacob (the colored man), were to be left in charge of the camp. We were favored with most delightful weather. To-night there was a brilliant sunset of golden orange and green, which left the western sky clear and beautifully pure; but clouds in the east made me lose an occultation. The summer frogs were singing around us, and the evening was very pleasant, with a temperature of 60°—a night of a more southern autumn. For our supper we had *yampah*, the most agreeably flavored of the roots, seasoned by a small fat duck, which had come in the way of Jacob's rifle. Around our fire to-night were many speculations on what to-morrow would bring forth, and in our busy conjectures we fancied that we should find every one of the large islands a tangled wilderness of trees and shrubbery, teeming with game of every description that the neighboring region afforded, and which the foot of a white man or Indian had never violated. Frequently, during the day, clouds had rested on the summits of their lofty mountains, and we believed that we should find clear streams and springs of fresh water; and we indulged in anticipations of the luxurious repasts with which we were to indemnify ourselves for past privations. Neither, in our discussions, were the whirlpool and other mysterious dangers forgotten, which Indian and hunter's stories attributed to this unexplored lake. The men had discovered that, instead of being strongly sewed (like that of the preceding year, which had so triumphantly rode the canions of the Upper Great Platte), our present boat was only pasted together in a very insecure manner, the maker having been allowed so little time in the construction, that he was obliged to crowd the labor of two months into several days. The insecurity of the boat was sensibly felt by us; and, mingled with the enthusiasm and excitement that we all felt at the prospect of an undertaking which had never before been accomplished, was a certain impression of danger, sufficient to give a serious character to our conversation. The momentary view which had been had of the lake the day before, its great extent and rugged islands, dimly seen amidst the dark waters in the obscurity of the sudden storm, were well calculated to heighten the idea of undefined danger with which the lake was generally associated.

September 8.—A calm, clear day, with a sunrise temperature of 41°. In view of our present enterprise, a part of the equipment of the boat had been made to consist in three air-tight bags, about three feet long, and capable each of containing five gallons. These had been filled with water the night before.

and were now placed in the boat, with our blankets and instruments, consisting of a sextant, telescope, spy-glass, thermometer, and barometer.

We left the camp at sunrise, and had a very pleasant voyage down the river, in which there was generally eight or ten feet of water, deepening as we neared the mouth in the latter part of the day. In the course of the morning we discovered that two of the cylinders leaked so much as to require one man constantly at the bellows, to keep them sufficiently full of air to support the boat. Although we had made a very early start, we loitered so much on the way—stopping every now and then, and floating silently along, to get a shot at a goose or a duck—that it was late in the day when we reached the outlet. The river here divided into several branches, filled with fluviols, and so very shallow that it was with difficulty we could get the boat along, being obliged to get out and wade. We encamped on a low point among rushes and young willows, where there was a quantity of drift wood, which served for our fires. The evening was mild and clear; we made a pleasant bed of the young willows; and geese and ducks enough had been killed for an abundant supper at night, and for breakfast the next morning. The stillness of the night was enlivened by millions of water fowl. Latitude (by observation) $41^{\circ} 11' 26''$; and longitude $112^{\circ} 11' 30''$.

September 9.—The day was clear and calm; the thermometer at sunrise at 49° . As is usual with the trappers on the eve of any enterprise, our people had made dreams, and theirs happened to be a bad one—one which always preceded evil—and consequently they looked very gloomy this morning; but we hurried through our breakfast, in order to make an early start, and have all the day before us for our adventure. The channel in a short distance became so shallow that our navigation was at an end, being merely a sheet of soft mud, with a few inches of water, and sometimes none at all, forming the low-water shore of the lake. All this place was absolutely covered with flocks of screaming plover. We took off our clothes, and, getting overboard, commenced dragging the boat—making, by this operation, a very curious trail, and a very disagreeable smell in stirring up the mud, as we sank above the knee at every step. The water here was still fresh, with only an insipid and disagreeable taste, probably derived from the bed of fetid mud. After proceeding in this way about a mile, we came to a small black ridge on the bottom, beyond which the water became suddenly salt, beginning gradually to deepen, and the bottom was sandy and firm. It was a remarkable

division, separating the fresh waters of the rivers from the briny water of the lake, which was entirely saturated with common salt. Pushing our little vessel across the narrow boundary, we sprang on board, and at length were afloat on the waters of the unknown sea.

We did not steer for the mountainous islands, but directed our course towards a lower one, which it had been decided we should first visit, the summit of which was formed like the crater at the upper end of Bear river valley. So long as we could touch the bottom with our paddles, we were very gay; but gradually, as the water deepened, we became more still in our frail bateau of gum cloth distended with air, and with pasted seams. Although the day was very calm, there was a considerable swell on the lake; and there were white patches of foam on the surface, which were slowly moving to the southward, indicating the set of a current in that direction, and recalling the recollection of the whirlpool stories. The water continued to deepen as we advanced; the lake becoming almost transparently clear, of an extremely beautiful bright-green color; and the spray, which was thrown into the boat and over our clothes, was directly converted into a crust of common salt, which covered also our hands and arms. "Captain," said Carson, who for some time had been looking suspiciously at some whitening appearances outside the nearest islands, "what are those yonder?—won't you just take a look with the glass?" We ceased paddling for a moment, and found them to be the caps of the waves that were beginning to break under the force of a strong breeze that was coming up the lake.

The form of the boat seemed to be an admirable one, and it rode on the waves like a water bird; but, at the same time, it was extremely slow in its progress. When we were a little more than half way across the reach, two of the divisions between the cylinders gave way, and it required the constant use of the bellows to keep in a sufficient quantity of air. For a long time we scarcely seemed to approach our island, but gradually we worked across the rougher sea of the open channel, into the smoother water under the lee of the island; and began to discover that what we took for a long row of pelicans, ranged on the beach, were only low cliffs whitened with salt by the spray of the waves; and about noon we reached the shore, the transparency of the water enabling us to see the bottom at a considerable depth.

It was a handsome broad beach where we landed, behind which the hill, into which the island was gathered, rose somewhat abruptly; and a point of rock at one end enclosed it in a sheltering way; and as there

the fresh waters of the
briny water of the lake,
saturated with common
little vessel across the
we sprang on board, and
pat on the waters of the

er for the mountainous
ed our course towards a
it had been decided we
the summit of which was
water at the upper end of

So long as we could
with our paddles, we were
dually, as the water deep-
more still in our frail
h distended with air, and

Although the day was
as a considerable swell on
re were white patches of
face, which were slowly
thward, indicating the set

at direction, and recalling
the whirlpool stories. The
deepen as we advanced ;
ng almost transparently
ely beautiful bright-green

apray, which was thrown
ver our clothes, was di-
into a crust of common salt,
so our hands and arms.

erson, who for some time
suspiciously at some white
e outside the nearest
re those yonder?—won't
ok with the glass?" We

or a moment, and found
pa of the waves that were
ak under the force of a
was coming up the lake.

boat seemed to be an ad-
t rode on the waves like a
at the same time, it was
its progress. When we

than half way across the
divisions between the cyl-
and it required the con-
bellows to keep in a suffi-
air. For a long time we

to approach our island, but
ed across the rougher sea
el, into the smoother water
the island; and began to

at we took for a long row
d on the beach, were only
d with salt by the spray of
about noon we reached the
ency of the water enabling

om at a considerable depth.
ome broad beach where we
hich the hill, into which
thered, rose somewhat ab-
nt of rock at one end en-
altering way; and as there

was an abundance of drift wood along the shore, it offered us a pleasant encampment. We did not suffer our fragile boat to touch the sharp rocks; but, getting overboard, discharged the baggage, and, lifting it gently out of the water, carried it to the upper part of the beach, which was composed of very small fragments of rock.

Among the successive banks of the beach, formed by the action of the waves, our attention, as we approached the island, had been attracted by one 10 to 20 feet in breadth, of a dark-brown color. Being more closely examined, this was found to be composed, to the depth of seven or eight and twelve inches, entirely of the *laræ* of insects, or, in common language, of the skins of worms, about the size of a grain of oats, which had been washed up by the waters of the lake.

Alluding to this subject some months afterwards, when travelling through a more southern portion of this region, in company with Mr. Joseph Walker, an old hunter, I was informed by him, that, wandering with a party of men in a mountain country east of the great Californian range, he surprised a party of several Indian families encamped near a small salt lake, who abandoned their lodges at his approach, leaving everything behind them. Being in a starving condition, they were delighted to find in the abandoned lodges a number of skin bags containing a quantity of what appeared to be fish, dried and pounded. On this they made a hearty supper; and were gathering around an abundant breakfast the next morning, when Mr. Walker discovered that it was with these, or a similar worm, that the bags had been filled. The stomachs of the stout trappers were not proof against their prejudices, and the repulsive food was suddenly rejected. Mr. Walker had further opportunities of seeing these worms used as an article of food; and I am inclined to think they are the same as those we saw, and appear to be a product of the salt lakes. It may be well to recall to your mind that Mr. Walker was associated with Captain Bonneville in his expedition to the Rocky mountains; and has since that time remained in the country, generally residing in some one of the Snake villages, when not engaged in one of his numerous trapping expeditions, in which he is celebrated as one of the best and bravest leaders who have ever been in the country.

The cliffs and masses of rock along the shore were whitened by an incrustation of salt where the waves dashed up against them; and the evaporating water, which had been left in holes and hollows on the surface of the rocks, was covered with a crust of salt about one-eighth of an inch in thickness. It appeared strange that, in the midst of this grand reservoir, one of our greatest wants

lately had been salt. Exposed to be more perfectly dried in the sun, this became very white and fine, having the usual flavor of very excellent common salt, without any foreign taste; but only a little was collected for present use, as there was in it a number of small black insects.

Carrying with us the barometer, and other instruments, in the afternoon we ascended to the highest point of the island—a bare rocky peak, 800 feet above the lake. Standing on the summit, we enjoyed an extended view of the lake, enclosed in a basin of rugged mountains, which sometimes left marshy flats and extensive bottoms between them and the shore, and in other places came directly down into the water with bold and precipitous bluffs. Following with our glasses the irregular shores, we searched for some indications of a communication with other bodies of water, or the entrance of other rivers; but the distance was so great that we could make out nothing with certainty. To the southward, several peninsular mountains, 3,000 or 4,000 feet high, entered the lake, appearing, so far as the distance and our position enabled us to determine, to be connected by flats and low ridges with the mountains in the rear. These are probably the islands usually indicated on maps of this region as entirely detached from the shore. The season of our operations was when the waters were at their lowest stage. At the season of high waters in the spring, it is probable that the marshes and low grounds are overflowed, and the surface of the lake considerably greater. In several places the view was of unlimited extent—here and there a rocky islet appearing above the water at a great distance; and beyond, everything was vague and undefined. As we looked over the vast expanse of water spread out beneath us, and strained our eyes along the silent shores over which hung so much doubt and uncertainty, and which were so full of interest to us, I could hardly repress the almost irresistible desire to continue our exploration; but the lengthening snow on the mountains was a plain indication of the advancing season, and our frail linen boat appeared so insecure that I was unwilling to trust our lives to the uncertainties of the lake. I therefore unwillingly resolved to terminate our survey here, and remain satisfied for the present with what we had been able to add to the unknown geography of the region. We felt pleasure also in remembering that we were the first who, in the traditionary annals of the country, had visited the islands, and broken, with the cheerful sound of human voices, the long solitude of the place. From the point where we were standing, the ground fell off on every side to the water, giving us a perfect view of the island, which is twice or three

teen miles in circumference, being simply a rocky hill, on which there is neither water nor trees of any kind; although the *Fremontia vermicularis*, which was in great abundance, might easily be mistaken for timber at a distance. The plant seemed here to delight in a congenial air, growing in extraordinary luxuriance seven to eight feet high, and was very abundant on the upper parts of the island, where it was almost the only plant. This is eminently a saline shrub; its leaves have a very salt taste; and it luxuriates in saline soils, where it is usually a characteristic. It is widely diffused over all this country. A chenopodiaceous shrub, which is a new species of *OBIONE* (*O. rigida*, Torr. & Frem.), was equally characteristic of the lower parts of the island. These two are the striking plants on the island, and belong to a class of plants which form a prominent feature in the vegetation of this country. On the lower parts of the island, also, a prickly pear of very large size was frequent. On the shore, near the water, was a woolly species of *phaca*; and a new species of umbelliferous plant (*leptocymia*) was scattered about in very considerable abundance. These constituted all the vegetation that now appeared upon the island.

I accidentally left on the summit the brass cover to the object end of my spy-glass; and as it will probably remain there undisturbed by Indians, it will furnish matter of speculation to some future traveller. In our excursions about the island, we did not meet with any kind of animal; a magpie, and another larger bird, probably attracted by the smoke of our fire, paid us a visit from the shore, and were the only living things seen during our stay. The rock constituting the cliffs along the shore where we were encamped, is a talcous rock, or steatite, with brown spar.

At sunset, the temperature was 70°. We had arrived just in time to obtain a meridian altitude of the sun, and other observations were obtained this evening, which place our camp in latitude 41° 10' 42", and longitude 112° 21' 05" from Greenwich. From a discussion of the barometrical observations made during our stay on the shores of the lake, we have adopted 4,200 feet for its elevation above the gulf of Mexico. In the first disappointment we felt from the dissipation of our dream of the fertile islands, I called this *Disappointment island*.

Out of the drift wood, we made ourselves pleasant little lodges, open to the water, and, after having kindled large fires to excite the wonder of any straggling savage on the lake shores, lay down, for the first time in a long journey, in perfect security; no one thinking about the alarm. The evening was extremely bright and pleasant; but the wind rose during the night, and the waves began to break

heavily on the shore, making our island tremble. I had not expected in our inland journey to hear the roar of an ocean surf; and the strangeness of our situation, and the excitement we felt in the associated interests of the place, made this one of the most interesting nights I remember during our long expedition.

In the morning, the surf was breaking heavily on the shore, and we were up early. The lake was dark and agitated, and we hurried through our scanty breakfast, and embarked—having first filled one of the buckets with water from the lake, of which it was intended to make salt. The sun had risen by the time we were ready to start; and it was blowing a strong gale of wind, almost directly off the shore, and raising a considerable sea, in which our boat strained very much. It roughened as we got away from the island, and it required all the efforts of the men to make any head against the wind and sea, the gale rising with the sun; and there was danger of being blown into one of the open reaches beyond the island. At the distance of half a mile from the beach, the depth of water was 16 feet, with a clay bottom; but, as the working of the boat was very severe labor, and during the operation of rounding it was necessary to cease paddling, during which the boat lost considerable way, I was unwilling to discourage the men, and reluctantly gave up my intention of ascertaining the depth, and the character of the bed. There was a general shout in the boat when we found ourselves in one fathom, and we soon after landed on a low point of mud, immediately under the *butte* of the peninsula, where we unloaded the boat, and carried the baggage about a quarter of a mile to firmer ground. We arrived just in time for meridian observation, and carried the barometer to the summit of the *butte*, which is 500 feet above the lake. Mr. Preuss set off on foot for the camp, which was about nine miles distant; Basil accompanying him, to bring back horses for the boat and baggage.

The rude-looking shelter we raised on the shore, our scattered baggage and boat lying on the beach, made quite a picture; and we called this the *fisherman's camp*. *Lynosiris graveolens*, and another new species of *OBIONE* (*O. confertifolia*—Torr. & Frem.), were growing on the low grounds, with interspersed spots of an unwholesome salt grass, on a saline clay soil, with a few other plants.

The horses arrived late in the afternoon, by which time the gale had increased to such a height that a man could scarcely stand before it; and we were obliged to pack our baggage hastily, as the rising water of the lake had already reached the point where we were halted. Looking back as we rode off, we found the place of recent encampment

shore, making our island not expected in our inland the roar of an ocean surf; of our situation, and the in the associated interests of this one of the most I remember during our long

g, the surf was breaking ere, and we were up early, and agitated, and we hurriedly breakfast, and almost filled one of the buckets the lake, of which it was salt. The sun had risen ere ready to start; and it strong gale of wind, almost ere, and raising a considerable our boat strained very ened as we got away from

required all the efforts of any head against the wind rising with the sun; and of being blown into one of beyond the island. At the mile from the beach, the is 16 feet, with a clay bot- working of the boat was and during the operation necessary to cease pad- ch the boat lost considera- unwilling to discourage the-ly gave up my intention of spt, and the character of the a general shout in the boat rselves in one fathom, and ded on a low point of mud, r the *bute* of the peninsula, d the boat, and carried the quarter of a mile to firmer ved just in time for meri- and carried the barometer to e butte, which is 500 feet Mr. Preuss set off on foot for was about nine miles dis- panying him, to bring back t and baggage.

ing shelter we raised on the baggage and boat lying e quite a picture; and wo rnerman's camp. *Lynosisis* another new species of *ozia*—*Torr. & Frem.*), were w grounds, with interspers- wholesome salt grass, on a ith a few other plants.

ved late in the afternoon, gale had increased to such man could scarcely stand were obliged to pack our as the rising water of the eached the point where we aking back as we rode off, ace of recent encampment

entirely covered. The low plain through which we rode to the camp was covered with a compact growth of shrubs of extraordinary size and luxuriance. The soil was sandy and saline; flat places, resembling the beds of ponds, that were bare of vegetation, and covered with a powdery white salt, being interspersed among the shrubs. *Artemisia tridentata* was very abundant, but the plants were principally saline; a large and vigorous chenopodiaceous shrub, five to eight feet high, being characteristic, with *Fremontia vermicularis*, and a shrubby plant which seems to be a new *salicornia*. We reached the camp in time to escape a thunder storm which blackened the sky, and were received with a discharge of the howitzer by the people, who, having been unable to see anything of us on the lake, had begun to feel some uneasiness.

September 11.—To-day we remained at this camp, in order to obtain some further observations, and to boil down the water which had been brought from the lake, for a supply of salt. Roughly evaporated over the fire, the five gallons of water yielded fourteen pints of very fine-grained and very white salt, of which the whole lake may be regarded as a saturated solution. A portion of the salt thus obtained has been subjected to analysis, giving, in 100 parts, the following proportions:

<i>Analysis of the salt.</i>	
Chloride of sodium (common salt)	97.80
Chloride of calcium	0.61
Chloride of magnesium	0.24
Sulphate of soda	0.23
Sulphate of lime	1.12
	100.00

Glancing your eye along the map, you will see a small stream entering the *Utah lake*, south of the Spanish fork, and the first waters of that lake which our road of 1844 crosses in coming up from the southward. When I was on this stream with Mr. Walker in that year, he informed me that on the upper part of the river are immense beds of rock salt of very great thickness, which he had frequently visited. Farther to the southward, the rivers which are affluent to the Colorado, such as the Rio Virgen, and Gila river, near their mouths, are impregnated with salt by the cliffs of rock salt between which they pass. These mines occur in the same ridge in which, about 120 miles to the northward, and subsequently in their more immediate neighborhood, we discovered the fossils belonging to the colitic period, and they are probably connected with that formation, and are the deposits from which the

Great Lake obtains its salt. Had we remained longer, we should have found them in its bed, and in the mountains around it.

My observation, the latitude of the camp is $41^{\circ} 15' 50''$, and longitude $112^{\circ} 06' 43''$. The observations made during our stay give for the rate of the chronometer $31'' . 72$, corresponding almost exactly with the rate obtained at St. Vrain's fort. Barometrical observations were made hourly during the day. This morning we breakfasted on yampah, and had only kamás for supper; but a cup of good coffee still distinguished us from our *Digger* acquaintances.

September 12.—The morning was clear and calm, with a temperature at sunrise of 32° . We resumed our journey late in the day, returning by nearly the same route which we had travelled in coming to the lake; and, avoiding the passage of Hawthorn creek, struck the hills a little below the hot salt springs. The flat plain we had here passed over consisted alternately of tolerably good sandy soil and of saline flats. We encamped early on Clear creek, at the foot of the high ridge; one of the peaks of which we ascertained by measurement to be 4,210 feet above the lake, or about 8,400 feet above the sea. Behind these front peaks the ridge rises towards the Bear river mountains, which are probably as high as the Wind river chain. This creek is here unusually well timbered with a variety of trees. Among them were birch (*betula*), the narrow-leaved poplar (*populus angustifolia*), several kinds of willow (*salix*), hawthorn (*crataegus*), alder (*alnus viridis*), and *cerasus*, with an oak allied to *quercus alba*, but very distinct from that or any other species in the United States.

We had to-night a supper of sea gulls, which Carson killed near the lake. Although cool, the thermometer standing at 47° , mosquitoes were sufficiently numerous to be troublesome this evening.

September 13.—Continuing up the river valley, we crossed several small streams; the mountains on the right appearing to consist of the blue limestone, which we had observed in the same ridge to the northward, alternating here with a granular quartz already mentioned. One of these streams, which forms a smaller lake near the river, was broken up into several channels; and the irrigated bottom of fertile soil was covered with innumerable flowers, among which were purple fields of *eupatorium purpureum*, with helianthi, a handsome *solidago* (*S. canadensis*), and a variety of other plants in bloom. Continuing along the foot of the hills, in the afternoon we found five or six hot springs gushing out together, beneath a conglomerate, consisting principally of fragments of a greyish-blue limestone, efflorescing a salt

upon the surface. The temperature of these springs was 134° , and the rocks in the bed were colored with a red deposit, and there was common salt crystallized on the margin. There was also a white incrustation upon leaves and roots, consisting principally of carbonate of lime. There were rushes seen along the road this afternoon, and the soil under the hills was very black, and apparently very good; but at this time the grass is entirely dried up. We encamped on Bear river, immediately below a cut-off, the cañon by which the river enters this valley bearing north by compass. The night was mild, with a very clear sky; and I obtained a very excellent observation of an occultation of Tau. Arietis, with other observations. Both immersion and emersion of the star were observed; but, as our observations have shown, the phase at the bright limb generally gives incorrect longitudes, and we have adopted the result obtained from the emersion at the dark limb, without allowing any weight to the immersion. According to these observations, the longitude is $112^{\circ} 05' 12''$, and the latitude $41^{\circ} 42' 43''$. All the longitudes on the line of our outward journey, between St. Vrain's fort and the Dalles of the Columbia, which were not directly determined by satellites, have been chronometrically referred to this place.

The people to-day were rather low-spirited, hunger making them very quiet and peaceable; and there was rarely an oath to be heard in the camp—not even a solitary *enfant de garce*. It was time for the moon with an expected supply of provisions from Fitzpatrick to be in the neighborhood; and the gun was fired at evening, to give them notice of our locality, but met with no response.

September 14.—About four miles from this encampment, the trail led us down to the river, where we unexpectedly found an excellent ford—the stream being widened by an island, and not yet disengaged from the hills at the foot of the range. We encamped on a little creek where we had made a noon halt in descending the river. The night was very clear and pleasant, the sunset temperature being 67° .

The people this evening looked so forlorn, that I gave them permission to kill a fat young horse which I had purchased with goods from the Snake Indians, and they were very soon restored to gaiety and good humor. Mr. Preuss and myself could not yet overcome some remains of civilized prejudices, and preferred to starve a little longer; feeling as much saddened as if a crime had been committed.

The next day we continued up the valley, the soil being sometimes very black and good, occasionally gravelly, and occasionally

a kind of naked salt plains. We found on the way this morning a small encampment of two families of Snake Indians, from whom we purchased a small quantity of *kooyah*. They had piles of seeds, of three different kinds, spread out upon pieces of buffalo robes; and the squaws had just gathered about a bushel of the roots of a thistle (*circium Virginianum*). They were about the ordinary size of carrots, and, as I have previously mentioned, are sweet and well flavored, requiring only a long preparation. They had a band of twelve or fifteen horses, and appeared to be growing in the sunshine with about as little labor as the plants they were eating.

Shortly afterwards we met an Indian on horseback who had killed an antelope, which we purchased from him for a little powder and some balls. We crossed the Roseaux, and encamped on the left bank; halting early for the pleasure of enjoying a wholesome and abundant supper, and were pleasantly engaged in protracting our unusual comfort, when Tabean galloped into the camp with news that Mr. Fitzpatrick was encamped close by us, with a good supply of provisions—flour, rice, and dried meat, and even a little butter. Excitement to-night made us all wakeful; and after a breakfast before sunrise the next morning, we were again on the road, and, continuing up the valley, crossed some high points of hills, and halted to noon on the same stream, near several lodges of Snake Indians, from whom we purchased about a bushel of service berries, partially dried. By the gift of a knife, I prevailed upon a little boy to show me the *kooyah* plant, which proved to be *valeriana edulis*. The root, which constitutes the *kooyah*, is large, of a very bright yellow color, with the characteristic odor, but not so fully developed as in the prepared substance. It loves the rich moist soil of river bottoms, which was the locality in which I always afterwards found it. It was now entirely out of bloom; according to my observation, flowering in the months of May and June. In the afternoon we entered a long ravine leading to a pass in the dividing ridge between the waters of Bear river and the Snake river, or Lewis's fork of the Columbia; our way being very much impeded, and almost entirely blocked up, by compact fields of luxuriant artemisia. Taking leave at this point of the waters of Bear river, and of the geographical basin which encloses the system of rivers and creeks which belong to the Great Salt Lake, and which so richly deserves a future detailed and ample exploration, I can say of it, in general terms, that the bottoms of this river (Bear), and of some of the creeks which I saw, form a natural resting and recruiting station for travellers,

alt plains. We found on
ing a small encampment
Snake Indians, from whom
small quantity of *kooyah*,
seeds, of three different
upon pieces of buffalo robe;
had just gathered about a
of a thistle (*cirsium* Vir-
y were about the ordinary
and, as I have previously
weet and well flavored, re-
g preparation. They had
or fifteen horses, and ap-
wing in the sunshine with
or as the plants they were

ards we met an Indian on
and killed an antelope, which
om him for a little powder
We crossed the Roseaux,
n the left bank; halting
sure of enjoying a whole-
ent supper, and were pleas-
protracting our unusual
Pabeau galloped into the
that Mr. Fitzpatrick was
y us, with a good supply of
rice, and dried meat, and
tter. Excitement to-night
ful; and after a breakfast
e next morning, we were
ed, and, continuing up the
ome high points of hills, and
the same stream, near seven-
ake Indians, from whom we
a bushel of service berries,
By the gift of a knife, I pre-
le boy to show me a *kooyah*
proved to be *valeriana edu-*
which constitutes the *kooyah*,
ry bright yellow color, with
odor, but not so fully de-
e prepared substance. It
moist soil of river bottoms,
locality in which I always af-
t. It was now entirely out-
rding to my observation,
months of May and June.
we entered a long ravine
s in the dividing ridge be-
ers of Bear river and the
Lewis's fork of the Colum-
ing very much impeded, and
locked up, by compact fields
misia. Taking leave at this
ers of Bear river, and of the
in which encloses the *sy-*
nd creeks which belong to
ake, and which so richly de-
etailed and ample explora-
of it, in general terms, that
is river (Bear), and of some
which I saw, form a natural
iting station for travellers,

now, and in all time to come. The bottoms
are extensive; water excellent; timber suffi-
cient; the soil good, and well adapted to the
grains and grasses suited to such an elevat-
ed region. A military post, and a civilized
settlement, would be of great value here;
and cattle and horses would do well where
grass and salt so much abound. The lake
will furnish exhaustless supplies of salt. All
the mountain sides here are covered with a
valuable nutritious grass, called bunch grass,
from the form in which it grows, which has
a second growth in the fall. The beasts of
the Indians were fat upon it; our own found
it a good subsistence; and its quantity will
sustain any amount of cattle, and make this
truly a bucolic region.

We met here an Indian family on horse-
back, which had been out to gather service
berries, and were returning loaded. This
tree was scattered about on the hills; and
the upper part of the pass was timbered with
aspens (*populus trem.*); the common blue
flowering flax occurring among the plants.
The approach to the pass was very steep;
and the summit about 6,300 feet above the
sea—probably only an uncertain approxima-
tion, as at the time of observation it was
blowing a violent gale of wind from the
northwest, with *cumuli* scattered in masses
over the sky, the day otherwise bright and
clear. We descended, by a steep slope, into
a broad open valley—good soil; from four
to five miles wide; coming down immedi-
ately upon one of the headwaters of the Pan-
nack river, which here loses itself in swampy
ground. The appearance of the country
here is not very interesting. On either side
is a regular range of mountains of the usual
character, with a little timber, tolerably
rocky on the right, and higher and more
smooth on the left, with still higher peaks
looking out above the range. The valley
afforded a good level road; but it was late
when it brought us to water, and we en-
camped at dark. The northwest wind had
blown up very cold weather, and the arte-
misia, which was our fire wood to-night, did
not happen to be very abundant. This plant
loves a dry, sandy soil, and cannot grow in
the good bottoms where it is rich and moist,
but on every little eminence, where water
does not rest long, it maintains absolute pos-
session. Elevation above the sea about
5,100 feet.

At night scattered fires glimmered along
the mountains, pointing out camps of the
Indians; and we contrasted the comparative
security in which we travelled through this
country, with the guarded vigilance we were
compelled to exert among the Sioux and
other Indians on the eastern side of the
Rocky mountains.

At sunset the thermometer was at 50°, and
at midnight at 30°.

September 17.—The morning sky was calm
and clear, the temperature at daylight being
25°, and at sunrise 20°. There is through-
out this mountain country a remarkable dif-
ference between the morning and midday
temperatures, which at this season was very
generally 40° or 50°, and occasionally great-
er; and frequently, after a very frosty morn-
ing, the heat in a few hours would render
the thinnest clothing agreeable. About noon
we reached the main fork. The Pannack
river was before us; the valley being here 14
miles wide, fertile, and bordered by smooth
hills, not over 500 feet high, partly covered
with cedar; a high ridge, in which there is a
prominent peak, rising behind those on the
left. We continued to descend this stream,
and found on it at night a warm and comfort-
able camp. Flax occurred so frequently dur-
ing the day as to be almost a characteristic,
and the soil appeared excellent. The oppo-
site hills on the right are broken here into a
great variety of shapes. The evening was
gusty, with a temperature at sunset of 59°.
I obtained, about midnight, an observation of
an emersion of the first satellite; the night
being calm and very clear, the stars remark-
ably bright, and the thermometer at 30°. Longitude, from mean of satellite and chro-
nometer, 113° 29' 52"; and latitude, by ob-
servation, 42° 44' 40".

September 18.—The day clear and calm,
with a temperature of 25° at sunrise. After
travelling seven or eight miles, we emerged
on the plains of the Columbia, in sight of the
famous "Three Buttes," a well-known land-
mark in the country, distant about 45 miles.
The French word *butte*, which so often occurs
in this narrative, is retained from the familiar
language of the country, and identifies the
objects to which it refers. It is naturalized
in the region of the Rocky mountains; and,
even if desirable to render it in English, I
know of no word which would be its precise
equivalent. It is applied to the detached
hills and ridges which rise abruptly, and
reach too high to be called hills or ridges,
and not high enough to be called mountains.
Knob, as applied in the western States, is
their most descriptive term in English. *Cerro*
is the Spanish term; but no translation, or
paraphrase, would preserve the identity of
these picturesque landmarks, familiar to the
traveller, and often seen at a great distance.
Covered as far as could be seen with artemisia,
the dark and ugly appearance of this plain
obtained for it the name of the *Sage Desert*;
and we were agreeably surprised, on reach-
ing the Portneuf river, to see a beautiful
green valley with scattered timber spread out
beneath us, on which, about four miles dis-

tant, were glistening the white walls of the fort. The Portneuf runs along the upland plain nearly to its mouth, and an abrupt descent of perhaps 200 feet brought us down immediately upon the stream, which at the ford is 100 yards wide, and three feet deep, with clear water, a swift current, and gravelly bed; but a little higher up the breadth was only about 35 yards, with apparently deep water.

In the bottom I remarked a very great number of springs and sloughs, with remarkably clear water and gravel beds. At sunset we encamped with Mr. Talbot and our friends, who came on to Fort Hall when we went to the lake, and whom we had the satisfaction to find all well, neither party having met with any mischance in the interval of our separation. They, too, had had their share of fatigue and scanty provisions, as there had been very little game left on the trail of the populous emigration; and Mr. Fitzpatrick had rigidly husbanded our stock of flour and light provisions, in view of the approaching winter and the long journey before us.

September 19.—This morning the sky was very dark and gloomy, and at daylight it began snowing thickly, and continued all day, with cold, disagreeable weather. At sunrise the temperature was 43°. I rode up to the fort, and purchased from Mr. Grant (the officer in charge of the post) several very indifferent horses, and five oxen in very fine order, which were received at the camp with great satisfaction; and, one being killed at evening, the usual gaiety and good humor were at once restored. Night came in stormy.

September 20.—We had a night of snow and rain, and the thermometer at sunrise was at 34°; the morning was dark, with a steady rain, and there was still an inch of snow on the ground, with an abundance on the neighboring hills and mountains. The sudden change in the weather was hard for our animals, who trembled and shivered in the cold—sometimes taking refuge in the timber, and now and then coming out and raking the snow off the ground for a little grass, or eating the young willows.

September 21.—Ice made tolerably thick during the night, and in the morning the weather cleared up very bright, with a temperature at sunrise of 29°; and I obtained a meridian observation for latitude at the fort, with observations for time. The sky was again covered in the afternoon, and the thermometer at sunset 48°.

September 22.—The morning was cloudy and unpleasant, and at sunrise a cold rain commenced, with a temperature of 41°.

The early approach of winter, and the difficulty of supporting a large party, determined me to send back a number of the men who

had become satisfied that they were not fitted for the laborious service and frequent privation to which they were necessarily exposed, and which there was reason to believe would become more severe in the further extension of the voyage. I accordingly called them together, and, informing them of my intention to continue our journey during the ensuing winter, in the course of which they would probably be exposed to considerable hardship, succeeded in prevailing upon a number of them to return voluntarily. These were: Charles De Forrest, Henry Lee, J. Campbell, Wm. Creuss, A. Vasquez, A. Pera, Patrick White, B. Tesson, M. Creely, François Lajeunesse, Basil Lajeunesse. Among these, I regretted very much to lose Basil Lajeunesse, one of the best men in my party, who was obliged, by the condition of his family, to be at home in the coming winter. Our preparations having been completed in the interval of our stay here, both parties were ready this morning to resume their respective routes.

Except that there is a greater quantity of wood used in its construction, Fort Hall very much resembles the other trading posts which have been already described to you, and would be another excellent post of relief for the emigration. It is in the low, rich bottom of a valley, apparently 20 miles long, formed by the confluence of Portneuf river with Lewis's fork of the Columbia, which it enters about nine miles below the fort, and narrowing gradually to the mouth of the Pannack river, where it has a breadth of only two or three miles. Allowing 50 miles for the road from the *Beer springs* of Bear river to Fort Hall, its distance along the travelled road from the town of Westport, on the frontier of Missouri, by way of Fort Laramie and the great South Pass, is 1323 miles. Beyond this place, on the line of road along the barren valley of the Upper Columbia, there does not occur, for a distance of nearly three hundred miles to the westward, a fertile spot of ground sufficiently large to produce the necessary quantity of grain, or pasturage enough to allow even a temporary repose to the emigrants. On their recent passage, they had been able to obtain, at very high prices and in insufficient quantity, only such assistance as could be afforded by a small and remote trading post—and that a foreign one—which, in the supply of its own wants, had necessarily drawn around it some of the resources of civilisation, but which obtained nearly all its supplies from the distant depot of Vancouver, by a difficult water carriage of 250 miles up the Columbia river, and a land carriage by pack horses of 600 miles. An American military post sufficiently strong to give to their road a perfect security against

of the last night. The road to-day led along the river, which is full of rapids and small falls. Grass is very scanty; and along the rugged banks are scattered cedars, with an abundance of rocks and sage. We travelled 14 miles, and encamped in the afternoon near the river, on a rocky creek, the bed of which was entirely occupied with boulders of a very large size. For the last three or four miles the right bank of the river has a palisaded appearance. One of the oxen was killed here for food. The thermometer at evening was at 55°, the sky almost overcast, and the barometer indicated an elevation of 4,400 feet.

September 26.—Rain during the night, and the temperature at sunrise 42°. Travelling along the river, in about 4 miles we reached a picturesque stream, to which we gave the name of Fall creek. It is remarkable for the many falls which occur in a short distance; and its bed is composed of a calcareous tufa, or vegetable rock, composed principally of the remains of reeds and mosses, resembling that at the *Basin spring* on Bear river.

The road along the river bluffs had been occasionally very bad; and imagining that some rough obstacles rendered such a détour necessary, we followed for several miles a plain wagon road leading up this stream, until we reached a point whence it could be seen making directly towards a low place in the range on the south side of the valley, and we became immediately aware that we were on a trail formed by a party of wagons, in company with whom we had encamped at Elm grove, near the frontier of Missouri, and which you will remember were proceeding to Upper California under the direction of Mr. Jos. Chiles. At the time of their departure, no practicable passes were known in the southern Rocky mountains within the territory of the United States; and the probable apprehension of difficulty in attempting to pass near the settled frontier of New Mexico, together with the desert character of the unexplored region beyond, had induced them to take a more northern and circuitous route by way of the Sweet Water pass and Fort Hall. They had still between them and the valley of the Sacramento a great mass of mountains, forming the *Sierra Nevada*, here commonly known as the *Great California mountain*, and which were at this time considered as presenting an impracticable barrier to wheeled carriages. Various considerations had suggested to them a division of the party; and a greater portion of the camp, including the wagons, with the mail and other stores, were now proceeding under the guidance of Mr. Joseph Walker, who had engaged to conduct them, by a long sweep to the southward, around what is

called the *point of the mountain*; and, crossing through a pass known only to himself, gain the banks of the Sacramento by the valley of the San Joaquin. It was a long and a hazardous journey for a party in which there were women and children. Sixty days was the shortest period of time in which they could reach the point of the mountain, and their route lay through a country inhabited by wild and badly disposed Indians, and very poor in game; but the leader was a man possessing great and intimate knowledge of the Indians, with an extraordinary firmness and decision of character. In the meantime, Mr. Chiles had passed down the Columbia with a party of ten or twelve men, with the intention of reaching the settlements on the Sacramento by a more direct course, which indefinite information from hunters had indicated in the direction of the head waters of the *Rivière aux Malheurs*; and having obtained there a reinforcement of animals, and a supply of provisions, meet the wagons before they should have reached the point of the mountain, at a place which had been previously agreed upon. In the course of our narrative, we shall be able to give you some information of the fortune which attended the movements of these adventurous travellers.

Having discovered our error, we immediately regained the line along the river, which the road quitted about noon, and encamped at 5 o'clock on a stream called Raft river (*Rivière aux Cajoux*), having travelled only 13 miles. In the north, the Salmon river mountains are visible at a very far distance; and on the left, the ridge in which Raft river heads is about 20 miles distant, rocky, and tolerably high. Thermometer at sunset 44°, with a partially clouded sky, and a sharp wind from the SW.

September 27.—It was now no longer possible, as in our previous journey, to travel regularly every day, and find at any moment a convenient place for repose at noon or a camp at night; but the halting places were now generally fixed along the road, by the nature of the country, at places where, with water, there was a little scanty grass. Since leaving the American falls, the road had frequently been very bad; the many short, steep ascents, exhausting the strength of our worn-out animals, requiring always at such places the assistance of the men to get up each cart, one by one; and our progress with twelve or fourteen wheeled carriages, though light and made for the purpose, in such a rocky country, was extremely slow; and I again determined to gain time by a division of the camp. Accordingly, to-day the parties again separated, constituted very much as before—Mr. Fitzpatrick remaining in charge of the heavier baggage.

f the mountain; and, cross
as known only to himself,
of the Sacramento by the
n Joaquin. It was a long
journey for a party in which
men and children. Sixty
rest period of time in which,
the point of the mountain,
y through a country inhab-
badly disposed Indians, and
me; but the leader was a
great and intimate know-
ans, with an extraordinary
ision of character. In the
Chiles had passed down the
party of ten or twelve men,
on of reaching the settle-
ramento by a more direct
ndefinite information from
ated in the direction of the
he *Rivière aux Malheurs*;
ined there a reinforcement
supply of provisions, meet
e they should have reached
mountain, at a place which
usly agreed upon. In the
rrative, we shall be able to
information of the fortune
the movements of these ad-
ers.

ered our error, we imme-
the line along the river,
mitted about noon, and en-
ock on a stream called Raft
x *Cajoux*), having travelled
In the north, the Salmon
are visible at a very far
the left, the ridge in which
is about 20 miles distant,
ably high. Thermometer at
a partially clouded sky, and
m the SW.

—It was now no longer pos-
previous journey, to travel
day, and find at any moment
be for repose at noon or a
but the halting places were
ked along the road, by the
untry, at places where, with
a little scanty grass. Since
rican falls, the road had fre-
ry bad; the many short,
hausting the strength of our
s, requiring always at such
ance of the men to get up
by one; and our progress
fourteen wheeled carriages,
d made for the purpose, in
untry, was extremely slow;
rmined to gain time by a dip.
Accordingly, to-day the
eparated, constituted very
—Mr. Fitzpatrick remaining
heavier baggage.

The morning was calm and clear, with a
white frost, and the temperature at sunrise
24°.

To-day the country had a very forbidding
appearance; and, after travelling 20 miles
over a slightly undulating plain, we en-
camped at a considerable spring, called
Swamp creek, rising in low grounds near
the point of a spur from the mountain. Re-
turning with a small party in a starving con-
dition from the westward 12 or 14 years
since, Carson had met here three or four
buffalo bulls, two of which were killed.
They were among the pioneers which had
made the experiment of colonizing in the
valley of the Columbia, and which had
failed, as heretofore stated. At sunset the
thermometer was at 46°, and the evening
was overcast, with a cold wind from the
SE., and to-night we had only sage for fire
wood. Mingled with the artemisia was a
shrubby and thorny chenopodiaceous plant.

September 28.—Thermometer at sunrise
40°. The wind rose early to a gale from
the west, with a very cold driving rain; and,
after an uncomfortable day's ride of 25 miles,
we were glad when at evening we found a
sheltered camp, where there was an abun-
dant of wood, at some elevated rocky is-
lands covered with cedar, near the com-
mencement of another long cañon of the
river. With the exception of a short deten-
tion at a deep little stream called Goose
creek, and some occasional rocky places, we
had to-day a very good road; but the coun-
try has a barren appearance, sandy, and
densely covered with the artemisias from
the banks of the river to the foot of the moun-
tains. Here I remarked, among the sage
bushes, green bunches of what is called the
second growth of grass. The river to-day
has had a smooth appearance, free from
rapids, with a low, sandy hill slope bordering
the bottoms, in which there is a little good
soil. Thermometer at sunset 45°, blowing
a gale, and disagreeably cold.

September 29.—The thermometer at sun-
rise 36°, with a bright sun, and appearance
of finer weather. The road for several miles
was extremely rocky, and consequently bad;
but, entering after this a sandy country, it
became very good, with no other interrup-
tion than the sage bushes, which covered the
river plain so far as the eye could reach, and,
with their uniform tint of dark grey, gave to
the country a gloomy and sombre appear-
ance. All the day the course of the river
has been between walls of the black volca-
nic rock, a dark line of the escarpment on
the opposite side pointing out its course, and
sweeping along in foam at places where the
mountains which border the valley present
always on the left two ranges, the lower one
a spur of the higher; and, on the opposite

side, the Salmon river mountains are visible
at a great distance. Having made 24 miles,
we encamped about 5 o'clock on Rock creek
—a stream having considerable water, a swift
current, and wooded with willow.

September 30.—Thermometer at sunrise
28°. In its progress towards the river, this
creek soon enters a chasm of the volcanic
rock, which in places along the wall presents
a columnar appearance; and the road be-
comes extremely rocky whenever it passes
near its banks. It is only about twenty feet
wide where the road crosses it, with a deep
bed, and steep banks, covered with rocky
fragments, with willows and a little grass on
its narrow bottom. The soil appears to be
full of calcareous matter, with which the
rocks are incrustated. The fragments of rock
which had been removed by the emigrants
in making a road where we ascended from
the bed of this creek were whitened with
lime; and during the afternoon's march I re-
marked in the soil a considerable quantity of
calcareous concretions. Towards evening
the sages became more sparse, and the clear
spaces were occupied by tufts of green grass.
The river still continued its course through
a trough or open cañon; and towards sunset
we followed the trail of several wagons which
had turned in towards Snake river, and en-
camped, as they had done, on the top of the
escarpment. There was no grass here, the
soil among the sage being entirely naked;
but there is occasionally a little bottom along
the river, which a short ravine of rocks, at
rare intervals, leaves accessible; and by one
of these we drove our animals down, and
found some tolerably good grass bordering
the water.

Immediately opposite to us, a subterranean
river bursts out directly from the face of the
escarpment, and falls in white foam to the
river below. The main river is enclosed
with mural precipices, which form its charac-
teristic feature along a great portion of its
course. A melancholy and strange-looking
country—one of fracture, and violence, and
fire.

We had brought with us, when we sepa-
rated from the camp, a large gaunt ox, in ap-
pearance very poor; but, being killed to-night,
to the great joy of the people, he was found
to be remarkably fat. As usual at such oc-
currences, the evening was devoted to gaiety
and feasting; abundant fare now made an
epoch among us; and in this laborious life,
in such a country as this, our men had but
little else to enjoy. The temperature at sun-
set was 65°, with a clear sky and a very high
wind. By the observation of the evening,
the encampment was in longitude 114° 25'
04", and in latitude 42° 38' 44".

October 1.—The morning clear, with wind
from the west, and the thermometer at 55°

We descended to the bottom, taking with us the boat, for the purpose of visiting the fall in the opposite cliffs; and while it was being filled with air, we occupied ourselves in measuring the river, which is 1,786 feet in breadth, with banks 200 feet high. We were surprised, on our arrival at the opposite side, to find a beautiful basin of clear water, formed by the falling river, around which the rocks were whitened by some saline incrustation. Here the Indians had constructed wicker dams, although I was informed that the salmon do not ascend the river so far; and its character below would apparently render it impracticable.

The ascent of the steep hill side was rendered a little difficult by a dense growth of shrubs and fields of cane; and there were frequent hidden crevices among the rocks, where the water was heard rushing below; but we succeeded in reaching the main stream, which, issuing from between strata of the trap rock in two principal branches, produced almost immediately a torrent, 22 feet wide, and white with foam. It is a picturesque spot of singular beauty; overshadowed by bushes, from under which the torrent glances, tumbling into the white basin below where the clear water contrasted beautifully with the muddy stream of the river. Its outlet was covered with a rank growth of canes, and a variety of unusual plants, and nettles (*urtica canadensis*), which, before they were noticed, had set our hands and arms on fire. The temperature of the spring was 58°, while that of the river was 51°. The perpendicular height of the place at which this stream issues is 45 feet above the river, and 152 feet below the summit of the precipice, making nearly 200 feet for the height of the wall. On the hill side here, was obtained a specimen consisting principally of fragments of the shells of small crustacea, and which was probably formed by deposition from these springs proceeding from some lake or river in the highlands above.

We resumed our journey at noon, the day being hot and bright; and, after a march of 17 miles, encamped at sunset on the river, near several lodges of Snake Indians.

Our encampment was about one mile below the *Fishing falls*, a series of cataracts with very inclined planes, which are probably so named because they form a barrier to the ascent of the salmon; and the great fisheries from which the inhabitants of this barren region almost entirely derive a subsistence commence at this place. These appeared to be unusually gay savages, fond of loud laughter; and, in their apparent good nature and merry character, struck me as being entirely different from the Indians we had been accustomed to see. From several who visited our camp in the evening, we pur-

chased, in exchange for goods, dried salmon. At this season they are not very fat, but we were easily pleased. The Indians made us comprehend, that when the salmon came up the river in the spring, they are so abundant that they merely throw in their spears at random, certain of bringing out a fish.

These poor people are but slightly provided with winter clothing; there is but little game to furnish skins for the purpose; and of a little animal which seemed to be the most numerous, it required 20 skins to make a covering to the knees. But they are still a joyous talkative race, who grow fat and become poor with the salmon, which at least never fail them—the dried being used in the absence of the fresh. We are encamped immediately on the river bank, and with the salmon jumping up out of the water, and Indians paddling about in boats made of rushes, or laughing around the fires, the camp tonight has quite a lively appearance.

The river at this place is more open than for some distance above; and, for the time, the black precipices have disappeared, and no calcareous matter is visible in the soil. The thermometer at sunset 74°; clear and calm.

October 2.—The sunrise temperature was 48°; the weather clear and calm. Shortly after leaving the encampment, we crossed a stream of clear water, with a variable breadth of 10 to 25 yards, broken by rapids, and lightly wooded with willow, and having a little grass on its small bottom land. The barrenness of the country is in fine contrast today with the mingled beauty and grandeur of the river, which is more open than hitherto, with a constant succession of falls and rapids. Over the edge of the black cliffs, and out from their faces, are falling numberless streams and springs; and all the line of the river is in motion with the play of the water. In about seven miles we reached the most beautiful and picturesque fall I had seen on the river.

On the opposite side, the vertical fall is perhaps 18 feet high; and nearer, the sheet of foaming water is divided and broken into cataracts, where several little islands on the brink and in the river above give it much picturesque beauty, and make it one of those places the traveller turns again and again to fix in his memory. There were several lodges of Indians here, from whom we traded salmon. Below this place the river makes a remarkable bend; and the road, ascending the ridge, gave us a fine view of the river below, intersected at many places by numerous fish dams. In the north, about 50 miles distant, were some high snowy peaks of the Salmon river mountains; and in the northeast, the last peak of the range was visible at the distance of perhaps 100

for goods, dried salmon. They are not very fat, but we like them. The Indians made us when the salmon came up in the spring, they are so abundant that they are rowed in their spears at ranging out a fish.

The people are but slightly provided with clothing; there is but little animal skins for the purpose; and the dried being used in the fresh. We are encamped on the river bank, and with the help of the water, and the boats made of rushes, and the fire, the camp to have a lively appearance.

This place is more open than the one above; and, for the time, the trees have disappeared, and the water is visible in the soil. At sunset 74°; clear and

The sunrise temperature was clear and calm. Shortly after our encampment, we crossed a water, with a variable breadth broken by rapids, and light willow, and having a little bottom land. The bar country is in fine contrast to the rugged beauty and grandeur which is more open than the constant succession of falls over the edge of the black rocks on their faces, are falling in cascades and springs; and all the water is in motion with the current. In about seven miles we had a beautiful and picturesque view of the river.

On the left side, the vertical fall is high; and nearer, the sheet of water is divided and broken into several little islands on the river above give it much variety, and make it one of those places where the water turns again and again to rapids. There were several islands here, from whom we take the name. Below this place the river makes a considerable bend; and the road, which gave us a fine view of the mountains, intersected at many places by small dams. In the north, about the middle, were some high snowy mountains; and in the last peak of the range the distance of perhaps 100

miles or more. The river hills consist of very broken masses of sand, covered everywhere with the same interminable fields of sage, and occasionally the road is very heavy. We now very frequently saw Indians, who were strung along the river at every little rapid where fish are to be caught, and the cry *haggai, haggai* (fish), was constantly heard whenever we passed near their huts, or met them in the road. Very many of them were oddly and partially dressed in overcoat, shirt, waistcoat, or pantaloons, or whatever article of clothing they had been able to procure in trade from the emigrants; for we had now entirely quitted the country where hawk's bells, beads, and vermilion, were the current coin, and found that here only useful articles, and chiefly clothing, were in great request. These, however, are eagerly sought after; and for a few trifling pieces of clothing, travellers may procure food sufficient to carry them to the Columbia.

We made a long stretch across the upper plain, and encamped on the bluff, where the grass was very green and good; the soil of the upper plains containing a considerable proportion of calcareous matter. This green freshness of the grass was very remarkable for the season of the year. Again we heard the roar of a fall in the river below, where the water in an unbroken volume goes over a descent of several feet. The night is clear, and the weather continues very warm and pleasant, with a sunset temperature of 70°.

October 3.—The morning was pleasant, with a temperature at sunrise of 42°. The road was broken by ravines among the hills, and in one of these, which made the bed of a dry creek, I found a fragmentary stratum, or brecciated conglomerate, consisting of flinty slate pebbles, with fragments of limestone containing fossil shells.

On the left, the mountains are visible at the distance of twenty or thirty miles, appearing smooth and rather low; but at intervals higher peaks look out from beyond, and indicate that the main ridge, which we are leaving with the course of the river, and which forms the northern boundary of the Great Basin, still maintains its elevation. About two o'clock we arrived at the ford where the road crosses to the right bank of Snake river. An Indian was hired to conduct us through the ford, which proved impracticable for us, the water sweeping away the howitzer and nearly drowning the mules, which we were obliged to extricate by cutting them out of the harness. The river here is expanded into a little bay, in which there are two islands, across which is the road of the ford; and the emigrants had passed by placing two of their heavy wag-

gons abreast of each other, so as to oppose a considerable mass against the body of water. The Indians informed us that one of the men, in attempting to turn some cattle which had taken a wrong direction, was carried off by the current and drowned. Since their passage, the water had risen considerably; but, fortunately, we had a resource in a boat, which was filled with air and launched; and at seven o'clock we were safely encamped on the opposite bank, the animals swimming across, and the carriage, howitzer, and baggage of the camp, being carried over in the boat. At the place where we crossed, above the islands, the river had narrowed to a breadth of 1,049 feet by measurement, the greater portion of which was from six to eight feet deep. We were obliged to make our camp where we landed, among the Indian lodges, which are semi-circular huts made of willow, thatched over with straw, and open to the sunny south. By observation, the latitude of our encampment on the right bank of the river was 42° 55' 58"; chronometric longitude 115° 04' 46", and the travelled distance from Fort Hall 208 miles.

October 4.—Calm pleasant day, with the thermometer at sunrise at 47°. Leaving the river at a considerable distance to the left, and following up the bed of a rocky creek, with occasional holes of water, in about six miles we ascended, by a long and rather steep hill, to a plain 600 feet above the river, over which we continued to travel during the day, having a broken ridge 2,000 or 3,000 feet high on the right. The plain terminates, where we ascended, in an escarpment of vesicular trap rock, which supplies the fragments of the creek below. The sky clouded over, with a strong wind from the northwest, with a few drops of rain and occasional sunlight, threatening a change.

Artemisia still covers the plain, but *Purshia tridentata* makes its appearance here on the hill sides and on bottoms of the creeks—quite a tree in size, and larger than the Artemisia. We crossed several hollows with a little water in them, and improved grass; and, turning off from the road in the afternoon in search of water, travelled about three miles up the bed of a willow creek, towards the mountain, and found a good encampment, with wood and grass, and little ponds of water in the bed of the creek; which must be of more importance at other seasons, as we found there several old fixtures for fishing. There were many holes on the creek prairie, which had been made by the diggers in search of roots.

Wind increased to a violent gale from the N.W., with a temperature at sunset of 57°.

October 5.—The morning was calm and clear, and at sunrise the thermometer was

at 32°. The road to-day was occasionally extremely rocky, with hard volcanic fragments, and our travelling very slow. In about nine miles the road brought us to a group of smoking hot springs, with a temperature of 164°. There were a few helianthi in bloom, with some other low plants, and the place was green round about; the ground warm, and the air pleasant, with a summer atmosphere that was very grateful in a day of high and cold searching wind. The rocks were covered with a white and red incrustation; and the water has on the tongue the same unpleasant effect as that of the Basin spring on Bear river. They form several branches, and bubble up with force enough to raise the small pebbles several inches.

The following is an analysis of the deposit with which the rocks are incrustated:

<i>Analysis.</i>		
Silica	- - -	72.55
Carbonate of lime	- - -	14.60
Carbonate of magnesia	- - -	1.20
Oxide of iron	- - -	4.65
Alumina	- - -	0.70
Chloride of sodium, &c.	}	1.10
Sulphate of soda		
Sulphate of lime, &c.	}	5.20
Organic vegetable matter		
Water and loss		100.00

These springs are near the foot of the ridge (a dark and rugged looking mountain), in which some of the nearer rocks have a reddish appearance, and probably consist of a reddish-brown trap, fragments of which were scattered along the road after leaving the spring. The road was now about to cross the point of this mountain, which we judged to be a spur from the Salmon river range. We crossed a small creek, and encamped about sunset on a stream, which is probably Lake river. This is a small stream, some five or six feet broad, with a swift current, timbered principally with willows and some few cottonwoods. Along the banks were canes, rose bushes, and clematis, with *Purshia tridentata* and *artemisia* on the upper bottom. The sombre appearance of the country is somewhat relieved in coming unexpectedly from the dark rocks upon these green and wooded watercourses, sunk in chasms; and, in the spring, the contrasted effect must make them beautiful.

The thermometer at sunset 47°, and the night threatening snow.

October 6.—The morning warm, the thermometer 46° at sunrise, and sky entirely clouded. After travelling about three miles

over an extremely rocky road, the volcanic fragments began to disappear; and, entering among the hills at the point of the mountain, we found ourselves suddenly in a granite country. Here, the character of the vegetation was very much changed; the *artemisia* disappeared almost entirely, showing only at intervals towards the close of the day, and was replaced by *Purshia tridentata*, with flowering shrubs, and small fields of *dieteria divaricata*, which gave bloom and gaiety to the hills. These were everywhere covered with a fresh and green short grass, like that of the early spring. This is the fall or second growth, the dried grass having been burnt off by the Indians; and wherever the fire has passed, the bright-green color is universal. The soil among the hills is altogether different from that of the river plain, being in many places black, in others sandy and gravelly, but of a firm and good character, appearing to result from the decomposition of the granite rocks, which is proceeding rapidly.

In quitting for a time the *artemisia* (sage) through which we had been so long voyaging, and the sombre appearance of which is so discouraging, I have to remark, that I have been informed that in Mexico wheat is grown upon the ground which produces this shrub; which, if true, relieves the soil from the character of sterility imputed to it. Be this as it may, there is no dispute about the grass, which is almost universal on the hills and mountains, and always nutritious, even in its dry state. We passed on the way masses of granite on the slope of a spur, which was very much weathered and abraded. This is a white feldspathic granite, with small scales of black mica; smoky quartz and garnets appear to constitute this portion of the mountain.

The road at noon reached a broken ridge, on which were scattered many boulders or blocks of granite; and, passing very small streams, where, with a little more than the usual timber, was sometimes gathered a little wilderness of plants, we encamped on a small stream, after a march of 22 miles, in company with a few Indians. Temperature at sunset 51°; and the night was partially clear, with a few stars visible through drifting white clouds. The Indians made an unsuccessful attempt to steal a few horses from us—a thing of course with them, and to prevent which the traveller is on perpetual watch.

October 7.—The day was bright, clear, pleasant, with a temperature of 45°; and we breakfasted at sunrise, the birds singing in the trees as merrily as if we were in the midst of summer. On the upper edge of the hills on the opposite side of the creek, the black volcanic rock reappears; and ascending these, the road passed through a basin.

rocky road, the volcanic disappear; and, entering the point of the mountain, suddenly in a granite character of the vegetation changed; the artemisia entirely, showing only at the close of the day, and *Arachis tridentata*, with flow-
small fields of *dieteria divaric-*
loom and gaiety to the hills, where covered with a fresh grass, like that of the early the fall or second growth, having been burnt off by the fire has passed, color is universal. The soil is altogether different from plain, being in many places sandy and gravelly, but of a character, appearing to result position of the granite rocks, being rapidly.

At a time the artemisia (sage) we had been so long voyaging the appearance of which is I have to remark, that I used that in Mexico wheat is ground which produces this true, relieves the soil from sterility imputed to it. Be here is no dispute about the almost universal on the hills and always nutritious, even.

We passed on the way site on the slope of a spur, much weathered and abraded white feldspathic granite, with black mica; smoky quartz near to constitute this portion.

Soon reached a broken ridge, scattered many boulders of granite; and, passing very small with a little more than the as sometimes gathered a little plants, we encamped on a march of 22 miles, in a few Indians. Temperature and the night was partially few stars visible through drifts. The Indians made an attempt to steal a few horses from course with them, and to prevent a traveller is on perpetual

The day was bright, clear, a temperature of 46°; and we sunrise, the birds singing in merrily as if we were in the er. On the upper edge of the opposite side of the creek, the rock reappears; and ascending road passed through a basin.

around which the hills swept in such a manner as to give it the appearance of an old crater. Here were strata and broken beds of black scoriated rock, and hills composed of the same, on the summit of one of which there was an opening resembling a rent. We travelled to-day through a country resembling that of yesterday, where, although the surface was hilly, the road was good, being firm, and entirely free from rocks and artemisia. To our left, below, was the great sage plain; and on the right were the near mountains, which presented a smoothly broken character, or rather a surface waved into numberless hills. The road was occasionally enlivened by meeting Indians, and the day was extremely beautiful and pleasant; and we were pleased to be free from the sage, even for a day. When we had travelled about 8 miles, we were nearly opposite to the highest portion of the mountains on the left side of the Snake river valley; and, continuing on a few miles beyond, we came suddenly in sight of the broad green line of the valley of the *Rivière Boisée* (wooded river), black near the gorge where it debouches into the plains, with high precipices of basalt, between walls of which it passes, on emerging from the mountains. Following with the eye its upward course, it appears to be shut in among lofty mountains, confining its valley in a very rugged country.

Descending the hills, after travelling a few miles along the high plain, the road brought us down upon the bottoms of the river, which is a beautiful rapid stream, with clear mountain water, and, as the name indicates, well wooded with some varieties of timber—among which are handsome cottonwoods. Such a stream had become quite a novelty in this country, and we were delighted this afternoon to make a pleasant camp under fine old trees again. There were several Indian encampments scattered along the river; and a number of their inhabitants, in the course of the evening, came to the camp on horseback with dried and fresh fish to trade. The evening was clear, and the temperature at sunset 57°.

At the time of the first occupation of this region by parties engaged in the fur trade, a small party of men under the command of — Reid, constituting all the garrison of a little fort on this river, were surprised and massacred by the Indians; and to this event the stream owes its occasional name of *Reid's river*.

On the 8th we travelled about 28 miles, the ridge on the right having scattered pines on the upper parts; and, continuing the next day our road along the river bottom, after a day's travel of 24 miles we encamped in the evening on the right bank of the river, a mile above the mouth, and early the next morning

arrived at Fort *Boisé*. This is a simple dwelling-house on the right bank of Snake river, about a mile below the mouth of *Rivière Boisée*; and on our arrival we were received with an agreeable hospitality by Mr. Payette, an officer of the Hudson Bay Company, in charge of the fort; all of whose garrison consisted in a Canadian *engagé*.

Here the road recrosses the river, which is broad and deep; but, with our good boat, aided by two canoes, which were found at the place, the camp was very soon transferred to the left bank. Here we found ourselves again surrounded by the sage; artemisia tridentata, and the different shrubs which during our voyage had always made their appearance abundantly on saline soils, being here the prevailing and almost the only plants. Among them the surface was covered with the usual saline efflorescences, which here consist almost entirely of carbonate of soda, with a small portion of chloride of sodium. Mr. Payette had made but slight attempts at cultivation, his efforts being limited to raising a few vegetables, in which he succeeded tolerably well; the post being principally supported by salmon. He was very hospitable and kind to us, and we made a sensible impression upon all his domestics; but our principal incursion was into the dairy, which was abundantly supplied, stock appearing to thrive extremely well; and we had an unusual luxury in a present of fresh butter, which was, however, by no means equal to that of Fort Hall—probably from some accidental cause. During the day we remained here, there were considerable numbers of miserable half-naked Indians around the fort, who had arrived from the neighboring mountains. During the summer, the only subsistence of these people is derived from the salmon, of which they are not provident enough to lay up a sufficient store for the winter, during which many of them die from absolute starvation.

Many little accounts and scattered histories, together with an acquaintance which I gradually acquired of their modes of life, had left the aboriginal inhabitants of this vast region pictured in my mind as a race of people whose great and constant occupation was the means of procuring a subsistence; and though want of space, and other reasons, will prevent me from detailing the many incidents which made these things familiar to me, this great feature among the characteristics of the country will gradually be forced upon your mind.

Pointing to a group of Indians who had just arrived from the mountains on the left side of the valley, and who were regarding our usual appliances of civilisation with an air of bewildered curiosity, Mr. Payette informed me that, every year since his arriva-

at this post, he had unsuccessfully endeavored to induce these people to lay up a store of salmon for their winter provision. While the summer weather and the salmon lasted, they lived contentedly and happily, scattered along the different streams where the fish were to be found; and as soon as the winter snows began to fall, little smokes would be seen rising among the mountains, where they would be found in miserable groups, starving out the winter; and sometimes, according to the general belief, reduced to the horror of cannibalism—the strong, of course, preying on the weak. Certain it is, they are driven to any extremity for food, and eat every insect, and every creeping thing, however loathsome and repulsive. Snails, lizards, ants—all are devoured with the readiness and greediness of mere animals.

In common with all the other Indians we had encountered since reaching the Pacific waters, these people use the Shoshonee or Snake language, which you will have occasion to remark, in the course of the narrative, is the universal language over a very extensive region.

On the evening of the 10th, I obtained, with the usual observations, a very excellent emersion of the first satellite, agreeing very nearly with the chronometer. From these observations, the longitude of the fort is $116^{\circ} 47' 00''$, latitude $43^{\circ} 49' 22''$, and elevation above the sea 2,100 feet.

Sitting by the fire on the river bank, and waiting for the immersion of the satellite, which did not take place until after midnight, we heard the monotonous song of the Indians, with which they accompany a certain game of which they are very fond. Of the poetry we could not judge, but the music was miserable.

October 11.—The morning was clear, with a light breeze from the east, and a temperature at sunrise of 33° . A part of a bullock purchased at the fort, together with the boat to assist him in crossing, was left here for Mr. Fitzpatrick, and at 11 o'clock we resumed our journey; and directly leaving the river, and crossing the artemisia plain, in several ascents we reached the foot of a ridge, where the road entered a dry sandy hollow, up which it continued to the head; and, crossing a dividing ridge, entered a similar one. We met here two poor emigrants (Irishmen), who had lost their horses two days since—probably stolen by the Indians; and were returning to the fort, in hopes to hear something of them there. They had recently had nothing to eat; and I halted to unpack an animal, and gave them meat for their dinner. In this hollow, the artemisia is partially displaced on the hill sides by grass; and descending it—miles,

about sunset we reached the *Rivière aux Malheurs* (the unfortunate or unlucky river), a considerable stream, with an average breadth of 50 feet, and, at this time, 18 inches depth of water.

The bottom lands were generally one and a half mile broad, covered principally with long dry grass; and we had difficulty to find sufficient good grass for the camp. With the exception of a bad place of a few hundred yards long, which occurred in rounding a point of hill to reach the ford of the river, the road during the day had been very good.

October 12.—The morning was clear and calm, and the thermometer at sunrise 23° . My attention was attracted by a smoke on the right side of the river, a little below the ford, where I found on the low bank, near the water, a considerable number of hot springs, in which the temperature of the water was 193° . The ground, which was too hot for the naked foot, was covered above and below the springs with an incrustation of common salt, very white and good, and fine-grained.

Leading for 5 miles up a broad dry branch of the Malheurs river, the road entered a sandy hollow, where the surface was rendered firm by the admixture of other rock; being good and level until arriving near the head of the ravine, where it became a little rocky, and we met with a number of sharp ascents over an undulating surface. Crossing here a dividing ridge, it became an excellent road of gradual descent down a very marked hollow; in which, after 10 miles, willows began to appear in the dry bed of a head of the *Rivière aux Bouleaux* (Birch river); and descending 7 miles, we found, at its junction with another branch, a little water, not very good or abundant, but sufficient in case of necessity for a camp. Crossing Birch river, we continued for about 4 miles across a point of hill; the country on the left being entirely mountainous, with no level spot to be seen; whence we descended to Snake river—here a fine-looking stream, with a large body of water and a smooth current; although we hear the roar, and see below us the commencement of rapids where it enters among the hills. It forms here a deep bay, with a low sand island in the midst; and its course among the mountains is agreeably exchanged for the black volcanic rock. The weather during the day had been very bright and extremely hot; but, as usual, so soon as the sun went down, it was necessary to put on overcoats.

I obtained this evening an observation of an emersion of the first satellite, and our observations of the evening place this encampment in latitude $44^{\circ} 17' 36''$, and longitude $116^{\circ} 56' 45''$, which is the mean of the results from the satellite and chronometer.

reached the *Rivière aux*
fortunate or unlucky river),
ream, with an average
nd, at this time, 18 inches

s were generally one and
covered principally with
d we had difficulty to find
as for the camp. With
ad place of a few hundred
occurred in rounding a
ach the ford of the river,
day had been very good.
e morning was clear and
mometer at sunrise 23°.
attracted by a smoke on the
ver, a little below the ford,
he low bank, near the wa-
number of hot springs, in
ture of the water was 193°.
h was too hot for the naked
bove and below the springs
on of common salt, very
hd fine-grained.

hiles up a broad dry branch
river, the road entered a
ere the surface was ren-
admixture of other rock ;
vel until arriving near the
e, where it became a little
t with a number of sharp
ndulating surface. Cross-
g ridge, it became an ex-
adual descent down a very
in which, after 10 miles,
appear in the dry bed of a
Rivière aux Bouleaux (Birch
ending 7 miles, we found,
th another branch, a little
ood or abundant, but suffi-
cessity for a camp. Cross-
we continued for about 4
nt of hill ; the country on
rely mountainous, with no
en ; whence we descended
ere a fine-looking stream,
y of water and a smooth
e we hear the roar, and see
mencement of rapids where
he hills. It forms here a
a low sand island in the
urse among the mountains
hanged for the black vol-
e weather during the day
right and extremely hot ;
soon as the sun went down,
to put on overcoats.

evening an observation of
e first satellite, and our ob-
evening place this encamp-
4° 17' 36", and longitude
hich is the mean of the re-
satellite and chronometer.

The elevation above the sea 1,880 feet. At this encampment, the grass is scanty and poor.

October 13.—The morning was bright, with the temperature at sunrise 28°. The horses had strayed off during the night, probably in search of grass ; and, after a considerable delay, we had succeeded in finding all but two, when, about 9 o'clock, we heard the sound of an Indian song and drum approaching ; and shortly after, three Cayuse Indians appeared in sight, bringing with them the two animals. They belonged to a party which had been on a buffalo hunt in the neighborhood of the Rocky mountains, and were hurrying home in advance. We presented them with some tobacco, and other things, with which they appeared well satisfied, and, moderating their pace, travelled in company with us.

We were now about to leave the valley of the great southern branch of the Columbia river, to which the absence of timber, and the scarcity of water, give the appearance of a desert, to enter a mountainous region where the soil is good, and in which the face of the country is covered with nutritious grasses and dense forest—land embracing many varieties of trees peculiar to the country, and on which the timber exhibits a luxuriance of growth unknown to the eastern part of the continent and to Europe. This mountainous region connects itself in the southward and westward with the elevated country belonging to the Cascade or California range ; and, as will be remarked in the course of the narrative, forms the eastern limit of the fertile and timbered lands along the desert and mountainous region included within the Great Basin—a term which I apply to the intermediate region between the Rocky mountains and the next range, containing many lakes, with their own system of rivers and creeks (of which the Great Salt is the principal), and which have no connection with the ocean, or the great rivers which flow into it. This Great Basin is yet to be adequately explored. And here, on quitting the banks of a sterile river, to enter on arable mountains, the remark may be made, that, on this western slope of our continent, the usual order or distribution of good and bad soil is often reversed ; the river and creek bottoms being often sterile, and darkened with the gloomy and barren artemisia ; while the mountain is often fertile, and covered with rich grass, pleasant to the eye, and good for flocks and herds.

Leaving entirely the Snake river, which is said henceforth to pursue its course through cañons, amidst rocky and impracticable mountains, where there is no possibility of travelling with animals, we ascended a long and somewhat steep hill ; and crossing

the dividing ridge, came down into the valley of *Burnt* river, which here looks like a hole among the hills. The average breadth of the stream here is 30 feet ; it is well fringed with the usual small timber ; and the soil in the bottoms is good, with better grass than we had lately been accustomed to see.

We now travelled through a very mountainous country ; the stream running rather in a ravine than a valley, and the road is decidedly bad and dangerous for single wagons, frequently crossing the stream where the water is sometimes deep ; and all the day the animals were fatigued in climbing up and descending a succession of steep ascents, to avoid the precipitous hill sides ; and the common trail, which leads along the mountain side at places where the river strikes the base, is sometimes bad even for a horseman. The mountains along this day's journey were composed, near the river, of a slaty calcareous rock in a metamorphic condition. It appears originally to have been a slaty sedimentary limestone, but its present condition indicates that it has been altered, and has become partially crystalline—probably from the proximity of volcanic rocks. But though travelling was slow and fatiguing to the animals, we were delighted with the appearance of the country, which was green and refreshing after our tedious journey down the parched valley of Snake river. The mountains were covered with good bunch grass (*festuca*) ; the water of the streams was cold and pure ; the bottoms were handsomely wooded with various kinds of trees ; and huge and lofty and picturesque precipices were displayed where the river cut through the mountains.

We found in the evening some good grass and rushes ; and encamped among large timber, principally birch, which had been recently burnt and blackened, and almost destroyed by fire. The night was calm and tolerably clear, with the thermometer at sunset at 59°. Our journey to-day was about 20 miles.

October 14.—The day was clear and calm, with a temperature at sunrise of 46°. After travelling about three miles up the valley, we found the river shut up by precipices in a kind of cañon, and the road makes a circuit over the mountains. In the afternoon we reached the river again, by another little ravine ; and, after travelling along it for a few miles, left it enclosed among rude mountains ; and, ascending a smaller branch, encamped on it about 5 o'clock, very much elevated above the valley. The view was everywhere limited by mountains, on which were no longer seen the black and barren rocks, but a fertile soil, with excellent grass, and partly well covered with pine. I have never seen a wagon road equally bad in the

same space, as this of yesterday and to-day. I noticed where one wagon had been overturned twice, in a very short distance; and it was surprising to me that those wagons which were in the rear, and could not have had much assistance, got through at all. Still, there is no mud; and the road has one advantage, in being perfectly firm. The day had been warm and very pleasant, and the night was perfectly clear.

October 15.—The thermometer at daylight was 42°, and at sunrise 40°; clouds, which were scattered over all the sky, disappeared with the rising sun. The trail did not much improve until we had crossed the dividing ground between the *Brulé* (Burnt) and Powder rivers. The rock displayed on the mountains, as we approached the summit, was a compact trap, decomposing on the exposed surfaces, and apparently an altered argillaceous sandstone, containing small crystalline nodules of anolcime, apparently filling cavities originally existing. From the summit here, the whole horizon shows high mountains; no high plain or level is to be seen; and on the left, from south around by the west to north, the mountains are black with pines; while, through the remaining space to the eastward, they are bald with the exception of some scattered pines. You will remark that we are now entering a region where all the elevated parts are covered with dense and heavy forests. From the dividing grounds we descended by a mountain road to Powder river, on an old bed of which we encamped. Descending from the summit, we enjoyed a picturesque view of high rocky mountains on the right, illuminated by the setting sun.

From the heights we had looked in vain for a well-known landmark on Powder river, which had been described to me by Mr. Payette as *l'arbre seul* (the lone tree); and, on arriving at the river, we found a fine tall pine stretched on the ground, which had been felled by some inconsiderate emigrant axe. It had been a beacon on the road for many years past. Our Cayuses had become impatient to reach their homes, and travelled on ahead to-day; and this afternoon we were visited by several Indians, who belonged to the tribes on the Columbia. They were on horseback, and were out on a hunting excursion, but had obtained no better game than a large grey hare, of which each had some six or seven hanging to his saddle. We were also visited by an Indian who had his lodge and family in the mountain to the left. He was in want of ammunition, and brought with him a beaver skin to exchange, and which he valued at six charges of powder and ball. I learned from him that there are very few of these animals remaining in this part of the country.

The temperature at sunset was 61°, and the evening clear. I obtained, with other observations, an immersion and emersion of the third satellite. Elevation 3,100 feet.

October 16.—For several weeks the weather in the daytime has been very beautiful, clear, and warm; but the nights, in comparison, are very cold. During the night there was ice a quarter of an inch thick in the lodge; and at daylight the thermometer was at 16°, and the same at sunrise; the weather being calm and clear. The annual vegetation now is nearly gone, almost all the plants being out of bloom.

Last night two of our horses had run off again, which delayed us until noon; and we made to-day but a short journey of 13 miles, the road being very good, and encamped in a fine bottom of Powder river.

The thermometer at sunset was at 61°, with an easterly wind, and partially clear sky; and the day has been quite pleasant and warm, though more cloudy than yesterday; and the sun was frequently faint, but it grew finer and clearer towards evening.

October 17.—Thermometer at sunrise 25°. The weather at daylight was fine, and the sky without a cloud; but these came up, or were formed with the sun, and at 7 were thick over all the sky. Just now, this appears to be the regular course—clear and brilliant during the night, and cloudy during the day. There is snow yet visible in the neighboring mountains, which yesterday extended along our route to the left, in a lofty and dark-blue range, having much the appearance of the Wind river mountains. It is probable that they have received their name of the *Blue mountains* from the dark-blue appearance given to them by the pines. We travelled this morning across the affluents to Powder river, the road being good, firm, and level; and the country became constantly more pleasant and interesting. The soil appeared to be very deep, and is black and extremely good, as well among the hollows of the hills on the elevated flats, as on the river bottoms; the vegetation being such as is usually found in good ground. The following analytical result shows the precise qualities of this soil, and will justify to science the character of fertility which the eye attributes to it.

Analysis of Powder river soil.

Silica	72.30
Alumina	6.25
Carbonate of lime	6.86
Carbonate of magnesia	4.62
Oxide of iron	1.20
Organic matter	4.50
Water and loss	4.27

100.00

at sunset was 61°, and I obtained, with other immersion and emersion of the thermometer.

Elevation 3,100 feet. For several weeks the daytime has been very beautiful and warm; but the nights, in winter, are very cold. During the night a quarter of an inch thick ice is deposited in the daylight the thermometer stands the same at sunrise; the sky is calm and clear. The annual snow is nearly gone, almost all the flowers are in bloom.

Our horses had run off and we were obliged to stay until noon; and we made a short journey of 13 miles, which was very good, and encamped in the Powder river.

At sunset was at 61°, with a light wind, and partially clear. The day has been quite pleasant, but more cloudy than yesterday. The sun was frequently faint, but cleared towards evening.

Thermometer at sunrise 25°. At daylight was fine, and the sun shone; but these came up, or rather the sun, and at 7 were obscured by the sky. Just now, this appears to be a regular course—clear and bright during the night, and cloudy during the day. It is snow yet visible in the mountains, which yesterday exposed the route to the left, in a lofty range, having much the appearance of the Wind river mountains. It is evident that they have received their snow from the dark mountains given to them by the pines.

On a morning across the affluents of the river, the road being good, and the country became pleasant and interesting. The soil appeared to be very deep, and is generally good, as well among the hills on the elevated bluffs, and the vegetation being generally found in good ground. The analytical result shows the character of this soil, and will justify the character of fertility which the soil possesses.

Analysis of Powder river soil.

.....	73.30
.....	6.25
.....	6.86
.....	4.62
.....	1.20
.....	4.50
.....	4.37
.....	100.00

From the waters of this stream, the road ascended by a good and moderate ascent to a dividing ridge, but immediately entered upon ground covered with fragments of an altered siliceous slate, which are in many places large, and render the road racking to a carriage. In this rock the planes of deposition are distinctly preserved, and the metamorphism is evidently due to the proximity of volcanic rocks. On either side, the mountains here are densely covered with tall and handsome trees; and, mingled with the green of a variety of pines, is the yellow of the European larch (*pinus larix*), which loses its leaves in the fall. From its present color, we were enabled to see that it forms a large proportion of the forests on the mountains, and is here a magnificent tree, attaining sometimes the height of 200 feet, which I believe is elsewhere unknown. About two in the afternoon we reached a high point of the dividing ridge, from which we obtained a good view of the *Grand Rond*—a beautiful level basin, or mountain valley, covered with good grass, on a rich soil, abundantly watered, and surrounded by high and well-timbered mountains; and its name descriptive of its form—the great circle. It is a place—one of the few we have seen in our journey so far—where a farmer would delight to establish himself, if he were content to live in the seclusion which it imposes. It is about 20 miles in diameter; and may, in time, form a superb county. Probably with the view of avoiding a circuit, the wagons had directly descended into the *Rond* by the face of a hill so very rocky and continuously steep as to be apparently impracticable; and, following down on their trail, we encamped on one of the branches of the *Grand Rond* river, immediately at the foot of the hill. I had remarked, in descending, some very white spots glistening on the plain, and, going out in that direction after we had encamped, I found them to be the bed of a dry salt lake, or marsh, very firm and bare, which was covered thickly with a fine white powder, containing a large quantity of carbonate of soda (thirty-three in one hundred parts).

The old grass had been lately burnt off from the surrounding hills, and, wherever the fire had passed, there was a recent growth of strong, green, and vigorous grass; and the soil of the level prairie, which sweeps directly up to the foot of the surrounding mountains, appears to be very rich, producing flax spontaneously and luxuriantly in various places.

Analysis of the *Grand Rond* soil.

Silica	70.81
Alumina	10.97
.....	100.00

Lime and magnesia	1.32
Oxide of iron	2.21
Vegetable matter, partly decomposed	8.16
Water and loss	5.46
Phosphate of lime	1.01
.....	100.00

The elevation of this encampment is 2,940 feet above the sea.

October 18.—It began to rain an hour before sunrise, and continued until 10 o'clock the sky entirely overcast, and the temperature at sunrise 48°.

We resumed our journey somewhat later than usual, travelling in a nearly north direction across this beautiful valley; and about noon reached a place on one of the principal streams, where I had determined to leave the emigrant trail, in the expectation of finding a more direct and better road across the Blue mountains. At this place the emigrants appeared to have held some consultation as to their further route, and finally turned directly off to the left; reaching the foot of the mountain in about three miles, which they ascended by a hill as steep and difficult as that by which we had yesterday descended to the *Rond*. Quitting, therefore, this road, which, after a very rough crossing, issues from the mountains by the heads of the *Umatilah* river, we continued our northern course across the valley, following an Indian trail which had been indicated to me by Mr. Payette, and encamped at the northern extremity of the *Grand Rond*, on a slough-like stream of very deep water, without any apparent current. There are some pines here on the low hills at the creek; and in the northwest corner of the *Rond* is a very heavy body of timber, which descends into the plain. The clouds, which had rested very low along the mountain sides during the day, rose gradually up in the afternoon; and in the evening the sky was almost entirely clear, with a temperature at sunset of 47°. Some indifferent observations placed the camp in longitude 117° 28' 26", latitude 45° 26' 47"; and the elevation was 2,600 feet above the sea.

October 19.—This morning the mountains were hidden by fog; there was a heavy dew during the night, in which the exposed thermometer at daylight stood at 32°, and at sunrise the temperature was 35°.

We passed out of the *Grand Rond* by a fine road along the creek, which, for a short distance, runs in a kind of rocky chasm. Crossing a low point, which was a little rocky, the trail conducted into the open valley of the stream—a handsome place for farms; the soil, even of the hills, being rich and black. Passing through a point of

pine, which bore evidences of being much frequented by the Indians, and in which the trees were sometimes apparently 200 feet high and 3 to 7 feet in diameter, we halted for a few minutes in the afternoon at the foot of the Blue mountains, on a branch of the Grand Rond river, at an elevation of 2,700 feet. Resuming our journey, we commenced the ascent of the mountain through an open pine forest of large and stately trees, among which the balsam pine made its appearance; the road being good, with the exception of one steep ascent, with a corresponding descent, which might both have been easily avoided by opening a way for a short distance through the timber. It would have been well had we encamped on the stream where we had halted below, as the night overtook us on the mountain, and we were obliged to encamp without water, and tie up the animals to the trees for the night. We had halted on a smooth open place of a narrow ridge, which descended very rapidly to a ravine or piney hollow, at a considerable distance below; and it was quite a pretty spot, had there been water near. But the fires at night look very cheerless after a day's march, when there is no preparation for supper going on; and, after sitting some time around the blazing logs, Mr. Preuss and Carson, with several others, volunteered to take the India rubber buckets and go down into the ravine in search of water. It was a very difficult way in the darkness down the slippery side of the steep mountain, and harder still to climb about half a mile up again; but they found the water, and the cup of coffee (which it enabled us to make) and bread were only enjoyed with greater pleasure.

At sunset the temperature was 46°; the evening remarkably clear; and I obtained an emersion of the first satellite, which does not give a good result, although the observation was a very good one. The chronometric longitude was 117° 28' 34", latitude 45° 38' 07", and we had ascended to an elevation of 3,830 feet. It appeared to have snowed yesterday on the mountains, their summits showing very white to-day.

October 20.—There was a heavy white frost during the night, and at sunrise the temperature was 37°.

The animals had eaten nothing during the night; and we made an early start, continuing our route among the pines, which were more dense than yesterday, and still retained their magnificent size. The larches cluster together in masses on the sides of the mountains, and their yellow foliage contrasts handsomely with the green of the balsam and other pines. After a few miles we ceased to see any pines, and the timber consisted of several varieties of spruce, larch, and balsam

pine, which have a regularly conical figure. These trees appeared from 60 to nearly 200 feet in height; the usual circumference being 10 to 12 feet, and in the pines sometimes 21 feet. In open places near the summit, these trees became less high and more branching, the conical form having a greater base. The instrument carriage occasioned much delay, it being frequently necessary to fell trees and remove the fallen timber. The trail we were following led up a long spur, with a very gradual and gentle rise.

At the end of three miles, we halted at an open place near the summit, from which we enjoyed a fine view over the mountainous country where we had lately travelled, to take a barometrical observation at the height of 4,460 feet.

After travelling occasionally through open places in the forest, we were obliged to cut a way through a dense body of timber, from which we emerged on an open mountain side, where we found a number of small springs, and encamped after a day's journey of 10 miles. Our elevation here was 5,000 feet.

October 21.—There was a very heavy white frost during the night, and the thermometer at sunrise was 30°.

We continued to travel through the forest, in which the road was rendered difficult by fallen trunks, and obstructed by many small trees, which it was necessary to cut down. But these are only accidental difficulties, which could easily be removed, and a very excellent road may be had through this pass, with no other than very moderate ascents or declivities. A laborious day, which had advanced us only six miles on our road, brought us in the afternoon to an opening in the forest, in which there was a fine mountain meadow, with good grass, and a large clear-water stream—one of the head branches of the *Umatilah* river. During this day's journey, the barometer was broken; and the elevations above the sea, hereafter given, depend upon the temperature of boiling water. Some of the white spruces which I measured to-day were twelve feet in circumference, and one of the larches ten; but eight feet was the average circumference of those measured along the road. I held in my hand a tape line as I walked along, in order to form some correct idea of the size of the timber. Their height appeared to be from 100 to 180, and perhaps 200 feet, and the trunks of the larches were sometimes 100 feet without a limb; but the white spruces were generally covered with branches nearly to the root. All these trees have their branches, particularly the lower ones, declining.

October 22.—The white frost this morning was like snow on the ground; the ice was a quarter of an inch thick on the creek, and the

regularly conical figure. The diameter of the trunk varied from 60 to nearly 200 feet, and the usual circumference being 100 feet. In the pines sometimes the trunk was more places near the summit, the trunk was less high and more conical, and of a more regular form having a greater diameter. The ascent occasioned by the frequent necessity of crossing the fallen timber. The trail led up a long spur, and the ascent was gradual and gentle rise.

After travelling three miles, we halted at an open summit, from which we had a view over the mountainous country. We had lately travelled, and our observation at the height

was occasionally through open prairie, and we were obliged to cut through a dense body of timber, from which we descended on an open mountain side, and found a number of small openings. After a day's journey the elevation here was 5,000 feet.

There was a very heavy frost at the night, and the thermometer was 30°.

To travel through the forest, the ascent was rendered difficult by being obstructed by many small trees, and as necessary to cut down many accidental difficulties, which had to be removed, and a very long time was had through this pass, and a very moderate ascent or descent, which had added miles on our road, brought us on to an opening in the forest, where there was a fine mountain meadow, and a large clearing of the head branches of the forest.

During this day's journey the thermometer was broken; and the elevations, hereafter given, depend on the boiling water. Some of the trees which I measured to be 100 feet in circumference, and some were eight feet in diameter; but the circumference of those measured was held in my hand a tape measure, in order to form some estimate of the size of the timber. Their diameters were from 100 to 180, and the trunks of the trees were 100 feet without a branch. The spruces were generally 100 feet nearly to the root, and their branches, particularly the lower, declining.

A white frost this morning covered the ground; the ice was a foot thick on the creek, and the

thermometer at sunrise was at 20°. But, in a few hours, the day became warm and pleasant, and our road over the mountains was delightful and full of enjoyment.

The trail passed sometimes through very thick young timber in which there was much cutting to be done; but, after travelling a few miles, the mountains became more bald, and we reached a point from which there was a very extensive view in the northwest. We were here on the western verge of the Blue mountains, long spurs of which, very precipitous on either side, extended down into the valley, the waters of the mountain roaring between them. On our right was a mountain plateau, covered with a dense forest; and to the westward, immediately below us, was the great *Nez Percé* (pierced nose) prairie, in which dark lines of timber indicated the course of many affluents to a considerable stream that was seen pursuing its way across the plain towards what appeared to be the Columbia river. This I knew to be the *Walahwah* river, and occasional spots along its banks, which resembled clearings, were supposed to be the mission or Indian settlements; but the weather was smoky and unfavorable to far views with the glass. The rock displayed here in the escarpments is a compact amorphous trap, which appears to constitute the mass of the Blue mountains in this latitude; and all the region of country through which we have travelled since leaving the Snake river has been the seat of violent and extensive igneous action. Along the Burnt river valley, the strata are evidently sedimentary rocks, altered by the intrusion of volcanic products, which in some instances have penetrated and essentially changed their original condition. Along our line of route from this point to the California mountains, there seems but little essential change. All our specimens of sedimentary rocks show them to be much altered, and volcanic productions appear to prevail throughout the whole intervening distance.

The road now led along the mountain side, around heads of the precipitous ravines; and, keeping men ahead to clear a road, we passed alternately through bodies of timber and small open prairies, and encamped in a large meadow, in view of the great prairie below.

At sunset the thermometer was at 40°, and the night was very clear and bright. Water was only to be had here by descending a bad ravine, into which we drove our animals, and had much trouble with them, in a very close growth of small pines. Mr. Preuss had walked ahead, and did not get into the camp this evening. The trees here maintained their size, and one of the black spruces measured 15 feet in circumference. In the neighborhood of the camp, pines have reappeared here among the timber.

October 23.—The morning was very clear; there had been a heavy white frost during the night, and at sunrise the thermometer was at 31°.

After cutting through two thick bodies of timber, in which I noticed some small trees of *hemlock spruce* (*perusse*), the forest became more open, and we had no longer any trouble to clear a way. The pines here were 11 or 12 feet in circumference, and about 110 feet high, and appeared to love the open grounds. The trail now led along one of the long spurs of the mountain, descending gradually towards the plain; and after a few miles travelling, we emerged finally from the forest, in full view of the plain below, and saw the snowy mass of Mount Hood, standing high out above the surrounding country, at the distance of 180 miles. The road along the ridge was excellent, and the grass very green and good; the old grass having been burnt off early in the autumn. About 4 o'clock in the afternoon we reached a little bottom on the *Walahwah* river, where we found Mr. Preuss, who yesterday had reached this place, and found himself too far in advance of the camp to return. The stream here has just issued from the narrow ravines, which are walled with precipices, in which the rock has a brown and more burnt appearance than above.

At sunset the thermometer was at 48°; and our position was in longitude 118° 00' 39", and in latitude 46° 53' 35".

The morning was clear, with a temperature at sunrise of 24°. Crossing the river, we travelled over a hilly country with good bunch grass; the river bottom, which generally contains the best soil in other countries, being here a sterile level of rocks and pebbles. We had found the soil in the Blue mountains to be of excellent quality, and it appeared also to be good here among the lower hills. Reaching a little eminence, over which the trail passed, we had an extensive view along the course of the river, which was divided and spread over its bottom in a net-work of water, receiving several other tributaries from the mountains. There was a band of several hundred horses grazing on the hills about two miles ahead; and as we advanced on the road we met other bands, which Indians were driving out to pasture also on the hills. True to its general character, the reverse of other countries, the hills and mountains here were rich in grass, the bottoms barren and sterile.

In six miles we crossed a principal fork, below which the scattered water of the river was gathered into one channel; and, passing on the way several unfinished houses, and some cleared patches, where corn and potatoes were cultivated, we reached, in about eight miles farther, the missionary establish-

ment of Dr. Whitman, which consisted, at this time, of one *adobe* house—i.e., built of unburnt bricks, as in Mexico.

I found Dr. Whitman absent on a visit to the *Dalles* of the Columbia; but had the pleasure to see a fine-looking large family of emigrants, men, women and children, in robust health, all indemnifying themselves for previous scanty fare, in a hearty consumption of potatoes, which are produced here of a remarkably good quality. We were disappointed in our expectation of obtaining corn meal or flour at this station, the mill belonging to the mission having been lately burnt down; but an abundant supply of excellent potatoes banished regrets, and furnished a grateful substitute for bread. A small town of Nez Percé Indians gave an inhabited and even a populous appearance to the station; and, after remaining about an hour, we continued our route, and encamped on the river about four miles below, passing on the way an emigrant encampment.

Temperature at sunset, 49°.

October 25.—The weather was pleasant, with a sunrise temperature of 36°. Our road to-day had in it nothing of interest; and the country offered to the eye only a sandy, undulating plain, through which a scantily timbered river takes its course. We halted about three miles above the mouth, on account of grass; and the next morning arrived at the Nez Percé fort, one of the trading establishments of the Hudson Bay Company, a few hundred yards above the junction of the *Walahwah* with the Columbia river. Here we had the first view of this river, and found it about 1,200 yards wide, and presenting the appearance of a fine navigable stream. We made our camp in a little grove of willows on the *Walahwah*, which are the only trees to be seen in the neighborhood; but were obliged to send the animals back to the encampment we had left, as there was scarcely a blade of grass to be found. The post is on the bank of the Columbia, on a plain of bare sands, from which the air was literally filled with clouds of dust and sand, during one of the few days we remained here; this place being one of the several points on the river which are distinguished for prevailing high winds, which come from the sea. The appearance of the post and country was without interest, except that we here saw, for the first time, the great river on which the course of events for the last half century has been directing attention and conferring historical fame. The river is, indeed, a noble object, and has here attained its full magnitude. About nine miles above, and in sight from the heights about the post, is the junction of the two great forks which constitute the main stream—that on which we

had been travelling from Fort Hall, and known by the names of Lewis's fork, Shoshonee, and Snake river; and the North fork, which has retained the name of Columbia as being the main stream.

We did not go up to the junction, being pressed for time; but the union of two large streams, coming one from the southeast, and the other from the northeast, and meeting in what may be treated as the geographical centre of the Oregon valley, thence doubling the volume of water to the ocean, while opening two great lines of communication with the interior continent, constitutes a feature in the map of the country which cannot be overlooked; and it was probably in reference to this junction of waters, and these lines of communication, that this post was established. They are important lines, and, from the structure of the country, must for ever remain so—one of them leading to the South Pass, and to the valley of the Mississippi; the other to the pass at the head of the Athabasca river, and to the countries drained by the waters of the Hudson Bay. The British fur companies now use both lines; the Americans, in their emigration to Oregon, have begun to follow the one which leads towards the United States. Bateaux from tide water ascend to the junction, and thence high up the North fork, or Columbia. Land conveyance only is used upon the line of Lewis's fork. To the emigrants to Oregon, the Nez Percé is a point of interest, as being, to those who choose it, the termination of their overland journey. The broad expanse of the river here invites them to embark on its bosom; and the lofty trees of the forest furnish the means of doing so.

From the South Pass to this place is about 1,000 miles; and as it is about the same distance from that pass to the Missouri river at the mouth of the Kansas, it may be assumed that 2,000 miles is the necessary land travel in crossing from the United States to the Pacific ocean on this line. From the mouth of the Great Platte it would be about 100 miles less.

Mr. McKinley, the commander of the post, received us with great civility; and both to myself, and the heads of the emigrants who were there at the time, extended the rights of hospitality in a comfortable dinner to which he invited us.

By a meridional altitude of the sun, the only observation that the weather permitted us to obtain, the mouth of the *Walahwah* river is in latitude 46° 03' 46"; and, by the road we had travelled, 612 miles from Fort Hall. At the time of our arrival, a considerable body of the emigrants under the direction of Mr. Applegate, a man of considerable resolution and energy, had nearly completed the building of a number of

ling from Fort Hall, and
ames of Lewis's fork, Sho-
ko river; and the North fork.
ned the name of Columbia
in stream.

o up to the junct'on, being
; but the union of two large
one from the southeast, and
he northeast, and meeting in
reated as the geographical
egon valley, thence doubling
water to the ocean, while
reat lines of communication
or continent, constitutes a
inap of the country which
looked; and it was probably
this junction of waters, and
ommunication, that this post

They are important lines,
ructure of the country, must
so—one of them leading to
s, and to the valley of the
other to the pass at the head
a river, and to the countries
waters of the Hudson Bay.
r companies now use both
ricans, in their emigration to
egun to follow the one which
he United States. Bateaus
ascend to the junction, and
the North fork, or Columbia.
ce only is used upon the line
t. To the emigrants to Ore-
ercé is a point of interest, as
who choose it, the termination
d journey. The broad ex-
er here invites them to em-
m; and the lofty trees of the
ie means of doing so.

h Pass to this place is about
d as it is about the same
at pass to the Missouri river
the Kansas, it may be as-
0 miles is the necessary land
g from the United States to
n on this line. From the
reat Platte it would be about

y, the commander of the post,
n great civility; and both to
heads of the emigrants who
e time, extended the rights
n a comfortable dinner to
us.

al altitude of the sun, the
that the weather permitted
mouth of the Wahwahwah
le 46° 03' 46"; and, by the
velled, 612 miles from Fort
me of our arrival, a con-
of the emigrants under the
Applegate, a man of con-
ion and energy, had nearly
building of a number of

Mackinaw boats, in which they proposed to continue their further voyage down the Columbia. I had seen, in descending the Wahwahwah river, a fine drove of several hundred cattle, which they had exchanged for Californian cattle, to be received at Vancouver, and which are considered a very inferior breed. The other portion of the emigration had preferred to complete their journey by land along the banks of the Columbia, taking their stock and wagons with them.

Having reinforced our animals with eight fresh horses, hired from the post, and increased our stock of provisions with dried salmon, potatoes, and a little beef, we resumed our journey down the left bank of the Columbia, being guided on our road by an intelligent Indian boy, whom I had engaged to accompany us as far as the Dalles.

From an elevated point over which the road led, we obtained another far view of Mount Hood, 150 miles distant. We obtained on the river bank an observation of the sun at noon, which gave for the latitude 45° 58' 08". The country to-day was very unprepossessing, and our road bad; and as we toiled slowly along through deep loose sands, and over fragments of black volcanic rock, our laborious travelling was strongly contrasted with the rapid progress of Mr. Applegate's fleet of boats, which suddenly came gliding swiftly down the broad river, which here chanced to be tranquil and smooth. At evening we encamped on the river bank, where there was very little grass, and less timber. We frequently met Indians on the road, and they were collected at every favorable spot along the river.

October 29.—The road continued along the river, and in the course of the day Mount St. Helens, another snowy peak of the Cascade range, was visible. We crossed the Umtilah river at a fall near its mouth. This stream is of the same class as the Wahwahwah river, with a bed of volcanic rock, in places split into fissures. Our encampment was similar to that of yesterday: there was very little grass, and no wood. The Indians brought us some pieces for sale, which were purchased to make our fires.

October 31.—By observation, our camp is in latitude 45° 50' 05", and longitude 119° 23' 18". The night has been cold, and we have white frost this morning, with a temperature at daylight of 25°, and at sunrise of 24°. The early morning was very clear, and the stars bright; but, as usual since we are on the Columbia, clouds formed immediately with the rising sun. The day continued fine, the east being covered with scattered clouds, but the west remaining clear; showing the remarkable cone-like peak of Mount Hood brightly drawn against

the sky. This was in view all day in the southwest, but no other peaks of the range were visible. Our road was a bad one, of very loose deep sand. We met on the way a party of Indians unusually well dressed, wearing clothes of civilized texture and form. They appeared intelligent, and, in our slight intercourse, impressed me with the belief that they possessed some aptitude for acquiring languages.

We continued to travel along the river, the stream being interspersed with many sand bars (it being the season of low water) and with many islands, and an apparently good navigation. Small willows were the only wood; rock and sand the prominent geological feature. The rock of this section is a very compact and tough basalt, occurring in strata which have the appearance of being broken into fragments, assuming the form of columnar hills, and appearing always in escarpments, with the broken fragments strewn at the base and over the adjoining country.

We made a late encampment on the river, and used to-night *purshia tridentata* for fire wood. Among the rocks which formed the bank, was very good green grass. Latitude 45° 44' 23", longitude 119° 45' 09".

November 1.—Mount Hood is glowing in the sunlight this morning, and the air is pleasant, with a temperature of 38°. We continued down the river, and, passing through a pretty green valley, bounded by high precipitous rocks, encamped at the lower end.

On the right shore, the banks of the Columbia are very high and steep; the river is 1,690 feet broad, and dark bluffs of rock give it a picturesque appearance.

November 2.—The river here entered among bluffs, leaving no longer room for a road; and we accordingly left it, and took a more inland way among the river hills; on which we had no sooner entered, than we found a great improvement in the country. The sand had disappeared, and the soil was good, and covered with excellent grass, although the surface was broken into high hills, with uncommonly deep valleys. At noon we crossed John Day's river, a clear and beautiful stream, with a swift current and a bed of rolled stones. It is sunk in a deep valley, which is characteristic of all the streams in this region; and the hill we descended to reach it well deserves the name of mountain. Some of the emigrants had encamped on the river, and others at the summit of the farther hill, the ascent of which had probably cost their wagons a day's labor; and others again had halted for the night a few miles beyond, where they had slept without water. We also encamped in a grassy hollow without water; but as we

had been forewarned of this privation by the guide, the animals had all been watered at the river, and we had brought with us a sufficient quantity for the night.

November 3.—After two hours' ride through a fertile, hilly country, covered as all the upland here appears to be with good green grass, we descended again into the river bottom, along which we resumed our sterile road, and in about four miles reached the ford of the Fall river (*Rivière aux Chutes*), a considerable tributary to the Columbia. We had heard on reaching the Nez Percé fort, a repetition of the account in regard to the unsettled character of the Columbia Indians at the present time; and to our little party they had at various points manifested a not very friendly disposition, in several attempts to steal our horses. At this place I expected to find a badly disposed band, who had plundered a party of 14 emigrant men a few days before, and taken away their horses; and accordingly we made the necessary preparations for our security, but happily met with no difficulty.

The river was high, divided into several arms, with a rocky island at its outlet into the Columbia, which at this place it rivalled in size, and apparently deserved its highly characteristic name, which is received from one of its many falls some forty miles up the river. It entered the Columbia with a roar of falls and rapids, and is probably a favorite fishing station among the Indians, with whom both banks of the river were populous; but they scarcely paid any attention to us. The ford was very difficult at this time, and, had they entertained any bad intentions, they were offered a good opportunity to carry them out as I drove directly into the river, and during the crossing the howitzer was occasionally several feet under water, and a number of the men appeared to be more often below than above. Our guide was well acquainted with the ford, and we succeeded in getting everything safe over to the left bank. We delayed here only a short time to put the gun in order, and, ascending a long mountain hill, left both rivers, and resumed our route again among the interior hills.

The roar of the *Falls of the Columbia* is heard from the heights, where we halted a few moments to enjoy a fine view of the river below. In the season of high water it would be a very interesting object to visit, in order to witness what is related of the annual submerging of the fall under the waters which back up from the basin below, constituting a great natural lock at this place. But time had become an object of serious consideration; and the Falls, in their present state, had been seen and described by many.

After a day's journey of 17 miles, we encamped among the hills on a little clear

stream, where, as usual, the Indians immediately gathered round us. Among them was a very old man, almost blind from age, with long and very white hair. I happened of my own accord to give this old man a present of tobacco, and was struck with the impression which my unpropitiated notice made on the Indians, who appeared in a remarkable manner acquainted with the real value of goods, and to understand the equivalents of trade. At evening, one of them spoke a few words to his people, and, telling me that we need entertain no uneasiness in regard to our animals, as none of them would be disturbed, they went all quietly away. In the morning, when they again came to the camp, I expressed to them the gratification we felt at their reasonable conduct, making them a present of some large knives and a few smaller articles.

November 4.—The road continued among the hills, and, reaching an eminence, we saw before us, watered by a clear stream, a tolerably large valley, through which the trail passed.

In comparison with the Indians of the Rocky mountains and the great eastern plain, these are disagreeably dirty in their habits. Their huts were crowded with half-naked women and children, and the atmosphere within anything but pleasant to persons who had just been riding in the fresh morning air. We were somewhat amused with the scanty dress of one woman, who, in common with the others, rushed out of the huts on our arrival, and who, in default of other covering, used a child for a fig leaf.

The road in about half an hour passed near an elevated point, from which we overlooked the valley of the Columbia for many miles, and saw in the distance several houses surrounded by fields, which a chief, who had accompanied us from the village, pointed out to us as the Methodist missionary station.

In a few miles we descended to the river, which we reached at one of its remarkably interesting features, known as the *Dalles of the Columbia*. The whole volume of the river at this place passed between the walls of a chasm, which has the appearance of having been rent through the basaltic strata which form the valley rock of the region. At the narrowest place we found the breadth, by measurement, 58 yards, and the average height of the walls above the water 25 feet; forming a trough between the rocks—whence the name, probably applied by a Canadian voyageur. The mass of water, in the present low state of the river, passed swiftly between, deep and black, and curled into many small whirlpools and counter currents, but unbroken by foam, and so still that scarcely the sound of a ripple was heard. The rock, for a considerable distance from the river,

as usual, the Indians inme
d round us. Among them
man, almost blind from age,
ery white hair. I happened
rd to give this old man a pre-
and was struck with the in-
my unproportioned notice made
who appeared in a remarka-
ainted with the real value of
derstand the equivalents of
ing, one of them spoke a few
ple, and, telling me that we
o uneasiness in regard to our
e of them would be disturbed,
ictly away. In the morning,
me came to the camp, I ex-
the gratification we felt at
conduct, making them a pre-
ge knives and a few smaller

The road continued among
aching an eminence, we saw
ered by a clear stream, a
valley, through which the

n with the Indians of the
ins and the great eastern
disagreeably dirty in their
huts were crowded with half-
and children, and the atmo-
s anything but pleasant to per-
s been riding in the fresh
We were somewhat amused
dress of one woman, who, in
e others, rushed out of the
val, and who, in default of
used a child for a fig leaf.
out half an hour passed near
t, from which we overlooked
o Columbia for many miles,
distance several houses sur-
s, which a chief, who had
from the village, pointed out
hodist missionary station.
we descended to the river,
d at one of its remarkably in-
s, known as the Dalles of the
whole volume of the river at
d between the walls of a
s the appearance of having
h the basaltic strata which
ock of the region. At the
ve found the breadth, by mea-
ds, and the average height
ve the water 25 feet; form-
reen the rocks—whence the
plied by a Canadian voya-
e of water, in the present
river, passed swiftly be-
black, and curled into many
and counter currents, but
e, and so still the velocity
ope was near. The rock,
e distance from the river.

was worn over a large portion of its surface
into circular holes and well-like cavities, by
the abrasion of the river, which, at the sea-
son of high waters, is spread out over the
adjoining bottoms.

In the recent passage through this chasm,
an unfortunate event had occurred to Mr. Ap-
plegate's party, in the loss of one of their
boats, which had been carried under water in
the midst of the Dalles, and two of Mr. Applegate's children and one man drowned. This
misfortune was attributed only to want of
skill in the steersman, as at this season there
is no impediment to navigation; although
the place is entirely impassable at high wa-
ter, when boats pass safely over the great
falls above, in the submerged state in which
they then find themselves.

The basalt here is precisely the same as
that which constitutes the rock of the valley
higher up the Columbia, being very compact,
with a few round cavities.

We passed rapidly three or four miles
down the level valley, and encamped near
the mission. The character of the forest
growth here changed, and we found our-
selves, with pleasure, again among oaks and
other forest trees of the east, to which we
had long been strangers; and the hospitable
and kind reception with which we were wel-
comed among our country people at the mis-
sion aided the momentary illusion of home.

Two good-looking wooden dwelling houses,
and a large school house, with stables, barn,
and garden, and large cleared fields between
the houses and the river bank, on which
were scattered the wooden huts of an Indian
village, gave to the valley the cheerful and
busy air of civilisation, and had in our eyes
an appearance of abundant and enviable com-
fort.

Our land journey found here its western
termination. The delay involved in getting
our camp to the right bank of the Columbia,
and in opening a road through the contin-
uous forest to Vancouver, rendered a journey
along the river impracticable; and on this
side the usual road across the mountain re-
quired strong and fresh animals, there being
an interval of three days in which they could
obtain no food. I therefore wrote immedi-
ately to Mr. Fitzpatrick, directing him to
abandon the carts at the Wahwahwah mis-
sionary station, and, as soon as the necessary
pack saddles could be made, which his party
required, meet me at the Dalles, from which
point I proposed to commence our homeward
journey. The day after our arrival being
Sunday, no business could be done at the
mission; but on Monday Mr. Perkins assist-
ed me in procuring from the Indians a large
canoe, in which I designed to complete our
journey to Vancouver, where I expected to
obtain the necessary supply of provisions

and stores for our winter journey. Three
Indians, from the family to whom the canoe
belonged, were engaged to assist in working
her during the voyage, and, with them, our
water party consisted of Mr. Preuss and my-
self, with Bernier and Jacob Dodson. In
charge of the party which was to remain at
the Dalles I left Carson, with instructions to
occupy the people in making pack saddles
and refitting their equipage. The village
from which we were to take the canoe was
on the right bank of the river, about ten
miles below, at the mouth of the Tinanens
creek; and while Mr. Preuss proceeded
down the river with the instruments, in a
little canoe paddled by two Indians, Mr. Per-
kins accompanied me with the remainder of
the party by land. The last of the emigrants
had just left the Dalles at the time of our ar-
rival, travelling some by water and others by
land, making ark-like rafts, on which they
had embarked their families and household,
with their large wagons and other furniture,
while their stock were driven along the
shore.

For about five miles below the Dalles, the
river is narrow, and probably very deep; but
during this distance it is somewhat open,
with grassy bottoms on the left. Entering,
then, among the lower mountains of the
Cascade range, it assumes a general charac-
ter, and high and steep rocky hills shut it in
on either side, rising abruptly in places to
the height of 1,500 feet above the water, and
gradually acquiring a more mountainous
character as the river approaches the Cas-
cades.

After an hour's travel, when the sun was
nearly down, we searched along the shore
for a pleasant place, and halted to prepare
supper. We had been well supplied by our
friends at the mission with delicious salted
salmon, which had been taken at the fattest
season; also, with potatoes, bread, coffee,
and sugar. We were delighted at a change
in our mode of travelling and living. The
canoe sailed smoothly down the river: at
night we encamped upon the shore, and a
plentiful supply of comfortable provisions
supplied the first of wants. We enjoyed the
contrast which it presented to our late toil-
some marchings, our night watchings, and
our frequent privation of food. We were a
motley group, but all happy: three unknown
Indians; Jacob, a colored man; Mr. Preuss,
a German; Bernier, creole French; and
myself.

Being now upon the ground explored by
the South Sea expedition under Captain
Wilkes, and having accomplished the object
of uniting my survey with his, and thus pre-
sents a connected exploration from the
Mississippi to the Pacific, and the winter be-
ing at hand, I deemed it necessary to econo-

mize time by voyaging in the night, as is customary here, to avoid the high winds, which rise with the morning, and decline with the day.

Accordingly, after an hour's halt, we again embarked, and resumed our pleasant voyage down the river. The wind rose to a gale after several hours; but the moon was very bright, and the wind was fair, and the canoe glided rapidly down the stream, the waves breaking into foam alongside; and our night voyage, as the wind bore us rapidly along between the dark mountains, was wild and interesting. About midnight we put to the shore on a rocky beach, behind which was a dark-looking pine forest. We built up large fires among the rocks, which were in large masses round about; and, arranging our blankets on the most sheltered places we could find, passed a delightful night.

After an early breakfast, at daylight we resumed our journey, the weather being clear and beautiful, and the river smooth and still. On either side the mountains are all pine-timbered, rocky, and high. We were now approaching one of the marked features of the lower Columbia, where the river forms a great *cascade*, with a series of rapids, in breaking through the range of mountains to which the lofty peaks of Mount Hood and St. Helens belong, and which rise as great pillars of snow on either side of the passage. The main branch of the *Sacramento* river, and the *Tlamath*, issue in cascades from this range; and the Columbia, breaking through it in a succession of cascades, gives the idea of cascades to the whole range; and hence the name of *CASCADE RANGE*, which it bears, and distinguishes it from the Coast Range lower down. In making a short turn to the south, the river forms the cascades in breaking over a point of agglomerated masses of rock, leaving a handsome bay to the right, with several rocky pine-covered islands, and the mountains sweep at a distance around a cove where several small streams enter the bay. In less than an hour we halted on the left bank, about five minutes' walk above the cascades, where there were several Indian huts, and where our guides signified it was customary to hire Indians to assist in making the *portage*. When travelling with a boat as light as a canoe, which may easily be carried on the shoulders of the Indians, this is much the better side of the river for the portage, as the ground here is very good and level, being a handsome bottom, which I remarked was covered (as was now always the case along the river) with a growth of green and fresh-looking grass. It was long before we could come to an understanding with the Indians; but at length, when they had first received the price of

their assistance in goods, they went vigorously to work; and, in a shorter time than had been occupied in making our arrangements, the canoe, instruments, and baggage, were carried through (a distance of about half a mile) to the bank below the main cascade, where we again embarked, the water being white with foam among ugly rocks, and boiling into a thousand whirlpools. The boat passed with great rapidity, crossing and recrossing in the eddies of the current. After passing through about two miles of broken water, we ran some wild looking rapids, which are called the Lower Rapids, being the last on the river, which below is tranquil and smooth—a broad, magnificent stream. On a low broad point on the right bank of the river, at the lower end of these rapids, were pitched many tents of the emigrants, who were waiting here for their friends from above, or for boats and provisions which were expected from Vancouver. In our passage down the rapids, I had noticed their camps along the shore, or transporting their goods across the portage. This portage makes a head of navigation, ascending the river. It is about two miles in length; and above, to the Dalles, is 45 miles of smooth and good navigation.

We glided on without further interruption between very rocky and high steep mountains, which sweep along the river valley at a little distance, covered with forests of pine, and showing occasionally lofty escarpments of red rock. Nearer the shore is bordered by steep escarped hills and huge vertical rocks, from which the waters of the mountain reach the river in a variety of beautiful falls, sometimes several hundred feet in height. Occasionally along the river occurred pretty bottoms, covered with the greenest verdure of the spring. To a professional farmer, however, it does not offer many places of sufficient extent to be valuable for agriculture; and after passing a few miles below the Dalles, I had scarcely seen a place on the south shore where wagons could get to the river. The beauty of the scenery was heightened by the continuance of very delightful weather, resembling the Indian summer of the Atlantic. A few miles below the cascades, we passed a singular isolated hill; and in the course of the next six miles occurred five very pretty falls from the heights on the left bank, one of them being of a very picturesque character; and towards sunset we reached a remarkable point of rocks, distinguished, on account of prevailing high winds, and the delay it frequently occasions to the canoe navigation, by the name of *Cape Horn*. It borders the river in a high wall of rock, which comes boldly down into deep water; and in violent gales down the river, and from the opposite shore.

goods, they went vigor-
d, in a shorter time than
l in making our arrange-
instruments, and baggage,
ugh (a distance of about
the bank below the main
ve again embarked, the
e with foam among ugly
g into a thousand whirl-
passed with great rapidity,
ssing in the eddies of the
assing through about two
water, we ran some wild
ich are called the Lower
last on the river, which
nd smooth—a broad, mag-
On a low broad point on
the river, at the lower end
ere pitched many tents of
ho were waiting here for
above, or for boats and
were expected from Van-
assage down the rapids, I
camps along the shore, or
goods across the portage.
kes a head of navigation,
er. It is about two miles
above, to the Dalles, is 45
nd good navigation.
without further interrup-
ty and high steep moun-
p along the river valley at
covered with forests of pine,
asionally lofty escarpments
r, the shore is bordered
d hills and huge vertical
the waters of the moun-
er in a variety of beautiful
several hundred feet in
ally along the river occur-
e, covered with the green-
spring. To a profession-
r, it does not offer many
t extent to be valuable for
after passing a few miles
I had scarcely seen a place
where wagons could get
e beauty of the scenery
y the continuance of very
r, resembling the Indian
atlantic. A few miles be-
we passed a singular iso-
the course of the next six
e very pretty falls from the
t bank, one of them being
uo character; and towards
d a remarkable point of
ed, on account of prevail-
the delay it frequently
canoe navigation, by the
orn. It borders the river
rock, which comes boldly
ater; and in violent gales
d from the opposite shore.

which is the prevailing direction of strong winds, the water is dashed against it with considerable violence. It appears to form a serious obstacle to canoe travelling; and I was informed by Mr. Perkins, that in a voyage up the river he had been detained two weeks at this place, and was finally obliged to return to Vancouver.

The winds of this region deserve a particular study. They blow in currents, which show them to be governed by fixed laws; and it is a problem how far they may come from the mountains, or from the ocean through the breaks in the mountains which let out the river.

The hills here had lost something of their rocky appearance, and had already begun to decline. As the sun went down, we searched along the river for an inviting spot; and, finding a clean rocky beach, where some large dry trees were lying on the ground, we ran our boat to the shore; and, after another comfortable supper, ploughed our way along the river in darkness. Heavy clouds covered the sky this evening, and the wind began to sweep in gusts among the trees, as if bad weather were coming. As we advanced, the hills on both sides grew constantly lower; on the right, retreating from the shore, and forming a somewhat extensive tract of intermingled prairie and wooded land. In the course of a few hours, an opposite to a small stream coming in from the north, called the *Tea Prairie* river, the highlands on the left declined to the plains, and three or four miles below disappeared entirely on both sides, and the river entered the low country. The river had gradually expanded; and when we emerged from the highlands, the opposite shores were so distant as to appear indistinct in the uncertainty of the light. About 10 o'clock our pilots halted, apparently to confer about the course; and, after a little hesitation, pulled directly across an open expansion of the river, where the waves were somewhat rough for a canoe, the wind blowing very fresh. Much to our surprise, a few minutes afterwards we ran aground. Backing off our boat, we made repeated trials at various places to cross what appeared to be a point of shifting sand bars, where we had attempted to shorten the way by a cut-off. Finally, one of our Indians got into the water, and waded about until he found a channel sufficiently deep, through which we waded along after him, and in a few minutes again entered the deep water below. As we paddled rapidly down the river, we heard the noise of a saw mill at work on the right bank; and, letting our boat float quietly down, we listened with pleasure to the unusual sounds; and before midnight encamped on the bank of the river, about a mile above

Fort Vancouver. Our fine dry weather had given place to a dark cloudy night. At midnight it began to rain; and we found ourselves suddenly in the gloomy and humid season, which, in the narrow region lying between the Pacific and the Cascade mountains, and for a considerable distance along the coast, supplies the place of winter.

In the morning, the first object that attracted my attention was the barque *Columbia*, lying at anchor near the landing. She was about to start on her voyage to England, and was now ready for sea; being detained only in waiting the arrival of the express bateaus, which descend the *Columbia* and its north fork with the overland mail from Canada and Hudson's bay, which had been delayed beyond their usual time. I immediately waited upon Dr. McLaughlin, the executive officer of the Hudson Bay Company, in the territory west of the Rocky mountains, who received me with the courtesy and hospitality for which he has been eminently distinguished, and which makes a forcible and delightful impression on a traveller from the long wilderness from which we had issued. I was immediately supplied by him with the necessary stores and provisions to refit and support my party in our contemplated winter journey to the States; and also with a Mackinaw boat and canoes, manned with Canadian and Iroquois voyageurs and Indians, for their transportation to the Dalles of the *Columbia*. In addition to this efficient kindness in furnishing me with these necessary supplies, I received from him a warm and gratifying sympathy in the suffering which his great experience led him to anticipate for us in our homeward journey, and a letter of recommendation and credit for any officers of the Hudson Bay Company into whose posts we might be driven by unexpected misfortune.

Of course, the future supplies for my party were paid for, bills on the Government of the United States being readily taken; but every hospitable attention was extended to me, and I accepted an invitation to take a room in the fort, "and to make myself at home while I stayed."

I found many American emigrants at the fort; others had already crossed the river into their land of promise—the *Walahmette* valley. Others were daily arriving; and all of them had been furnished with shelter, so far as it could be afforded by the buildings connected with the establishment. Necessary clothing and provisions (the latter to be afterwards returned in kind from the produce of their labor) were also furnished. This friendly assistance was of very great value to the emigrants, whose families were otherwise exposed to much suffering in the winter rains, which had now commenced. At the

same time that they were in want of all the common necessaries of life. Those who had taken a water conveyance at the Nez Percé fort continued to arrive safely, with no other accident than has been already mentioned. The party which had crossed over the Cascade mountains were reported to have lost a number of their animals; and those who had driven their stock down the Columbia had brought them safely in, and found for them a ready and very profitable market, and were already proposing to return to the States in the spring for another supply.

In the space of two days our preparations had been completed, and we were ready to set out on our return. It would have been very gratifying to have gone down to the Pacific, and, solely in the interest and in the love of geography, to have seen the ocean on the western as well as on the eastern side of the continent, so as to give a satisfactory completeness to the geographical picture which had been formed in our minds; but the rainy season had now regularly set in, and the air was filled with fogs and rain, which left no beauty in any scenery, and obstructed observations. The object of my instructions had been entirely fulfilled in having connected our reconnoissance with the surveys of Captain Wilkes; and although it would have been agreeable and satisfactory to terminate here also our ruder astronomical observations, I was not, for such a reason, justified to make a delay in waiting for favorable weather.

Near sunset of the 10th, the boats left the fort, and encamped after making only a few miles. Our flotilla consisted of a Mackinaw barge and three canoes—one of them that in which we had descended the river; and a party in all of twenty men. One of the emigrants, Mr. Burnet, of Missouri, who had left his family and property at the Dalles, availed himself of the opportunity afforded by the return of our boats to bring them down to Vancouver. This gentleman, as well as the Messrs. Applegate, and others of the emigrants whom I saw, possessed intelligence and character, with the moral and intellectual stamina, as well as the enterprise, which give solidity and respectability to the foundation of colonies.

November 11.—The morning was rainy and misty. We did not move with the practised celerity of my own camp; and it was near 9 o'clock when our motley crew had finished their breakfast and were ready to start. Once afloat, however, they worked steadily and well, and we advanced at a good rate up the river; and in the afternoon a breeze sprung up, which enabled us to add a sail to the oars. At evening we encamped on a warm-looking beach, on the right bank, at the foot of the high river hill, immediately

at the lower end of Cape Horn. On the opposite shore is said to be a singular hole in the mountain, from which the Indians believe comes the wind producing these gales. It is called the Devil's hole; and the Indians, I was told, have been resolving to send down one of their slaves to explore the region below. At dark, the wind shifted into its stormy quarter, gradually increasing to a gale from the southwest; and the sky becoming clear, I obtained a good observation of an emersion of the first satellite; the result of which, being an absolute observation, I have adopted for the longitude of the place.

November 12.—The wind during the night had increased to so much violence, that the broad river this morning was angry and white; the waves breaking with considerable force against this rocky wall of the cape. Our old Iroquois pilot was unwilling to risk the boats around the point, and I was not disposed to hazard the stores of our voyage for the delay of a day. Further observations were obtained during the day, giving for the latitude of the place $45^{\circ} 33' 09''$; and the longitude, obtained from the satellite, is $122^{\circ} 6' 15''$.

November 13.—We had a day of disagreeable and cold rain; and, late in the afternoon, began to approach the rapids of the cascades. There is here a high timbered island on the left shore, below which, in descending, I had remarked in a bluff on the river the extremities of trunks of trees appearing to be imbedded in the rock. Landing here this afternoon, I found in the lower part of the escarpment a stratum of coal and forest trees, imbedded between strata of altered clay containing the remains of vegetables, the leaves of which indicate that the plants were dicotyledonous. Among these, the stems of some of the ferns are not mineralized, but merely charred, retaining still their vegetable structure and substance; and in this condition a portion also of the trees remain. The indurated appearance and compactness of the strata, as well, perhaps, as the mineralized condition of the coal, are probably due to igneous action. Some portions of the coal precisely resemble in aspect the canal coal of England, and, with the accompanying fossils, have been referred to the tertiary formation.

These strata appear to rest upon a mass of agglomerated rock, being but a few feet above the water of the river; and over them is the escarpment of perhaps eighty feet, rising gradually in the rear towards the mountains. The wet and cold evening, and near approach of night, prevented me from making any other than a very slight examination.

The current was now very swift, and we were obliged to *cordelle* the boat along the

of Cape Horn. On the op-
 ed to be a singular hole in
 om which the Indians be-
 ind producing these gales.
 vil's hole; and the Indians,
 en resolving to send down
 s to explore the region be-
 he wind shifted into its
 gradually increasing to a
 uthwest; and the sky be-
 obtained a good observation
 f the first satellite; the re-
 ng an absolute observation,
 r the longitude of the place.
 The wind during the night
 so much violence, that the
 morning was angry and
 e breaking with considera-
 this rocky wall of the cape.
 pilot was unwilling to risk
 the point, and I was not dis-
 he stores of our voyage for
 day. Further observations
 ring the day, giving for the
 place 45° 33' 09"; and the
 ed from the satellite, is 122

We had a day of disagree-
 ; and, late in the afternoon,
 h the rapids of the cascades.
 high timbered island on the
 which, in descending, I had
 uff on the river the extremi-
 trees appearing to be im-
 ck. Landing here this after-
 the lower part of the es-
 um of coal and forest trees,
 en strata of altered clay
 remains of vegetables, the
 indicate that the plants were

Among these, the stems of
 s are not mineralized, but
 retaining still their vegetable
 substance; and in this condi-
 so of the trees remain. The
 rance and compactness of the
 perhaps, as the mineralized
 coal, are probably due to
 Some portions of the coal
 sole in aspect the canal coal
 ud, with the accompanying
 n referred to the tertiary for-

appear to rest upon a mass
 l rock, being but a few feet
 of the river; and over them
 ent of perhaps eighty feet,
 y in the rear towards the
 e wet and cold evenin. and
 of night, prevented me from
 er than a very slight examin-

was now very swift, and we
 cordelle the boat along the

left shore, where the bank was covered with
 large masses of rocks. Night overtook us
 at the upper end of the island, a short dis-
 tance below the cascades, and we halted on
 the open point. In the meantime, the lighter
 canoes, paddled altogether by Indians, had
 passed ahead, and were out of sight. With
 them was the lodge, which was the only
 shelter we had, with most of the bedding and
 provisions. We shouted, and fired guns;
 but all to no purpose, as it was impossible
 for them to hear above the roar of the river;
 and we remained all night without shelter,
 the rain pouring down all the time. The
 old voyageurs did not appear to mind it
 much, but covered themselves up as well as
 they could, and lay down on the sand beach,
 where they remained quiet until morning.
 The rest of us spent a rather miserable
 night; and, to add to our discomfort, the in-
 cessant rain extinguished our fires; and we
 were glad when at last daylight appeared,
 and we again embarked.

Crossing to the right bank, we *cordelled*
 the boat along the shore, there being no
 longer any use for the paddles, and put into
 a little bay below the upper rapids. Here
 we found the lodge pitched, and about twenty
 Indians sitting around a blazing fire with-
 in, making a luxurious breakfast with sal-
 mon, bread, butter, sugar, coffee, and other
 provisions. In the forest, on the edge of the
 high bluff overlooking the river, is an Indian
 grave yard, consisting of a collection of
 tombs, in each of which were the scattered
 bones of many skeletons. The tombs were
 made of boards, which were ornamented with
 many figures of men and animals of the
 natural size—from their appearance, consti-
 tuting the armorial device by which, among
 Indians, the chiefs are usually known.

The masses of rock displayed along the
 shores of the ravine in the neighborhood of
 the cascades are clearly volcanic products.
 Between this cove, which I called Grave-
 yard bay, and another spot of smooth water
 above, on the right, called Lüders bay, shel-
 tered by a jutting point of huge rocky masses
 at the foot of the cascades, the shore along
 the intervening rapids is lined with precipi-
 ces of distinct strata of red and variously
 colored lavas, in inclined positions.

The masses of rock forming the point at
 Lüders bay consist of a porous trap, or
 basalt—a volcanic product of a modern
 period. The rocks belong to agglomerated
 masses, which form the immediate ground of
 the cascades, and have been already men-
 tioned as constituting a bed of cemented con-
 glomerate rocks appearing at various places
 along the river. Here they are scattered
 along the shores, and through the bed of the
 river, wearing the character of convulsion,

which forms the impressive and prominent
 feature of the river at this place.

Wherever we came in contact with the
 rocks of these mountains, we found them
 volcanic, which is probably the character of
 the range; and at this time, two of the great
 snowy cones, Mount Regnier and St. Hel-
 ens, were in action. On the 3d of the pre-
 ceding November, St. Helens had scattered
 its ashes, like a light fall of snow, over the
 Dalles of the Columbia, 50 miles distant.
 A specimen of these ashes was given to me
 by Mr. Brewer, one of the clergymen at the
 Dalles.

The lofty range of the Cascade mountains
 forms a distinct boundary between the oppo-
 site climates of the regions along its western
 and eastern bases. On the west, they pre-
 sent a barrier to the clouds of fog and rain
 which roll up from the Pacific ocean and
 beat against their rugged sides, forming the
 rainy season of the winter in the country
 along the coast. Into the brighter skies of
 the region along their eastern base, this
 rainy winter never penetrates; and at the
 Dalles of the Columbia the rainy season is
 unknown, the brief winter being limited to a
 period of about two months, during which
 the earth is covered with the slight snows of
 a climate remarkably mild for so high a lati-
 tude. The Cascade range has an average
 distance of about 130 miles from the sea
 coast. It extends far both north and south
 of the Columbia, and is indicated to the dis-
 tant observer, both in course and position, by
 the lofty volcanic peaks which rise out of it,
 and which are visible to an immense dis-
 tance.

During several days of constant rain, it
 kept our whole force laboriously employed
 in getting our barge and canoes to the upper
 end of the cascades. The portage ground
 was occupied by emigrant families; their
 thin and insufficient clothing, bare-headed
 and bare-footed children, attesting the length
 of their journey, and showing that they had,
 in many instances, set out without a due
 preparation of what was indispensable.

A gentleman named Lüders, a botanis-
 from the city of Hamburg, arrived at the bay
 I have called by his name while we were
 occupied in bringing up the boats. I was
 delighted to meet at such a place a man of
 kindred pursuits; but we had only the plea-
 sure of a brief conversation, as his canoe,
 under the guidance of two Indians, was
 about to run the rapids; and I could not en-
 joy the satisfaction of regaling him with a
 breakfast, which, after his recent journey,
 would have been an extraordinary luxury.
 All of his few instruments and baggage were
 in the canoe, and he hurried around by land
 to meet it at the Grave-yard bay; but he

was scarcely out of sight, when, by the carelessness of the Indians, the boat was drawn into the midst of the rapids, and glanced down the river, bottom up, with the loss of everything it contained. In the natural concern I felt for his misfortune, I gave to the little cove the name of Lüders bay.

November 15.—We continued to-day our work at the portage.

About noon, the two barges of the express from Montreal arrived at the upper portage landing, which, for large boats, is on the right bank of the river. They were a fine-looking crew, and among them I remarked a fresh-looking woman and her daughter, emigrants from Canada. It was satisfactory to see the order and speed with which these experienced watermen effected the portage, and passed their boats over the cascades. They had arrived at noon, and in the evening they expected to reach Vancouver. These bateaus carry the express of the Hudson Bay Company to the highest navigable point of the north fork of the Columbia, whence it is carried by an overland party to lake Winipeg, where it is divided—part going to Montreal, and part to Hudson Bay. Thus a regular communication is kept up between three very remote points.

The Canadian emigrants were much chagrined at the change of climate, and informed me that, only a few miles above, they had left a country of bright blue sky and a shining sun. The next morning the upper parts of the mountains which directly overlook the cascades were white with the freshly fallen snow, while it continued to rain steadily below.

Late in the afternoon we finished the portage, and, embarking again, moved a little distance up the right bank, in order to clear the smaller rapids of the cascades, and have a smooth river for the next morning. Though we made but a few miles, the weather improved immediately; and though the rainy country and the cloudy mountains were close behind, before us was the bright sky; so distinctly is climate here marked by a mountain boundary.

November 17.—We had to-day an opportunity to complete the sketch of that portion of the river down which we had come by night.

Many places occur along the river, where the stumps, or rather portions of the trunks of pine trees, are standing along the shore, and in the water, where they may be seen at a considerable depth below the surface, in the beautifully clear water. These collections of dead trees are called on the Columbia the *submerged forest*, and are supposed to have been created by the effects of some convulsion which formed the cascades, and which, by damming up the river, placed

these trees under water and destroyed them. But I venture to presume that the cascades are older than the trees; and as these submerged forests occur at five or six places along the river, I had an opportunity to satisfy myself that they have been formed by immense land slides from the mountains, which here closely shut in the river, and which brought down with them into the river the pines of the mountain. At one place, on the right bank, I remarked a place where a portion of one of these slides seemed to have planted itself, with all the ever-green foliage, and the vegetation of the neighboring hill, directly amidst the falling and yellow leaves of the river trees. It occurred to me that this would have been a beautiful illustration to the eye of a botanist.

Following the course of a slide, which was very plainly marked along the mountain, I found that in the interior parts the trees were in their usual erect position; but at the extremity of the slide they were rocked about, and thrown into a confusion of inclinations.

About 4 o'clock in the afternoon we passed a sandy bar in the river, whence we had an unexpected view of Mount Hood, bearing directly south by compass.

During the day we used oar and sail, and at night had again a delightful camping ground, and a dry place to sleep upon.

November 18.—The day again was pleasant and bright. At 10 o'clock we passed a rock island, on the right shore of the river, which the Indians use as burial ground; and halting for a short time, about an hour afterwards, at the village of our Indian friends, early in the afternoon we arrived again at the Dalles.

Carson had removed the camp up the river a little nearer to the hills, where the animals had better grass. We found everything in good order, and arrived just in time to partake of an excellent roast of California beef. My friend, Mr. Gilpin, had arrived in advance of the party. His object in visiting this country had been to obtain correct information of the Walahmette settlements; and he had reached this point in his journey, highly pleased with the country over which he had travelled, and with invigorated health. On the following day he continued his journey, in our returning boats, to Vancouver.

The camp was now occupied in making the necessary preparations for our homeward journey, which, though homeward, contemplated a new route, and a great circuit to the south and southeast, and the exploration of the Great Basin between the Rocky mountains and the *Sierra Nevada*. Three principal objects were indicated, by report or by maps, as being on this route; the character or ex-

water and destroyed them. I presume that the cascades of trees; and as these slides occur at five or six places had an opportunity to see they have been formed by slides from the mountains, only shut in the river, and down with them into the of the mountain. At one bank, I remarked a place of one of these slides seemed itself, with all the evergreen the vegetation of the directly amidst the falling of the river trees. It occurred to me that this would have been a good opportunity to the eye of a botanist. The course of a slide, which was marked along the mountain in the interior parts the usual erect position; but of the slide they were rock-throw into a confusion of in-

the afternoon we passed in the river, whence we had a view of Mount Hood, bearing to the west of the compass.

We used our oar and sail, and regained a delightful camping place to sleep upon.

The day again was pleasant. At 10 o'clock we passed the right shore of the river, and used as burial ground; and at about an hour after the departure of our Indian friends, in the afternoon we arrived again at

removed the camp up the river to the hills, where the animals were. We found everything in the neighborhood arrived just in time to partake of the roast of California beef.

Mr. Gilpin, had arrived in addition to our party. His object in visiting the country had been to obtain correct information of the Wahlamette settlements; and he reached this point in his journey, with the country over which he had passed, and with invigorated spirits. The following day he continued on our returning boats, to Van-

der was now occupied in making arrangements for our homeward journey, though homeward, contentment, and a great circuit to the southeast, and the exploration of the country between the Rocky mountains and the *Sierra Nevada*. Three principles were indicated, by report or by maps, in the route; the character or ex-

istence of which I wished to ascertain, and which I assumed as landmarks, or leading points, on the projected line of return. The first of these points was the *Tlamath* lake, on the table-land between the head of Fall river, which comes to the Columbia, and the Sacramento, which goes to the bay of San Francisco; and from which lake a river of the same name makes its way westwardly direct to the ocean. This lake and river are often called *Klamet*, but I have chosen to write its name according to the Indian pronunciation. The position of this lake, on the line of inland communication between Oregon and California; its proximity to the demarcation boundary of latitude 42°; its imputed double character of lake, or meadow, according to the season of the year; and the hostile and warlike character attributed to the Indians about it—all made it a desirable object to visit and examine. From this lake our course was intended to be about southeast, to a reported lake called Mary's, at some days' journey in the Great Basin; and thence, still on southeast, to the reputed *Buenaventura* river, which has had a place in so many maps, and countenanced the belief of the existence of a great river flowing from the Rocky mountains to the bay of San Francisco. From the *Buenaventura* the next point was intended to be in that section of the Rocky mountains which includes the heads of Arkansas river, and of the opposite waters of the Californian gulf; and thence down the Arkansas to Bent's fort, and home. This was our projected line of return—a great part of it absolutely new to geographical, botanical, and geological science—and the subject of reports in relation to lakes, rivers, deserts, and savages hardly above the condition of mere wild animals, which inflamed desire to know what this *terra incognita* really contained.

It was a serious enterprise, at the commencement of winter, to undertake the traverse of such a region, and with a party consisting only of twenty-five persons, and they of many nations—American, French, German, Canadian, Indian, and colored—and most of them young, several being under twenty-one years of age. All knew that a strange country was to be explored, and dangers and hardships to be encountered; but no one blenched at the prospect. On the contrary, courage and confidence animated the whole party. Cheerfulness, readiness, subordination, prompt obedience, characterized all; nor did any extremity of peril and privation, to which we were afterwards exposed, ever belie, or derogate from, the fine spirit of this brave and generous commencement. The course of the narrative will show at what point, and for what reasons, we were prevented from the com-

plete execution of this plan, after having made considerable progress upon it, and how we were forced by desert plains and mountain ranges, and deep snows, far to the south, and near to the Pacific ocean, and along the western base of the *Sierra Nevada*; where, indeed, a new and ample field of exploration opened itself before us. For the present, we must follow the narrative, which will first lead us south along the valley of Fall river, and the eastern base of the Cascade range, to the *Tlamath* lake, from which, or its margin, three rivers go in three directions—one west, to the ocean; another north, to the Columbia; the third south, to California.

For the support of the party, I had provided at Vancouver a supply of provisions for not less than three months, consisting principally of flour, peas, and tallow—the latter being used in cooking; and, in addition to this, I had purchased at the mission some California cattle, which were to be driven on the hoof. We had 104 mules and horses—part of the latter procured from the Indians about the mission; and for the sustenance of which, our reliance was upon the grass which we should find, and the soft porous wood, which was to be substituted when there was none.

Mr. Fitzpatrick, with Mr. Talbot and the remainder of the party, arrived on the 21st; and the camp was now closely engaged in the labor of preparation. Mr. Perkins succeeded in obtaining as a guide to the *Tlamath* lake two Indians—one of whom had been there, and bore the marks of several wounds he had received from some of the Indians in the neighborhood; and the other went along for company. In order to enable us to obtain horses, he dispatched messengers to the various Indian villages in the neighborhood, informing them that we were desirous to purchase, and appointing a day for them to bring them in.

We made, in the mean time, several excursions in the vicinity. Mr. Perkins walked with Mr. Preuss and myself to the heights, about nine miles distant, on the opposite side of the river, whence, in fine weather, an extensive view may be had over the mountains, including seven great peaks of the Cascade range; but clouds, on this occasion, destroyed the anticipated pleasure, and we obtained bearings only to three that were visible: Mount Regnier, St. Helens, and Mount Hood. On the heights, about one mile south of the mission, a very fine view may be had of Mount Hood and St. Helens. In order to determine their position with as much accuracy as possible, the angular distances of the peaks were measured with the sextant, at different fixed points from which they could be seen.

The Indians brought in their horses at the appointed time, and we succeeded in obtaining a number in exchange for goods; but they were relatively much higher here, where goods are plenty and at moderate prices, than we had found them in the more eastern part of our voyage. Several of the Indians inquired very anxiously to know if we had any *dollars*; and the horses we procured were much fewer in number than I had desired, and of thin, inferior quality; the oldest and poorest being those that were sold to us. These horses, as ever in our journey you will have occasion to remark, are valuable for hardihood and great endurance.

November 24.—At this place one of the men was discharged; and at the request of Mr. Perkins, a Chinook Indian, a lad of nineteen, who was extremely desirous to "see the whites," and make some acquaintance with our institutions, was received into the party, under my special charge, with the understanding that I would again return him to his friends. He had lived for some time in the household of Mr. Perkins, and spoke a few words of the English language.

November 25.—We were all up early, in the excitement of turning towards home. The stars were brilliant, and the morning cold—the thermometer at daylight 26°.

Our preparations had been fully completed, and to-day we commenced our journey. The little wagon which had hitherto carried the instruments I judged it necessary to abandon; and it was accordingly presented to the mission. In all our long travelling, it had never been overturned or injured by any accident of the road; and the only things broken were the glass lamps, and one of the front panels, which had been kicked out by an unruly Indian horse. The howitzer was the only wheeled carriage now remaining. We started about noon, when the weather had become disagreeably cold, with flurries of snow. Our friend Mr. Perkins, whose kindness had been active and efficient during our stay, accompanied us several miles on our road; when he bade us farewell, and consigned us to the care of our guides. Ascending to the uplands beyond the southern fork of the *Tinanens* creek, we found the snow lying on the ground in frequent patches, although the pasture appeared good, and the new short grass was fresh and green. We travelled over high, hilly land, and encamped on a little branch of *Tinanens* creek, where there were good grass and timber. The southern bank was covered with snow, which was scattered over the bottom, and the little creek, its borders lined with ice, had a chilly and wintry look. A number of Indians had

accompanied us so far on our road, and remained with us during the night. Two bad-looking fellows, who were detected in stealing, were tied and laid before the fire, and guard mounted over them during the night. The night was cold, and partially clear.

November 26.—The morning was cloudy and misty, and but a few stars visible. During the night water froze in the tents, and at sunrise the thermometer was at 20°. Left camp at 10 o'clock, the road leading along tributaries of the *Tinanens*, and being, so far, very good. We turned to the right at the fork of the trail, ascending by a steep ascent along a spur to the dividing grounds between this stream and the waters of *Fall* river. The creeks we had passed were timbered principally with oak and other deciduous trees. Snow lies everywhere here on the ground, and we had a slight fall during the morning; but towards noon the gray sky yielded to a bright sun. This morning we had a grand view of *St. Helens* and *Regnier*; the latter appeared of a conical form, and very lofty, leading the eye far up into the sky. The line of the timbered country is very distinctly marked here, the bare hills making with it a remarkable contrast. The summit of the ridge commanded a fine view of the *Taih* prairie, and the stream running through it, which is a tributary to the *Fall* river, the chasm of which is visible to the right. A steep descent of a mountain hill brought us down into the valley, and we encamped on the stream after dark, guided by the light of fires, which some naked Indians belonging to a village on the opposite side were kindling for us on the bank. This is a large branch of the *Fall* river. There was a broad band of thick ice some fifteen feet wide on either bank, and the river current is swift and bold. The night was cold and clear, and we made our astronomical observation this evening with the thermometer at 20°.

In anticipation of coming hardship, and to spare our horses, there was much walking done to-day; and Mr. Fitzpatrick and myself made the day's journey on foot. Somewhere near the mouth of this stream are the falls from which the river takes its name.

November 27.—A fine view of *Mount Hood* this morning; a rose-colored mass of snow, bearing S. 85° W. by compass. The sky is clear, and the air cold; the thermometer 20.5 below zero; the trees and bushes glittering white, and the rapid stream filled with floating ice.

Stilets and the *White Crane*, two Indian chiefs who had accompanied us thus far, took their leave, and we resumed our journey at 10 o'clock. We ascended by a steep hill from the river bottom, which is sandy,

so far on our road, and re-
turning the night. Two bad-
gers were detected in steal-
th laid before the fire, and
er them during the night.
old, and partially clear.

The morning was cloudy
at a few stars visible. Dur-
ter froze in the tents, and
mometer was at 20°. Left
ek, the road leading along
Tinianens, and being, so
We turned to the right at
rail, ascending by a steep
ur to the dividing grounds
am and the waters of Fall
eks we had passed were
dly with oak and other de-
Snow lies everywhere here
ed we had a slight fall dur-
but towards noon the gray
bright sun. This morning
view of St. Helens and
ter appeared of a conical
fly, leading the eye far up
The line of the timbered
distinctly marked here, the
y with it a remarkable con-
mit of the ridge com-
manded the Taih prairie, and
through it, which is a tribu-
river, the chasm of which
right. A steep descent of
brought us down into the
encamped on the stream af-
by the light of fires, which
ans belonging to a village
side were kindling for us on
is a large branch of the
ere was a broad band of
fteen feet wide on either
river current is swift and
t was cold and clear, and
ronomical observation this
thermometer at 20°.

of coming hardship, and
ees, there was much walk-
; and Mr. Fitzpatrick and
e day's journey on foot.
the mouth of this stream
which the river takes its

A fine view of Mount
ing; a rose-colored mass of
85° W. by compass. The
the air cold; the thermom-
eter; the trees and bushes
and the rapid stream filled

White Crane, two Indian
accompanied us thus far,
and we resumed our jour-
ney. We ascended by a steep
er bottom, which is sandy.

to a volcanic plain, around which lofty hills
sweep in a regular form. It is cut up by
gullies of basaltic rock, escarpments of
which appear everywhere in the hills.
This plain is called the Taih prairie, and is
sprinkled with some scattered pines. The
country is now far more interesting to a
traveller than the route along the Snake
and Columbia rivers. To our right we had
always the mountains, from the midst of
whose dark pine forests the isolated snowy
peaks were looking out like giants. They
served us for grand beacons to show the
rate at which we advanced in our journey.
Mount Hood was already becoming an old
acquaintance, and, when we ascended the
prairie, we obtained a bearing to Mount Jeffer-
son, S. 23° W. The Indian superstition
has peopled these lofty peaks with evil spir-
its, and they have never yet known the
tread of a human foot. Sternly drawn
against the sky, they look so high and steep,
so snowy and rocky, that it would appear
almost impossible to climb them; but still a
trial would have its attractions for the ad-
venturous traveller. A small trail takes off
through the prairie, towards a low point in
the range, and perhaps there is here a pass
into the Walahmette valley. Crossing the
plain, we descended by a rocky hill into the
bed of a tributary of Fall river, and made
an early encampment. The water was in
holes, and frozen over, and we were obliged
to cut through the ice for the animals to
drink. An ox, which was rather trou-
blesome to drive, was killed here for
food.

The evening was fine, the sky being very
clear, and I obtained an immersion of the
third satellite, with a good observation of an
eclipse of the first; the latter of which
gives for the longitude, 121° 02' 43"; the
latitude, by observation, being 45° 08' 45".
The night was cold—the thermometer dur-
ing the observations standing at 9°.

November 28.—The sky was clear in the
morning, but suddenly clouded over, and at
sunrise began to snow, with the thermom-
eter at 18°.

We traversed a broken high country,
partly timbered with pine, and about noon
crossed a mountainous ridge, in which, from
the rock occasionally displayed, the forma-
tion consists of compact lava. Frequent
tracks of elk were visible in the snow. On
our right, in the afternoon, a high plain,
partially covered with pine, extended about
ten miles, to the foot of the Cascade moun-
tains.

At evening we encamped in a basin nar-
rowly surrounded by rocky hills, after a
day's journey of 31 miles. The surround-
ing rocks are either volcanic products, or
highly altered by volcanic action, consisting

of quartz and reddish-colored siliceous
masses.

November 29.—We emerged from the
basin, by a narrow pass, upon a considerably
branch of Fall river, running to the east
ward through a narrow valley. The trail,
descending this stream, brought us to a lo-
cality of hot springs, which were on either
bank. Those on the left, which were
formed into deep handsome basins, would
have been delightful baths, if the outer air
had not been so keen, the thermometer in
these being at 89°. There were others, on
the opposite side, at the foot of an escarp-
ment, in which the temperature of the water
was 134°. These waters deposited around
the spring a brecciated mass of quartz and
feldspar, much of it of a reddish color.

We crossed the stream here, and ascend-
ed again to a high plain, from an elevated
point of which we obtained a view of six
of the great peaks—Mount Jefferson, follow-
ed to the southward by two others of the
same class; and succeeding, at a still great-
er distance to the southward, were three
other lower peaks, clustering together in a
branch ridge. These, like the great peaks,
were snowy masses, secondary only to
them; and, from the best examination our
time permitted, we are inclined to believe
that the range to which they belong is a
branch from the great chain which here
bears to the westward. The trail during
the remainder of the day followed near to
the large stream on the left, which was con-
tinuously walled in between high rocky
banks. We halted for the night on a little
by-stream.

November 30.—Our journey to-day was
short. Passing over a high plain, on which
were scattered cedars, with frequent beds
of volcanic rock in fragments interspersed
among the grassy grounds, we arrived sud-
denly on the verge of the steep and rocky
descent to the valley of the stream we had
been following, and which here ran directly
across our path, emerging from the moun-
tains on the right. You will remark that
the country is abundantly watered with large
streams, which pour down from the neigh-
boring range.

These streams are characterized by the
narrow and chasm-like valleys in which
they run, generally sunk a thousand feet be-
low the plain. At the verge of this plain,
they frequently commence in vertical preci-
pices of basaltic rock, and which leave only
casual places at which they can be entered
by horses. The road across the country,
which would otherwise be very good, is
rendered impracticable for wagons by these
streams. There is another trail among the
mountains, usually followed in the summer,
which the snows now compelled us to avoid.

and I have reason to believe that this, passing nearer the heads of these streams, would afford a much better road.

At such places, the gun carriage was unlimbered, and separately descended by hand. Continuing a few miles up the left bank of the river, we encamped early in an open bottom among the pines, a short distance below a lodge of Indians. Here, along the river the bluffs present escarpments seven or eight hundred feet in height, containing strata of a very fine porcelain clay, overlaid, at the height of about five hundred feet, by a massive stratum of compact basalt one hundred feet in thickness, which again is succeeded above by other strata of volcanic rocks. The clay strata are variously colored, some of them very nearly as white as chalk, and very fine grained. Specimens brought from these have been subjected to microscopical examination by Professor Bailey, of West Point, and are considered by him to constitute one of the most remarkable deposits of fluviatile infusoria on record. While they abound in genera and species which are common in fresh water, but which rarely thrive where the water is even brackish, not one decidedly marine form is to be found among them; and their fresh-water origin is therefore beyond a doubt. It is equally certain that they lived and died at the situation where they were found, as they could scarcely have been transported by running waters without an admixture of sandy particles; from which, however, they are remarkably free. Fossil infusoria of a fresh-water origin had been previously detected by Mr. Bailey in specimens brought by Mr. James D. Dana from the tertiary formation of Oregon. Most of the species in those specimens differed so much from those now living and known, that he was led to infer that they might belong to extinct species, and considered them also as affording proof of an alternation, in the formation from which they were obtained, of fresh and salt water deposits, which, common enough in Europe, had not hitherto been noticed in the United States. Coming evidently from a locality entirely different, our specimens show very few species in common with those brought by Mr. Dana, but bear a much closer resemblance to those inhabiting the northeastern States. It is possible that they are from a more recent deposit; but the presence of a few remarkable forms which are common to the two localities renders it more probable that there is no great difference in their age.

I obtained here a good observation of an emersion of the second satellite; but clouds, which rapidly overspread the sky, prevented the usual number of observations. Those which we succeeded in obtaining are, how-

ever, good; and give for the latitude of the place $44^{\circ} 35' 23''$, and for the longitude from the satellite $121^{\circ} 10' 25''$.

December 1.—A short distance above our encampment, we crossed this river, which was thickly lined along its banks with ice. It is common with all these mountain streams the water was very clear, and the current swift. It was not everywhere fordable, and the water was three or four feet deep at our crossing, and perhaps a hundred feet wide. As was frequently the case at such places, one of the mules got his pack, consisting of sugar, thoroughly wet, and turned into molasses. One of the guides informed me that this was a "salmon water," and pointed out several ingeniously-contrived places to catch the fish; among the pines in the bottom I saw an immense one, about twelve feet in diameter. A steep ascent from the opposite bank delayed us again; and as, by the information of our guides, grass would soon become very scarce, we encamped on the height of land, in a marshy place among the pines, where there was an abundance of grass. We found here a single Nez Percé family, who had a very handsome horse in their drove, which we endeavored to obtain in exchange for a good cow; but the man "had two hearts," or, rather, he had one and his wife had another: she wanted the cow, but he loved the horse too much to part with it. These people attach great value to cattle, with which they are endeavoring to supply themselves.

December 2.—In the first rays of the sun, the mountain peaks this morning presented a beautiful appearance, the snow being entirely covered with a hue of rosy gold. We travelled to-day over a very stony, elevated plain, about which were scattered cedar and pine, and encamped on another large branch of Fall river. We were gradually ascending to a more elevated region, which would have been indicated by the rapidly-increasing quantities of snow and ice, had we not known it by other means. A mule which was packed with our cooking utensils wandered off among the pines unperceived, and several men were sent back to search for it.

December 3.—Leaving Mr. Fitzpatrick with the party, I went ahead with the howitzer and a few men, in order to gain time, as our progress with the gun was necessarily slower. The country continued the same—very stony, with cedar and pine; and we rode on until dark, when we encamped on a hillside covered with snow, which we used to-night for water, as we were unable to reach any stream.

December 4.—Our animals had taken the back track, although a great number were hobbled; and we were consequently delayed until noon. Shortly after we had left this

ive for the latitude of the
", and for the longitude
121° 10' 25".

A short distance above our
crossed this river, which
along its banks with ice
all these mountain streams
very clear, and the current
not everywhere fordable,
three or four feet deep at
perhaps a hundred feet
requently the case at such
mules got his pack, con-
thoroughly wet, and turned
One of the guides informed
a "salmon water," and
eral ingeniously-contrived
he fish; among the pines in
w an immense one, about
diameter. A steep ascent
e bank delayed us again;
information of our guides,
n become very scarce, we
height of land, in a marshy
pines, where there was an
s. We found here a single
y, who had a very handsome
rove, which we endeavor-
xchange for a good cow;
had two hearts," or, rather,
his wife had another; she
but he loved the horse too
h it. These people attach
attle, with which they are
upply themselves.

In the first rays of the sun,
like this morning presented
rance, the snow being en-
ith a hue of rosy gold. We
ver a very stony, elevated
h were scattered cedar and
ed on another large branch
We were gradually ascend-
vated region, which would
ated by the rapidly-increas-
snow and ice, had we not
er means. A mule which
our cooking utensils wan-
the pines unperceived, and
sent back to search for it.
-Leaving Mr. Fitzpatrick
went ahead with the how-
men, in order to gain time,
with the gun was necessa-
the country continued the
y, with cedar and pine;
until dark, when we en-
side covered with snow,
to-night for water, as we
each any stream.

Our animals had taken the
ugh a great number were
were consequently delayed
rtly after we had left this

encampment, the mountain trail from the Dalles joined that on which we were travelling. After passing for several miles over an artemisia plain, the trail entered a beautiful pine forest, through which we travelled for several hours; and about 4 o'clock descended into the valley of another large branch, on the bottom of which were spaces of open pines, with occasional meadows of good grass, in one of which we encamped. The stream is very swift and deep, and about 40 feet wide, and nearly half frozen over. Among the timber here, are larches 140 feet high, and over 3 feet in diameter. We had to-night the rare sight of a lunar rainbow.

December 5.—To-day the country was all pine forest, and beautiful weather made our journey delightful. It was too warm at noon for winter clothes; and the snow, which lay everywhere in patches through the forest, was melting rapidly. After a few hours' ride, we came upon a fine stream in the midst of the forest, which proved to be the principal branch of Fall river. It was occasionally 200 feet wide—sometimes narrowed to 50 feet; the waters very clear, and frequently deep. We ascended along the river, which sometimes presented sheets of foaming cascades; its banks occasionally blackened with masses of scoriated rock; and found a good encampment on the verge of an open bottom, which had been an old camping ground of the Cayuse Indians. A great number of deer horns were lying about, indicating game in the neighborhood. The timber was uniformly large; some of the pines measuring 23 feet in circumference at the ground, and 12 to 13 feet at six feet above.

In all our journeying, we had never travelled through a country where the rivers were so abounding in falls; and the name of this stream is singularly characteristic. At every place where we come in the neighborhood of the river, is heard the roaring of falls. The rock along the banks of the stream, and the ledge over which it falls, is a scoriated basalt, with a bright metallic fracture. The stream goes over in one clear pitch, succeeded by a foaming cataract of several hundred yards. In the little bottom above the falls, a small stream discharges into an *entonnoir*, and disappears below.

We had made an early encampment, and in the course of the evening Mr. Fitzpatrick joined us here with the lost mule. Our lodge poles were nearly worn out, and we found here a handsome set, leaning against one of the trees, very white, and cleanly scraped. Had the owners been here, we would have purchased them; but as they were not, we merely left the old ones in their place, with a small quantity of tobacco.

December 6.—The morning was frosty and clear. We continued up the stream on undulating forest ground, over which there was scattered much falling timber. We met here a village of Nez Percé Indians, who appeared to be coming down from the mountains, and had with them fine bands of horses. With them were a few Snake Indians of the root-digging species. From the forest we emerged into an open valley ten or twelve miles wide, through which the stream was flowing tranquilly, upwards of two hundred feet broad, with occasional islands, and bordered with fine broad bottoms. Crossing the river, which here issues from a great mountain ridge on the right, we continued up the southern and smaller branch, over a level country, consisting of fine meadow land, alternating with pine forests, and encamped on it early in the evening. A warm sunshine made the day pleasant.

December 7.—To-day we had good travelling ground; the trail leading sometimes over rather sandy soils in the pine forest, and sometimes over meadow land along the stream. The great beauty of the country in summer constantly suggested itself to our imaginations; and even now we found it beautiful, as we rode along these meadows, from half a mile to two miles wide. The rich soil and excellent water, surrounded by noble forests, make a picture that would delight the eye of a farmer.

I observed to-night an occultation of a *Geminorum*; which, although at the bright limb of the moon, appears to give a very good result, that has been adopted for the longitude. The occultation, observations of satellites, and our position deduced from daily surveys with the compass, agree remarkably well together, and mutually support and strengthen each other. The latitude of the camp is 43° 30' 36"; and longitude, deduced from the occultation, 121° 33' 50".

December 8.—To-day we crossed the last branch of the Fall river, issuing, like all the others we had crossed, in a southwesterly direction from the mountains. Our direction was a little east of south, the trail leading constantly through pine forests. The soil was generally bare, consisting, in greater part, of a yellowish white pumice stone, producing varieties of magnificent pines, but not a blade of grass; and to-night our horses were obliged to do without food, and use snow for water. These pines are remarkable for the red color of the bolls; and among them occurs a species, of which the Indians had informed me when leaving the Dalles. The unusual size of the cone (16 or 18 inches long) had attracted their attention; and they pointed it out to me among the curiosities of the country. They are

more remarkable for their large diameter than their height, which usually averages only about 120 feet. The leaflets are short—only two or three inches long, and five in a sheath; the bark of a red color.

December 9.—The trail leads always through splendid pine forests. Crossing dividing grounds by a very fine road, we descended very gently towards the south. The weather was pleasant, and we halted late. The soil was very much like that of yesterday; and on the surface of a hill, near our encampment, were displayed beds of pumice stone; but the soil produced no grass, and again the animals fared badly.

December 10.—The country began to improve; and about 11 o'clock we reached a spring of cold water on the edge of a savannah, or grassy meadow, which our guides informed us was an arm of the Tlamath lake; and a few miles further we entered upon an extensive meadow, or lake of grass, surrounded by timbered mountains. This was the Tlamath lake. It was a picturesque and beautiful spot, and rendered more attractive to us by the abundant and excellent grass, which our animals, after travelling through pine forests, so much needed; but the broad sheet of water which constitutes a lake was not to be seen. Overlooking it, immediately west, were several snowy knobs, belonging to what we have considered a branch of the Cascade range. A low point covered with pines made out into the lake, which afforded us a good place for an encampment, and for the security of our horses, which were guarded in view on the open meadow. The character of courage and hostility attributed to the Indians of this quarter induced more than usual precaution; and, seeing smokes rising from the middle of the lake (or savannah) and along the opposite shores, I directed the howitzer to be fired. It was the first time our guides had seen it discharged; and the bursting of the shell at a distance, which was something like the second fire of the gun, amazed and bewildered them with delight. It inspired them with triumphant feelings; but on the camp at a distance the effect was different, for the smoke in the lake and on the shores immediately disappeared.

The point on which we were encamped forms, with the opposite eastern shore, a narrow neck, connecting the body of the lake with a deep cove or bay which receives the principal affluent stream, and over the greater part of which the water (or rather ice) was at this time dispersed in shallow pools. Among the grass, and scattered over the prairie lake, appeared to be similar marshes. It is simply a shallow basin, which, for a short period at the time of melting snows, is covered with water from

the neighboring mountains; but this probably soon runs off, and leaves for the remainder of the year a green savannah, through the midst of which the river Tlamath, which flows to the ocean, winds its way to the outlet on the southwestern side.

December 11.—No Indians made their appearance, and I determined to pay them a visit. Accordingly, the people were gathered together, and we rode out towards the village in the middle of the lake, which one of our guides had previously visited. It could not be directly approached, as a large part of the lake appeared a marsh; and there were sheets of ice among the grass, on which our horses could not keep their footing. We therefore followed the guide for a considerable distance along the forest; and then turned off towards the village, which we soon began to see was a few large huts, on the tops of which were collected the Indians. When we had arrived within half a mile of the village, two persons were seen advancing to meet us; and, to please the fancy of our guides, we ranged ourselves into a long line, riding abreast, while they galloped ahead to meet the strangers.

We were surprised, on riding up, to find one of them a woman, having never before known a squaw to take any part in the business of war. They were the village chief and his wife, who, in excitement and alarm at the unusual event and appearance, had come out to meet their fate together. The chief was a very prepossessing Indian, with very handsome features, and a singularly soft and agreeable voice—so remarkable as to attract general notice.

The huts were grouped together on the bank of the river, which, from being spread out in a shallow marsh at the upper end of the lake, was collected here into a single stream. They were large round huts, perhaps 20 feet in diameter, with rounded tops, on which was the door by which they descended into the interior. Within, they were supported by posts and beams.

Almost like plants, these people seem to have adapted themselves to the soil, and to be growing on what the immediate locality afforded. Their only subsistence at this time appeared to be a small fish, great quantities of which, that had been smoked and dried, were suspended on strings about the lodge. Heaps of straw were lying around; and their residence in the midst of grass and rushes had taught them a peculiar skill in converting this material to useful purposes. Their shoes were made of straw or grass, which seemed well adapted for a snowy country; and the women wore on their head a closely woven basket, which made a very good cap. Among other things, were parti-colored mats about four

mountains; but this prob-
off, and leaves for the re-
year a green savannah,
of which the river Tla-
s to the ocean, winds its
on the southwestern side.
—No Indians made their
I determined to pay them
gly, the people were gath-
d we rode out towards the
dle of the lake, which one
d previously visited. It
tly approached, as a large
appeared a marsh; and
s of ice among the grass,
area could not keep their
efore followed the guide
distance along the forest;
off towards the village,
gan to see was a few large
of which were collected
hen we had arrived within
village, two persons were
to meet us; and, to please
guides, we ranged ourselves
riding abreast, while they
to meet the strangers.

aised, on riding up, to find
oman, having never before
to take any part in the busi-
they were the village chief
b, in excitement and alarm
vent and appearance, had
their fate together. The
prepossessing Indian, with
features, and a singularly
le voice—so remarkable as
notice.

grouped together on the
which, from being spread
marsh at the upper end of
lected here into a single
ere large round huts, per-
ameter, with rounded tops,
e door by which they de-
interior. Within, they
y posts and beams.

ants, these people seem to
mselves to the soil, and to
that the immediate locality
only subsistence at this
be a small fish, great quan-
that had been smoked and
ended on strings about the
straw were lying around;
nce in the midst of grass
ught them a peculiar skill
is material to useful pur-
ces were made of straw
eemed well adapted for a
and the women wore on
ely woven basket, which
ood cap. Among other
i-colored mats about four

feet square, which we purchased to lay on
the snow under our blankets, and to use for
table cloths.

Numbers of singular-looking dogs, re-
sembling wolves, were sitting on the tops
of the huts; and of these we purchased a
young one, which, after its birthplace, was
named Tlamath. The language spoken by
these Indians is different from that of the
Shoshonee and Columbia river tribes; and
otherwise than by signs they cannot under-
stand each other. They made us compre-
hend that they were at war with the people
who lived to the southward and to the east-
ward; but I could obtain from them no
certain information. The river on which
they live enters the Cascade mountains on
the western side of the lake, and breaks
through them by a passage impracticable for
travellers; but over the mountains, to the
northward, are passes which present no
other obstacle than in the almost impene-
trable forests. Unlike any Indians we had
previously seen, these wore shells in their
noses. We returned to our camp, after re-
maining here an hour or two, accompanied
by a number of Indians.

In order to recruit a little the strength of
our animals, and obtain some acquaintance
with the locality, we remained here for the
remainder of the day. By observation, the
latitude of the camp was $42^{\circ} 50' 51''$; and
the diameter of the lake, or meadow, as has
been intimated, about 20 miles. It is a pic-
turesque and beautiful spot; and, under the
hand of cultivation, might become a little
paradise. Game is found in the forest;
timbered and snowy mountains skirt it, and
fertility characterizes it. Situated near the
heads of three rivers, and on the line of in-
land communication with California, and
near to Indians noted for treachery, it will
naturally, in the progress of the settlement
of Oregon, become a point for military oc-
cupation and settlement.

From Tlamath lake, the further continua-
tion of our voyage assumed a character of
discovery and exploration, which, from the
Indians here, we could obtain no informa-
tion to direct, and where the imaginary
maps of the country, instead of assisting,
exposed us to suffering and defeat. In our
journey across the desert, Mary's lake, and
the famous Buenaventura river, were two
points on which I relied to recruit the ani-
mals, and repose the party. Forming,
agreeably to the best maps in my possession,
a connected water line from the Rocky
mountains to the Pacific ocean, I felt no
other anxiety than to pass safely across the
intervening desert to the banks of the Bue-
naventura, where, in the softer climate of
a more southern latitude, our horses might
find grass to sustain them, and ourselves be

sheltered from the rigors of winter and from
the inhospitable desert. The guides who
had conducted us thus far on our journey
were about to return; and I endeavored in
vain to obtain others to lead us, even for
a few days, in the direction (east) which we
wished to go. The chief to whom I applied
alleged the want of horses, and the snow on
the mountains across which our course
would carry us, and the sickness of his fam-
ily, as reasons for refusing to go with us.

December 12.—This morning the camp
was thronged with Tlamath Indians from
the southeastern shore of the lake; but,
knowing the treacherous disposition which
is a remarkable characteristic of the In-
dians south of the Columbia, the camp was
kept constantly on its guard. I was not
unmindful of the disasters which Smith and
other travellers had met with in this coun-
try, and therefore was equally vigilant in
guarding against treachery and violence.

According to the best information I had
been able to obtain from the Indians, in
a few days' travelling we should reach an-
other large water, probably a lake, which
they indicated exactly in the course we
were about to pursue. We struck our tents
at 10 o'clock, and crossed the lake in a
nearly east direction, where it has the least
extension—the breadth of the arm being
here only about a mile and a half. There
were ponds of ice, with but little grass, for
the greater part of the way, and it was dif-
ficult to get the pack animals across, which
fell frequently, and could not get up with
their loads, unassisted. The morning was
very unpleasant, snow falling at intervals in
large flakes, and the sky dark. In about
two hours we succeeded in getting the ani-
mals over; and, after travelling another
hour along the eastern shore of the lake, we
turned up into a cove where there was
a sheltered place among the timber, with
good grass, and encamped. The Indians,
who had accompanied us so far, returned to
their village on the southeastern shore.
Among the pines here, I noticed some five
or six feet in diameter.

December 13.—The night has been cold;
the peaks around the lake gleam out bright-
ly in the morning sun, and the thermom-
eter is at zero. We continued up the hol-
low formed by a small affluent to the lake,
and immediately entered an open pine forest
on the mountain. The way here was some-
times obstructed by fallen trees, and the
snow was four to twelve inches deep. The
mules at the gun pulled heavily, and walk-
ing was a little laborious. In the midst of
the wood, we heard the sound of galloping
horses, and were agreeably surprised by the
unexpected arrival of our Tlamath chief,
with several Indians. He seemed to have

found his conduct inhospitable in letting the strangers depart without a guide through the snow, and had come, with a few others, to pilot us a day or two on the way. After travelling in an easterly direction through the forest for about four hours, we reached a considerable stream, with a border of good grass; and here, by the advice of our guides, we encamped. It is about thirty feet wide, and two to four feet deep; the water clear, with some current; and, according to the information of our Indians, is the principal affluent to the lake, and the head water of the Tlanath river.

A very clear sky enabled me to obtain here to-night good observations, including an emersion of the first satellite of Jupiter, which give for the longitude $121^{\circ} 20' 42''$, and for the latitude $42^{\circ} 51' 26''$. This emersion coincides remarkably well with the result obtained from an occultation at the encampment of December 7th to 8th, 1843; from which place, the line of our survey gives an casting of thirteen miles. The day's journey was 12 miles.

December 14.—Our road was over a broad mountain, and we rode seven hours in a thick snow storm, always through pine forests, when we came down upon the head waters of another stream, on which there was grass. The snow lay deep on the ground, and only the high swamp grass appeared above. The Indians were thinly clad, and I had remarked during the day that they suffered from the cold. This evening they told me that the snow was getting too deep on the mountain, and I could not induce them to go any farther. The stream we had struck issued from the mountain in an easterly direction, turning to the southward a short distance below; and, drawing its course upon the ground, they made us comprehend that it pursued its way for a long distance in that direction, uniting with many other streams, and gradually becoming a great river. Without the subsequent information, which confirmed the opinion, we became immediately satisfied that this water formed the principal stream of the Sacramento river; and, consequently, that this main affluent of the bay of San Francisco had its source within the limits of the United States, and opposite a tributary to the Columbia, and near the head of the Tlanath river; which goes to the ocean north of 42° , and within the United States.

December 15.—A present, consisting of useful goods, afforded much satisfaction to our guides; and, showing them the national flag, I explained that it was a symbol of our nation, and they engaged always to receive it in a friendly manner. The chief pointed out a course, by following which we would arrive at the big water, where no more

snow was to be found. Travelling in a direction N. 60° E. by compass, which the Indians informed me would avoid a bad mountain to the right, we crossed the Sacramento where it turned to the southward, and entered a grassy level plain—a smaller Grand Rond; from the lower end of which the river issued into an inviting country of low rolling hills. Crossing a hard-frozen swamp on the farther side of the Rond, we entered again the pine forest, in which very deep snow made our travelling slow and laborious. We were slowly but gradually ascending a mountain; and, after a hard journey of seven hours, we came to some naked places among the timber, where a few tufts of grass showed above the snow, on the side of a hollow; and here we encamped. Our cow, which every day got poorer, was killed here, but the meat was rather tough.

December 16.—We travelled this morning through snow about three feet deep, which, being crusted, very much cut the feet of our animals. The mountain still gradually rose; we crossed several spring heads covered with quaking asp; otherwise it was all pine forest. The air was dark with falling snow, which everywhere weighed down the trees. The depths of the forest were profoundly still; and below, we scarcely felt a breath of the wind which whirled the snow through their branches. I found that it required some exertion of constancy to adhere steadily to one course through the woods, when we were uncertain how far the forest extended, or what lay beyond; and, on account of our animals, it would be bad to spend another night on the mountain. Towards noon the forest looked clear ahead, appearing suddenly to terminate; and beyond a certain point we could see no trees. Riding rapidly ahead to this spot, we found ourselves on the verge of a vertical and rocky wall of the mountain. At our feet—more than a thousand feet below—we looked into a green prairie country, in which a beautiful lake, some twenty miles in length, was spread along the foot of the mountains, its shores bordered with green grass. Just then the sun broke out among the clouds, and illuminated the country below, while around us the storm raged fiercely. Not a particle of ice was to be seen on the lake, or snow on its borders, and all was like summer or spring. The glow of the sun in the valley below brightened up our hearts with sudden pleasure; and we made the woods ring with joyful shouts to those behind; and gradually, as each came up, he stopped to enjoy the unexpected scene. Shivering on snow three feet deep, and stiffening in a cold north wind, we exclaimed at once that the names of Summer Lake and Winter Ridge should

found. Travelling in a direct line, by compass, which the wind would avoid a bad day, we crossed the Sacramento to the southward, a level plain—a smaller one on the lower end of which was an inviting country of pine forest. Crossing a hard-frozen stream on the other side of the River, we entered a pine forest, in which very slowly our travelling slow and laboriously but gradually advanced; and, after a hard journey, we came to some naked timber, where a few tufts of grass above the snow, on the north side; and here we encamped. Every day got poorer, and the meat was rather tough. We travelled this morning about three feet deep, and trusted, very much cut the trail. The mountain still high, we crossed several springs with quaking asp; otherwise a forest. The air was dark and heavy, which everywhere weighed. The depths of the mountains still; and below, we felt the breath of the wind which blew through their branches. I required some exertion of course steadily to one course, when we were uncertain of rest extended, or what lay in account of our animals, it would spend another night on the mountains. The forest looked appearing suddenly to terminate at a certain point we could not riding rapidly ahead to this ourselves on the verge of a rocky wall of the mountain. More than a thousand feet below into a green prairie country, a beautiful lake, some twenty miles, was spread along the foot of the mountains, its shores bordered with grass. Just then the sun broke out, and illuminated the country around us the storm raged a particle of ice was to be seen, or snow on its borders, in the summer or spring. The sun in the valley below brightened with sudden pleasure; the woods ring with joyful sounds behind; and gradually, as we stopped to enjoy the sun. Shivering on snow three miles, stiffening in a cold north wind, I aimed at once that the names of the Lake and Winter Ridge should

be applied to these two proximate places of such sudden and violent contrast.

We were now immediately on the verge of the forest land, in which we had been travelling so many days; and, looking forward to the east, scarce a tree was to be seen. Viewed from our elevation, the face of the country exhibited only rocks and grass, and presented a region in which the artemisia became the principal wood, furnishing to its scattered inhabitants fuel for their fires, building material for their huts, and shelter for the small game which ministers to their hunger and nakedness. Broadly marked by the boundary of the mountain wall, and immediately below us, were the first waters of that Great Interior Basin which has the Wahsatch and Bear river mountains for its eastern, and the Sierra Nevada for its western rim; and the edge of which we had entered upwards of three months before, at the Great Salt lake.

When we had sufficiently admired the scene below, we began to think about descending, which here was impossible, and we turned towards the north, travelling always along the rocky wall. We continued on for four or five miles, making ineffectual attempts at several places; and at length succeeded in getting down at one which was extremely difficult of descent. Night had closed in before the foremost reached the bottom, and it was dark before we all found ourselves together in the valley. There were three or four half dead dry cedar trees on the shore, and those who first arrived kindled bright fires to light on the others. One of the mules rolled over and over two or three hundred feet into a ravine, but recovered himself, without any other injury than to his pack; and the howitzer was left midway the mountain until morning. By observation, the latitude of this encampment is $42^{\circ} 57' 22''$. It delayed us until near noon the next day to recover ourselves and put every thing in order; and we made only a short camp along the western shore of the lake, which, in the summer temperature we enjoyed to-day, justified the name we had given it. Our course would have taken us to the other shore, and over the highlands beyond; but I distrusted the appearance of the country, and decided to follow a plainly beaten Indian trail leading along this side of the lake. We were now in a country where the scarcity of water and of grass makes travelling dangerous, and great caution was necessary.

December 18.—We continued on the trail along the narrow strip of land between the lake and the high rocky wall, from which we had looked down two days before. Almost every half mile we crossed a little spring, or stream of pure cold water; and

the grass was certainly as fresh and green as in the early spring. From the white efflorescence along the shore of the lake, we were enabled to judge that the water was impure, like that of lakes we subsequently found; but the mud prevented us from approaching it. We encamped near the eastern point of the lake, where there appeared between the hills a broad and low connecting hollow with the country beyond. From a rocky hill in the rear, I could see, marked out by a line of yellow dried grass, the bed of a stream, which probably connected the lake with other waters in the spring.

The observed latitude of this encampment is $42^{\circ} 42' 37''$.

December 19.—After two hours' ride in an easterly direction, through a low country, the high ridge with pine forest still to our right, and a rocky and bald but lower one on the left, we reached a considerable freshwater stream, which issues from the pinyon mountains. So far as we had been able to judge, between this stream and the lake we had crossed dividing grounds; and there did not appear to be any connection, as might be inferred from the impure condition of the lake water.

The rapid stream of pure water, roaring along between banks overhung with aspens and willows, was a refreshing and unexpected sight; and we followed down the course of the stream, which brought us soon into a marsh, or dry lake, formed by the expanding waters of the stream. It was covered with high reeds and rushes, and large patches of ground had been turned up by the squaws in digging for roots, as if a farmer had been preparing the land for grain. I could not succeed in finding the plant for which they had been digging. There were frequent trails, and fresh tracks of Indians; and, from the abundant signs visible, the black-tailed hare appears to be numerous here. It was evident that, in other seasons, this place was a sheet of water. Crossing this marsh towards the eastern hills, and passing over a bordering plain of heavy sands, covered with artemisia, we encamped before sundown on the creek, which here was very small, having lost its water in the marshy grounds. We found here tolerably good grass. The wind to-night was high, and we had no longer our huge pine fires, but were driven to our old resource of small dried willows and artemisia. About twelve miles ahead, the valley appears to be closed in by a high, dark-looking ridge.

December 20.—Travelling for a few hours down the stream this morning, we turned a point of the hill on our left, and came suddenly in sight of another and much larger lake, which, along its eastern shore, was

closely bordered by the high black ridge which walled it in by a precipitous face on this side. Throughout this region the face of the country is characterized by these precipices of black volcanic rock, generally enclosing the valleys of streams, and frequently terminating the hills. Often in the course of our journey we would be tempted to continue our road up the gentle ascent of a sloping hill, which, at the summit, would terminate abruptly in a black precipice. Spread out over a length of 20 miles, the lake, when we first came in view, presented a handsome sheet of water; and I gave to it the name of Lake Abert, in honor of the chief of the corps to which I belonged. The fresh-water stream we had followed emptied into the lake by a little fall; and I was doubtful for a moment whether to go on, or encamp at this place. The miry ground in the neighborhood of the lake did not allow us to examine the water conveniently, and, being now on the borders of a desert country, we were moving cautiously. It was, however, still early in the day, and I continued on, trusting either that the water would be drinkable, or that we should find some little spring from the hill side. We were following an Indian trail which led along the steep rocky precipice; a black ridge along the western shore holding out no prospect whatever. The white efflorescences which lined the shore like a bank of snow, and the disagreeable odor which filled the air as soon as we came near, informed us too plainly that the water belonged to one of those fetid salt lakes which are common in this region. We continued until late in the evening to work along the rocky shore, but, as often afterwards, the dry inhospitable rock deceived us; and, halting on the lake, we kindled up fires to guide those who were straggling along behind. We tried the water, but it was impossible to drink it, and most of the people to-night lay down without eating; but some of us, who had always a great reluctance to close the day without supper, dug holes along the shore, and obtained water, which, being filtered, was sufficiently palatable to be used, but still retained much of its nauseating taste. There was very little grass for the animals, the shore being lined with a luxuriant growth of chenopodiaceous shrubs, which burned with a quick bright flame, and made our firewood.

The next morning we had scarcely travelled two hours along the shore when we reached a place where the mountains made a bay, leaving at their feet a low bottom around the lake. Here we found numerous hillocks covered with rushes, in the midst of which were deep holes, or springs, of pure water: and the bottom was covered

with grass, which, although of a salt and unwholesome quality, and mixed with saline efflorescences, was still abundant, and made a good halting place to recruit our animals; and we accordingly encamped here for the remainder of the day. I rode ahead several miles to ascertain if there was any appearance of a watercourse entering the lake; but found none, the hills preserving their dry character, and the shore of the lake sprinkled with the same white powdery substance, and covered with the same shrubs. There were flocks of ducks on the lake, and frequent tracks of Indians along the shore, where the grass had been recently burnt by their fires.

We ascended the bordering mountain, in order to obtain a more perfect view of the lake in sketching its figure; hills sweep entirely around its basin, from which the waters have no outlet.

December 22.—To-day we left this forbidding lake. Impassable rocky ridges barred our progress to the eastward, and I accordingly bore off towards the south, over an extensive sage plain. At a considerable distance ahead, and a little on our left, was a range of snowy mountains, and the country declined gradually towards the foot of a high and nearer ridge immediately before us, which presented the features of black precipices, now becoming common to the country. On the summit of the ridge, snow was visible; and there being every indication of a stream at its base, we rode on until after dark, but were unable to reach it, and halted among the sage bushes on the open plain, without either grass or water. The two Indiarubber bags had been filled with water in the morning, which afforded sufficient for the camp; and rain in the night formed pools, which relieved the thirst of the animals. Where we encamped on the bleak sandy plain, the Indians had made huts or circular enclosures, about four feet high and twelve feet broad, of artemisia bushes. Whether these had been forts or houses, or what they had been doing in such a desert place, we could not ascertain.

December 23.—The weather is mild; the thermometer at daylight 38°; the wind having been from the southward for several days. The country has a very forbidding appearance, presenting to the eye nothing but sage and barren ridges. We rode up towards the mountain, along the foot of which we found a lake, which we could not approach on account of the mud; and, passing around its southern end, ascended the slope at the foot of the ridge, where in some hollows we had discovered bushes and small trees—in such situations, a sure sign of water. We found here several springs, and the hill side was well sprinkled with a species of *festu-*

although of a salt and
ty, and mixed with saline
s still abundant, and made
e to recruit our animals:
y encamped here for the
ay. I rode ahead several
if there was any appear-
urse entering the lake;
he hills preserving their
d the shore of the lake
same white powdery sub-
d with the same shrubs.
s of ducks on the lake,
ks of Indians along the
grass had been recently

he bordering mountain, in
more perfect view of the
its figure; hills sweep en-
asin, from which the wa-

To-day we left this for-
passable rocky ridges bar-
to the eastward, and I ac-
towards the south, over
plain. At a considerable
nd a little on our left, was
mountains, and the country
towards the foot of a high
immediately before us.
he feature of black preci-
mit common to the coun-
of the ridge, snow was
e being every indication of
se, we rode on until after
able to reach it, and halted
ushes on the open plain,
grass or water. The two
had been filled with water
which afforded sufficient for
rain in the night formed
ved the thirst of the ani-
e encamped on the bleak
Indians had made huts or
s, about four feet high and
ad, of artemisia bushes.
ad been forts or houses, or
en doing in such a desert
ot ascertain.

The weather is mild; the
aylight 38°; the wind hav-
southward for several days.
a very forbidding appear-
to the eye nothing but sage
es. We rode up towards
ong the foot of which we
ich we could not approach
mud; and, passing around
ascended the slope at the
where in some hollows we
ushes and small trees—in
sure sign of water. We
al springs, and the hill side
ed with a species of festu-

ca—a better grass than we had found for
many days. Our elevated position gave us
a good view over the country, but we dis-
covered nothing very encouraging. South-
ward, about ten miles distant, was another
small lake, towards which a broad trail led
along the ridge; and this appearing to af-
ford the most practicable route, I determined
to continue our journey in that direction.

December 24.—We found the water of
the lake tolerably pure, and encamped at the
farther end. There were some good grass
and canes along the shore, and the vegeta-
tion at this place consisted principally of
chenopodiaceous shrubs.

December 25.—We were roused, on
Christmas morning, by a discharge from the
small arms and howitzer, with which our
people saluted the day; and the name of
which we bestowed on the lake. It was the
first time, perhaps, in this remote and deso-
late region, in which it had been so com-
memorated. Always, on days of religious
or national commemoration, our voyageurs
expect some unusual allowance; and, hav-
ing nothing else, I gave them each a little
brandy, (which was carefully guarded, as
one of the most useful articles a traveller
can carry,) with some coffee and sugar,
which here, where every eatable was a lux-
ury, was sufficient to make them a feast.
The day was sunny and warm; and, re-
suming our journey, we crossed some slight
dividing grounds into a similar basin, walled
in on the right by a lofty mountain ridge.
The plainly beaten trail still continued, and
occasionally we passed camping grounds of
the Indians, which indicated to me that we
were on one of the great thoroughfares of
the country. In the afternoon I attempted
to travel in a more eastern direction; but,
after a few laborious miles, was beaten
back into the basin by an impassable coun-
try. There were fresh Indian tracks about
the valley, and last night a horse was stolen.
We encamped on the valley bottom, where
there was some creamlike water in ponds,
colored by a clay soil and frozen over.
Chenopodiaceous shrubs constituted the
growth, and made again our firewood. The
animals were driven to the hill, where there
was tolerably good grass.

December 26.—Our general course was
again south. The country consists of
larger or smaller basins, into which the
mountain waters run down, forming small
lakes; they present a perfect level, from
which the mountains rise immediately and
abruptly. Between the successive basins,
the dividing grounds are usually very slight;
and it is probable that, in the seasons of
high water, many of these basins are in
communication. At such times there is
evidently an abundance of water, though

now we find scarcely more than the dry
beds. On either side, the mountains,
though not very high, appear to be rocky
and sterile. The basin in which we were
travelling declined towards the southwest
corner, where the mountains indicated a
narrow outlet; and, turning round a rocky
point or cape, we continued up a lateral
branch valley, in which we encamped at
night on a rapid, pretty little stream of
fresh water, which we found unexpectedly
among the sage near the ridge, on the
right side of the valley. It was bordered
with grassy bottoms and clumps of willows,
the water partially frozen. This stream
belongs to the basin we had left. By a
partial observation to-night, our camp was
found to be directly on the 42d parallel.
To-night a horse belonging to Carson, one
of the best we had in the camp, was stolen
by the Indians.

December 27.—We continued up the
valley of the stream, the principal branch
of which here issues from a bed of high
mountains. We turned up a branch to the
left, and fell into an Indian trail, which
conducted us by a good road over open
bottoms along the creek, where the snow
was five or six inches deep. Gradually
ascending, the trail led through a good
broad pass in the mountair, where we found
the snow about one foot deep. There were
some remarkably large cedars in the pass,
which were covered with an unusual quan-
tity of frost, which we supposed might pos-
sibly indicate the neighborhood of water;
and as, in the arbitrary position of Mary's
lake, we were already beginning to look
for it, this circumstance contributed to our
hope of finding it near. Descending from
the mountain, we reached another basin, on
the flat lake bed of which we found no
water, and encamped among the sage on
the bordering plain, where the snow was
still about one foot deep. Among this the
grass was remarkably green, and to-night
the animals fared tolerably well.

December 28.—The snow being deep, I
had determined, if any more horses were
stolen, to follow the tracks of the Indians
into the mountains, and put a temporary
check to their sly operations; but it did
not occur again.

Our road this morning lay down a level
valley, bordered by steep mountainous
ridges, rising very abruptly from the plain.
Artemisia was the principal plant, mingled
with Fremontia and the chenopodiaceous
shrubs. The artemisia was here extremely
large, being sometimes a foot in diameter
and eight feet high. Riding quietly along
over the snow, we came suddenly upon
smokes rising among these bushes; and,
galloping up, we found two huts, open at

the top, and loosely built of sage, which appeared to have been deserted at the instant; and, looking hastily around, we saw several Indians on the crest of the ridge near by, and several others scrambling up the side. We had come upon them so suddenly, that they had been well-nigh surprised in their lodges. A sage fire was burning in the middle; a few baskets made of straw were lying about, with one or two rabbit skins; and there was a little grass scattered about, on which they had been lying. "Tabibo—bo!" they shouted from the hills—a word which, in the Snake language, signifies *white*—and remained looking at us from behind the rocks. Carson and Godey rode towards the hill, but the men ran off like deer. They had been so much pressed, that a woman with two children had dropped behind a sage bush near the lodge, and when Carson accidentally stumbled upon her, she immediately began screaming in the extremity of fear, and shut her eyes fast, to avoid seeing him. She was brought back to the lodge, and we endeavored in vain to open a communication with the men. By dint of presents, and friendly demonstrations, she was brought to calmness; and we found that they belonged to the Snake nation, speaking the language of that people. Eight or ten appeared to live together, under the same little shelter; and they seemed to have no other subsistence than the roots or seeds they might have stored up, and the hares which live in the sage, and which they are enabled to track through the snow, and are very skillful in killing. Their skins afford them a little scanty covering. Hording together among bushes, and crouching almost naked over a little sage fire, using their instinct only to procure food, these may be considered, among human beings, the nearest approach to the mere animal creation. We have reason to believe that these had never before seen the face of a white man.

The day had been pleasant, but about two o'clock it began to blow; and crossing a slight dividing ground we encamped on the sheltered side of a hill, where there was good bunch grass, having made a day's journey of 24 miles. The night closed in, threatening snow; but the large sage bushes made bright fires.

December 29.—The morning mild, and at 4 o'clock it commenced snowing. We took our way across a plain, thickly covered with snow, towards a range of hills in the southeast. The sky soon became so dark with snow, that little could be seen of the surrounding country; and we reached the summit of the hills in a heavy snow storm. On the side we had approached,

this had appeared to be only a ridge of low hills; and we were surprised to find ourselves on the summit of a bed of broken mountains, which, as far as the weather would permit us to see, declined rapidly to some low country ahead, presenting a dreary and savage character; and for a moment I looked around in doubt on the wild and inhospitable prospect, scarcely knowing what road to take which might conduct us to some place of shelter for the night. Noticing among the hills the head of a grassy hollow, I determined to follow it, in the hope that it would conduct us to a stream. We followed a winding descent for several miles, the hollow gradually broadening into little meadows, and becoming the bed of a stream as we advanced; and towards night we were agreeably surprised by the appearance of a willow grove, where we found a sheltered camp, with water and excellent and abundant grass. The grass, which was covered by the snow on the bottom, was long and green, and the face of the mountain had a more favorable character in its vegetation, being smoother, and covered with good bunch grass. The snow was deep, and the night very cold. A broad trail had entered the valley from the right, and a short distance below the camp were the tracks where a considerable party of Indians had passed on horseback, who had turned out to the left, apparently with the view of crossing the mountains to the eastward.

December 30.—After following the stream for a few hours in a southeasterly direction, it entered a cañon where we could not follow; but determined not to leave the stream, we searched a passage below, where we could regain it, and entered a regular narrow valley. The water had now more the appearance of a flowing creek; several times we passed groves of willows, and we began to feel ourselves out of all difficulty. From our position, it was reasonable to conclude that this stream would find its outlet in Mary's lake, and conduct us into a better country. We had descended rapidly, and here we found very little snow. On both sides, the mountains showed often stupendous and curious-looking rocks, which at several places so narrowed the valley, that scarcely a pass was left for the camp. It was a singular place to travel through—shut up in the earth, a sort of chasm, the little strip of grass under our feet, the rough walls of bare rock on either hand, and the narrow strip of sky above. The grass to-night was abundant, and we encamped in high spirits.

December 31.—After an hour's ride this morning, our hopes were once more destroyed. The valley opened out, and before

to be only a ridge of low
re surprised to find our-
mit of a bed of broken
, as far as the weather
o see, declined rapidly to
ry ahead, presenting a
ge character; and for a
around in doubt on the
table prospect, scarcely
ad to take which might
be place of shelter for the
among the hills the head
y, I determined to follow
it it would conduct us to a
lowed a winding descent
es, the hollow gradually
little meadows, and be-
of a stream as we ad-
wards night we were agree-
the appearance of a wild-
e we found a sheltered
and excellent and abun-
grass, which was covered
the bottom, was long and
face of the mountain had a
character in its vegetation,
and covered with good
the snow was deep, and the
A broad trail had entered
the right, and a short dis-
camp were the tracks
table party of Indians had
back, who had turned out
arently with the view of
tainains to the eastward.

After following the stream
in a southeasterly direc-
tion where we could not
determine not to leave the
hed a passage below, where
it, and entered a regular
The water had now more
of a flowing creek; several
groves of willows, and we
selves out of all difficulty.
an, it was reasonable to con-
stream would find its outlet
and conduct us into a better
ad descended rapidly, and
very little snow. On both
tainains showed often stupen-
s-looking rocks, which at
o narrowed the valley; that
was left for the camp. It
place to travel through—shut
a sort of chasm, the little
under our feet, the rough
ek on either hand, and the
sky above. The grass to-
ndant, and we encamped in

After an hour's ride this
opes were once more de-
alley opened out, and before

us again lay one of the dry basins. After
some search, we discovered a high-water
outlet, which brought us in a few miles, and
by a descent of several hundred feet, into
another long broad basin, in which we found
the bed of a stream, and obtained sufficient
water by cutting the ice. The grass on the
bottoms was salt and unpalatable.

Here we concluded the year 1843, and
our new year's eve was rather a gloomy
one. The result of our journey began to be
very uncertain; the country was singularly
unfavorable to travel; the grasses being
frequently of a very unwholesome charac-
ter, and the hoofs of our animals were so
worn and cut by the rocks, that many of
them were lame, and could scarcely be got
along.

New Year's day, 1844.—We continued
down the valley, between a dry-looking
black ridge on the left and a more snowy
and high one on the right. Our road was
bad along the bottom, being broken by gul-
lies and impeded by sage, and sandy on the
hills, where there is not a blade of grass,
nor does any appear on the mountains. The
soil in many places consists of a fine pow-
dery sand, covered with a saline efflores-
cence; and the general character of the
country is desert. During the day we di-
rected our course towards a black cape, at
the foot of which a column of smoke indi-
cated hot springs.

January 2.—We were on the road early,
and the face of the country hidden by fall-
ing snow. We travelled along the bed of
the stream, in some places dry, in others
covered with ice; the travelling being very
bad, through deep fine sand, rendered tena-
cious by a mixture of clay. The weather
cleared up a little at noon, and we reached
the hot springs of which we had seen the
vapor the day before. There was a large
field of the usual salt grass here, peculiar
to such places. The country otherwise is a
perfect barren, without a blade of grass, the
only plants being some dwarf Fremontias.
We passed the rocky cape, a jagged broken
point, bare and torn. The rocks are vol-
canic, and the hills here have a burnt ap-
pearance—inders and coal occasionally ap-
pearing as at a blacksmith's forge. We
crossed the large dry bed of a muddy lake in
a southeasterly direction, and encamped at
night without water and without grass,
among sage bushes covered with snow.
The heavy road made several mules give
out to-day; and a horse, which had made
the journey from the States successfully
thus far, was left on the trail.

January 3.—A fog, so dense that we could
not see a hundred yards, covered the coun-
try, and the men that were sent out after
the horses were bewildered and lost; and

we were consequently detained at camp un-
til late in the day. Our situation had now
become a serious one. We had reached
and run over the position where, according
to the best maps in my possession, we should
have found Mary's lake or river. We
were evidently on the verge of the desert
which had been reported to us; and the ap-
pearance of the country was so forbidding,
that I was afraid to enter it, and determined
to bear away to the southward, keeping
close along the mountains, in the full expec-
tation of reaching the Buenaventura river.
This morning I put every man in the camp
on foot—myself, of course, among the rest
—and in this manner lightened by distribu-
tion the loads of the animals. We travelled
seven or eight miles along the ridge border-
ing the valley, and encamped where there
were a few bunches of grass on the bed of
a hill torrent, without water. There were
some large artemisias; but the principal
plants are chenopodiaceous shrubs. The
rock composing the mountains is here
changed suddenly into white granite. The
fog showed the tops of the hills at sunset,
and stars enough for observations in the
early evening, and then closed over us as be-
fore. Latitude by observation, 40° 48' 15".

January 4.—The fog to-day was still
more dense, and the people again were be-
wildered. We travelled a few miles around
the western point of the ridge, and encamp-
ed where there were a few tufts of grass,
but no water. Our animals now were in a
very alarming state, and there was increas-
ed anxiety in the camp.

January 5.—Same dense fog continued,
and one of the mules died in camp this
morning. I have had occasion to remark,
on such occasions as these, that animals
which are about to die leave the band, and,
coming into the camp, lie down about the
fires. We moved to a place where there
was a little better grass, about two miles
distant. Taplin, one of our best men, who
had gone out on a scouting excursion, as-
cended a mountain near by, and to his great
surprise emerged into a region of bright
sunshine, in which the upper parts of the
mountain were glowing, while below all was
obscured in the darkest fog.

January 6.—The fog continued the same,
and, with Mr. Preuss and Carson, I as-
cended the mountain, to sketch the leading
features of the country, as some indication
of our future route, while Mr. Fitzpatrick
explored the country below. In a very
short distance we had ascended above the
mist, but the view obtained was not very
gratifying. The fog had partially cleared
off from below when we reached the sum-
mit; and in the southwest corner of a ba-
sin communicating with that in which we

had encamped, we saw a lofty column of smoke, 16 miles distant, indicating the presence of hot springs. There, also, appeared to be the outlet of those draining channels of the country; and, as such places afforded always more or less grass, I determined to steer in that direction. The ridge we had ascended appeared to be composed of fragments of white granite. We saw here traces of sheep and antelope.

Entering the neighboring valley, and crossing the bed of another lake, after a hard day's travel over ground of yielding mud and sand, we reached the springs, where we found an abundance of grass, which, though only tolerably good, made this place, with reference to the past, a refreshing and agreeable spot.

This is the most extraordinary locality of hot springs we had met during the journey. The basin of the largest one has a circumference of several hundred feet; but there is at one extremity a circular space of about fifteen feet in diameter, entirely occupied by the boiling water. It boils up at irregular intervals, and with much noise. The water is clear, and the spring deep; a pole about sixteen feet long was easily immersed in the centre, but we had no means of forming a good idea of the depth. It was surrounded on the margin with a border of green grass, and near the shore the temperature of the water was 206°. We had no means of ascertaining that of the centre, where the heat was greatest; but, by dispersing the water with a pole, the temperature at the margin was increased to 208°, and in the centre it was doubtless higher. By driving the pole towards the bottom, the water was made to boil up with increased force and noise. There are several other interesting places, where water and smoke or gas escape, but they would require a long description. The water is impregnated with common salt, but not so much as to render it unfit for general cooking; and a mixture of snow made it pleasant to drink.

In the immediate neighborhood, the valley bottom is covered almost exclusively with chenopodiaceous shrubs, of greater luxuriance, and larger growth, than we have seen them in any preceding part of the journey.

I obtained this evening some astronomical observations.

Our situation now required caution. Including those which gave out from the injured condition of their feet, and those stolen by Indians, we had lost, since leaving the Dalles of the Columbia, fifteen animals; and of these, nine had been left in the last few days. I therefore determined, until we should reach a country of water and veg-

etation, to feel our way ahead, by having the line of route explored some fifteen or twenty miles in advance, and only to leave a present encampment when the succeeding one was known.

Taking with me Godey and Carson, I made to-day a thorough exploration of the neighboring valleys, and found in a ravine in the bordering mountains a good camping place, where was water in springs, and a sufficient quantity of grass for a night. Overshadowing the springs were some trees of the sweet cotton-wood, which, after a long interval of absence, we saw again with pleasure, regarding them as harbingers of a better country. To us, they were eloquent of green prairies and buffalo. We found here a broad and plainly marked trail, on which there were tracks of horses, and we appeared to have regained one of the thoroughfares which pass by the watering places of the country. On the western mountains of the valley, with which this of the boiling spring communicates, we remarked scattered cedars—probably an indication that we were on the borders of the timbered region extending to the Pacific. We reached the camp at sunset, after a day's ride of about forty miles. The horses we rode were in good order, being of some that were kept for emergencies, and rarely used.

Mr. Preuss had ascended one of the mountains, and occupied the day in sketching the country; and Mr. Fitzpatrick had found, a few miles distant, a hollow of excellent grass and pure water, to which the animals were driven, as I remained another day to give them an opportunity to recruit their strength. Indians appear to be everywhere prowling about like wild animals, and there is a fresh trail across the snow in the valley near.

Latitude of the boiling springs, 40° 39' 46".

On the 9th we crossed over to the cotton-wood camp. Among the shrubs on the hills were a few bushes of *ephedra occidentalis*, which afterwards occurred frequently along our road, and, as usual, the lowlands were occupied with artemisia. While the party proceeded to this place, Carson and myself reconnoitred the road in advance, and found another good encampment for the following day.

January 10.—We continued our reconnoissance ahead, pursuing a south direction in the basin along the ridge; the camp following slowly after. On a large trail there is never any doubt of finding suitable places for encampments. We reached the end of the basin, where we found, in a hollow of the mountain which enclosed it, an abundance of good bunch grass. Leaving a signal for the party to encamp, we continued

way ahead, by having explored some fifteen or more miles, and only to leave the country when the succeeding day we were to have had the Godey and Carson, I had a rough exploration of the country, and found in a ravine a good camp-site, with water in springs, and a variety of grass for a night. The springs were some cotton-wood, which, after our absence, we saw again regarding them as water-bearers. To us, they were elocairies and buffalo. We had a plain and marked trail, and tracks of horses, and have regained one of the passes by the watering country. On the western valley, with which this of communications, we recede—probably an indication on the borders of the extending to the Pacific. camp at sunset, after a forty miles. The horses in good order, being of some emergencies, and rarely

ascended one of the hills occupied the day in sketching and Mr. Fitzpatrick had a distant, a hollow of exposure water, to which the men, as I remained another opportunity to recruit the Indians appear to be everywhere about like wild animals, and trail across the snow in the

boiling springs, 40° 30' 46". crossed over to the cotton-wood shrubs on the hills of *ephedra occidentalis*, which occurred frequently along the usual, the lowlands were Artemisia. While the party was at this place, Carson and myself had advanced, and found a good camp for the following

We continued our reconnoitering in a south direction along the ridge; the camp followed. On a large trail there was no doubt of finding suitable places. We reached the end of the trail, where we found, in a hollow of which enclosed it, an abundance of bunch grass. Leaving a sign to encamp, we continued

our way up the hollow, intending to see what lay beyond the mountain. The hollow was several miles long, forming a good pass, the snow deepening to about a foot as we neared the summit. Beyond, a defile between the mountains descended rapidly about two thousand feet; and, filling up all the lower space, was a sheet of green water, some twenty miles broad. It broke upon our eyes like the ocean. The neighboring peaks rose high above us, and we ascended one of them to obtain a better view. The waves were curling in the breeze, and their dark-green color showed it to be a body of deep water. For a long time we sat enjoying the view, for we had become fatigued with mountains, and the free expanse of moving waves was very grateful. It was set like a gem in the mountains, which, from our position, seemed to enclose it almost entirely. At the western end it communicated with the line of basins we had left a few days since; and on the opposite side it swept a ridge of snowy mountains, the foot of the great Sierra. Its position at first inclined us to believe it Mary's lake, but the rugged mountains were so entirely discordant with descriptions of its low rushy shores and open country, that we concluded it some unknown body of water; which it afterwards proved to be.

On our road down, the next day, we saw herds of mountain sheep, and encamped on a little stream at the mouth of the defile, about a mile from the margin of the water, to which we hurried down immediately. The water is so slightly salt, that, at first, we thought it fresh, and would be pleasant to drink when no other could be had. The shore was rocky—a handsome beach, which reminded us of the sea. On some large granite boulders that were scattered about the shore, I remarked a coating of a calcareous substance, in some places a few inches and in others a foot in thickness. Near our camp, the hills, which were of primitive rock, were also covered with this substance, which was in too great quantity on the mountains along the shore of the lake to have been deposited by water, and has the appearance of having been spread over the rocks in mass.*

* The label attached to a specimen of this rock was lost; but I append an analysis of that which, from memory, I judge to be the specimen:

Carbonate of lime	77.31
Carbonate of magnesia	5.25
Oxide of iron	1.60
Alumina	1.05
Silica	8.55
Organic matter, water, and loss	6.24
	<hr/> 100.00

Where we had halted, appeared to be a favorite camping place for Indians.

January 13.—We followed again a broad Indian trail along the shore of the lake to the southward. For a short space we had room enough in the bottom; but, after travelling a short distance, the water swept the foot of the precipitous mountains, the peaks of which are about 3,000 feet above the lake. The trail wound along the base of these precipices, against which the water dashed below, by a way nearly impracticable for the howitzer. During a greater part of the morning the lake was nearly hid by a snow storm, and the waves broke on the narrow beach in a long line of foaming surf, five or six feet high. The day was unpleasantly cold, the wind driving the snow sharp against our faces; and, having advanced only about 12 miles, we encamped in a bottom formed by a ravine, covered with good grass, which was fresh and green.

We did not get the howitzer into camp, but were obliged to leave it on the rocks until morning. We saw several flocks of sheep, but did not succeed in killing any. Ducks were riding on the waves, and several large fish were seen. The mountain sides were crusted with the calcareous cement previously mentioned. There were chenopodiaceous and other shrubs along the beach; and, at the foot of the rocks, an abundance of *ephedra occidentalis*, whose dark-green color makes them evergreens among the shrubby growth of the lake. Towards evening the snow began to fall heavily, and the country had a wintry appearance.

The next morning the snow was rapidly melting under a warm sun. Part of the morning was occupied in bringing up the gun; and, making only nine miles, we encamped on the shore, opposite a very remarkable rock in the lake, which had attracted our attention for many miles. It rose, according to our estimate, 600 feet above the water; and, from the point we viewed it, presented a pretty exact outline of the great pyramid of Cheops. Like other rocks along the shore, it seemed to be incrustated with calcareous cement. This striking feature suggested a name for the lake; and I called it Pyramid lake; and though it may be deemed by some a fanciful resemblance, I can undertake to say that the future traveller will find much more striking resemblance between this rock and the pyramids of Egypt, than there is between them and the object from which they take their name.

The elevation of this lake above the sea is 4,890 feet, being nearly 700 feet higher than the Great Salt lake, from which it lies nearly west, and distant about eight degrees

of longitude. The position and elevation of this lake make it an object of geographical interest. It is the nearest lake to the western rim, as the Great Salt lake is to the eastern rim, of the Great Basin which lies between the base of the Rocky mountains and the Sierra Nevada; and the extent and character of which, its whole circumference and contents, it is so desirable to know.

The last of the cattle which had been driven from the Dalles was killed here for food, and was still in good condition.

January 15.—A few poor-looking Indians made their appearance this morning, and we succeeded in getting one into the camp. He was naked, with the exception of a tunic of hare skins. He told us that there was a river at the end of the lake, but that he lived in the rocks near by. From the few words our people could understand, he spoke a dialect of the Snake language; but we were not able to understand enough to know whether the river ran in or out, or what was its course; consequently, there still remained a chance that this might be Mary's lake.

Groves of large cotton-wood, which we could see at the mouth of the river, indicated that it was a stream of considerable size; and, at all events, we had the pleasure to know that now we were in a country where human beings could live. Accompanied by the Indian, we resumed our road, passing on the way several caves in the rock where there were baskets and seeds; but the people had disappeared. We saw also horse tracks along the shore.

Early in the afternoon, when we were approaching the groves at the mouth of the river, three or four Indians met us on the trail. We had an explanatory conversation in signs, and then moved on together towards the village, which the chief said was encamped on the bottom.

Reaching the groves, we found the inlet of a large fresh-water stream, and all at once were satisfied that it was neither Mary's river nor the waters of the Sacramento, but that we had discovered a large interior lake, which the Indians informed us had no outlet. It is about 35 miles long; and, by the mark of the water line along the shores, the spring level is about 12 feet above its present waters. The chief commenced speaking in a loud voice as we approached; and parties of Indians armed with bows and arrows issued from the thickets. We selected a strong place for our encampment—a grassy bottom, nearly enclosed by the river, and furnished with abundant firewood. The village, a collection of straw huts, was a few hundred yards higher up. An Indian brought in a large

fish to trade, which we had the inexpressible satisfaction to find was a salmon trout; we gathered round him eagerly. The Indians were amused with our delight, and immediately brought in numbers; so that the camp was soon stocked. Their flavor was excellent—superior, in fact, to that of any fish I have ever known. They were of extraordinary size—about as large as the Columbia river salmon—generally from two to four feet in length. From the information of Mr. Walker, who passed among some lakes lying more to the eastward, this fish is common to the streams of the inland lakes. He subsequently informed me that he had obtained them weighing six pounds when cleaned and the head taken off; which corresponds very well with the size of those obtained at this place. They doubtless formed the subsistence of these people, who hold the fishery in exclusive possession.

I remarked that one of them gave a fish to the Indian we had first seen, which he carried off to his family. To them it was probably a feast; being of the Digger tribe, and having no share in the fishery, living generally on seeds and roots. Although this was a time of the year when the fish have not yet become fat, they were excellent, and we could only imagine what they are at the proper season. These Indians were very fat, and appeared to live an easy and happy life. They crowded into the camp more than was consistent with our safety, retaining always their arms; and, as they made some unsatisfactory demonstrations, they were given to understand that they would not be permitted to come armed into the camp; and strong guards were kept with the horses. Strict vigilance was maintained among the people, and one-third at a time were kept on guard during the night. There is no reason to doubt that these dispositions, uniformly preserved, conducted our party securely through Indians famed for treachery.

In the mean time, such a salmon-trout feast as is seldom seen was going on in our camp; and every variety of manner in which fish could be prepared—boiled, fried, and roasted in the ashes—was put into requisition; and every few minutes an Indian would be seen running off to spear a fresh one. Whether these Indians had seen whites before, we could not be certain; but they were evidently in communication with others who had, as one of them had some brass buttons, and we noticed several other articles of civilized manufacture. We could obtain from them but little information respecting the country. They made on the ground a drawing of the river, which they represented as issuing from another lake in the mountains three or four days distant, in

we had the inexpressible
 was a salmon trout; we
 n eagerly. The Indians
 our delight, and imme-
 numbers; so that the
 icked. Their flavor was
 r, in fact, to that of any
 known. They were of
 —about as large as the
 mon—generally from two
 uth. From the inform-
 ker, who passed among
 more to the eastward, this
 the streams of the inland
 quently informed me that
 hen weighing six pounds
 the head taken off; which
 well with the size of those
 place. They doubtless
 tence of these people, who
 n exclusive possession.
 t one of them gave a fish
 had first seen, which he
 a family. To them it was
 being of the Digger tribe,
 here in the fishery, living
 and roots. Although
 of the year when the fish
 some fat, they were excel-
 ld only imagine what they
 r season. These Indians
 ad appeared to live an easy
 They crowded into the
 a was consistent with our
 always their arms; and, as
 unsatisfactory demonstra-
 given to understand that
 e permitted to come armed
 and strong guards were kept
 Strict vigilance was main-
 e people, and one-third at a
 on guard during the night
 son to doubt that these dis-
 mly preserved, conducted
 ely through Indians famed
 time, such a salmon-trout
 n seen was going on in our
 y variety of manner in which
 repared—boiled, fried, and
 shes—was put into requis-
 y few minutes an Indian
 nning off to spear a fresh
 these Indians had seen
 e could not be certain; but
 ntly in communication with
 as one of them had some
 and we noticed several other
 ed manufacture. We could
 n but little information re-
 ntrary. They made on the
 ng of the river, which they
 ssuing from another lake in
 ree or four days distant, in

a direction a little west of south; beyond
 which, they drew a mountain; and further
 still, two rivers; on one of which they told
 us that people like ourselves travelled.
 Whether they alluded to the settlements on
 the Sacramento, or to a party from the
 United States which had crossed the Sierra
 about three degrees to the southward, a few
 years since, I am unable to determine.

I tried unsuccessfully to prevail on some
 of them to guide us for a few days on the
 road, but they only looked at each other and
 laughed.

The latitude of our encampment, which
 may be considered the mouth of the inlet,
 is $39^{\circ} 51' 13''$ by our observations.

January 16.—This morning we continued
 our journey along this beautiful stream,
 which we naturally called the Salmon Trout
 river. Large trails led up on either side;
 the stream was handsomely timbered with
 large cotton-woods; and the waters were
 very clear and pure. We were travelling
 along the mountains of the great Sierra,
 which rose on our right, covered with snow;
 but below the temperature was mild and
 pleasant. We saw a number of dams which
 the Indians had constructed to catch fish.
 After having made about 18 miles, we en-
 camped under some large cotton-woods on
 the river bottom, where there was tolerably
 good grass.

January 17.—This morning we left the
 river, which here issues from the moun-
 tains on the west. With every stream I
 now expected to see the great Buenaven-
 tura; and Carson hurried eagerly to search,
 on every one we reached, for beaver cut-
 tings, which he always maintained we
 should find only on waters that ran to
 the Pacific; and the absence of such signs
 was to him a sure indication that the water
 had no outlet from the great basin. We
 followed the Indian trail through a tolera-
 bly level country, with small sage bushes,
 which brought us, after 20 miles journey,
 to another large stream, timbered with
 cotton-wood, and flowing also out of the
 mountains, but running more directly to the
 eastward.

On the way we surprised a family of
 Indians in the hills; but the man ran up
 the mountain with rapidity; and the woman
 was so terrified, and kept up such a con-
 tinued screaming, that we could do noth-
 ing with her, and were obliged to let
 her go.

January 18.—There were Indian lodges
 and fish dams on the stream. There were
 no beaver cuttings on the river; but below,
 it turned round to the right; and, hoping
 that it would prove a branch of the Buena-
 ventura, we followed it down for about
 three hours, and encamped.

I rode out with Mr. Fitzpatrick and Car-
 son to reconnoitre the country, which had
 evidently been alarmed by the news of our
 appearance. This stream joined with the
 open valley of another to the eastward; but
 which way the main water ran, it was im-
 possible to tell. Columns of smoke rose
 over the country at scattered intervals
 signals by which the Indians here, as else-
 where, communicate to each other that
 enemies are in the country. It is a signal
 of ancient and very universal application
 among barbarians.

Examining into the condition of the ani-
 mals when I returned into the camp, I
 found their feet so much cut up by the
 rocks, and so many of them lame, that it
 was evidently impossible that they could
 cross the country to the Rocky mountains.
 Every piece of iron that could be used for
 the purpose had been converted into nails,
 and we could make no further use of the
 shoes we had remaining. I therefore de-
 termined to abandon my eastern course,
 and to cross the Sierra Nevada into the
 valley of the Sacramento, wherever a prac-
 ticable pass could be found. My decision
 was heard with joy by the people, and dif-
 fused new life throughout the camp.

Latitude, by observation, $39^{\circ} 24' 16''$.

January 19.—A great number of smokes
 are still visible this morning, attesting at
 once the alarm which our appearance had
 spread among these people, and their igno-
 rance of us. If they knew the whites,
 they would understand that their only
 object in coming among them was to trade,
 which required peace and friendship; but
 they have nothing to trade—consequently,
 nothing to attract the white man; hence
 their fear and flight.

At daybreak we had a heavy snow; but
 sat out, and, returning up the stream, went
 out of our way in a circuit over a little
 mountain; and encamped on the same
 stream, a few miles above, in latitude 39°
 $19' 21''$ by observation.

January 20.—To-day we continued up
 the stream, and encamped on it close to the
 mountains. The freshly fallen snow was
 covered with the tracks of Indians, who
 had descended from the upper waters, prob-
 ably called down by the smokes in the
 plain.

We ascended a peak of the range, which
 commanded a view of this stream behind
 the first ridge, where it was winding its
 course through a somewhat open valley,
 and I sometimes regret that I did not make
 the trial to cross here; but while we had
 fair weather below, the mountains were
 darkened with falling snow, and, feeling un-
 willing to encounter them, we turned away
 again to the southward. In that direction

we travelled the next day over a tolerably level country, having always the high mountains on the west. There was but little snow or rock on the ground; and, after having travelled 24 miles, we encamped again on another large stream, running off to the northward and eastward, to meet that we had left. It ran through broad bottoms, having a fine meadow-land appearance.

Latitude $39^{\circ} 01' 53''$.

January 22.—We travelled up the stream for about 14 miles to the foot of the mountains, from which one branch issued in the southwest, the other flowing from SSE. along their base. Leaving the camp below, we ascended the range through which the first stream passed, in a cañon; on the western side was a circular valley, about 15 miles long, through which the stream wound its way, issuing from a gorge in the main mountain, which rose abruptly beyond. The valley looked yellow with faded grass; and the trail we had followed was visible, making towards the gorge, and this was evidently a pass; but again, while all was bright sunshine on the ridge and on the valley where we were, the snow was falling heavily in the mountains. I determined to go still to the southward, and encamped on the stream near the forks; the animals being fatigued and the grass tolerably good.

The rock of the ridge we had ascended is a compact lava, assuming a granitic appearance and structure, and containing, in some places, small nodules of obsidian. So far as composition and aspect are concerned, the rock in other parts of the ridge appears to be granite; but it is probable that this is only a compact form of lava of recent origin.

By observation, the elevation of the encampment was 5,020 feet; and the latitude $38^{\circ} 49' 54''$.

January 23.—We moved along the course of the other branch towards the southeast, the country affording a fine road; and, passing some slight dividing grounds, descended towards the valley of another stream. There was a somewhat rough-looking mountain ahead, which it appeared to issue from, or to enter—we could not tell which; and as the course of the valley and the inclination of the ground had a favorable direction, we were sanguine to find here a branch of the Buenaventura; but were again disappointed, finding it an inland water, on which we encamped after a day's journey of 24 miles. It was evident that, from the time we descended into the plain at Summer lake, we had been flanking the great range of mountains which divided the Great Basin from the waters of the Pacific; and that the con-

tinued succession, and almost connection, of lakes and rivers which we encountered, were the drainings of that range. Its rains, springs, and snows, would sufficiently account for these lakes and streams, numerous as they were.

January 24.—A man was discovered running towards the camp as we were about to start this morning, who proved to be an Indian of rather advanced age—a sort of forlorn hope, who seemed to have been worked up into the resolution of visiting the strangers who were passing through the country. He seized the hand of the first man he met as he came up, out of breath, and held on, as if to assure himself of protection. He brought with him in a little skin bag a few pounds of the seeds of a pine tree, which to-day we saw for the first time, and which Dr. Torrey has described as a new species, under the name of *pinus monophyllus*; in popular language, it might be called the *nut pine*. We purchased them all from him. The nut is oily, of very agreeable flavor, and must be very nutritious, as it constitutes the principal subsistence of the tribes among which we were now travelling. By a present of scarlet cloth, and other striking articles, we prevailed upon this man to be our guide of two days' journey. As clearly as possible by signs, we made him understand our object; and he engaged to conduct us in sight of a good pass which he knew. Here we ceased to hear the Shoshonee language—that of this man being perfectly unintelligible. Several Indians, who had been waiting to see what reception he would meet with, now came into camp; and, accompanied by the new-comers, we resumed our journey.

The road led us up the creek, which here becomes a rather rapid mountain stream, fifty feet wide, between dark-looking hills without snow; but immediately beyond them rose snowy mountains on either side, timbered principally with the nut pine. On the lower grounds, the general height of this tree is twelve to twenty feet, and eight inches the greatest diameter; it is rather branching, and has a peculiar and singular but pleasant odor. We followed the river for only a short distance along a rocky trail, and crossed it at a dam which the Indians made us comprehend had been built to catch salmon trout. The snow and ice were heaped up against it three or four feet deep entirely across the stream.

Leaving here the stream, which runs through impassable cañons, we continued our road over a very broken country, passing through a low gap between the snowy mountains. The rock which occurs immediately in the pass has the appearance of impure sandstone, containing scales of black

and almost connection, which we encountered, of that range. Its rains, would sufficiently access and streams, numerous

man was discovered run-amp as we were about to who proved to be an In-anced age—a sort of formed to have been worked ion of visiting the strans-ising through the country. d of the first man he met t of breath, and held on, nself of protection. He in a little skin bag a few ds of a pine tree, which the first time, and which scribed as a new species, f *pinus monophyllus*; in it might be called the *nut* sed them all from him. f very agreeable flavor, nutritious, as it constitutes tence of the tribes among w travelling. By a presh, and other striking arti- upon this man to be our ' journey. As clearly as we made him understand ne engaged to conduct us and pass which he knew. o hear the Shoshonee lan- this man being perfectly several Indians, who had e what reception he would ame into camp; and, ac- new-comers, we resumed

up the creek, which here r rapid mountain stream, between dark-looking hills t immediately beyond them tains on either side, tim- with the nut pine. On the e general height of this t twenty feet, and eight t diameter; it is rather a peculiar and singular

We followed the river tance along a rocky trail, a dam which the Indians and had been built to catch The snow and ice were it three or four feet deep e stream.

the stream, which runs le cañons, we continued ery broken country, pass- gap between the snowy rock which occurs imme- s has the appearance of containing scales of black

mies. This may be only a stratified lava. On issuing from the gap, the compact lava, and other volcanic products usual in the country, again occurred. We descended from the gap into a wide valley, or rather basin, and encamped on a small tributary to the last stream, on which there was very good grass. It was covered with such thick ice, that it required some labor with pick-axes to make holes for the animals to drink. The banks are lightly wooded with willow, and on the upper bottoms are sage and *Fremontia* with *ephedra occidentalis*, which begins to occur more frequently. The day has been a summer one, warm and pleasant; no snow on the trail, which, as we are all on foot, makes travelling more agreeable. The hunters went into the neighboring mountains, but found no game. We have five Indians in camp to-night.

January 25.—The morning was cold and bright, and as the sun rose the day became beautiful. A party of twelve Indians came down from the mountains to trade pine nuts, of which each one carried a little bag. These seemed now to be the staple of the country; and whenever we met an Indian, his friendly salutation consisted in offering a few nuts to eat and to trade; their only arms were bows and flint-pointed arrows. It appeared that in almost all the valleys the neighboring bands were at war with each other; and we had some difficulty in prevailing on our guides to accompany us on this day's journey, being at war with the people on the other side of a large snowy mountain which lay before us.

The general level of the country appeared to be getting higher, and we were gradually entering the heart of the mountains. Accompanied by all the Indians, we ascended a long ridge, and reached a pure spring at the edge of the timber, where the Indians had waylaid and killed an antelope, and where the greater part of them left us. Our pacific conduct had quieted their alarms; and though at war among each other, yet all confided in us—thanks to the combined effects of power and kindness—for our arms inspired respect, and our little presents and good treatment conciliated their confidence. Here we suddenly entered snow six inches deep, and the ground was a little rocky with volcanic fragments, the mountain appearing to be composed of such rock. The timber consists principally of nut pines, (*pinus monophyllus*), which here are of larger size—12 to 15 inches in diameter; heaps of cones lying on the ground, where the Indians have gathered the seeds.

The snow deepened gradually as we advanced. Our guides wore out their moccasins; and, putting one of them on a horse, we enjoyed the unusual sight of an Indian

who could not ride. He could not even guide the animal, and appeared to have no knowledge of horses. The snow was three or four feet deep in the summit of the pass; and from this point the guide pointed out our future road, declining to go any further. Below us was a little valley; and beyond this the mountains rose higher still, one ridge above another, presenting a rude and rocky outline. We descended rapidly to the valley; the snow impeded us but little; yet it was dark when we reached the foot of the mountain.

The day had been so warm, that our moccasins were wet with melting snow; but here, as soon as the sun begins to decline, the air gets suddenly cold, and we had great difficulty to keep our feet from freezing—our moccasins being frozen perfectly stiff. After a hard day's march of 27 miles, we reached the river some time after dark, and found the snow about a foot deep on the bottom—the river being entirely frozen over. We found a comfortable camp, where there were dry willows abundant, and we soon had blazing fires. A little brandy, which I husbanded with great care, remained, and I do not know any medicine more salutary, or any drink (except coffee) more agreeable, than this in a cold night after a hard day's march. Mr. Preuss questioned whether the famed nectar even possessed so exquisite a flavor. All felt it to be a reviving cordial.

The next morning, when the sun had not yet risen over the mountains, the thermometer was 20° below zero; but the sky was bright and pure, and the weather changed rapidly into a pleasant day of summer. I remained encamped, in order to examine the country, and allow the animals a day of rest, the grass being good and abundant under the snow.

The river is fifty to eighty feet wide, with a lively current, and very clear water. It forked a little above our camp, one of its branches coming directly from the south. At its head appeared to be a handsome pass; and from the neighboring heights we could see, beyond, a comparatively low and open country, which was supposed to form the valley of the Buenaventura. The other branch issued from a nearer pass, in a direction S. 75° W., forking at the foot of the mountain, and receiving part of its waters from a little lake. I was in advance of the camp when our last guides had left us; but, so far as could be understood, this was the pass which they had indicated, and, in company with Carson, to-day I set out to explore it. Entering the range, we continued in a northwesterly direction up the valley, which here bent to the right. It was a pretty, open bottom, locked between lofty mountains, which supplied frequent

streams as we advanced. On the lower part they were covered with nut-pine trees, and above with masses of pine, which we easily recognised, from the darker color of the foliage. From the fresh trails which occurred frequently during the morning, deer appeared to be remarkably numerous in the mountain.

We had now entirely left the desert country, and were on the verge of a region which, extending westward to the shores of the Pacific, abounds in large game, and is covered with a singular luxuriance of vegetable life.

The little stream grew rapidly smaller, and in about twelve miles we had reached its head, the last water coming immediately out of the mountain on the right; and this spot was selected for our next encampment. The grass showed well in sunny places; but in colder situations the snow was deep, and began to occur in banks, through which the horses found some difficulty in breaking a way.

To the left, the open valley continued in a southwesterly direction, with a scarcely perceptible ascent, forming a beautiful pass: the exploration of which we deferred until the next day, and returned to the camp.

To-day an Indian passed through the valley, on his way into the mountains, where he showed us was his lodge. We comprehended nothing of his language; and, though he appeared to have no fear, passing along in full view of the camp, he was indisposed to hold any communication with us, but showed the way he was going, and peated for us to go on our road.

By observation, the latitude of this encampment was $38^{\circ} 18' 01''$, and the elevation above the sea 6,310 feet.

January 27.—Leaving the camp to follow slowly, with directions to Carson to encamp at the place agreed on, Mr. Fitzpatrick and myself continued the reconnoissance. Arriving at the head of the stream, we began to enter the pass—passing occasionally through open groves of large pine trees, on the warm side of the defile, where the snow had melted away, occasionally exposing a large Indian trail. Continuing along a narrow meadow, we reached in a few miles the gate of the pass, where there was a narrow strip of prairie, about fifty yards wide, between walls of granite rock. On either side rose the mountains, forming on the left a rugged mass, or nucleus, wholly covered with deep snow, presenting a glittering and icy surface. At the time, we supposed this to be the point into which they were gathered between the two great rivers, and from which the waters flowed off to the bay. This was the icy and cold side of the pass, and the rays of the sun hardly touched the

snow. On the left, the mountains rose into peaks; but they were lower and secondary, and the country had a somewhat more open and lighter character. On the right were several hot springs, which appeared remarkable in such a place. In going through, we felt impressed by the majesty of the mountain, along the huge wall of which we were riding. Here there was no snow; but immediately beyond was a deep bank, through which we dragged our horses with considerable effort. We then immediately struck upon a stream, which gathered itself rapidly, and descended quick; and the valley did not preserve the open character of the other side, appearing below to form a cañon. We therefore climbed one of the peaks on the right, leaving our horses below; but we were so much shut up, that we did not obtain an extensive view, and what we saw was not very satisfactory, and awakened considerable doubt. The valley of the stream pursued a northwesterly direction, appearing below to turn sharply to the right, beyond which further view was cut off. It was, nevertheless, resolved to continue our road the next day down this valley, which we trusted still would prove that of the middle stream between the two great rivers. Towards the summit of this peak, the fields of snow were four or five feet deep on the northern side; and we saw several large hares, which had on their winter color, being white as the snow around them.

The winter day is short in the mountains, the sun having but a small space of sky to travel over in the visible part above our horizon; and the moment his rays are gone, the air is keenly cold. The interest of our work had detained us long, and it was after nightfall when we reached the camp.

January 28.—To-day we went through the pass with all the camp, and, after a hard day's journey of twelve miles, encamped on a high point where the snow had been blown off, and the exposed grass afforded a scanty pasture for the animals. Snow and broken country together made our travelling difficult: we were often compelled to make large circuits, and ascend the highest and most exposed ridges, in order to avoid snow, which in other places was banked up to a great depth.

During the day a few Indians were seen circling around us on snow shoes, and skimming along like birds; but we could not bring them within speaking distance. Godey, who was a little distance from the camp, had sat down to tie his moccasins, when he heard a low whistle near, and, looking up, saw two Indians half hiding behind a rock about forty yards distant; they would not allow him to approach, but breaking into a laugh, skimmed off over

the mountains rose into a lower and secondary, a somewhat more open. On the right were which appeared remarkable. In going through, we the majesty of the mountain wall of which we were was no snow; but in was a deep bank, through our horses with consideration immediately struck gathered itself rapidly; and the valley did character of the other to form a cañon. We one of the peaks on the horses below; but we up, that we did not observe, and what we saw satisfactory, and awakened. The valley of the northwesterly direction, turn sharply to the right, her view was cut off. It resolved to continue our down this valley, which would prove that of the between the two great rivers. nit of this peak, the fields or five feet deep on the d we saw several large on their winter color, below around them.

is short in the mountains, a small space of sky to a visible part above our moment his rays are gone. The interest of our us long, and it was after reached the camp.

To-day we went through the camp, and, after a hard twelve miles, encamped on the snow had been blown grass afforded a scanty animals. Snow and broken made our travelling difficult, often compelled to make ascend the highest and ridges, in order to avoid other places was banked up

a few Indians were seen as on snow shoes, and like birds; but we could within speaking distance. a little distance from the own to tie his moccasins, a low whistle near, and, wo Indians half hiding before forty yards distant; they him to approach, but laugh, skimmed off over

the snow, seeming to have no idea of the power of fire-arms, and thinking themselves perfectly safe when beyond arm's length.

To-night we did not succeed in getting the howitzer into camp. This was the most laborious day we had yet passed through, the steep ascents and deep snow exhausting both men and animals. Our single chronometer had stopped during the day, and its error in time occasioned the loss of an eclipse of a satellite this evening. It had not preserved the rate with which we started from the Dalles, and this will account for the absence of longitudes along this interval of our journey.

January 20.—From this height we could see, at a considerable distance below, yellow spots in the valley, which indicated that there was not much snow. One of these places we expected to reach to-night; and some time being required to bring up the gun, I went ahead with Mr. Fitzpatrick and a few men, leaving the camp to follow, in charge of Mr. Preuss. We followed a trail down a hollow where the Indians had descended, the snow being so deep that we never came near the ground; but this only made our descent the easier, and, when we reached a little affluent to the river at the bottom, we suddenly found ourselves in presence of eight or ten Indians. They seemed to be watching our motions, and, like the others, at first were indisposed to let us approach, ranging themselves like birds on a fallen log on the hillside above our heads, where, being out of reach, they thought themselves safe. Our friendly demeanor reconciled them, and, when we got near enough, they immediately stretched out to us handfuls of pine nuts, which seemed an exercise of hospitality. We made them a few presents, and, telling us that their village was a few miles below, they went on to let their people know what we were. The principal stream still running through an impracticable cañon, we ascended a very steep hill, which proved afterwards the last and fatal obstacle to our little howitzer, which was finally abandoned at this place. We passed through a small meadow a few miles below, crossing the river, which depth, swift current, and rock, made it difficult to ford; and, after a few more miles of very difficult trail, issued into a larger prairie bottom, at the farther end of which we encamped, in a position rendered strong by rocks and trees. The lower parts of the mountain were covered with the nut pine. Several Indians appeared on the hillside, reconnoitring the camp, and were induced to come in; others came in during the afternoon; and in the evening we held a coun-

cil. The Indians immediately made it clear that the waters on which we were also belong to the Great Basin, in the edge of which we had been since the 17th of December; and it became evident that we had still the great ridge on the left to cross before we could reach the Pacific waters.

We explained to the Indians that we were endeavoring to find a passage across the mountains into the country of the whites, whom we were going to see; and told them that we wished them to bring us a guide, to whom we would give presents of scarlet cloth, and other articles, which were shown to them. They looked at the reward we offered, and conferred with each other, but pointed to the snow on the mountain, and drew their hands across their necks, and raised them above their heads, to show the depth; and signified that it was impossible for us to get through. They made signs that we must go to the southward, over a pass through a lower range, which they pointed out; there, they said, at the end of one day's travel, we would find people who lived near a pass in the great mountain; and to that point they engaged to furnish us a guide. They appeared to have a confused idea, from report, of whites who lived on the other side of the mountain; and once, they told us, about two years ago, a party of twelve men like ourselves had ascended their river, and crossed to the other waters. They pointed out to us where they had crossed; but then, they said, it was summer time; but now it would be impossible. I believe that this was a party led by Mr. Chiles, one of the only two men whom I know to have passed through the California mountains from the interior of the Basin—Walker being the other; and both were engaged upwards of twenty days, in the summer time, in getting over. Chiles's destination was the bay of San Francisco, to which he descended by the Stanislaus river; and Walker subsequently informed me that, like myself, descending to the southward on a more eastern line, day after day he was searching for the Buenaventura, thinking that he had found it with every new stream, until, like me, he abandoned all idea of its existence, and, turning abruptly to the right, crossed the great chain. These were both western men, animated with the spirit of exploratory enterprise which characterizes that people.

The Indians brought in during the evening an abundant supply of pine nuts, which we traded from them. When roasted, their pleasant flavor made them an agreeable addition to our now scanty store of provisions, which were reduced to a very

low ebb. Our principal stock was in peas, which it is not necessary to say contain scarcely any nutriment. We had still a little flour left, some coffee, and a quantity of sugar, which I reserved as a defence against starvation.

The Indians informed us that at certain seasons they have fish in their waters, which we supposed to be salmon trout; for the remainder of the year they live upon the pine nuts, which form their great winter subsistence—a portion being always at hand, shut up in the natural storehouse of the cones. At present, they were presented to us as a whole people living upon this simple vegetable.

The other division of the party did not come in to-night, but encamped in the upper meadow, and arrived the next morning. They had not succeeded in getting the howitzer beyond the place mentioned, and where it had been left by Mr. Preuss in obedience to my orders; and, in anticipation of the snow banks and snow fields still ahead, foreseeing the inevitable detention to which it would subject us, I reluctantly determined to leave it there for the time. It was of the kind invented by the French for the mountain part of their war in Algiers; and the distance it had come with us proved how well it was adapted to its purpose. We left it, to the great sorrow of the whole party, who were grieved to part with a companion which had made the whole distance from St. Louis, and commanded respect for us on some critical occasions, and which might be needed for the same purpose again.

January 30.—Our guide, who was a young man, joined us this morning; and, leaving our encampment late in the day, we descended the river, which immediately opened out into a broad valley, furnishing good travelling ground. In a short distance we passed the village, a collection of straw huts; and a few miles below, the guide pointed out the place where the whites had been encamped before they entered the mountain. With our late start we made but ten miles, and encamped on the low river bottom, where there was no snow, but a great deal of ice; and we cut piles of long grass to lay under our blankets, and fires were made of large dry willows, groves of which wooded the stream. The river took here a northeasterly direction, and through a spur from the mountains on the left was the gap where we were to pass the next day.

January 31.—We took our way over a gently rising ground, the dividing ridge being tolerably low; and travelling easily along a broad trail, in twelve or fourteen miles reached the upper part of the pass,

when it began to snow thickly, with very cold weather. The Indians had only the usual scanty covering, and appeared to suffer greatly from the cold. All left us, except our guide. Half hidden by the storm, the mountains looked dreary, and, as night began to approach, the guide showed great reluctance to go forward. I placed him between two rifles, for the way began to be difficult. Travelling a little farther, we struck a ravine, which the Indian said would conduct us to the river; and as the poor fellow suffered greatly, shivering in the snow which fell upon his naked skin, I would not detain him any longer; and he ran off to the mountain, where he said there was a hut near by. He had kept the blue and scarlet cloth I had given him tightly rolled up, preferring rather to endure the cold than to get them wet. In the course of the afternoon, one of the men had his foot frost-bitten; and about dark we had the satisfaction to reach the bottoms of a stream timbered with large trees, among which we found a sheltered camp, with an abundance of such grass as the season afforded for the animals. We saw before us, in descending from the pass, a great continuous range, along which stretched the valley of the river; the lower parts steep, and dark with pines, while above it was hidden in clouds of snow. This we felt instantly satisfied was the central ridge of the Sierra Nevada, the great California mountain, which only now intervened between us and the waters of the bay. We had made a forced march of 26 miles, and three mules had given out on the road. Up to this point, with the exception of two stolen by Indians, we had lost none of the horses which had been brought from the Columbia river, and a number of these were still strong and in tolerably good order. We had now 67 animals in the band.

We had scarcely lighted our fires, when the camp was crowded with nearly naked Indians; some of them were furnished with long nets in addition to bows, and appeared to have been out on the sage hills to hunt rabbits. These nets were perhaps 30 to 40 feet long, kept upright in the ground by slight sticks at intervals, and were made from a kind of wild hemp, very much resembling in manufacture those common among the Indians of the Sacramento valley. They came among us without any fear, and scattered themselves about the fires, mainly occupied in gratifying their astonishment. I was struck by the singular appearance of a row of about a dozen, who were sitting on their haunches perched on a log near one of the fires, with their quick sharp eyes following every motion.

We gathered together a few of the moose

snow thickly, with very few Indians had only the ring, and appeared to suffer from cold. All left us, except half hidden by the storm, and dreary. and, as night fell, the guide showed great forwardness. I placed him on the way began to be a little farther, which the Indian said to the river; and as the snow fell greatly, shivering in all upon his naked skin, I left him any longer; and he returned to the mountain, where he said he would be by. He had kept the cloth I had given him, preferring rather to endure getting wet. In the afternoon, one of the men had a horse; and about dark we had to reach the bottoms of a valley with large trees, among which we sheltered camp, with an abundance of grass as the season advanced. We saw before us, in the pass, a great continuation which stretched the valley lower parts steep, and dark above it was hidden in this we felt instantly satisfied. The ridge of the Sierra Nevada, a mountain, which only between us and the waters had made a forced march three miles had given out to this point, with the exception of the horses which had been on the Columbia river, and were still strong and in tel-er. We had now 67 ani-ly lighted our fires, when crowded with nearly naked them were furnished with bows, and appeared on the sage hills to hunt nets were perhaps 30 to 40 upright in the ground by intervals, and were made of wild hemp, very much re-manufacture those common of the Sacramento val- among us without any fear, themselves about the fires, a gratifying their astonish- ruck by the singular ap- w of about a dozen, who their haunches perched on the fires, with their quiet- ing every motion. together a few of the mo-

intelligent of the Indians, and held this evening an interesting council. I explained to them my intentions. I told them that we had come from a very far country, having been travelling now nearly a year, and that we were desirous simply to go across the mountain into the country of the other whites. There were two who appeared particularly intelligent—one, a somewhat old man. He told me that, before the snows fell, it was six sleeps to the place where the whites lived, but that now it was impossible to cross the mountain on account of the deep snow; and showing us, as the others had done, that it was over our heads, he urged us strongly to follow the course of the river, which he said would conduct us to a lake in which there were many large fish. There, he said, were many people; there was no snow on the ground; and we might remain there until the spring. From their descriptions, we were enabled to judge that we had encamped on the upper water of the Salmon Trout river. It is hardly necessary to say that our communication was only by signs, as we understood nothing of their language; but they spoke, notwithstanding, rapidly and vehemently, explaining what they considered the folly of our intentions, and urging us to go down to the lake. *Tah-ee*, a word signifying now, we very soon learned to know, from its frequent repetition. I told him that the men and the horses were strong, and that we would break a road through the snow; and spreading before him our bales of scarlet cloth, and trinkets, showed him what we would give for a guide. It was necessary to obtain one, if possible; for I had determined here to attempt the passage of the mountain. Pulling a bunch of grass from the ground, after a short discussion among themselves, the old man made us comprehend, that if we could break through the snow, at the end of three days we would come down upon grass, which he showed us would be about six inches high, and where the ground was entirely free. So far, he said, he had been in hunting for elk; but beyond that (and he closed his eyes) he had seen nothing; but there was one among them who had been to the whites, and, going out of the lodge, he returned with a young man of very intelligent appearance. Here, said he, is a young man who has seen the whites with his own eyes; and he swore, first by the sky, and then by the ground, that what he said was true. With a large present of goods, we prevailed upon this young man to be our guide, and he acquired among us the name *Mélo*—a word signifying friend, which they used very frequently. He was thinly clad, and nearly barefoot; his moccasins being about worn

out. We gave him skins to make a new pair, and to enable him to perform his undertaking to us. The Indians remained in the camp during the night, and we kept the guide and two others to sleep in the lodge with us—Carson lying across the door, and having made them comprehend the use of our fire-arms. The snow, which had intermitted in the evening, commenced falling again in the course of the night, and it snowed steadily all day. In the morning I acquainted the men with my decision, and explained to them that necessity required us to make a great effort to clear the mountains. I reminded them of the beautiful valley of the Sacramento, with which they were familiar from the descriptions of Carson, who had been there some fifteen years ago, and who, in our late privations, had delighted us in speaking of its rich pastures and abounding game, and drew a vivid contrast between its summer climate, less than a hundred miles distant, and the falling snow around us. I informed them (and long experience had given them confidence in my observations and good instruments) that almost directly west, and only about 70 miles distant, was the great farming establishment of Captain Sutter—a gentleman who had formerly lived in Missouri, and, emigrating to this country, had become the possessor of a principality. I assured them that, from the heights of the mountain before us, we should doubtless see the valley of the Sacramento river, and with one effort place ourselves again in the midst of plenty. The people received this decision with the cheerful obedience which had always characterized them; and the day was immediately devoted to the preparations necessary to enable us to carry it into effect. Leggings, moccasins, clothing—all were put into the best state to resist the cold. Our guide was not neglected. Extremity of suffering might make him desert; we therefore did the best we could for him. Leggings, moccasins, some articles of clothing, and a large green blanket, in addition to the blue and scarlet cloth, were lavished upon him, and to his great and evident contentment. He arrayed himself in all his colors; and, clad in green, blue, and scarlet, he made a gay-looking Indian; and, with his various presents, was probably richer and better clothed than any of his tribe had ever been before.

I have already said that our provisions were very low; we had neither tallow nor grease of any kind remaining, and the want of salt became one of our greatest privations. The poor dog which had been found in the Bear river valley, and which had been a *compagnon de voyage* ever since, had now become fat, and the mess to which it be-

longed requested permission to kill it. Leave was granted. Spread out on the snow, the meat looked very good; and it made a strengthening meal for the greater part of the camp. Indians brought in two or three rabbits during the day, which were purchased from them.

The river was 40 to 70 feet wide, and now entirely frozen over. It was wooded with large cotton-wood, willow, and *grain de beauf*. By observation, the latitude of this encampment was $38^{\circ} 37' 18''$.

February 2.—It had ceased snowing, and this morning the lower air was clear and frosty; and six or seven thousand feet above, the peaks of the Sierra now and then appeared among the rolling clouds, which were rapidly dispersing before the sun. Our Indian shook his head as he pointed to the icy pinnacles, shooting high up into the sky, and seeming almost immediately above us. Crossing the river on the ice, and leaving it immediately, we commenced the ascent of the mountain along the valley of a tributary stream. The people were unusually silent, for every man knew that our enterprise was hazardous, and the issue doubtful.

The snow deepened rapidly, and it soon became necessary to break a road. For this service, a party of ten was formed, mounted on the strongest horses; each man in succession opening the road on foot, or on horseback, until himself and his horse became fatigued, when he stepped aside; and, the remaining number passing ahead, he took his station in the rear. Leaving this stream, and pursuing a very direct course, we passed over an intervening ridge to the river we had left. On the way we passed two low huts entirely covered with snow, which might very easily have escaped observation. A family was living in each; and the only trail I saw in the neighborhood was from the door-hole to a nut-pine tree near, which supplied them with food and fuel. We found two similar huts on the creek where we next arrived; and, travelling a little higher up, encamped on its banks in about four feet depth of snow. Carson found near, an open hill side, where the wind and the sun had melted the snow, leaving exposed sufficient bunch grass for the animals to-night.

The nut-pines were now giving way to heavy timber, and there were some immense pines on the bottom, around the roots of which the sun had melted away the snow; and here we made our camp and built huge fires. To-day we had travelled sixteen miles, and our elevation above the sea was 8,760 feet.

February 3.—Turning our faces directly towards the main chain, we ascended an open hollow along a small tributary to the

river, which, according to the Indians, issues from a mountain to the south. The snow was so deep in the hollow, that we were obliged to travel along the steep hill sides, and over spurs, where wind and sun had in places lessened the snow, and where the grass, which appeared to be in good quality along the sides of the mountains, was exposed. We opened our road in the same way as yesterday, but made only seven miles; and encamped by some springs at the foot of a high and steep hill, by which the hollow ascended to another basin in the mountain. The little stream below was entirely buried in snow. The springs were shaded by the boughs of a lofty cedar, which here made its first appearance; the usual height was 120 to 130 feet, and one that was measured near by was 6 feet in diameter.

There being no grass exposed here, the horses were sent back to that which we had seen a few miles below. We occupied the remainder of the day in beating down a road to the foot of the hill, a mile or two distant, the snow being beaten down when moist, in the warm part of the day, and then hard frozen at night, made a foundation that would bear the weight of the animals the next morning. During the day several Indians joined us on snow shoes. These were made of a circular hoop, about a foot in diameter, the interior space being filled with an open network of bark.

February 4.—I went ahead early with two or three men, each with a led horse, to break the road. We were obliged to abandon the hollow entirely, and work along the mountain side, which was very steep, and the snow covered with an icy crust. We cut a footing as we advanced, and trampled a road through for the animals; but occasionally one plunged outside the trail, and slid along the field to the bottom, a hundred yards below. Late in the day we reached another bench in the hollow, where, in summer, the stream passed over a small precipice. Here was a short distance of dividing ground between the two ridges, and beyond an open basin, some ten miles across, whose bottom presented a field of snow. At the further or western side rose the middle crest of the mountain, a dark-looking ridge of volcanic rock.

The summit line presented a range of naked peaks, apparently destitute of snow and vegetation; but below, the face of the whole country was covered with timber of extraordinary size.

Towards a pass which the guide indicated here, we attempted in the afternoon to force a road; but after a laborious plunging through two or three hundred yards, our best horses gave out, entirely refusing to

ding to the Indians, issues
to the south. The snow
the hollow, that we were
long the steep hill sides,
ere wind and sun had in
e snow, and where the
ared to be in good quality
of the mountains, was ex-
ed our road in the same
e, but made only seven
pped by some springs at
and steep hill, by which
ed to another basin in the
little stream below was
snow. The springs were
ghts of a lofty cedar, which
st appearance; the usual
o 130 feet, and one that
r by was 6 feet in diam-

o grass exposed here, the
back to that which we had
below. We occupied the
day in beating down a road
hill, a mile or two distant,
aten down when moist, in
f the day, and then hard
made a foundation that
weight of the animals the
during the day several In-
snow shoes. These were
r hoop, about a foot in di-
or space being filled with
of bark.

I went ahead early with
each with a led horse, to
We were obliged to aban-
tirely, and work along the
which was very steep, and
d with an icy crust. We
ve advanced, and trampled
or the animals; but occa-
yed outside the trail, and
ield to the bottom, a hun-
v. Late in the day we
ench in the hollow, where,
ream passed over a small
was a short distance of
between the two ridges, and
asin, some ten miles across,
sented a field of snow. At
stern side rose the middle
tain, a dark-looking ridge

ne presented a range of
arently destitute of snow
ut below, the face of the
s covered with timber of

which the guide indicated
d in the afternoon to force
r a laborious plunging
three hundred yards, our
out, entirely refusing to

make any further effort; and, for the time,
we were brought to a stand. The guide
informed us that we were entering the deep
snow, and here began the difficulties of the
mountain; and to him, and almost to all,
our enterprise seemed hopeless. I returned
a short distance back, to the break in the
hollow, where I met Mr. Fitzpatrick.

The camp had been all the day occupied
in endeavoring to ascend the hill, but only the
best horses had succeeded, the animals,
generally, not having sufficient strength to
bring themselves up without the packs;
and all the line of road between this and
the springs was strewed with camp stores
and equipage, and horses floundering in
snow. I therefore immediately encamped
on the ground with my own mess, which
was in advance, and directed Mr. Fitzpat-
rick to encamp at the springs, and send all
the animals, in charge of Tabeau, with a
strong guard, back to the place where they
had been pastured the night before. Here
was a small spot of level ground, protected
on one side by the mountain, and on the
other sheltered by a little ridge of rock. It
was an open grove of pines, which assimilated
in size to the grandeur of the moun-
tain, being frequently six feet in diameter.

To-night we had no shelter, but we made
a large fire around the trunk of one of the
huge pines; and covering the snow with
small boughs, on which we spread our blan-
kets, soon made ourselves comfortable. The
night was very bright and clear, though the
thermometer was only at 10°. A strong
wind, which sprang up at sundown, made it
intensely cold; and this was one of the bit-
terest nights during the journey.

Two Indians joined our party here; and
one of them, an old man, immediately be-
gan to harangue us, saying that ourselves
and animals would perish in the snow; and
that if we would go back, he would show
us another and a better way across the
mountain. He spoke in a very loud voice,
and there was a singular repetition of
phrases and arrangement of words, which
rendered his speech striking, and not un-
musical.

We had now begun to understand some
words, and, with the aid of signs, easily
comprehended the old man's simple ideas.
"Rock upon rock—rock upon rock—snow
upon snow—snow upon snow," said he;
"even if you get over the snow, you will
not be able to get down from the mountains."
He made us the sign of precipices, and
showed us how the feet of the horses would
slip, and throw them off from the narrow
trails which led along their sides. Our
Chinook, who comprehended even more
readily than ourselves, and believed our
situation hopeless, covered his head with

his blanket, and began to weep and lament.
"I wanted to see the whites," said he; "I
came away from my own people to see the
whites, and I wouldn't care to die among
them; but here"—and he looked around
into the cold night and gloomy forest, and,
drawing his blanket over his head, began
again to lament.

Seated around the tree, the fire illumina-
ting the rocks and the tall bolls of the pines
round about, and the old Indian haranguing,
we presented a group of very serious faces.

February 5.—The night had been too
cold to sleep, and we were up very early.
Our guide was standing by the fire with all
his finery on; and seeing him shiver in the
cold, I threw on his shoulders one of my
blankets. We missed him a few minutes
afterwards, and never saw him again. He
had deserted. His bad faith and treachery
were in perfect keeping with the estimate
of Indian character, which a long inter-
course with this people had gradually forced
upon my mind.

While a portion of the camp were occu-
pied in bringing up the baggage to this
point, the remainder were busied in making
sledges and snow shoes. I had determined
to explore the mountain ahead, and the
sledges were to be used in transporting the
baggage.

The mountains here consisted wholly of
a white micaceous granite.

The day was perfectly clear, and, while
the sun was in the sky, warm and pleasant.

By observation, our latitude was 38° 43'
26"; and elevation, by the boiling point,
7,400 feet.

February 6.—Accompanied by Mr. Fitz-
patrick, I set out to-day with a reconnoitring
party, on snow shoes. We marched all in
single file, trampling the snow as heavily as
we could. Crossing the open basin, in a
march of about ten miles we reached the
top of one of the peaks, to the left of the
pass indicated by our guide. Far below us,
dimmed by the distance, was a large snow-
less valley, bounded on the western side, at
the distance of about a hundred miles, by a
low range of mountains, which Carson re-
cognized with delight as the mountains bor-
dering the coast. "There," said he, "is
the little mountain—it is 15 years ago since
I saw it; but I am just as sure as if I had
seen it yesterday." Between us, then, and
this low coast range, was the valley of the
Sacramento; and no one who had not ac-
companied us through the incidents of our
life for the last few months could realize
the delight with which at last we looked
down upon it. At the distance of apparently
30 miles beyond us were distinguished spots
of prairie; and a dark line, which could be
traced with the glass, was imagined to be

the course of the river; but we were evidently at a great height above the valley, and between us and the plains extended miles of snowy fields and broken ridges of pine-covered mountains.

It was late in the day when we turned towards the camp; and it grew rapidly cold as it drew towards night. One of the men became fatigued, and his feet began to freeze, and, building a fire in the trunk of a dry old cedar, Mr. Fitzpatrick remained with him until his clothes could be dried, and he was in a condition to come on. After a day's march of 20 miles, we straggled into camp, one after another, at nightfall; the greater number excessively fatigued, only two of the party having ever travelled on snow shoes before.

All our energies were now directed to getting our animals across the snow; and it was supposed that, after all the baggage had been drawn with the sleighs over the trail we had made, it would be sufficiently hard to bear our animals. At several places, between this point and the ridge, we had discovered some grassy spots, where the wind and sun had dispersed the snow from the sides of the hills, and these were to form resting places to support the animals for a night in their passage across. On our way across, we had set on fire several broken stumps, and dried trees, to melt holes in the snow for the camps. Its general depth was 6 feet; but we passed over places where it was 20 feet deep, as shown by the trees.

With one party drawing sleighs loaded with baggage, I advanced to-day about four miles along the trail, and encamped at the first grassy spot, where we expected to bring our horses. Mr. Fitzpatrick, with another party, remained behind, to form an intermediate station between us and the animals.

February 8.—The night has been extremely cold; but perfectly still, and beautifully clear. Before the sun appeared this morning, the thermometer was 3° below zero; 1° higher, when his rays struck the lofty peaks; and 0° when they reached our camp.

Scenery and weather, combined, must render these mountains beautiful in summer; the purity and deep-blue color of the sky are singularly beautiful; the days are sunny and bright, and even warm in the noon hours; and if we could be free from the many anxieties that oppress us, even now we would be delighted here; but our provisions are getting fearfully scant. Sleighs arrived with baggage about 10 o'clock; and leaving a portion of it here, we continued on for a mile and a half, and encamped at the foot of a long hill on this side of the open bottom.

Bernier and Godey, who yesterday morning had been sent to ascend a higher peak got in, hungry and fatigued. They confirmed what we had already seen. Two other sleighs arrived in the afternoon; and the men being fatigued, I gave them all tea and sugar. Snow clouds began to rise in the SSW; and, apprehensive of a storm, which would destroy our road, I sent the people back to Mr. Fitzpatrick, with directions to send for the animals in the morning. With me remained Mr. Preuss, Mr. Talbot, and Carson, with Jacob.

Elevation of the camp, by the boiling point, is 7,920 feet.

February 9.—During the night the weather changed, the wind rising to a gale, and commencing to snow before daylight; before morning the trail was covered. We remained quiet in camp all day, in the course of which the weather improved. Four sleighs arrived toward evening, with the bedding of the men. We suffer much from the want of salt; and all the men are becoming weak from insufficient food.

February 10.—Taplin was sent back with a few men to assist Mr. Fitzpatrick; and continuing on with three sleighs carrying a part of the baggage, we had the satisfaction to encamp within two and a half miles of the head of the hollow, and at the foot of the last mountain ridge. Here two large trees had been set on fire, and in the holes, where the snow had been melted away, we found a comfortable camp.

The wind kept the air filled with snow during the day; the sky was very dark in the southwest, though elsewhere very clear. The forest here has a noble appearance: the tall cedar is abundant; its greatest height being 130 feet, and circumference 20, three or four feet above the ground; and here I see for the first time the white pine, of which there are some magnificent trees. Hemlock spruce is among the timber, occasionally as large as 8 feet in diameter four feet above the ground; but, in ascending, it tapers rapidly to less than one foot at the height of 80 feet. I have not seen any higher than 30 feet, and the slight upper part is frequently broken off by the wind. The white spruce is frequent; and the red pine, (*pinus colorado* of the Mexicans,) which constitutes the beautiful forest along the flanks of the Sierra Nevada to the northward, is here the principal tree, not attaining a greater height than 140 feet, though with sometimes a diameter of 10. Most of these trees appeared to differ slightly from those of the same kind on the other side of the continent.

The elevation of the camp, by the boiling point, is 8,050 feet. We are now 1,000 feet above the level of the South Pass in

ey, who yesterday morn-
o ascend a higher peak
d fatigued. They con-
ad already seen. Two
ed in the afternoon; and
ned, I gave them all tea
clouds began to rise in
apprehensive of a storm,
oy our road, I sent the
Fitzpatrick, with direc-
animals in the morning.
Mr. Preuss, Mr. Talbot,
Jacob.

the camp, by the boiling
uring the night the weath-
ind rising to a gale, and
ow before daylight; be-
trail was covered. We
camp all day, in the course
eather improved. Four
oward evening, with the
n. We suffer much from
and all the men are be-
h insufficient food.

Taplin was sent back
o assist Mr. Fitzpatrick;
with three sleighs carry-
baggage, we had the satis-
p within two and a half
of the hollow, and at the
ountain ridge. Here two
een set on fire, and in the
snow had been melted
comfortable camp.

the air filled with snow
the sky was very dark in
ough elsewhere very clear.
has a noble appearance;
s abundant; its greatest
feet, and circumference
r feet above the ground;
or the first time the white
ere are some magnificent
spruce is among the tim-
as large as 8 feet in diam-
ve the ground; but, in as-
s rapidly to less than one
t of 80 feet. I have not
than 30 feet, and the
is frequently broken off by
white spruce is frequent;
e, (*pinus colorado*) of the
n constitutes the beautiful
flanks of the Sierra Neva-
ard, is here the principal
a greater height than 140
a sometimes a diameter of
ee trees appeared to differ
ve of the same kind on the
continent.

of the camp, by the boiling
feet. We are now 1,000
vel of the South Pass ir

the Rocky mountains; and still we are not
done ascending. The top of a flat ridge
near was bare of snow, and very well
sprinkled with bunch grass, sufficient to pas-
ture the animals two or three days; and
this was to be their main point of support.
This ridge is composed of a compact trap,
or basalt, of a columnar structure; over the
surface are scattered large boulders of po-
rous trap. The hills are in many places en-
tirely covered with small fragments of vol-
canic rock.

Putting on our snow shoes, we spent the
afternoon in exploring a road ahead. The
glare of the snow, combined with great fati-
gues, had rendered many of the people near-
ly blind; but we were fortunate in having
some black silk handkerchiefs, which, worn
as veils, very much relieved the eye.

February 11.—High wind continued, and
our trail this morning was nearly invisible—
here and there indicated by a little ridge of
snow. Our situation became tiresome and
dreary, requiring a strong exercise of pa-
tience and resolution.

In the evening I received a message from
Mr. Fitzpatrick, acquainting me with the
utter failure of his attempt to get our mules
and horses over the snow—the half-hidden
trail had proved entirely too slight to sup-
port them, and they had broken through,
and were plunging about or lying half buried
in snow. He was occupied in endeavoring
to get them back to his camp; and in the
mean time sent to me for further instruc-
tions. I wrote to him to send the animals
immediately back to their old pastures; and,
after having made mauls and shovels, turn
in all the strength of his party to open and
beat a road through the snow, strengthening
it with branches and boughs of the pines.

February 12.—We made mauls, and
worked hard at our end of the road all the
day. The wind was high, but the sun bright,
and the snow thawing. We worked down
the face of the hill, to meet the people at
the other end. Towards sundown it began
to grow cold, and we shouldered our mauls,
and trudged back to camp.

February 13.—We continued to labor on
the road; and in the course of the day had
the satisfaction to see the people working
down the face of the opposite hill, about
three miles distant. During the morning
we had the pleasure of a visit from Mr.
Fitzpatrick, with the information that all
was going on well. A party of Indians had
passed on snow shoes, who said they were
going to the western side of the mountain
after fish. This was an indication that the
salmon were coming up the streams; and
we could hardly restrain our impatience as
we thought of them, and worked with in-
creased vigor.

The meat train did not arrive this evening,
and I gave Godey leave to kill our little dog,
(Tlanath,) which he prepared in Indian
fashion; scorching off the hair, and wash-
ing the skin with soap and snow, and then
cutting it up into pieces, which were laid
on the snow. Shortly afterwards, the sleigh
arrived with a supply of horse meat; and
we had to-night an extraordinary dinner—
pea-soup, mule, and dog.

February 14.—The dividing ridge of the
Sierra is in sight from this encampment.
Accompanied by Mr. Preuss, I ascended to-
day the highest peak to the right; from
which we had a beautiful view of a moun-
tain lake at our feet, about fifteen miles in
length, and so entirely surrounded by moun-
tains that we could not discover an outlet.
We had taken with us a glass; but, though
we enjoyed an extended view, the valley was
half hidden in mist, as when we had seen it
before. Snow could be distinguished on the
higher parts of the coast mountains; east-
ward, as far as the eye could extend, it
ranged over a terrible mass of broken snowy
mountains, fading off blue in the distance.

The rock composing the summit consists of
a very coarse, dark, volcanic conglomerate;
the lower parts appeared to be of a slaty
structure. The highest trees were a few
scattering cedars and aspens. From the
immediate foot of the peak, we were two
hours in reaching the summit, and one hour
and a quarter in descending. The day had
been very bright, still, and clear, and spring
seems to be advancing rapidly. While
the sun is in the sky, the snow melts rapid-
ly, and gushing springs cover the face of
the mountain in all the exposed places; but
their surface freezes instantly with the dis-
appearance of the sun.

I obtained to-night some observations; and
the result from these, and others made dur-
ing our stay, gives for the latitude $38^{\circ} 41'$
 $57''$, longitude $120^{\circ} 25' 57''$, and rate of the
chronometer $25'' .82$.

February 16.—We had succeeded in get-
ting our animals safely to the first grassy
hill; and this morning I started with Jacob
on a reconnoitring expedition beyond the
mountain. We travelled along the crests of
narrow ridges, extending down from the
mountain in the direction of the valley, from
which the snow was fast melting away. On
the open spots was tolerably good grass; and
I judged we should succeed in getting the
camp down by way of these. Towards sun-
down we discovered some icy spots in a deep
hollow; and, descending the mountain, we
encamped on the head water of a little creek,
where at last the water found its way to the
Pacific.

The night was clear and very long. We
heard the cries of some wild animals, which

had been attracted by our fire, and a flock of geese passed over during the night. Even these strange sounds had something pleasant to our senses in this region of silence and desolation.

We started again early in the morning. The creek acquired a regular breadth of about 20 feet, and we soon began to hear the rushing of the water below the ice surface, over which we travelled to avoid the snow; a few miles below we broke through, where the water was several feet deep, and halted to make a fire and dry our clothes. We continued a few miles farther, walking being very laborious without snow shoes.

I was now perfectly satisfied that we had struck the stream on which Mr. Sutter lived; and, turning about, made a hard push, and reached the camp at dark. Here we had the pleasure to find all the remaining animals, 57 in number, safely arrived at the grassy hill near the camp; and here, also, we were agreeably surprised with the sight of an abundance of salt. Some of the horse guard had gone to a neighboring hut for pine nuts, and discovered unexpectedly a large cake of very white fine-grained salt, which the Indians told them they had brought from the other side of the mountain; they used it to eat with their pine nuts, and readily sold it for goods.

On the 19th, the people were occupied in making a road and bringing up the baggage; and, on the afternoon of the next day, February 20, 1844, we encamped with the animals and all the *materiel* of the camp, on the summit of the Pass in the dividing ridge, 1,000 miles by our travelled road from the Dalles of the Columbia.

The people, who had not yet been to this point, climbed the neighboring peak to enjoy a look at the valley.

The temperature of boiling water gave for the elevation of the encampment 9,338 feet above the sea.

This was 2,000 feet higher than the South Pass in the Rocky mountains, and several peaks in view rose several thousand feet still higher. Thus, at the extremity of the continent, and near the coast, the phenomenon was seen of a range of mountains still higher than the great Rocky mountains themselves. This extraordinary fact accounts for the Great Basin, and shows that there must be a system of small lakes and rivers here scattered over a flat country, and which the extended and lofty range of the Sierra Nevada prevents from escaping to the Pacific ocean. Latitude 38° 44'; longitude 120° 28'.

Thus the Pass in the Sierra Nevada, which so well deserves its name of Snowy mountain, is eleven degrees west and about four degrees south of the South Pass.

February 21.—We now considered our-

selves victorious over the mountain; having only the descent before us, and the valley under our eyes, we felt strong hope that we should force our way down. But this was a case in which the descent was *not* facile. Still deep fields of snow lay between, and there was a large intervening space of rough-looking mountains, through which we had yet to wind our way. Carson roused me this morning with an early fire, and we were all up long before day, in order to pass the snow fields before the sun should render the crust soft. We enjoyed this morning a scene at sunrise, which even here was unusually glorious and beautiful. Immediately above the eastern mountains was repeated a cloud-formed mass of purple ranges, bordered with bright yellow gold; the peaks shot up into a narrow line of crimson cloud, above which the air was filled with a greenish orange; and over all was the singular beauty of the blue sky. Passing along a ridge which commanded the lake on our right, of which we began to discover an outlet through a chasm on the west, we passed over alternating open ground and hard-cruised snow fields which supported the animals, and encamped on the ridge after a journey of six miles. The grass was better than we had yet seen, and we were encamped in a clump of trees twenty or thirty feet high, resembling white pine. With the exception of these small clumps, the ridges were bare; and, where the snow found the support of the trees, the wind had blown it up into banks ten or fifteen feet high. It required much care to hunt out a practicable way, as the most open places frequently led to impassable banks.

We had hard and doubtful labor yet before us, as the snow appeared to be heavier where the timber began further down, with few open spots. Ascending a height, we traced out the best line we could discover for the next day's march, and had at least the consolation to see that the mountain descended rapidly. The day had been one of April; gusty, with a few occasional flakes of snow; which, in the afternoon, enveloped the upper mountain in clouds. We watched them anxiously, as now we dreaded a snow storm. Shortly afterwards we heard the roll of thunder, and, looking towards the valley, found it all enveloped in a thunder-storm. For us, as connected with the idea of summer, it had a singular charm; and we watched its progress with excited feelings until nearly sunset, when the sky cleared off brightly, and we saw a shining line of water directing its course towards another, a broader and larger sheet. We knew that these could be no other than the Sacramento and the bay of San Francisco; but, after our long wandering in rugged mountains, where so

over the mountain; having before us, and the valley we felt strong hope that we way down. But this was a the descent was not facile. of snow lay between, and intervening space of roughness, through which we had way. Carson roused me with an early fire, and we were the day, in order to pass the re the sun should render the enjoyed this morning a scene even here was unusually glou- Immediately above the ns was repeated a cloud-purple ranges, bordered with ld; the peaks shot up into a crimson cloud, above which d with a greenish orange; the singular beauty of the sing along a ridge which lake on our right, of which discover an outlet through a est, we passed over alternat- and hard-crusted snow ported the animals, and en- ridge after a journey of six ss was better than we had e were encamped in a clump or thirty feet high, resembling With the exception of these the ridges were bare; and, w found the support of the had blown it up into banks eet high. It required much at a practicable way, as the ea frequently led to impassable and doubtful labor yet be- snow appeared to be heavier er began further down, with s. Ascending a height, we beat line we could discover y's march, and had at least to see that the mountain de- y. The day had been one of with a few occasional flakes of in the afternoon, enveloped the in clouds. We watched y, as now we dreaded a snow y afterwards we heard the roll d, looking towards the valley, enveloped in a thunder-storm. nected with the idea of sum- a singular charm; and we progress with excited feelings nset, when the sky cleared off ve saw a shining line of water ource towards another, a broad-sheet. We knew that these her than the Sacramento and Francisco; but, after our long rugged mountains, where we

frequently we had met with disappointments, and where the crossing of every ridge displayed some unknown lake or river, we were yet almost afraid to believe that we were at last to escape into the genial country of which we had heard so many glowing descriptions, and dreaded again to find some vast interior lake, whose bitter waters would bring us disappointment. On the southern shore of what appeared to be the bay could be traced the gleaming line where entered another large stream; and again the Buena-ventura rose up in our minds.

Carson had entered the valley along the southern side of the bay, and remembered perfectly to have crossed the mouth of a very large stream, which they had been obliged to raft; but the country then was so entirely covered with water from snow and rain, that he had been able to form no correct impression of watercourses.

We had the satisfaction to know that at least there were people below. Fires were lit up in the valley just at night, appearing to be in answer to ours; and these signs of life renewed, in some measure, the gaiety of the camp. They appeared so near, that we judged them to be among the timber of some of the neighboring ridges; but, having them constantly in view day after day, and night after night, we afterwards found them to be fires that had been kindled by the Indians among the *tularies*, on the shore of the bay, 80 miles distant.

Among the very few plants that appeared here, was the common blue flax. To-night, a mule was killed for food.

February 22.—Our breakfast was over long before day. We took advantage of the coolness of the early morning to get over the snow, which to-day occurred in very deep banks among the timber; but we searched out the coldest places, and the animals passed successfully with their loads the hard crust. Now and then, the delay of making a road occasioned much labor and loss of time. In the after part of the day, we saw before us a handsome grassy ridge point; and, making a desperate push over a snow field 10 to 15 feet deep, we happily succeeded in getting the camp across; and encamped on the ridge, after a march of three miles. We had again the prospect of a thunder-storm below, and to-night we killed another mule—now our only resource from starvation.

We satisfied ourselves during the day that the lake had an outlet between two ranges on the right; and with this, the creek on which I had encamped probably effected a junction below. Between these, we were descending.

We continued to enjoy the same delightful weather; the sky of the same beautiful blue,

and such a sunset and sunrise as our Atlantic coast we could scarcely imagine. And here among the mountains, 9,000 feet above the sea, we have the deep-blue sky and sunny climate of Smyrna and Palermo, which a little map before me shows are in the same latitude.

The elevation above the sea, by the boiling point, is 8,565 feet.

February 23.—This was our most difficult day; we were forced off the ridges by the quantity of snow among the timber, and obliged to take to the mountain sides, where occasionally, rocks and a southern exposure afforded us a chance to scramble along. But these were steep, and slippery with snow and ice; and the tough evergreens of the mountain impeded our way, tore our skins, and exhausted our patience. Some of us had the misfortune to wear moccasins with *parfleche* soles, so slippery that we could not keep our feet, and generally crawled across the snow beds. Axes and mauls were necessary to-day, to make a road through the snow. Going ahead with Carson to reconnoitre the road, we reached in the afternoon the river which made the outlet of the lake. Carson sprang over, clear across a place where the stream was compressed among rocks, but the *parfleche* sole of my moccasin glanced from the icy rock, and precipitated me into the river. It was some few seconds before I could recover myself in the current, and Carson, thinking me hurt, jumped in after me, and we both had an icy bath. We tried to search a while for my gun, which had been lost in the fall, but the cold drove us out; and making a large fire on the bank, after we had partially dried ourselves we went back to meet the camp. We afterwards found that the gun had been along under the ice which lined the banks of the creek.

Using our old plan of breaking the road with alternate horses, we reached the creek in the evening, and encamped on a dry open place in the ravine.

Another branch, which we had followed, here comes in on the left; and from this point the mountain wall, on which we had travelled to-day, faces to the south along the right bank of the river, where the sun appears to have melted the snow; but the opposite ridge is entirely covered. Here, among the pines, the hill side produces but little grass—barely sufficient to keep life in the animals. We had the pleasure to be rained upon this afternoon; and grass was now our greatest solicitude. Many of the men looked badly; and some this evening were giving out.

February 24.—We rose at three in the morning, for an astronomical observation, and obtained for the place a latitude of 38°

46' 49"; longitude 120° 34' 20". The sky was clear and pure, with a sharp wind from the northeast, and the thermometer 2° below the freezing point.

We continued down the south face of the mountain; our road leading over dry ground, we were able to avoid the snow almost entirely. In the course of the morning, we struck a foot path, which we were generally able to keep; and the ground was soft to our animals' feet, being sandy or covered with mould. Green grass began to make its appearance, and occasionally we passed a hill scatteringly covered with it. The character of the forest continued the same; and, among the trees, the pine with sharp leaves and very large cones was abundant, some of them being noble trees. We measured one that had 10 feet diameter, though the height was not more than 130 feet. All along, the river was a roaring torrent, its fall very great: and, descending with a rapidity to which we had long been strangers, to our great pleasure oak trees appeared on the ridge, and soon became very frequent; on these I remarked unusually great quantities of mistletoe. Rushes began to make their appearance; and at a small creek where they were abundant, one of the messes was left with the weakest horses, while we continued on.

The opposite mountain side was very steep and continuous—unbroken by ravines, and covered with pines and snow; while on the side we were travelling, innumerable rivulets poured down from the ridge. Continuing on, we halted a moment at one of these rivulets, to admire some beautiful evergreen trees, resembling live oak, which shaded the little stream. They were forty to fifty feet high, and two in diameter, with a uniform tufted top; and the summer green of their beautiful foliage, with the singing birds, and the sweet summer wind which was whirling about the dry oak leaves, nearly intoxicated us with delight; and we hurried on, filled with excitement, to escape entirely from the horrid region of inhospitable snow, to the perpetual spring of the Sacramento.

When we had travelled about ten miles, the valley opened a little to an oak and pine bottom, through which ran rivulets closely bordered with rushes, on which our half-starved horses fell with avidity; and here we made our encampment. Here the roaring torrent has already become a river, and we had descended to an elevation of 3,864 feet.

Along our road to-day the rock was a white granite, which appears to constitute the upper part of the mountains on both the eastern and western slopes; while between, the central is a volcanic rock.

Another horse was killed to-night, for food.

February 25.—Believing that the difficulties of the road were passed, and leaving Mr. Fitzpatrick to follow slowly, as the condition of the animals required, I started ahead this morning with a party of eight, consisting (with myself) of Mr. Preuss and Mr. Talbot, Carson, Derosier, Towns, Proue, and Jacob. We took with us some of the best animals, and my intention was to proceed as rapidly as possible to the house of Mr. Sutter, and return to meet the party with a supply of provisions and fresh animals.

Continuing down the river, which pursued a very direct westerly course through a narrow valley, with only a very slight and narrow bottom land, we made twelve miles, and encamped at some old Indian huts, apparently a fishing place on the river. The bottom was covered with trees of deciduous foliage, and overgrown with vines and rushes. On a bench of the hill near by, was a field of fresh green grass, six inches long in some of the tufts which I had the curiosity to measure. The animals were driven here; and I spent part of the afternoon sitting on a large rock among them, enjoying the painless rapidity with which they luxuriated in the unaccustomed food.

The forest was imposing to-day in the magnificence of the trees; some of the pines, bearing large cones, were 10 feet in diameter; cedars also abounded, and we measured one 28 feet in circumference, four feet from the ground. This noble tree seemed here to be in its proper soil and climate. We found it on both sides of the Sierra, but most abundant on the west.

February 26.—We continued to follow the stream, the mountains on either hand increasing in height as we descended, and shutting up the river narrowly in precipices, along which we had great difficulty to get our horses.

It rained heavily during the afternoon, and we were forced off the river to the heights above; whence we descended, at night-fall, the point of a spur between the river and a fork of nearly equal size, coming in from the right. Here we saw, on the lower hills, the first flowers in bloom, which occurred suddenly, and in considerable quantity; one of them a species of *gilia*.

The current in both streams (rather torrents than rivers) was broken by large boulders. It was late, and the animals fatigued; and not succeeding to find a ford immediately, we encamped, although the hill side afforded but a few stray bunches of grass, and the horses, standing about in the rain, looked very miserable.

February 27.—We succeeded in fording the stream, and made a trail by which we crossed the point of the opposite hill, which

Believing that the difficulties were passed, and leaving to follow slowly, as the animals required, I started with a party of eight, (myself) of Mr. Preuss and son, Derosier, Towns, Proue, took with us some of the provisions, and my intention was to proceed as far as possible to the house of return to meet the party with provisions and fresh animals.

Down the river, which pursued a westerly course through a narrow valley, we made twelve miles, and the old Indian huts, apparently on the river. The bottom of the valley was covered with trees of deciduous foliage, with vines and rushes. On the hill near by, was a field of corn, six inches long in some places. I had the curiosity to measure the ears, and they were driven here; and I spent the afternoon sitting on a large rock, enjoying the pauseless march they luxuriated in the valley.

It was imposing to-day in the valley, some of the trees were large cones, were 10 feet in diameter, and also abounded, and were 8 feet in circumference, four feet in diameter. This noble tree seemed to have its proper soil and climate. On both sides of the Sierra, but on the west.

We continued to follow the mountains on either hand in the night as we descended, and shut our way narrowly in precipices, we had great difficulty to get on. During the afternoon, and off the river to the heights we descended, at night-fall, a spur between the river and a hill of equal size, coming in from the west, we saw, on the lower hills, the flowers in bloom, which occurred in considerable quantity; one of them was of *gilia*.

In both streams (rather torrents) was broken by large boulders, and the animals fatigued; we were obliged to find a ford immediately, although the hill side at the ford was covered with grass, and it rained about in the rain, looked like a river.

We succeeded in fording the river, and made a trail by which we descended the opposite hill, which

on the southern exposure, was prettily covered with green grass, and we halted a mile from our last encampment. The river was only about sixty feet wide, but rapid, and occasionally deep, foaming among boulders, and the water beautifully clear. We encamped on the hill slope, as there was no bottom level, and the opposite ridge is continuous, affording no streams.

We had with us a large kettle; and a mule being killed here, his head was boiled in it for several hours, and made a passable soup for famished people.

Below, precipices on the river forced us to the heights, which we ascended by a steep spur 2,000 feet high. My favorite horse, Proveau, had become very weak, and was scarcely able to bring himself to the top. Travelling here was good, except in crossing the ravines, which were narrow, steep, and frequent. We caught a glimpse of a deer, the first animal we had seen; but did not succeed in approaching him. Provsan could not keep up, and I left Jacob to bring him on, being obliged to press forward with the party, as there was no grass in the forest. We grew very anxious as the day advanced and no grass appeared, for the lives of our animals depended on finding it to-night. They were in just such a condition that grass and repose for the night enabled them to get on the next day. Every hour we had been expecting to see open out before us the valley, which, from the mountain above, seemed almost at our feet. A new and singular shrub, which had made its appearance since crossing the mountain, was very frequent to-day. It branched out near the ground, forming a clump eight to ten feet high, with pale-green leaves of an oval form, and the body and branches had a naked appearance, as if stripped of the bark, which is very smooth and thin, of a chocolate color, contrasting well with the pale green of the leaves. The day was nearly gone; we had made a hard day's march, and found no grass. Towns became light-headed, wandering off into the woods without knowing where he was going, and Jacob brought him back.

Near night-fall we descended into the steep ravine of a handsome creek thirty feet wide, and I was engaged in getting the horses up the opposite hill, when I heard a shout from Carson, who had gone ahead a few hundred yards—"Life yet," said he, as he came up, "life yet; I have found a hill side sprinkled with grass enough for the night." We drove along our horses, and encamped at the place about dark, and there was just room enough to make a place for shelter on the edge of the stream. Three horses were lost to-day—Proveau; a fine young horse from the Columbia, belonging to Charles Towns; and another Indian horse which carried our cook-

ing utensils; the two former gave out, and the latter strayed off into the woods as we reached the camp.

February 29.—We lay shut up in the narrow ravine, and gave the animals a necessary day; and men were sent back after the others. Derosier volunteered to bring up Proveau, to whom he knew I was greatly attached, as he had been my favorite horse on both expeditions. Carson and I climbed one of the nearest mountains; the forest land still extended ahead, and the valley appeared as far as ever. The pack horse was found near the camp, but Derosier did not get in.

March 1.—Derosier did not get in during the night, and leaving him to follow, as no grass remained here, we continued on over the uplands, crossing many small streams, and camped again on the river, having made 6 miles. Here we found the hill side covered (although lightly) with fresh green grass; and from this time forward we found it always improving and abundant.

We made a pleasant camp on the river hill, where were some beautiful specimens of the chocolate-colored shrub, which were a foot in diameter near the ground, and fifteen to twenty feet high. The opposite ridge runs continuously along, unbroken by streams. We are rapidly descending into the spring, and we are leaving our snowy region far behind; everything is getting green; butterflies are swarming; numerous bugs are creeping out, awakened from their winter's sleep; and the forest flowers are coming into bloom. Among those which appeared most numerous to-day was *dodecatheon dentatum*.

We began to be uneasy at Derosier's absence, fearing he might have been bewildered in the woods. Charles Towns, who had not yet recovered his mind, went to swim in the river, as if it were summer, and the stream placid, when it was a cold mountain torrent foaming among rocks. We were happy to see Derosier appear in the evening. He came in, and, sitting down by the fire, began to tell us where he had been. He imagined he had been gone several days, and thought we were still at the camp where he had left us; and we were pained to see that his mind was deranged. It appeared that he had been lost in the mountain, and hunger and fatigue, joined to weakness of body, and fear of perishing in the mountains, had crazed him. The times were severe when stout men lost their minds from extremity of suffering—when horses died—and when mules and horses, ready to die of starvation, were killed for food. Yet there was no murmuring or hesitation.

A short distance below our encampment the river mountains terminated in precipices, and, after a fatiguing march of only a few miles, we encamped on a bench where there

were springs and an abundance of the freshest grass. In the meantime, Mr. Preuss continued on down the river, and, unaware that we had encamped so early in the day, was lost. When night arrived, and he did not come in, we began to understand what had happened to him; but it was too late to make any search.

March 3.—We followed Mr. Preuss's trail for a considerable distance along the river, until we reached a place where he had descended to the stream below and encamped. Here we shouted and fired guns, but received no answer; and we concluded that he had pushed on down the stream. I determined to keep out from the river, along which it was nearly impracticable to travel with animals, until it should form a valley. At every step the country improved in beauty; the pines were rapidly disappearing, and oaks became the principal trees of the forest. Among these, the prevailing tree was the evergreen oak (which, by way of distinction, we shall call the *live oak*); and with these, occurred frequently a new species of oak bearing a long slender acorn, from an inch to an inch and a half in length, which we now began to see formed the principal vegetable food of the inhabitants of this region. In a short distance we crossed a little rivulet, where were two old huts, and near by were heaps of acorn hulls. The ground round about was very rich, covered with an exuberant sward of grass; and we sat down for a while in the shade of the oaks, to let the animals feed. We repeated our shouts for Mr. Preuss; and this time we were gratified with an answer. The voice grew rapidly nearer, ascending from the river; but when we expected to see him emerge, it ceased entirely. We had called up some straggling Indian—the first we had met, although for two days back we had seen tracks—who, mistaking us for his fellows, had been only undeceived on getting close up. It would have been pleasant to witness his astonishment; he would not have been more frightened had some of the old mountain spirits they are so much afraid of suddenly appeared in his path. Ignorant of the character of these people, we had now an additional cause of uneasiness in regard to Mr. Preuss; he had no arms with him, and we began to think his chance doubtful. We followed on a trail, still keeping out from the river, and descended to a very large creek, dashing with great velocity over a pre-eminently rocky bed and among large boulders. The bed had sudden breaks, formed by deep holes and ledges of rock running across. Even here, it deserves the name of *Rock creek*, which we gave to it. We succeeded in fording it, and toiled about three thousand feet up the opposite hill. The mountains now were getting sensibly lower;

but still there is no valley on the river, which presents steep and rocky banks; but here, several miles from the river, the country is smooth and grassy; the forest has no undergrowth; and in the open valleys of rivulets, or around spring heads, the low groves of live oak give the appearance of orchards in an old cultivated country. Occasionally we met deer, but had not the necessary time for hunting. At one of these orchard grounds, we encamped about noon to make an effort for Mr. Preuss. One man took his way along a spur leading into the river, in hope to cross his trail; and another took our own back. Both were volunteers; and to the successful man was promised a pair of pistols—not as a reward, but as a token of gratitude for a service which would free us all from much anxiety.

We had among our few animals a horse which was so much reduced, that, with travelling, even the good grass could not save him; and, having nothing to eat, he was killed this afternoon. He was a good animal, and had made the journey round from Fort Hall.

Dodecatheon dentatum continued the characteristic plant in flower; and the naked-looking shrub already mentioned continued characteristic, beginning to put forth a small white blossom. At evening the men returned, having seen or heard nothing of Mr. Preuss; and I determined to make a hard push down the river the next morning, and get ahead of him.

March 4.—We continued rapidly along on a broad plainly-beaten trail, the mere travelling and breathing the delightful air being a positive enjoyment. Our road led along a ridge inclining to the river, and the air and the open grounds were fragrant with flowering shrubs; and in the course of the morning we issued on an open spur, by which we descended directly to the stream. Here the river issues suddenly from the mountains, which hitherto had hemmed it closely in; these now become softer, and change sensibly their character; and at this point commences the most beautiful valley in which we had ever travelled. We hurried to the river, on which we noticed a small sand beach, to which Mr. Preuss would naturally have gone. We found no trace of him, but, instead, were recent tracks of bare-footed Indians, and little piles of muscle shells, and old fires where they had roasted the fish. We travelled on over the river grounds, which were undulating, and covered with grass to the river brink. We halted to noon a few miles beyond, always under the shade of the evergreen oaks, which formed open groves on the bottoms.

Continuing our road in the afternoon, we ascended to the uplands, where the river

o valley on the river, which
d rocky banks; but here,
n the river, the country is
y; the forest has no under-
e open valleys of rivulets,
heads, the low groves of
appearance of orchards in
country. Occasionally we
not the necessary time for
e of these orchard grounds,
but noon to make an effort

One man took his way
ing into the river, in hope
and another took our own
e volunteers; and to the
was promised a pair of pis-
tols, but as a token of gra-
ce which would free us all
ty.

g our few animals a horse
ich reduced, that, with trav-
good grass could not save
g nothing to eat, he was
noon. He was a good ani-
made the journey round from

entatum continued the cha-
in flower; and the naked-
already mentioned continued
eginning to put forth a small

At evening the men re-
seen or heard nothing of Mr.
determined to make a hard
river the next morning, and
n.

We continued rapidly along on
beaten trail, the mere travel-
ing the delightful air being a
ent. Our road led along a
to the river, and the air and
ls were fragrant with flower-
l in the course of the morn-
n an open spur, by which we
tly to the stream. Here the
suddenly from the mountains,
had hemmed it closely in;
me softer, and change sensi-
ter; and at this point com-
et beautiful valley in which
avelled. We hurried to the
e we noticed a small sand

Mr. Preuss would naturally
e found no trace of him, but
recent tracks of bare-footed
le piles of muscle shells, and
they had roasted the fish.
on over the river grounds,
undulating, and covered with
er brink. We halted to noon
ond, always under the shade
en oaks, which formed open
ottoms.

Our road in the afternoon, we
e uplands, where the river

passes round a point of great beauty, and
goes through very remarkable dalles, in cha-
racter resembling those of the Columbia.
Beyond, we again descended to the bottoms,
where we found an Indian village, consisting
of two or three huts; we had come upon
them suddenly, and the people had evidently
just run off. The huts were low and slight,
made like beehives in a picture, five or six
feet high, and near each was a crate, formed
of interlaced branches and grass, in size and
shape like a very large hoghead. Each of
these contained from six to nine bushels.
These were filled with the long acorns al-
ready mentioned, and in the huts were
several neatly made baskets, containing quan-
tities of the acorns roasted. They were
sweet and agreeably flavored, and we sup-
plied ourselves with about half a bushel,
leaving one of our shirts, a handkerchief, and
some smaller articles, in exchange. The
river again entered for a space among hills,
and we followed a trail leading across a bend
through a handsome hollow behind. Here,
while engaged in trying to circumvent a deer,
we discovered some Indians on a hill several
hundred yards ahead, and gave them a shout,
to which they responded by loud and rapid
talking and vehement pestilulation, but made
no stop, hurrying up the mountain as fast as
their legs could carry them. We passed on,
and again encamped in a grassy grove.

The absence of Mr. Preuss gave me great
concern; and, for a large reward, Derosier
volunteered to go back on the trail. I di-
rected him to search along the river, travel-
ing upward for the space of a day and a
half, at which time I expected he would
meet Mr. Fitzpatrick, whom I requested to
aid in the search; at all events, he was to
go no farther, but return to this camp, where
a cache of provisions was made for him.

Continuing the next day down the river,
we discovered three squaws in a little bot-
tom, and surrounded them before they could
make their escape. They had large conical
baskets, which they were engaged in filling
with a small leafy plant (*erodium cicutari-
um*) just now beginning to bloom, and cover-
ing the ground like a sward of grass. These
did not make any lamentations, but ap-
peared very much impressed with our ap-
pearance, speaking to us only in a whisper,
and offering us smaller baskets of the plant,
which they signified to us was good to eat,
making signs also that it was to be cooked
by the fire. We drew out a little cold horse
meat, and the squaws made signs to us that
the men had gone out after deer, and that
we could have some by waiting till they
came in. We observed that the horses ate
with great avidity the herb which they had
been gathering; and here also, for the first
time, we saw Indians eat the common grass

—one of the squaws pulling several tufts,
and eating it with apparent relish. Seeing
our surprise, she pointed to the horses; but
we could not well understand what she
meant, except, perhaps, that what was good
for the one was good for the other.

We encamped in the evening on the shore
of the river, at a place where the associated
beauties of scenery made so strong an im-
pression on us that we have given it the
name of the Beautiful Camp. The undulat-
ing river shore was shaded with the live
oaks, which formed a continuous grove over
the country, and the same grassy sward ex-
tended to the edge of the water; and we
made our fires near some large granite
masses which were lying among the trees.

We had seen several of the acorn caches dur-
ing the day; and here there were two which
were very large, containing each, probably,
twenty bushels. Towards evening we heard a
whisper among the hills behind, and had
the pleasure to see Mr. Preuss descending
towards the camp. Like ourselves, he had
travelled to-day 25 miles, but had seen
nothing of Derosier. Knowing, on the day
he was lost, that I was determined to keep
the river as much as possible, he had not
thought it necessary to follow the trail very
closely, but walked on, right and left, cer-
tain to find it somewhere along the river,
searching places to obtain good views of the
country. Towards sunset he climbed down
towards the river to look for the camp; but,
finding no trail, concluded that we were be-
hind, and walked back until night came on,
when, being very much fatigued, he collect-
ed drift wood and made a large fire among
the rocks. The next day it became more
serious, and he encamped again alone, think-
ing that we must have taken some other
course. To go back would have been mad-
ness in his weak and starved condition, and
onward towards the valley was his only
hope, always in expectation of reaching it
soon. His principal means of subsistence
were a few roots, which the hunters call
sweet onions, having very little taste, but a
good deal of nutriment, growing generally
in rocky ground, and requiring a good deal
of labor to get, as he had only a pocket knife.
Searching for these, he found a nest of big
ants, which he let run on his hand, and
stripped them off in his mouth; these had an
agreeable acid taste. One of his greatest
privations was the want of tobacco; and a
pleasant smoke at evening would have been
a relief which only a voyageur could appre-
ciate. He tried the dried leaves of the live
oak, knowing that those of other oaks were
sometimes used as a substitute; but these
were too thick, and would not do. On the
4th he made seven or eight miles, walking
slowly along the river, avoiding as much as

possible to climb the hills. In little pools he caught some of the smallest kind of frogs, which he swallowed, not so much in the gratification of hunger, as in the hope of obtaining some strength. Scattered along the river were old fire-places, where the Indians had roasted muscles and acorns; but though he searched diligently, he did not there succeed in finding either. He had collected fire wood for the night, when he heard at some distance from the river the barking of what he thought were two dogs, and walked in that direction as quickly as he was able, hoping to find there some Indian hut, but met only two wolves; and, in his disappointment, the gloom of the forest was doubled.

Travelling the next day feebly down the river, he found five or six Indians at the huts of which we have spoken; some were painting themselves black, and others roasting acorns. Being only one man, they did not run off, but received him kindly, and gave him a welcome supply of roasted acorns. He gave them his pocket knife in return, and stretched out his hand to one of the Indians, who did not appear to comprehend the motion, but jumped back, as if he thought he was about to lay hold of him. They seemed afraid of him, not certain as to what he was.

Travelling on, he came to the place where we had found the squaws. Here he found our fire still burning, and the tracks of the horses. The sight gave him sudden hope and courage; and, following as fast as he could, joined us at evening.

March 6.—We continued on our road, through the same surpassingly beautiful country, entirely unequalled for the pasturage of stock by anything we had ever seen. Our horses had now become so strong that they were able to carry us, and we travelled rapidly—over four miles an hour; four of us riding every alternate hour. Every few hundred yards we came upon a little band of deer; but we were too eager to reach the settlement, which we momentarily expected to discover, to halt for any other than a passing shot. In a few hours we reached a large fork, the northern branch of the river, and equal in size to that which we had descended. Together they formed a beautiful stream, 60 to 100 yards wide; which at first, ignorant of the nature of the country through which that river ran, we took to be the Sacramento.

We continued down the right bank of the river, travelling for a while over a wooded upland, where we had the delight to discover tracks of cattle. To the southwest was visible a black column of smoke, which we had frequently noticed in descending, arising from the fires we had seen from the top of the Sierra. From the upland we descended

into broad groves on the river, consisting of the evergreen, and a new species of white oak with a large tufted top, and three to six feet in diameter. Among these was no brushwood; and the grassy surface gave to it the appearance of parks in an old settled country. Following the tracks of the horses and cattle in search of people, we discovered a small village of Indians. Some of these had on shirts of civilized manufacture, but were otherwise naked, and we could understand nothing from them; they appeared entirely astonished at seeing us.

We made an acorn meal at noon, and hurried on; the valley being gay with flowers, and some of the banks being absolutely golden with the Californian poppy (*eschscholtzia crocea*). Here the grass was smooth and green, and the groves very open; the large oaks throwing a broad shade among sunny spots. Shortly afterwards we gave a shout at the appearance on a little bluff of a neatly built *adobe* house with glass windows. We rode up, but, to our disappointment, found only Indians. There was no appearance of cultivation, and we could see no cattle, and we supposed the place had been abandoned. We now pressed on more eagerly than ever; the river swept round in a large bend to the right; the hills lowered down entirely; and, gradually entering a broad valley, we came unexpectedly into a large Indian village, where the people looked clean, and wore cotton shirts and various other articles of dress. They immediately crowded around us, and we had the inexpressible delight to find one who spoke a little indifferent Spanish, but who at first confounded us by saying there were no whites in the country; but just then a well-dressed Indian came up, and made his salutations in very well spoken Spanish. In answer to our inquiries, he informed us that we were upon the *Rio de los Americanos* (the river of the Americans), and that it joined the Sacramento river about 10 miles below. Never did a name sound more sweetly! We felt ourselves among our countrymen; for the name of *American*, in these distant parts, is applied to the citizens of the United States. To our eager inquiries he answered, "I am a *vaguero* (cow herd) in the service of Capt. Sutter, and the people of this *rancheria* work for him." Our evident satisfaction made him communicative; and he went on to say that Capt. Sutter was a very rich man, and always glad to see his country people. We asked for his house. He answered, that it was just over the hill before us; and offered, if we would wait a moment, to take his horse and conduct us to it. We readily accepted his civil offer. In a short distance we came in sight of the fort; and, passing on the way the house of a settler on

1844.

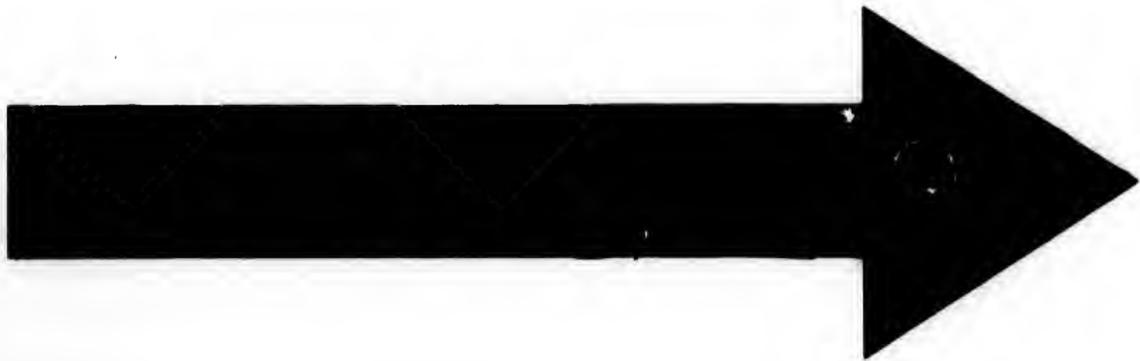
on the river, consisting of
d a new species of white
tufted top, and three to six

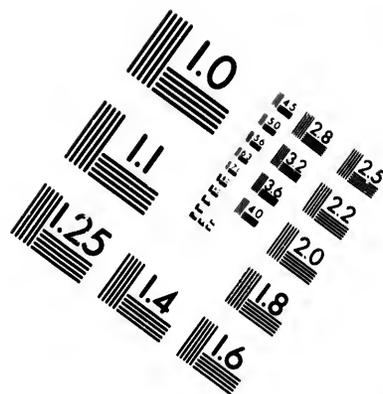
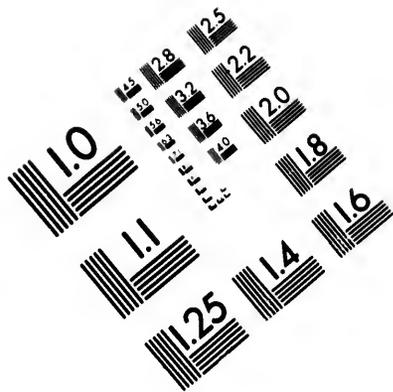
Among these was no
the grassy surface gave to
of parks in an old settled
ng the tracks of the horses
h of people, we discovered
Indians. Some of these
civilized manufacture, but
ked, and we could under-
n them; they appeared en-
t seeing us.

acorn meal at noon, and
alley being gay with flow-
the banks being absolutely
Californian poppy (*esch-*
Here the grass was smooth
the groves very open; the
ng a broad shade among
rtly afterwards we gave a
ranch on a little bluff of a
e house with glass win-
up, but, to our disappoint-
Indians. There was no
ivation, and we could see
e supposed the place had

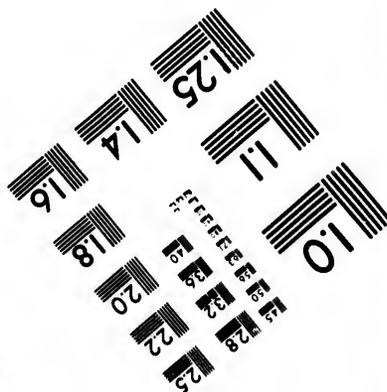
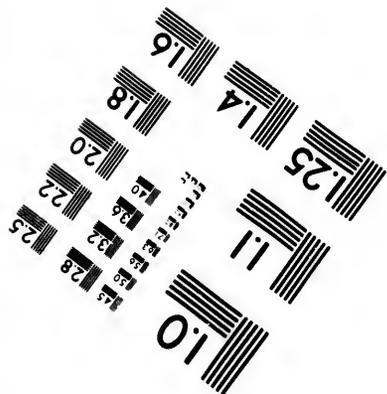
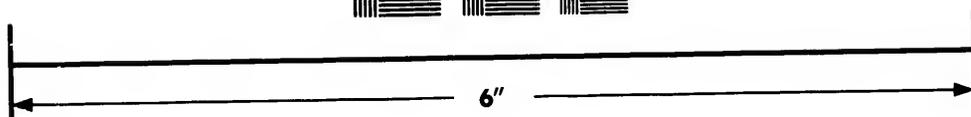
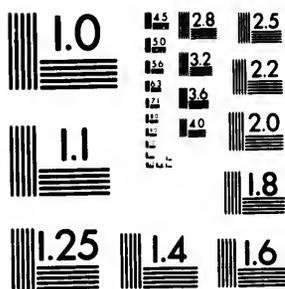
We now pressed on more
; the river swept round in
e right; the hills lowered
nd, gradually entering a
came unexpectedly into a
ge, where the people look-
e cotton shirts and various
dress. They immediately
us, and we had the inex-
o find one who spoke a lit-
nish, but who at first con-
ing there were no whites
it just then a well-dressed
nd made his salutations in
Spanish. In answer to
nformed us that we were
s *Americanos* (the river of
and that it joined the Sa-
out 10 miles below. Never
more sweetly! We felt
our countrymen; for the
e, in these distant parts, is
ens of the United States.

tries he answered, "I am
rd) in the service of Capt.
people of this *rancheria*
Our evident satisfaction
icative; and he went on
Sutter was a very rich
glad to see his country
d for his house. He an-
us just over the hill before
we would wait a moment,
and conduct us to it. We
is civil offer. In a short
in sight of the fort; and,
y the house of a settler on





**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

1.5 2.8 2.5
2.0 2.2
1.8

**CIHM/ICMH
Microfiche
Series.**

**CIHM/ICMH
Collection de
microfiches.**



Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques

11
10
57

© 1985

the
the
sh
hi
di
hi
w
fr
ap
ta
te
w
of
ro
de
pi
w
es
he
th
di
al
m
k
th
w
le
n
n
th
le
c
a
h
s
(
s
t
t

the opposite side (a Mr. Sinclair), we forded the river; and in a few miles were met a short distance from the fort by Capt. Sutter himself. He gave us a most frank and cordial reception—conducted us immediately to his residence—and under his hospitable roof we had a night of rest, enjoyment, and refreshment, which none but ourselves could appreciate. But the party left in the mountains with Mr. Fitzpatrick were to be attended to; and the next morning, supplied with fresh horses and provisions, I hurried off to meet them. On the second day we met, a few miles below the forks of the Rio de los Americanos; and a more forlorn and pitiable sight than they presented, cannot well be imagined. They were all on foot—each man, weak and emaciated, leading a horse or mule as weak and emaciated as themselves. They had experienced great difficulty in descending the mountains, made slippery by rains and melting snows, and many horses fell over precipices, and were killed; and with some were lost the *packs* they carried. Among these, was a mule with the plants which we had collected since leaving Fort Hall, along a line of 2,000 miles travel. Out of sixty-seven horses and mules with which we commenced crossing the Sierra, only thirty-three reached the valley of the Sacramento, and they only in a condition to be led along. Mr. Fitzpatrick and his party, travelling more slowly, had been able to make some little exertion at hunting, and had killed a few deer. The scanty supply was a great relief to them; for several had been made sick by the strange and unwholesome food which the preservation of life compelled them to use. We stopped and encamped as soon as we met; and a repast of good beef, excellent bread, and delicious salmon, which I had brought along, were their first relief from the sufferings of the Sierra, and their first introduction to the luxuries of the Sacramento. It required all our philosophy and forbearance to prevent *plenty* from becoming as hurtful to us now, as *scarcity* had been before.

The next day, March 8th, we encamped at the junction of the two rivers, the Sacramento and Americanos; and thus found the whole party in the beautiful valley of the Sacramento. It was a convenient place for the camp; and, among other things, was within reach of the wood necessary to make the pack saddles, which we should need on our long journey home, from which we were farther distant now than we were four months before, when from the Dalles of the Columbia we so cheerfully took up the homeward line of march.

Captain Sutter emigrated to this country from the western part of Missouri in 1838—

1839, and formed the first settlement in the valley, on a large grant of land which he obtained from the Mexican Government. He had, at first, some trouble with the Indians; but, by the occasional exercise of well-timed authority, he has succeeded in converting them into a peaceable and industrious people. The ditches around his extensive wheat fields; the making of the sun-dried bricks, of which his fort is constructed; the ploughing, harrowing, and other agricultural operations, are entirely the work of these Indians, for which they receive a very moderate compensation—principally in shirts, blankets, and other articles of clothing. In the same manner, on application to the chief of a village, he readily obtains as many boys and girls as he has any use for. There were at this time a number of girls at the fort, in training for a future woollen factory; but they were now all busily engaged in constantly watering the gardens, which the unfavorable dryness of the season rendered necessary. The occasional dryness of some seasons, I understood to be the only complaint of the settlers in this fertile valley, as it sometimes renders the crops uncertain. Mr. Sutter was about making arrangements to irrigate his lands by means of the Rio de los Americanos. He had this year sown, and altogether by Indian labor, three hundred fanegas of wheat.

A few years since, the neighboring Russian establishment of Ross, being about to withdraw from the country, sold to him a large number of stock, with agricultural and other stores, with a number of pieces of artillery and other munitions of war; for these, a regular yearly payment is made in grain.

The fort is a quadrangular *adobe* structure, mounting twelve pieces of artillery (two of them brass), and capable of admitting a garrison of a thousand men; this, at present, consists of forty Indians, in uniform—one of whom was always found on duty at the gate. As might naturally be expected, the pieces are not in very good order. The whites in the employment of Capt. Sutter, American, French and German, amount, perhaps, to thirty men. The inner wall is formed into buildings, comprising the common quarters, with blacksmith and other workshops; the dwelling house, with a large distillery house, and other buildings, occupying more the centre of the area.

It is built upon a pond-like stream, at times a running creek communicating with the Rio de los Americanos, which enters the Sacramento about two miles below. The latter is here a noble river, about three hundred yards broad, deep and tranquil, with several fathoms of water in the channel, and its banks continuously timbered. There

were two vessels belonging to Capt. Sutter at anchor near the landing—one a large two-masted lighter, and the other a schooner, which was shortly to proceed on a voyage to Fort Vancouver for a cargo of goods.

Since his arrival, several other persons, principally Americans, have established themselves in the valley. Mr. Sinclair, from whom I experienced much kindness during my stay, is settled a few miles distant, on the Rio de los Americanos. Mr. Coudrois, a gentleman from Germany, has established himself on Feather river, and is associated with Captain Sutter in agricultural pursuits. Among other improvements, they are about to introduce the cultivation of rape seed (*brassica rapus*), which there is every reason to believe is admirably adapted to the climate and soil. The lowest average produce of wheat, as far as we can at present know, is thirty-five fanegas for one sown; but, as an instance of its fertility, it may be mentioned that Señor Valejo obtained, on a piece of ground where sheep had been pastured, 800 fanegas for eight sown. The produce being different in various places, a very correct idea cannot be formed.

An impetus was given to the active little population by our arrival, as we were in want of everything. Mules, horses, and cattle, were to be collected; the horse mill was at work day and night, to make sufficient flour; the blacksmith's shop was put in requisition for horse shoes and bridle bits; and pack-saddles, ropes, and bridles, and all the other little equipments of the camp, were again to be provided.

The delay thus occasioned was one of repose and enjoyment, which our situation required, and, anxious as we were to resume our homeward journey, was regretted by no one. In the meantime, I had the pleasure to meet with Mr. Chiles, who was residing at a farm on the other side of the river Sacramento, while engaged in the selection of a place for a settlement, for which he had received the necessary grant of land from the Mexican Government.

It will be remembered that we had parted near the frontier of the States, and that he had subsequently descended the valley of Lewis's fork, with a party of ten or twelve men, with the intention of crossing the intermediate mountains to the waters of the bay of San Francisco. In the execution of this design, and aided by subsequent information, he left the Columbia at the mouth of Malheur river; and making his way to the head waters of the Sacramento with a part of his company, travelled down that river to the settlements of Nueva Helvetia. The other party, to whom he had committed his wagons, and mill irons and saws, took a

course further to the south, and the wagons and their contents were lost.

On the 22d we made a preparatory move, and encamped near the settlement of Mr. Sinclair, on the left bank of the Rio de los Americanos. I had discharged five of the party; Neal, the blacksmith (an excellent workman, and an unmarried man, who had done his duty faithfully, and had been of very great service to me), desired to remain, as strong inducements were offered here to mechanics. Although at considerable inconvenience to myself, his good conduct induced me to comply with his request; and I obtained for him, from Captain Sutter, a present compensation of two dollars and a half per diem, with a promise that it should be increased to five, if he proved as good a workman as had been represented. He was more particularly an agricultural blacksmith. The other men were discharged with their own consent.

While we remained at this place, Derosier, one of our best men, whose steady good conduct had won my regard, wandered off from the camp, and never returned to it again; nor has he since been heard of.

March 24.—We resumed our journey with an ample stock of provisions and a large cavalcade of animals, consisting of 130 horses and mules, and about thirty head of cattle, five of which were milch cows. Mr. Sutter furnished us also with an Indian boy, who had been trained as a *vaquero*, and who would be serviceable in managing our cavalcade, great part of which were nearly as wild as buffalo; and who was, besides, very anxious to go along with us. Our direct course home was east; but the Sierra would force us south, above five hundred miles of travelling, to a pass at the head of the San Joaquin river. This pass, reported to be good, was discovered by Mr. Joseph Walker, of whom I have already spoken, and whose name it might therefore appropriately bear. To reach it, our course lay along the valley of the San Joaquin—the river on our right, and the lofty wall of the impassable Sierra on the left. From that pass we were to move southeastwardly, having the Sierra then on the right, and reach the "Spanish trail," deviously traced from one watering place to another, which constituted the route of the caravans from *Puebla de los Angeles*, near the coast of the Pacific, to *Santa Fé* of New Mexico. From the pass to this trail was 150 miles. Following that trail through a desert, relieved by some fertile plains indicated by the recurrence of the term *vegas*, until it turned to the right to cross the Colorado, our course would be northeast until we regained the latitude we had lost in arriving at the Eutah lake, and thence to the Rocky mountains at

south, and the wagons
ere lost.

de a preparatory move,
the settlement of Mr.
bank of the Rio de los
discharged five of the
blacksmith (an excellent
married man, who had
fully, and had been of
me), desired to remain,
ts were offered here to
gh at considerable in-
ff, his good conduct in-
with his request; and
from Captain Sutter, a
n of two dollars and a
a promise that it should
if he proved as good a
n represented. He was
agricultural blacksmith.
e discharged with their

ed at this place, Der-
est men, whose steady
on my regard, wandered
nd never returned to it
ince been heard of.

resumed our journey
ck of provisions and a
animals, consisting of
es, and about thirty head
which were milch cows.
d us also with an Indian
rained as a *vaquero*, and
ceable in managing our
t of which were nearly
and who was, besides,
along with us. Our di-
as east; but the Sierra
nth, above five hundred
to a pass at the head of
er. This pass, reported
covered by Mr. Joseph
I have already spoken,
might therefore appro-
ach it, our course lay
the San Joaquin—the
nd the lofty wall of the
n the left. From that
move southeastwardly,
hen on the right, and
trail," deviously traced
place to another, which
t of the caravans from
s, near the coast of the
of New Mexico. From
was 150 miles. Fol-
ough a desert, relieved
ns indicated by the re-
regas, until it turned
the Colorado, our course
until we regained the
n arriving at the Eutab
the Rocky mountains at

the head of the Arkansas. This course of travelling, forced upon us by the structure of the country, would occupy a computed distance of two thousand miles before we reached the head of the Arkansas; not a settlement to be seen upon it; and the names of places along it, all being Spanish or Indian, indicated that it had been but little trod by American feet. Though long, and not free from hardships, this route presented some points of attraction, in tracing the Sierra Nevada—turning the Great Basin, perhaps crossing its rim on the south—completely solving the problem of any river, except the Colorado, from the Rocky mountains on that part of our continent—and seeing the southern extremity of the Great Salt lake, of which the northern part had been examined the year before.

Taking leave of Mr. Sutter, who, with several gentlemen, accompanied us a few miles on our way, we travelled about eighteen miles, and encamped on the *Rio de los Cosumnes*, a stream receiving its name from the Indians who live in its valley. Our road was through a level country, admirably suited to cultivation, and covered with groves of oak trees, principally the evergreen oak, and a large oak already mentioned, in form like those of the white oak. The weather, which here, at this season, can easily be changed from the summer heat of the valley to the frosty mornings and bright days nearer the mountains, continued delightful for travellers, but unfavorable to the agriculturists, whose crops of wheat began to wear a yellow tinge from want of rain.

March 25.—We travelled for 28 miles over the same delightful country as yesterday, and halted in a beautiful bottom at the ford of the *Rio de los Mukelemnes*, receiving its name from another Indian tribe living on the river. The bottoms on the stream are broad, rich, and extremely fertile; and the uplands are shaded with oak groves. A showy *lupinus*, of extraordinary beauty, growing four to five feet in height, and covered with spikes in bloom, adorned the banks of the river, and filled the air with a light and grateful perfume.

On the 26th we halted at the *Arroyo de las Calaveras* (Skull creek), a tributary to the San Joaquin—the previous two streams entering the bay between the San Joaquin and Sacramento rivers. This place is beautiful, with open groves of oak, and a grassy sward beneath, with many plants in bloom; some varieties of which seem to love the shade of the trees, and grow there in close small fields. Near the river, and replacing the grass, are great quantities of *ammole* (soap plant), the leaves of which are used in California for making, among other things,

mats for saddle cloths. A vine with a small white flower (*melothria?*) called here *la yerba buena*, and which, from its abundance, gives name to an island and town in the bay, was to-day very frequent on our road—sometimes running on the ground or climbing the trees.

March 27.—To-day we travelled steadily and rapidly up the valley; for, with our wild animals, any other gait was impossible, and making about five miles an hour. During the earlier part of the day, our ride had been over a very level prairie, or rather a succession of long stretches of prairie, separated by lines and groves of oak timber, growing along dry gullies, which are filled with water in seasons of rain; and, perhaps, also, by the melting snows. Over much of this extent, the vegetation was sparse; the surface showing plainly the action of water, which, in the season of flood, the Joaquin spreads over the valley. About 1 o'clock we came again among innumerable flowers; and a few miles further, fields of the beautiful blue-flowering *lupine*, which seems to love the neighborhood of water, indicated that we were approaching a stream. We here found this beautiful shrub in thickets, some of them being 12 feet in height. Occasionally three or four plants were clustered together, forming a grand bouquet, about 90 feet in circumference, and 10 feet high; the whole summit covered with spikes of flowers, the perfume of which is very sweet and grateful. A lover of natural beauty can imagine with what pleasure we rode among these flowering groves, which filled the air with a light and delicate fragrance. We continued our road for about half a mile, interspersed through an open grove of live oaks, which, in form, were the most symmetrical and beautiful we had yet seen in this country. The ends of their branches rested on the ground, forming somewhat more than a half sphere of very full and regular figure, with leaves apparently smaller than usual.

The Californian poppy, of a rich orange color, was numerous to-day. Elk and several bands of antelope made their appearance.

Our road was now one continued enjoyment; and it was pleasant, riding among this assemblage of green pastures with varied flowers and scattered groves, and out of the warm green spring, to look at the rocky and snowy peaks where lately we had suffered so much. Emerging from the timber, we came suddenly upon the Stanislaus river, where we hoped to find a ford, but the stream was flowing by, dark and deep, swollen by the mountain snows; its general breadth was about 50 yards.

We travelled about five miles up the river, and encamped without being able to find a ford. Here we made a large *cord*, in order

so be able to catch a sufficient number of our wild animals to relieve those previously packed.

Under the shade of the oaks, along the river, I noticed *erodium cicutarium* in bloom, eight or ten inches high. This is the plant which we had seen the squaws gathering on the Rio de los Americanos. By the inhabitants of the valley, it is highly esteemed for fattening cattle, which appear to be very fond of it. Here, where the soil begins to be sandy, it supplies to a considerable extent the want of grass.

Desirous, as far as possible, without delay, to include in our examination the San Joaquin river, I returned this morning down the Stanislaus for 17 miles, and again encamped without having found a fording place. After following it for 8 miles further the next morning, and finding ourselves in the vicinity of the San Joaquin, encamped in a handsome oak grove, and, several cattle being killed, we ferried over our baggage in their skins. Here our Indian boy, who probably had not much idea of where he was going, and began to be alarmed at the many streams which we were rapidly putting between him and the village, deserted.

Thirteen head of cattle took a sudden fright, while we were driving them across the river, and galloped off. I remained a day in the endeavor to recover them; but, finding they had taken the trail back to the fort, let them go without further effort. Here we had several days of warm and pleasant rain, which doubtless saved the crops below.

On the 1st of April, we made 10 miles across a prairie without timber, when we were stopped again by another large river, which is called the *Rio de la Merced* (river of our Lady of Mercy). Here the country had lost its character of extreme fertility, the soil having become more sandy and light; but, for several days past, its beauty had been increased by the additional animation of animal life; and now, it is crowded with bands of elk and wild horses; and along the rivers are frequent fresh tracks of grizzly bear, which are unusually numerous in this country.

Our route had been along the timber of the San Joaquin, generally about 8 miles distant, over a high prairie.

In one of the bands of elk seen to-day, there were about 200; but the larger bands, both of these and wild horses, are generally found on the other side of the river, which, for that reason, I avoided crossing. I had been informed below, that the droves of wild horses were almost invariably found on the western bank of the river; and the danger of losing our animals among them, together with the wish of adding to our reconnois-

sance the numerous streams which run down from the Sierra, decided me to travel up the eastern bank.

April 2.—The day was occupied in building a boat, and ferrying our baggage across the river; and we encamped on the bank. A large fishing eagle, with white head and tail, was slowly sailing along, looking after salmon; and there were some pretty birds in the timber, with partridges, ducks, and geese innumerable in the neighborhood. We were struck with the tameness of the latter bird at Helvetia, scattered about in flocks near the wheat fields, and eating grass on the prairie; a horseman would ride by within 30 yards, without disturbing them.

April 3.—To-day we touched several times the San Joaquin river—here a fine-looking tranquil stream, with a slight current, and apparently deep. It resembled the Missouri in color, with occasional points of white sand; and its banks, where steep, were a kind of sandy clay; its average width appeared to be about eighty yards. In the bottoms are frequent ponds, where our approach disturbed multitudes of wild fowl, principally geese. Skirting along the timber, we frequently started elk; and large bands were seen during the day, with antelope and wild horses. The low country and the timber rendered it difficult to keep the main line of the river; and this evening we encamped on a tributary stream, about five miles from its mouth. On the prairie bordering the San Joaquin bottoms, there occurred during the day but little grass, and in its place was a sparse and dwarf growth of plants; the soil being sandy, with small bare places and hillocks, reminded me much of the Platte bottoms; but, on approaching the timber, we found a more luxuriant vegetation; and at our camp was an abundance of grass and pea vines.

The foliage of the oak is getting darker; and everything, except that the weather is a little cool, shows that spring is rapidly advancing; and to-day we had quite a summer rain.

April 4.—Commenced to rain at daylight, but cleared off brightly at sunrise. We ferried the river without any difficulty, and continued up the San Joaquin. Elk were running in bands over the prairie and in the skirt of the timber. We reached the river again at the mouth of a large slough, which we were unable to ford, and made a circuit of several miles around. Here the country appears very flat; oak trees have entirely disappeared, and are replaced by a large willow, nearly equal to it in size. The river is about a hundred yards in breadth, branching into sloughs, and interspersed with islands. At this time it appears sufficiently deep for a small steamer, but its na-

streams which run down
sided me to travel up the

ny was occupied in build-
ing our baggage across
encamped on the bank.
le, with white head and
ling along, looking after
were some pretty birds in
tridges, ducks, and geese
neighborhood. We were
ness of the latter bird at
about in flocks near the
ting grass on the prairie;
ride by within 30 yards,
them.

ny we touched several
quin river—here a fine-
ream, with a slight cur-
y deep. It resembled the
with occasional points of
its banks, where steep,
y clay; its average width
ut eighty yards. In the
nt ponds, where our ap-
multitudes of wild fowl,
Skirting along the tim-
started elk; and large
ring the day, with ante-
s. The low country and
d it difficult to keep the
ver; and this evening we
butary stream, about five
h. On the prairie border-
n bottoms, there occurred
t little grass, and in its
se and dwarf growth of
ng sandy, with small bare
t, reminded me much of
t but, on approaching the
more luxuriant vegeta-
mp was an abundance of

the oak is getting darker;
ept that the weather is a
that spring is rapidly ad-
y we had quite a summer

enced to rain at daylight,
tly at sunrise. We fer-
ut any difficulty, and con-
oquin. Elk were ran-
the prairie and in the
We reached the river
of a large slough, which
ford, and made a circuit
und. Here the country
oak trees have entirely
re replaced by a large
al to it in size. The
ndred yards in breadth,
ugh, and interspersed
is time it appears suffi-
small steamer, but its na-

vigation would be broken by shallows at low water. Bearing in towards the river, we were again forced off by another slough; and passing around, steered towards a clump of trees on the river, and, finding there good grass, encamped. The prairies along the left bank are alive with immense droves of wild horses; and they had been seen during the day at every opening through the woods which afforded us a view across the river. Latitude, by observation, 37° 08' 00"; longitude 120° 45' 22".

April 5.—During the earlier part of the day's ride, the country presented a lacustrine appearance; the river was deep, and nearly on a level with the surrounding country; its banks raised like a levee, and fringed with willows. Over the bordering plain were interspersed spots of prairie among fields of *tulé* (bulrushes), which in this country are called *tulares*, and little ponds. On the opposite side, a line of timber was visible, which, according to information, points out the course of the slough, which at times of high water connects with the San Joaquin river—a large body of water in the upper part of the valley, called the *Tulé lakes*. The river and all its sloughs are very full, and it is probable that the lake is now discharging. Here elk were frequently started, and one was shot out of a band which ran around us. On our left, the Sierra maintains its snowy height, and masses of snow appear to descend very low towards the plains; probably the late rains in the valley were snow on the mountains. We travelled 37 miles, and encamped on the river. Longitude of the camp, 120° 28' 34", and latitude 36° 49' 12".

April 6.—After having travelled fifteen miles along the river, we made an early halt, under the shade of sycamore trees. Here we found the San Joaquin coming down from the Sierra with a westerly course, and checking our way, as all its tributaries had previously done. We had expected to raft the river; but found a good ford, and encamped on the opposite bank, where droves of wild horses were raising clouds of dust on the prairie. Columns of smoke were visible in the direction of the *Tulé lakes* to the southward—probably kindled in the *tulares* by the Indians, as signals that there were strangers in the valley.

We made, on the 7th, a hard march in a cold chilly rain from morning until night—the weather so thick that we travelled by compass. This was a *traverse* from the San Joaquin to the waters of the *Tulé lakes*, and our road was over a very level prairie country. We saw wolves frequently during the day, prowling about after the young antelope, which cannot run very fast. These

were numerous during the day, and two were caught by the people.

Late in the afternoon we discovered timber, which was found to be groves of oak trees on a dry *arroyo*. The rain, which had fallen in frequent showers, poured down in a storm at sunset, with a strong wind, which swept off the clouds, and left a clear sky. Riding on through the timber, about dark we found abundant water in small ponds, 20 to 30 yards in diameter, with clear deep water and sandy beds, bordered with bog rushes (*juncus effusus*), and a tall rush (*scirpus lacustris*) twelve feet high, and surrounded near the margin with willow trees in bloom; among them one which resembled *salix myricoides*. The oak of the groves was the same already mentioned, with small leaves, in form like those of the white oak, and forming, with the evergreen oak, the characteristic trees of the valley.

April 8.—After a ride of two miles through brush and open groves, we reached a large stream, called the River of the Lake, resembling in size the San Joaquin, and being about 100 yards broad. This is the principal tributary to the *Tulé lakes*, which collect all the waters in the upper part of the valley. While we were searching for a ford, some Indians appeared on the opposite bank, and, having discovered that we were not Spanish soldiers, showed us the way to a good ford several miles above.

The Indians of the Sierra make frequent descents upon the settlements west of the Coast Range, which they keep constantly swept of horses; among them are many who are called Christian Indians, being refugees from Spanish missions. Several of these incursions occurred while we were at Helvetia. Occasionally parties of soldiers follow them across the Coast Range, but never enter the Sierra.

On the opposite side we found some forty or fifty Indians, who had come to meet us from the village below. We made them some small presents, and invited them to accompany us to our encampment, which, after about three miles through fine oak groves, we made on the river. We made a fort, principally on account of our animals. The Indians brought otter skins, and several kinds of fish, and bread made of acorns, to trade. Among them were several who had come to live among these Indians when the missions were broken up, and who spoke Spanish fluently. They informed us that they were called by the Spaniards *mansitos* (tame), in distinction from the wilder tribes of the mountains. They, however, think themselves very insecure, not knowing at what unforeseen moment the sines of the latter may be visited on them. They are dark-

skinned, but handsome and intelligent Indians, and live principally on acorns and the roots of the tule, of which also their huts are made.

By observation, the latitude of the encampment is, $36^{\circ} 24' 50''$, and longitude $119^{\circ} 41' 40''$.

April 9.—For several miles we had very bad travelling over what is called rotten ground, in which the horses were frequently up to their knees. Making towards a line of timber, we found a small fordable stream, beyond which the country improved, and the grass became excellent; and, crossing a number of dry and timbered *arroyos*, we travelled until late through open oak groves, and encamped among a collection of streams. These were running among rushes and willows; and, as usual, flocks of blackbirds announced our approach to water. We have here approached considerably nearer to the eastern Sierra, which shows very plainly, still covered with masses of snow, which yesterday and to-day has also appeared abundant on the Coast Range.

April 10.—To-day we made another long journey of about forty miles, through a country uninteresting and flat, with very little grass and a sandy soil, in which several branches we crossed had lost their water. In the evening the face of the country became hilly; and, turning a few miles up towards the mountains, we found a good encampment on a pretty stream hidden among the hills, and handsomely timbered, principally with large cottonwoods (*populus*), differing from any in Michaux's *Sylva*. The seed vessels of this tree were now just about bursting.

Several Indians came down the river to see us in the evening; we gave them supper, and cautioned them against stealing our horses; which they promised not to attempt.

April 11.—A broad trail along the river here takes out among the hills. "Buen camino" (good road), said one of the Indians, of whom we had inquired about the pass; and, following it accordingly, it conducted us beautifully through a very broken country, by an excellent way, which, otherwise, we should have found extremely bad. Taken separately, the hills present smooth and graceful outlines, but, together, make bad travelling ground. Instead of grass, the whole face of the country is closely covered with *erodium cicutarium*, here only two or three inches high. Its height and beauty varied in a remarkable manner with the locality, being, in many low places which we passed during the day, around streams and springs, two and three feet in height. The country had now assumed a character of aridity; and the luxuriant green of these little streams, wooded with willow, oak, or

sycamore, looked very refreshing among the sandy hills.

In the evening we encamped on a large creek, with abundant water. I noticed here in bloom, for the first time since leaving the Arkansas waters, the *Mirabilis Jalapa*.

April 12.—Along our road to-day the country was altogether sandy, and vegetation meager. *Ephedra occidentalis*, which we had first seen in the neighborhood of the Pyramid lake, made its appearance here, and in the course of the day became very abundant, and in large bushes. Towards the close of the afternoon, we reached a tolerably large river, which empties into a small lake at the head of the valley; it is about thirty-five yards wide, with a stony and gravelly bed, and the swiftest stream we have crossed since leaving the bay. The bottoms produced no grass, though well timbered with willow and cottonwood; and, after ascending it for several miles, we made a late encampment on a little bottom, with scanty grass. In greater part, the vegetation along our road consisted now of rare and unusual plants, among which many were entirely new.

Along the bottoms were thickets consisting of several varieties of shrubs, which made here their first appearance; and among these was *Garrya elliptica* (Lindley), a small tree belonging to a very peculiar natural order, and, in its general appearance (growing in thickets), resembling willow. It now became common along the streams, frequently supplying the place of *salix longifolia*.

April 13.—The water was low, and a few miles above we forded the river at a rapid, and marched in a southeasterly direction over a less broken country. The mountains were now very near, occasionally looming out through fog. In a few hours we reached the bottom of a creek without water, over which the sandy beds were dispersed in many branches. Immediately where we struck it, the timber terminated; and below, to the right, it was a broad bed of dry and bare sands. There were many tracks of Indians and horses imprinted in the sand, which, with other indications, informed us was the creek issuing from the pass, and which we have called Pass creek. We ascended a trail for a few miles along the creek, and suddenly found a stream of water five feet wide, running with a lively current, but losing itself almost immediately. This little stream showed plainly the manner in which the mountain waters lose themselves in sand at the eastern foot of the Sierra, leaving only a parched desert and arid plains beyond. The stream enlarged rapidly, and the timber became abundant as we ascended. A new species of pine made its appearance.

very refreshing among the

we encamped on a large
ant water. I noticed here
first time since leaving the
the *Mirabilis Jalapa*.

ong our road to-day the
ether sandy, and vegetation
a *occidentalis*, which we
the neighborhood of the
de its appearance here, and
he day became very abun-
ge bushes. Towards the
noon, we reached a tolera-
hich empties into a small
of the valley; it is about
wide, with a stony and
d the swiftest stream we
ce leaving the bay. The
d no grass, though well
low and cottonwood; and
for several miles, we made
nt on a little bottom, with
n greater part, the vegeta-
road consisted now of rare
ants, among which many

v.
oms were thickets consist-
varieties of shrubs, which
first appearance; and among
n *elliptica* (Lindley), a small
to a very peculiar natural
general appearance (grow-
resembling willow. It now
along the streams, fre-
g the place of *salix longi-*

the water was low, and a few
forded the river at a rapid,
a southeasterly direction
n country. The mountains
near, occasionally looming
In a few hours we reached
creek without water, over
y beds were dispersed in
Immediately where we
ber terminated; and below,
as a broad bed of dry and
ere were many tracks of
ees imprinted in the sand,
r indications, informed us
ssuing from the pass, and
alled Pass creek. We as-
or a few miles along the
nly found a stream of water
ining with a lively current,
almost immediately. This
ved plainly the manner in
ain waters lose themselves
eastern foot of the Sierra,
ched desert and arid plains
eam enlarged rapidly, and
e abundant as we ascended.
pine made its appearance.

with several kinds of oaks, and a variety of
trees; and the country changing its appear-
ance suddenly and entirely, we found our-
selves again travelling among the old or-
chard-like places. Here we selected a del-
ightful encampment in a handsome green
oak hollow, where, among the open bolls of
the trees, was an abundant sward of grass
and pea vines. In the evening a Christian
Indian rode into the camp, well dressed, with
long spurs, and a *sombrero*, and speaking
Spanish fluently. It was an unexpected ap-
parition, and a strange and pleasant sight in
this desolate gorge of a mountain—an Indian
face, Spanish costume, jingling spurs, and
horse equipped after the Spanish manner.
He informed me that he belonged to one of
the Spanish missions to the south, distant
two or three days' ride, and that he had
obtained from the priests leave to spend a
few days with his relations in the Sierra.
Having seen us enter the pass, he had come
down to visit us. He appeared familiarly
acquainted with the country, and gave me
definite and clear information in regard to
the desert region east of the mountains. I
had entered the pass with a strong disposi-
tion to vary my route, and to travel directly
across towards the Great Salt lake, in the
view of obtaining some acquaintance with
the interior of the Great Basin, while pur-
suing a direct course for the frontier; but
his representation, which described it as an
arid and barren desert, that had repulsed by
its sterility all the attempts of the Indians
to penetrate it, determined me for the present
to relinquish the plan; and, agreeably to his
advice, after crossing the Sierra, continue
our intended route along its eastern base to
the Spanish trail. By this route, a party of
six Indians, who had come from a great
river in the eastern part of the desert to
trade with his people, had just started on
their return. He would himself return the
next day to *San Fernando*; and as our roads
would be the same for two days, he offered
his services to conduct us so far on our way.
His offer was gladly accepted. The fog,
which had somewhat interfered with views
in the valley, had entirely passed off, and
left a clear sky. That which had enveloped
us in the neighborhood of the pass pro-
ceeded evidently from fire kindled among
the tularas by Indians living near the lakes,
and which were intended to warn those in
the mountains that there were strangers in
the valley. Our position was in latitude 35°
17' 12", and longitude 118° 35' 03".

April 14.—Our guide joined us this morn-
ing on the trail; and, arriving in a short
distance at an open bottom where the creek
forked, we continued up the right-hand
branch, which was enriched by a profusion
of flowers, and handsomely wooded with

sycamore, oaks, cottonwood, and willow,
with other trees, and some shrubby plants.
In its long strings of balls, this sycamore
differs from that of the United States, and is
the *platanus occidentalis* of Hooker—a new
species, recently described among the plants
collected in the voyage of the Sulphur. The
cottonwood varied its foliage with white
tufts, and the feathery seeds were flying
plentifully through the air. Gooseberries,
nearly ripe, were very abundant on the moun-
tain; and as we passed the dividing grounds,
which were not very easy to ascertain, the
air was filled with perfume, as if we were
entering a highly cultivated garden; and,
instead of green, our pathway and the moun-
tain sides were covered with fields of yellow
flowers, which here was the prevailing color.
Our journey to-day was in the midst of an
advanced spring, whose green and floral
beauty offered a delightful contrast to the
sandy valley we had just left. All the day
snow was in sight on the butt of the moun-
tain, which frowned down upon us on the
right; but we beheld it now with feelings of
pleasant security, as we rode along between
green trees, and on flowers, with humming
birds and other feathered friends of the tra-
veller enlivening the serene spring air. As
we reached the summit of this beautiful
pass, and obtained a view into the eastern
country, we saw at once that here was the
place to take leave of all such pleasant
scenes as those around us. The distant
mountains were now bald rocks again; and
below, the land had any color but green.
Taking into consideration the nature of the
Sierra Nevada, we found this pass an excel-
lent one for horses; and with a little labor,
or perhaps with a more perfect examination
of the localities, it might be made suffici-
ently practicable for wagons. Its latitude and
longitude may be considered that of our
last encampment, only a few miles distant.
The elevation was not taken—our half-wild
cavalcade making it too troublesome to halt
before night, when once started.

We here left the waters of the bay of San
Francisco, and, though forced upon them
contrary to my intentions, I cannot regret
the necessity which occasioned the deviation.
It made me well acquainted with the great
range of the Sierra Nevada of the Alta Cali-
fornia, and showed that this broad and ele-
vated snowy ridge was a continuation of the
Cascade Range of Oregon, between which
and the ocean there is still another and a
lower range, parallel to the former and to
the coast, and which may be called the Coast
Range. It also made me well acquainted
with the basin of the San Francisco bay,
and with the two pretty rivers and their
valleys (the Sacramento and San Joaquin),
which are tributary to that bay; and cleared

up some points in geography on which error had long prevailed. It had been constantly represented, as I have already stated, that the bay of San Francisco opened far into the interior, by some river coming down from the base of the Rocky mountains, and upon which supposed stream the name of Rio Buenaventura had been bestowed. Our observations of the Sierra Nevada, in the long distance from the head of the Sacramento to the head of the San Joaquin, and of the valley below it, which collects all the waters of the San Francisco bay, show that this neither is nor can be the case. No river from the interior does, or can, cross the Sierra Nevada—itself more lofty than the rocky mountains; and as to the Buenaventura, the mouth of which seen on the coast gave the idea and the name of the reputed great river, it is, in fact, a small stream of no consequence, not only below the Sierra Nevada, but actually below the Coast Range—taking its rise within half a degree of the ocean, running parallel to it for about two degrees, and then falling into the Pacific near Monterey. There is no opening from the bay of San Francisco into the interior of the continent. The two rivers which flow into it are comparatively short, and not perpendicular to the coast, but lateral to it, and having their heads towards Oregon and southern California. They open lines of communication north and south, and not eastwardly; and thus this want of interior communication from the San Francisco bay, now fully ascertained, gives great additional value to the Columbia, which stands alone as the only great river on the Pacific slope of our continent which leads from the ocean to the Rocky mountains, and opens a line of communication from the sea to the valley of the Mississippi.

Four *compañeros* joined our guide at the pass; and two going back at noon, the others continued on in company. Descending from the hills, we reached a country of fine grass, where the *erodium cicutarium* finally disappeared, giving place to an excellent quality of bunch grass. Passing by some springs where there was a rich sward of grass among groves of large black oak, we rode over a plain on which the guide pointed out a spot where a refugee Christian Indian had been killed by a party of soldiers which had unexpectedly penetrated into the mountains. Crossing a low sierra, and descending a hollow where a spring gushed out, we were struck by the sudden appearance of *yucca* trees, which gave a strange and southern character to the country, and suited well with the dry and desert region we were approaching. Associated with the idea of barren sands, their stiff and ungraceful form makes them to the traveller the most repul-

sive tree in the vegetable kingdom. Following the hollow, we shortly came upon a creek timbered with large black oak, which yet had not put forth a leaf. There was a small rivulet of running water, with good grass.

April 15.—The Indians who had accompanied the guide returned this morning, and I purchased from them a Spanish saddle and long spurs, as reminiscences of the time; and for a few yards of scarlet cloth they gave me a horse, which afterwards became food for other Indians.

We continued a short distance down the creek, in which our guide informed us that the water very soon disappeared, and turned directly to the southward along the foot of the mountain; the trail on which we rode appearing to describe the eastern limit of travel, where water and grass terminated. Crossing a low spur, which bordered the creek, we descended to a kind of plain among the lower spurs; the desert being in full view on our left, apparently illimitable. A hot mist lay over it to-day, through which it had a white and glistening appearance; here and there a few dry-looking *buttes* and isolated black ridges rose suddenly upon it. "There," said our guide, stretching out his hand towards it, "there are the great *llanos* (plains), *no hay agua*; *no hay zacate*—*nada*: there is neither water nor grass—nothing; every animal that goes out upon them, dies." It was indeed dismal to look upon, and hard to conceive so great a change in so short a distance. "One might travel the world over, without finding a valley more fresh and verdant—more floral and sylvan—more alive with birds and animals—more bounteously watered—than we had left in the San Joaquin: here, within a few miles' ride, a vast desert plain spread before us, from which the boldest traveller turned away in despair.

Directly in front of us, at some distance to the southward, and running out in an easterly direction from the mountains, stretched a sierra, having at the eastern end (perhaps 50 miles distant) some snowy peaks, on which, by the information of our guide, snow rested all the year.

Our cavalcade made a strange and grotesque appearance; and it was impossible to avoid reflecting upon our position and composition in this remote solitude. Within two degrees of the Pacific ocean; already far south of the latitude of Monterey; and still forced on south by a desert on one hand and a mountain range on the other; guided by a civilized Indian, attended by two wild ones from the Sierra; a Chinook from the Columbia; and our own mixture of American, French, German—all armed; four or five languages heard at once; above a hundred horses and mules, half wild; American, Spanish, and Indian dresses and equipments

getable kingdom. Followed shortly came upon a creek of black oak, which yet a leaf. There was a small water, with good grass. Indians who had accompanied this morning, and whom a Spanish saddle and reminiscences of the time; yards of scarlet cloth they which afterwards became

short distance down the our guide informed us very soon disappeared, and the southward along the in; the trail on which we describe the eastern limit water and grass terminated, pur, which bordered the ded to a kind of plain spurs; the desert being in soft, apparently illimitable for it to-day, through which and glistening appearance; few dry-looking buttes and es rose suddenly upon it. guide, stretching out his there are the great *llanos* *grua*; *no hay zacate—nada*; water nor grass—nothing; goes out upon them, dies." al to look upon, and hard to a change in so short a distance travel the world over, valley more fresh and verdant and sylvan—more alive animals—more bounteously had left in the San Joaquin a few miles' ride, a vast before us, from which the died away in despair.

of us, at some distance to l running out in an east-the mountains, stretched the eastern end (perhaps some snowy peaks, on mation of our guide, snow

made a strange and gro- and it was impossible to on our position and commo- mote solitude. Within the Pacific ocean; already titude of Monterey; and by a desert on one hand ge on the other; guided n, attended by two wild ra; a Chinook from the own mixture of Ameri- man—all armed; four or d at once; above a hun- dreds, half wild; American, dresses and equipments

intermingled—such was our composition. Our march was a sort of procession. Scouts ahead, and on the flanks; a front and rear division; the pack animals, baggage, and horned cattle, in the centro; and the whole stretching a quarter of a mile along our dreary path. In this form we journeyed; looking more as if we belonged to Asia than to the United States of America.

We continued in a southerly direction across the plain, to which, as well as to all the country, so far as we could see, the *yucca* trees gave a strange and singular character. Several new plants appeared, among which was a zygothylaceous shrub (*zygothylum Californicum*, Torr. and Frem.), sometimes ten feet in height; in form, and in the pliancy of its branches, it is rather a graceful plant. Its leaves are small, covered with a resinous substance; and, particularly when bruised and crushed, exhale a singular but very agreeable and refreshing odor. This shrub and the *yucca*, with many varieties of cactus, make the characteristic features in the vegetation for a long distance to the eastward. Along the foot of the mountain, twenty miles to the southward, red stripes of flowers were visible during the morning, which we supposed to be variegated sandstones. We rode rapidly during the day, and in the afternoon emerged from the *yucca* forest at the foot of an *oullier* of the Sierra before us, and came among the fields of flowers we had seen in the morning, which consisted principally of the rich orange-colored Californian poppy, mingled with other flowers of brighter tints. Reaching the top of the spur, which was covered with fine bunch grass, and where the hills were very green, our guide pointed to a small hollow in the mountain before us, saying, "*¿este piedra hay agua?*" He appeared to know every nook in the country. We continued our beautiful road, and reached a spring in the slope, at the foot of the ridge, running in a green ravine, among granite boulders; here night-shade, and borders of buckwheat, with their white blossoms around the granite rocks, attracted our notice as familiar plants. Several antelopes were seen among the hills, and some large hares. Men were sent back this evening in search of a wild mule with a valuable pack, which had managed (as they frequently do) to hide itself along the road.

By observation, the latitude of the camp is $34^{\circ} 41' 42''$; and longitude $118^{\circ} 20' 00''$. The next day the men returned with the mule.

April 17.—Crossing the ridge by a beautiful pass of hollows, where several deer broke out of the thickets, we emerged at a small salt lake in a *valion* lying nearly east and west, where a trail from the mission of

San Buenaventura comes in. The lake is about 1,300 yards in diameter; surrounded on the margin by a white salty border, which, by the smell, reminded us slightly of Lake Abert. There are some cottonwoods, with willow and elder, around the lake; and the water is a little salt, although not entirely unfit for drinking. Here we turned directly to the eastward, along the trail, which, from being seldom used, is almost imperceptible; and, after travelling a few miles, our guide halted, and, pointing to the hardly visible trail, "*aquí es camino*," said he, "*no se pierde—va siempre.*" He pointed out a black butte on the plain at the foot of the mountain, where we would find water to encamp at night; and, giving him a present of knives and scarlet cloth, we shook hands and parted. He bore off south, and in a day's ride would arrive at San Fernando, one of several missions in this part of California, where the country is so beautiful that it is considered a paradise, and the name of its principal town (*Puebla de los Angeles*) would make it angelic. We continued on through a succession of valleys, and came into a most beautiful spot of flower fields: instead of green, the hills were purple and orange, with unbroken beds, into which each color was separately gathered. A pale straw color, with a bright yellow the rich red orange of the poppy mingled with fields of purple, covered the spot with a floral beauty; and, on the border of the sandy deserts, seemed to invite the traveller to go no farther. Riding along through the perfumed air, we soon after entered a defile overgrown with the ominous *artemisia tridentata*, which conducted us into a sandy plain covered more or less densely with forests of *yucca*.

Having now the snowy ridge on our right, we continued our way towards a dark butte, belonging to a low sierra in the plain, and which our guide had pointed out for a landmark. Late in the day, the familiar growth of cottonwood, a line of which was visible ahead, indicated our approach to a creek, which we reached where the water spread out into sands, and a little below sank entirely. Here our guide had intended we should pass the night; but there was not a blade of grass, and, hoping to find nearer the mountain a little for the night, we turned up the stream. A hundred yards above, we found the creek a fine stream, sixteen feet wide, with a swift current. A dark night overtook us when we reached the hills at the foot of the ridge, and we were obliged to encamp without grass; tying up what animals we could secure in the darkness, the greater part of the wild ones having free range for the night. Here the stream was two feet deep, swift and clear, issuing from

a neighboring snow peak. A few miles before reaching this creek, we had crossed a broad dry river bed, which, nearer the hills, the hunters had found a bold and handsome stream.

April 18.—Some parties were engaged in hunting up the scattered horses, and others in searching for grass above; both were successful, and late in the day we encamped among some spring heads of the river, in a hollow which was covered with only tolerably good grasses, the lower ground being entirely overgrown with large bunches of the coarse stiff grass (*carex sitchensis*).

Our latitude, by observation, was $34^{\circ} 27' 03''$; and longitude $117^{\circ} 13' 00''$.

Travelling close along the mountain, we followed up, in the afternoon of the 19th, another stream, in hopes to find a grass-patch like that of the previous day, but were deceived; except some scattered bunch grass, there was nothing but rock and sand; and even the fertility of the mountain seemed withered by the air of the desert. Among the few trees was the nut pine (*pinus monophyllus*).

Our road the next day was still in an easterly direction along the ridge, over very bad travelling ground, broken and confounded with crippled trees and shrubs; and, after a difficult march of eighteen miles, a general shout announced that we had struck the great object of our search—THE SPANISH TRAIL—which here was running directly north. The road itself, and its course, were equally happy discoveries to us. Since the middle of December we had continually been forced south by mountains and by deserts, and now would have to make six degrees of *nothing*, to regain the latitude on which we wished to cross the Rocky mountains. The course of the road, therefore, was what we wanted; and, once more, we felt like going homewards. A road to travel on, and the right course to go, were joyful consolations to us; and our animals enjoyed the beaten track like ourselves. Relieved from the rocks and brush, our wild mules started off at a rapid rate, and in fifteen miles we reached a considerable river, timbered with cottonwood and willow, where we found a bottom of tolerable grass. As the animals had suffered a great deal in the last few days, I remained here all next day, to allow them the necessary repose; and it was now necessary, at every favorable place, to make a little halt. Between us and the Colorado river we were aware that the country was extremely poor in grass, and scarce for water, there being many *jornadas* (day's journey), or long stretches of forty to sixty miles, without water, where the road was marked by bones of animals.

Although in California we had met with

people who had passed over this trail, we had been able to obtain no correct information about it; and the greater part of what we had heard was found to be only a tissue of falsehoods. The rivers that we found on it were never mentioned, and others, particularly described in name and locality, were subsequently seen in another part of the country. It was described as a tolerably good sandy road, with so little rock as scarcely to require the animals to be shod; and we found it the roughest and rockiest road we had ever seen in the country, and which nearly destroyed our band of fine mules and horses. Many animals are destroyed on it every year by a disease called the foot evil; and a traveller should never venture on it without having his animals well shod, and also carrying extra shoes.

Latitude $34^{\circ} 34' 11''$; and longitude $117^{\circ} 13' 00''$.

The morning of the 22d was clear and bright, and a snowy peak to the southward shone out high and sharply defined. As has been usual since we crossed the mountains and descended into the hot plains, we had a gale of wind. We travelled down the right bank of the stream, over sands which are somewhat loose, and have no verdure, but are occupied by various shrubs. A clear bold stream, 60 feet wide, and several feet deep, had a strange appearance, running between perfectly naked banks of sand. The eye, however, is somewhat relieved by willows, and the beautiful green of the sweet cottonwoods with which it is well wooded. As we followed along its course, the river, instead of growing constantly larger, gradually dwindled away, as it was absorbed by the sand. We were now careful to take the old camping places of the annual Santa Fé caravans, which, luckily for us, had not yet made their yearly passage. A drove of several thousand horses and mules would entirely have swept away the scanty grass at the watering places, and we should have been obliged to leave the road to obtain subsistence for our animals. After riding 20 miles in a northeasterly direction, we found an old encampment, where we halted.

By observation, the elevation of this encampment is 2,350 feet.

April 23.—The trail followed still along the river, which, in the course of the morning, entirely disappeared. We continued along the dry bed, in which, after an interval of about 16 miles, the water reappeared in some low places, well timbered with cottonwood and willow, where was another of the customary camping grounds. Here a party of six Indians came into camp, poor and hungry, and quite in keeping with the character of the country. Their arms were bows of unusual length, and each had a large gourd,

seed over this trail, we had in no correct information greater part of what we found to be only a tissue of rivers that we found on it, and others, particularly and locality, were sub-another part of the country as a tolerably good little rock as scarcely to be shod; and we found the rockiest road we had ever seen, and which nearly destroyed the fine mules and horses. I destroyed on it every year the foot evil; and a trader's venture on it without well shod, and also carry-

11"; and longitude 117°

of the 23d was clear and every peak to the southward sharply defined. As we crossed the mountains to the hot plains, we had a fine travelled down the right bank, over sands which are and have no verdure, but various shrubs. A clear appearance, running beaked banks of sand. The somewhat relieved by wil- tiful green of the sweet which it is well wooded. long its course, the river g constantly larger, gradu- ay, as it was absorbed by ere now careful to take the of the annual Santa Fé luckily for us, had not yet passage. A drove of se- aces and mules would en- away the scanty grass at ces, and we should have ave the road to obtain sub- animals. After riding 20 asterly direction, we found nt, where we halted.

the elevation of this en- 0 feet. trail followed still along n the course of the morn- appeared. We continued in which, after an interval t, the water reappeared in well timbered with cotton- where was another of the ng grounds. Here a party e into camp, poor and hun- keeping with the character Their arms were bows of nd each had a large gourd,

strengthened with meshes of cord, in which he carried water. They proved to be the Mohave Indians mentioned by our recent guide; and from one of them who spoke Spanish fluently, I obtained some interesting information, which I would be glad to introduce here. An account of the people inhabiting this region would undoubtedly possess interest for the civilized world. Our journey homeward was fruitful in incident; and the country through which we travelled, although a desert, afforded much to excite the curiosity of the botanist; but limited time, and the rapidly advancing season for active operations, obliged me to omit all extended descriptions, and hurry briefly to the conclusion of this report.

The Indian who spoke Spanish had been educated for a number of years at one of the Spanish missions, and, at the breaking up of those establishments, had returned to the mountains, where he had been found by a party of Mohave (sometimes called Amushada) Indians, among whom he had ever since resided.

He spoke of the leader of the present party as "mi amo" (my master). He said they lived upon a large river in the southeast, which the "soldiers called the Rio Colorado;" but that, formerly, a portion of them lived upon this river, and among the mountains which had bounded the river valley to the northward during the day, and that here along the river they had raised various kinds of melons. They sometimes came over to trade with the Indians of the Sierra, bringing with them blankets and goods manufactured by the Monquis and other Colorado Indians. They rarely carried home horses, on account of the difficulty of getting them across the desert, and of guarding them afterwards from the Pa-utah Indians, who inhabit the Sierra, at the head of the Rio Virgen (river of the Virgin.)

He informed us that, a short distance below, this river finally disappeared. The two different portions in which water is found had received from the priests two different names; and subsequently I heard it called by the Spaniards the Rio de las Animas, but on the map we have called it the Mohave river.

April 24.—We continued down the stream (or rather its bed) for about eight miles, where there was water still in several holes, and encamped. The caravans sometimes continue below, to the end of the river, from which there is a very long jornada of perhaps sixty miles, without water. Here a singular and new species of acacia, with spiral pods or seed vessels, made its first appearance; becoming henceforward, for a considerable distance, a characteristic tree. It was here comparatively large, being about 20 feet in height, with a full and spreading

top, the lower branches declining towards the ground. It afterwards occurred of smaller size, frequently in groves, and is very fragrant. It has been called by Dr. Torrey *spirolobium odoratum*. The zygophyllaceous shrub had been constantly characteristic of the plains along the river; and here, among many new plants, a new and very remarkable species of erigonum (*erigonum inflatum*, Torr. & Frem.) made its first appearance.

Our cattle had become so tired and poor by this fatiguing travelling, that three of them were killed here, and the meat dried. The Indians had now an occasion for a great feast, and were occupied the remainder of the day and all the night in cooking and eating. There was no part of the animal for which they did not find some use, except the bones. In the afternoon we were surprised by the sudden appearance in the camp of two Mexicans—a man and a boy. The name of the man was *Andreas Fuentes*; and that of the boy (a handsome lad, 11 years old), *Pablo Hernandez*. They belonged to a party consisting of six persons, the remaining four being the wife of Fuentes, and the father and mother of Pablo, and Santiago Giacomo, a resident of New Mexico. With a cavalcade of about thirty horses, they had come out from Puebla de los Angeles, near the coast, under the guidance of Giacomo, in advance of the great caravan, in order to travel more at leisure, and obtain better grass. Having advanced as far into the desert as was considered consistent with their safety, they halted at the *Archilette*, one of the customary camping grounds, about 80 miles from our encampment, where there is a spring of good water, with sufficient grass; and concluded to await there the arrival of the great Caravan. Several Indians were soon discovered lurking about the camp, who, in a day or two after, came in, and, after behaving in a very friendly manner, took their leave, without awakening any suspicions. Their departure begat a security which proved fatal. In a few days afterwards, suddenly a party of about one hundred Indians appeared in sight, advancing towards the camp. It was too late, or they seemed not to have presence of mind to take proper measures of safety; and the Indians charged down into their camp, shouting as they advanced, and discharging flights of arrows. Pablo and Fuentes were on horse guard at the time, and mounted according to the custom of the country. One of the principal objects of the Indians was to get possession of the horses, and part of them immediately surrounded the band; but, in obedience to the shouts of Giacomo, Fuentes drove the animals over and through the assailants, in spite of their arrows; and, abandoning the

rest to their fate, carried them off at speed across the plain. Knowing that they would be pursued by the Indians, without making any halt except to shift their saddles to other horses, they drove them on for about sixty miles, and this morning left them at a watering place on the trail, called Agua de Tomaso. Without giving themselves any time for rest, they hurried on, hoping to meet the Spanish Caravan, when they discovered my camp. I received them kindly, taking them into my own mess, and promised them such aid as circumstances might put it in my power to give.

April 25.—We left the river abruptly, and, turning to the north, regained in a few miles the main trail (which had left the river sooner than ourselves), and continued our way across a lower ridge of the mountain, through a miserable tract of sand and gravel. We crossed at intervals the broad beds of dry gullies, where in the season of rains and melting snows there would be brooks or rivulets; and at one of these, where there was no indication of water, were several freshly-dug holes, in which there was water at the depth of two feet. These holes had been dug by the wolves, whose keen sense of smell had scented the water under the dry sand. They were nice little wells, narrow, and dug straight down, and we got pleasant water out of them.

The country had now assumed the character of an elevated and mountainous desert; its general features being black, rocky ridges, bald, and destitute of timber, with sandy basins between. Where the sides of these ridges are washed by gullies, the plains below are strewn with beds of large pebbles or rolled stones, destructive to our soft-footed animals, accustomed to the grassy plains of the Sacramento valley. Through these sandy basins sometimes struggled a scanty stream, or occurred a hole of water, which furnished camping grounds for travellers. Frequently in our journey across, snow was visible on the surrounding mountains; but their waters rarely reached the sandy plain below, where we toiled along, oppressed with thirst and a burning sun. But, throughout this nakedness of sand and gravel, were many beautiful plants and flowering shrubs, which occurred in many new species, and with greater variety than we had been accustomed to see in the most luxuriant prairie countries; this was a peculiarity of this desert. Even where no grass would take root, the naked sand would bloom with some rich and rare flower, which found its appropriate home in the arid and barren spot.

Scattered over the plain, and tolerably abundant, was a handsome leguminous shrub, three or four feet high, with fine bright-purple flowers. It is a new *psoralea*, and oc-

curred frequently henceforward along our road.

Beyond the first ridge, our road bore a little to the east of north, towards a gap in a higher line of mountains; and, after travelling about twenty-five miles, we arrived at the *Agua de Tomaso*—the spring where the horses had been left; but, as we expected, they were gone. A brief examination of the ground convinced us that they had been driven off by the Indians. Carson and Godey volunteered with the Mexican to pursue them; and, well mounted, the three set off on the trail. At this stopping place there were a few bushes and very little grass. Its water was a pool; but near by was a spring, which had been dug out by Indians or travellers. Its water was cool—a great refreshment to us under a burning sun.

In the evening Fuentes returned, his horse having failed; but Carson and Godey had continued the pursuit.

I observed to-night an occultation of α *Canceri*, at the dark limb of the moon, which gives for the longitude of the place $116^{\circ} 23' 28''$; the latitude, by observation, is $35^{\circ} 13' 08''$. From Helvetia to this place, the positions along the intervening line are laid down with the longitudes obtained from the chronometer, which appears to have retained its rate remarkably well; but henceforward, to the end of the journey, the few longitudes given are absolute, depending upon a subsequent occultation and eclipses of the satellites.

In the afternoon of the next day, a war-whoop was heard, such as Indians make when returning from a victorious enterprise, and soon Carson and Godey appeared, driving before them a band of horses, recognized by Fuentes to be part of those they had lost. Two bloody scalps, dangling from the end of Godey's gun, announced that they had overtaken the Indians as well as the horses. They informed us, that after Fuentes left them, from the failure of his horse, they continued the pursuit alone, and towards nightfall entered the mountains, into which the trail led. After sunset the moon gave light, and they followed the trail by moonshine until late in the night, when it entered a narrow defile, and was difficult to follow. Afraid of losing it in the darkness of the defile, they tied up their horses, struck no fire, and lay down to sleep in silence and in darkness. Here they lay from midnight till morning. At daylight they resumed the pursuit, and about sunrise discovered the horses; and immediately dismounting and tying up their own, they crept cautiously to a rising ground which intervened, from the crest of which they perceived the encampment of four lodges close by. They proceeded quietly, and had got within thirty or forty yards of their ob-

henceforward along our
 ridge, our road bore a lit-
 north, towards a gap in a
 mountains; and, after travel-
 y-five miles, we arrived at
 maso—the spring where the
 left; but, as we expected,
 A brief examination of the
 ed us that they had been
 the Indians. Carson and
 ed with the Mexican to pur-
 well mounted, the three set
 At this stopping place there
 es and very little grass. It
 ; but near by was a spring,
 ding out by Indians or trav-
 was cool—a great refresh-
 a burning sun.
 Fuentes returned, his horse
 out Carson and Godey had
 rsult.
 -night an occultation of a
 ark limb of the moon, which
 gitude of the place 116° 23'
 le, by observation, is 35° 13'
 ivetia to this place, the posi-
 tervening line are laid down
 des obtained from the chro-
 appears to have retained its
 well; but henceforward, to
 ourney, the few longitudes
 te, depending upon a subse-
 and eclipses of the satel-
 moon of the next day, a war-
 rd, such as Indians make
 from a victorious enterprise,
 n and Godey appeared, driv-
 a band of horses, recognized
 e part of those they had lost.
 ps, dangling from the end of
 nounced that they had over-
 us as well as the horses.
 us, that after Fuentes left
 failure of his horse, they con-
 nit alone, and towards night
 mountains, into which the
 sunset the moon gave light,
 ved the trail by moonshine
 night, when it entered a nar-
 vas difficult to follow. Afraid
 he darkness of the defile, they
 rses, struck no fire, and lay
 in silence and in darkness.
 from midnight till morning,
 y resumed the pursuit, and
 discovered the horses; and,
 mounting and tying up their
 cautiously to a rising ground
 ed, from the crest of which
 he encampment of four lodges
 y proceeded quietly, and had
 y or forty yards of their ob-

ject, when a movement among the horses
 discovered them to the Indians; giving the
 war shout, they instantly charged into the
 camp, regardless of the number which the
 four lodges would imply. The Indians re-
 ceived them with a flight of arrows shot
 from their long bows, one of which passed
 through Godey's shirt collar, barely missing
 the neck; our men fired their rifles upon a
 steady aim, and rushed in. Two Indians
 were stretched on the ground, fatally pierced
 with bullets; the rest fled, except a lad that
 was captured. The scalps of the fallen
 were instantly stripped off; but in the pro-
 cess, one of them, who had two balls through
 his body, sprung to his feet, the blood stream-
 ing from his skinned head, and uttering a
 hideous howl. An old squaw, possibly his
 mother, stopped and looked back from the
 mountain side she was climbing, threatening
 and lamenting. The frightful spectacle ap-
 palled the stout hearts of our men; but they
 did what humanity required, and quickly ter-
 minated the agonies of the gory savage.
 They were now masters of the camp, which
 was a pretty little recess in the mountain,
 with a fine spring, and apparently safe from
 all invasion. Great preparations had been
 made to feast a large party, for it was a very
 proper place for a rendezvous, and for the
 celebration of such orgies as robbers of the
 desert would delight in. Several of the best
 horses had been killed, skinned, and cut up;
 for the Indians living in mountains, and only
 coming into the plains to rob and murder,
 make no other use of horses than to eat them.
 Large earthen vessels were on the fire, boiling
 and stewing the horse beef; and several bas-
 kets, containing fifty or sixty pairs of moccas-
 ins, indicated the presence, or expectation,
 of a considerable party. They released the
 boy, who had given strong evidence of the
 stoicism, or something else, of the savage
 character, in commencing his breakfast upon
 a horse's head as soon as he found he was
 not to be killed, but only tied as a prisoner.
 Their object accomplished, our men gathered
 up all the surviving horses, fifteen in number,
 returned upon their trail, and rejoined us at
 our camp in the afternoon of the same day. They
 had rode about 100 miles in the pursuit and
 return, and all in thirty hours. The time, place,
 object, and numbers, considered, this expedi-
 tion of Carson and Godey may be considered
 among the boldest and most disinterested
 which the annals of western adventure, so
 full of daring deeds, can present. Two men,
 in a savage desert, pursue day and night an
 unknown body of Indians into the defiles of
 an unknown mountain—attack them on sight,
 without counting numbers—and defeat them
 in an instant—and for what? To punish
 the robbers of the desert, and to avenge the
 wrongs of Mexicans whom they did not

know. I repeat: it was Carson and Godey
 who did this—the former an *American*, born
 in the Boonslick county of Missouri; the lat-
 ter a Frenchman, born in St. Louis—and
 both trained to western enterprise from early
 life.

By the information of Fuentes, we had
 now to make a long stretch of forty or fifty
 miles across a plain which lay between us
 and the next possible camp; and we resum-
 ed our journey late in the afternoon, with
 the intention of travelling through the night,
 and avoiding the excessive heat of the day,
 which was oppressive to our animals. For
 several hours we travelled across a high
 plain, passing, at the opposite side, through
 a cañon by the bed of a creek running
 northwardly into a small lake beyond, and
 both of them being dry. We had a warm,
 moonshiny night; and, travelling directly
 towards the north star, we journeyed now
 across an open plain between mountain
 ridges; that on the left being broken, rocky,
 and bald, according to the information of
 Carson and Godey, who had entered here in
 pursuit of the horses. The plain appeared cov-
 ered principally with the *zygophyllum Cali-*
ifornicum already mentioned; and the line
 of our road was marked by the skeletons of
 horses, which were strewn to a considera-
 ble breadth over the plain. We were after-
 wards always warned, on entering one of
 these long stretches, by the bones of these
 animals, which had perished before they could
 reach the water. About midnight we reach-
 ed a considerable stream bed, now dry, the
 discharge of the waters of this basin (when
 it collected any), down which we descended
 in a northwesterly direction. The creek
 bed was overgrown with shrubbery, and a
 few hours before day it brought us to the
 entrance of a cañon, where we found water,
 and encamped. This word *cañon* is used
 by the Spaniards to signify a defile or gorge
 in a creek or river, where high rocks press
 in close, and make a narrow way, usually
 difficult, and often impossible to be passed.

In the morning we found that we had a
 very poor camping ground: a swampy,
 salty spot, with a little long, unwholesome
 grass; and the water, which rose in springs,
 being useful only to wet the mouth, but en-
 tirely too salt to drink. All around was
 sand and rocks, and skeletons of horses
 which had not been able to find support for
 their lives. As we were about to start, we
 found, at the distance of a few hundred
 yards, among the hills to the southward, a
 spring of tolerably good water, which was a
 relief to ourselves; but the place was too poor
 to remain long, and therefore we continued
 on this morning. On the creek were thick-
 ets of *spirolobium odoratum* (acacia) in
 bloom, and very fragrant.

Passing through the cañon, we entered another sandy basin, through which the dry stream bed continued its northwesterly course, in which direction appeared a high snowy mountain.

We travelled through a barren district, where a heavy gale was blowing about the loose sand, and, after a ride of eight miles, reached a large creek of salt and bitter water, running in a westerly direction, to receive the stream bed we had left. It is called by the Spaniards *Amargosa*—the bitter water of the desert. Where we struck it, the stream bends; and we continued in a northerly course up the ravine of its valley, passing on the way a fork from the right, near which occurred a bed of plants, consisting of a remarkable new genus of *crucifera*.

Gradually ascending, the ravine opened into a green valley, where, at the foot of the mountain, were springs of excellent water. We encamped among groves of the new *acacia*, and there was an abundance of good grass for the animals.

This was the best camping ground we had seen since we struck the Spanish trail. The day's journey was about twelve miles.

April 29.—To-day we had to reach the *Archilette*, distant seven miles, where the Mexican party had been attacked; and leaving our encampment early, we traversed a part of the desert, the most sterile and repulsive that we had yet seen. Its prominent features were dark *sierras*, naked and dry; on the plains a few straggling shrubs—among them, cactus of several varieties. Fuentes pointed out one called by the Spaniards *bisnada*, which has a juicy pulp, slightly acid, and is eaten by the traveller to allay thirst. Our course was generally north; and, after crossing an intervening ridge, we descended into a sandy plain, or basin, in the middle of which was the grassy spot, with its springs and willow bushes, which constitutes a camping place in the desert, and is called the *Archilette*. The dead silence of the place was ominous; and, galloping rapidly up, we found only the corpses of the two men: everything else was gone. They were naked, mutilated, and pierced with arrows. Hernandez had evidently fought, and with desperation. He lay in advance of the willow half-faced tent, which sheltered his family, as if he had come out to meet danger, and to repulse it from that asylum. One of his hands, and both his legs, had been cut off. Giacomo, who was a large and strong looking man, was lying in one of the willow shelters, pierced with arrows. Of the women no trace could be found, and it was evident they had been carried off captive. A little lap-dog, which had belonged to Pablo's mother, remained with the dead bodies,

and was frantic with joy at seeing Pablo: he, poor child, was frantic with grief; and filled the air with lamentations for his father and mother. *Mi padre! Mi madre!*—was his incessant cry. When we beheld this pitiable sight, and pictured to ourselves the fate of the two women, carried off by savages so brutal and so loathsome, all compunction for the scalped-alive Indian ceased; and we rejoiced that Carson and Godey had been able to give so useful a lesson to these American Arabs, who lie in wait to murder and plunder the innocent traveller.

We were all too much affected by the sad feelings which the place inspired, to remain so unnecessary a moment. The night we were obliged to pass there. Early in the morning we left it, having first written a brief account of what had happened, and put it in the cleft of a pole planted at the spring, that the approaching caravan might learn the fate of their friends. In commemoration of the event, we called the place *Agua de Hernandez*—Hernandez's spring. By observation, its latitude was $35^{\circ} 51' 21''$.

April 30.—We continued our journey over a district similar to that of the day before. From the sandy basin, in which was the spring, we entered another basin of the same character, surrounded everywhere by mountains. Before us stretched a high range, rising still higher to the left, and terminating in a snowy mountain.

After a day's march of 24 miles, we reached at evening the bed of a stream from which the water had disappeared; a little only remained in holes, which we increased by digging; and about a mile above, the stream, not yet entirely sunk, was spread out over the sands, affording a little water for the animals. The stream came out of the mountains on the left, very slightly wooded with cottonwood, willow, and *acacia*, and a few dwarf oaks; and grass was nearly as scarce as water. A plant with showy yellow flowers (*Stanleya integrifolia*) occurred abundantly at intervals for the last two days, and *erigonum inflatum* was among the characteristic plants.

May 1.—The air is rough, and overcast pleasant. The sky is blue, and the day bright. Our road was over a plain, towards the foot of the mountain; *zygophyllum Californicum*, now in bloom with a small yellow flower; is characteristic of the country; and cacti were very abundant, and in rich fresh bloom, which wonderfully ornaments this poor country. We encamped at a spring in the pass, which had been the site of an old village. Here we found excellent grass, but very little water. We dug out the old spring, and watered some of our animals. The mountain here was wooded very slightly with the nut pine, cedars, and a dwarf species of oak; and among the

with joy at seeing Pablo was frantic with grief; and lamentations for his father *Mi padre! Mi madre!*—was y. When we beheld this d pictured to ourselves the women, carried off by saval so loathsome, all compunced-alive Indian ceased; and Carson and Godey had been useful a lesson to these who lie in wait to murder innocent traveller.

oo much affected by the sad ne place inspired, to remain ment. The night we pass there. Early in the P, having first written a what had happened, and pu a pole planted at the spring. ching caravan might learn iende. In commemoratio called the place *Agua de andez's spring*. By obser- e was 35° 51' 21".

e continued our journey over to that of the day before. basin, in which was the ed another basin of the same ounded everywhere by moun- s stretched a high range, r to the left, and terminating tain.

arch of 24 miles, we reached d of a stream from which the eared; a little only remained we increased by digging; above, the stream, not yet as spread out over the sands, water for the animals. The t of the mountains on the y wooded with cottonwood, ia, and a few dwarf oaks; nearly as scarce as water. A y yellow flowers (*Stanleya* rred abundantly at intervals days, and *erigonum infla-* the characteristic plants.

air is rough, and overcoats sky is blue, and the day d was over a plain, towards e mountain; *zygophyllum* ow in bloom with a small characteristic of the coun- ere very abundant, and in t, which wonderfully orna- country. We encamped at pass, which had been the age. Here we found excel- very little water. We dug g, and watered some of our ountain here was wooded h the nut pine, cedars, and a of oak; and among the

shrubs were *Purshia tridentata*, *artemisia*, and *ephedra occidentalis*. The numerous shrubs which constitute the vegetation of the plains are now in bloom, with flowers of white, yellow, red, and purple. The continual rocks, and want of water and grass, begin to be very hard on our mules and horses; but the principal loss is occasioned by their crippled feet, the greater part of those left being in excellent order, and scarcely a day passes without some loss; and, one by one, Fuentes's horses are constantly dropping behind. Whenever they give out, he dismounts and cuts off their tails and manes, to make saddle girths; the last advantage one can gain from them.

The next day, in a short but rough ride of 12 miles, we crossed the mountain; and, descending to a small valley plain, encamped at the foot of the ridge, on the bed of a creek, where we found good grass in sufficient quantity, and abundance of water in holes. The ridge is extremely rugged and broken, presenting on this side a continued precipice, and probably affords very few passes. Many digger tracks are seen around us, but no Indians were visible.

May 3.—After a day's journey of 18 miles, in a northeasterly direction, we encamped in the midst of another very large basin, at a camping ground called *las Vegas*—a term which the Spaniards use to signify fertile or marshy plains, in contradistinction to *llanos*, which they apply to dry and sterile plains. Two narrow streams of clear water, four or five feet deep, gush suddenly, with a quick current, from two singularly large springs; these, and other waters of the basin, pass out in a gap to the eastward. The taste of the water is good, but rather too warm to be agreeable; the temperature being 71° in the one, and 73° in the other. They, however, afforded a delightful bathing place.

May 4.—We started this morning earlier than usual, travelling in a northeasterly direction across the plain. The new acacia (*spirulobium odoratum*) has now become the characteristic tree of the country; it is in bloom, and its blossoms are very fragrant. The day was still, and the heat, which soon became very oppressive, appeared to bring out strongly the refreshing scent of the zygophyllaceous shrubs and the sweet perfume of the acacia. The snowy ridge we had just crossed looked out conspicuously in the northwest. In about five hours' ride, we crossed a gap in the surrounding ridge, and the appearance of skeletons of horses very soon warned us that we were engaged in another dry *jornada*, which proved the longest we had made in all our journey—between fifty and sixty miles without a drop of water.

Travellers through countries affording water and timber can have no conception of

our intolerable thirst while journeying over the hot yellow sands of this elevated country, where the heated air seems to be entirely deprived of moisture. We ate occasionally the *bisnada*, and moistened our mouths with the acid of the sour dock (*rumex venosus*). Hourly expecting to find water, we continued to press on until towards midnight, when, after a hard and uninterrupted march of 16 hours, our wild mules began running ahead; and in a mile or two we came to a bold running stream—so keen is the sense of that animal, in these desert regions, in scenting at a distance this necessary of life.

According to the information we had received, Sevier river was a tributary of the Colorado; and this, accordingly, should have been one of its affluents. It proved to be the *Rio de los Angeles* (river of the Angels)—a branch of the *Rio Virgen* (river of the Virgin).

May 5.—(In account of our animals, it was necessary to remain to-day at this place. Indians crowded numerously around us in the morning; and we were obliged to keep arms in hand all day, to keep them out of the camp. They began to surround the horses, which, for the convenience of grass, we were guarding a little above, on the river. These were immediately driven in, and kept close to the camp.

In the darkness of the night we had made a very bad encampment, our fires being commanded by a rocky bluff within 50 yards; but, notwithstanding, we had the river and small thickets of willows on the other side. Several times during the day the camp was insulted by the Indians; but, peace being our object, I kept simply on the defensive. Some of the Indians were on the bottoms, and others haranguing us from the bluffs; and they were scattered in every direction over the hills. Their language being probably a dialect of the *Utah*, with the aid of signs some of our people could comprehend them very well. They were the same people who had murdered the Mexicans; and towards us their disposition was evidently hostile, nor were we well disposed towards them. They were barefooted, and nearly naked; their hair gathered up into a knot behind; and with his bow, each man carried a quiver with thirty or forty arrows partially drawn out. Besides these, each held in his hand two or three arrows for instant service. Their arrows are barbed with a very clear translucent stone, a species of opal, nearly as hard as the diamond; and, shot from their long bow, are almost as effective as a gunshot. In these Indians, I was forcibly struck by an expression of countenance resembling that in a beast of prey; and all their actions are those of wild animals. Joined to the restless motion of the eye, there is a want of mind—an

absence of thought—and an action wholly by impulse, strongly expressed, and which constantly recalls the similarity.

A man who appeared to be a chief, with two or three others, forced himself into camp, bringing with him his arms, in spite of my orders to the contrary. When shown our weapons, he bored his ear with his fingers, and said he could not hear. "Why," said he, "there are none of you." Counting the people around the camp, and including in the number a mule which was being shod, he made out 22. "So many," said he, showing the number, "and we—we are a great many;" and he pointed to the hills and mountains round about. "If you have your arms," said he, twanging his bow, "we have these." I had some difficulty in restraining the people, particularly Carson, who felt an insult of this kind as much as if it had been given by a more responsible being. "Don't say that, old man," said he; "don't you say that—your life's in danger"—speaking in good English; and probably the old man was nearer to his end than he will be before he meets it.

Several animals had been necessarily left behind near the camp last night; and early in the morning, before the Indians made their appearance, several men were sent to bring them in. When I was beginning to be uneasy at their absence, they returned with information that they had been driven off from the trail by Indians; and, having followed the tracks in a short distance, they found the animals cut up and spread out upon bushes. In the evening I gave a fatigued horse to some of the Indians for a feast; and the village which carried him off refused to share with the others, who made loud complaints from the rocks of the partial distribution. Many of these Indians had long sticks, hooked at the end, which they used in hauling out lizards, and other small animals, from their noles. During the day they occasionally roasted and ate lizards at our fires. These belong to the people who are generally known under the name of *Diggers*; and to these I have more particularly had reference when occasionally speaking of a people whose sole occupation is to procure food sufficient to support existence. The formation here consists of fine yellow sandstone, alternating with a coarse conglomerate, in which the stones are from the size of ordinary gravel to six or eight inches in diameter. This is the formation which renders the surface of the country so rocky, and gives us now a road alternately of loose heavy sands and rolled stones, which cripple the animals in a most extraordinary manner.

On the following morning we left the *Rio de los Angeles*, and continued our way through the same desolate and revolting country,

where lizards were the only animal, and the tracks of the lizard eaters the principal sign of human beings. After twenty miles' march through a road of hills and heavy sands, we reached the most dreary river I have ever seen—a deep rapid stream, almost a torrent, passing swiftly by, and roaring against obstructions. The banks were wooded with willow, acacia, and a frequent plant of the country already mentioned (*Garrya elliptica*), growing in thickets, resembling willow, and bearing a small pink flower. Crossing it, we encamped on the left bank, where we found a very little grass. Our three remaining steers, being entirely given out, were killed here. By the boiling point, the elevation of the river here is 4,060 feet; and latitude, by observation, 36° 41' 33". The stream was running towards the southwest, and appeared to come from a snowy mountain in the north. It proved to be the *Rio Virgen*—a tributary to the Colorado. Indians appeared in bands on the hills, but did not come into camp. For several days we continued our journey up the river, the bottoms of which were thickly overgrown with various kinds of brush; and the sandy soil was absolutely covered with the tracks of *Diggers*, who followed us stealthily, like a band of wolves; and we had no opportunity to leave behind, even for a few hours, the tired animals, in order that they might be brought into camp after a little repose. A horse or mule, left behind, was taken off in a moment. On the evening of the 8th, having travelled 28 miles up the river from our first encampment on it, we encamped at a little grass plat, where a spring of cool water issued from the bluff. On the opposite side was a grove of cottonwoods at the mouth of a fork, which here enters the river. On either side the valley is bounded by ranges of mountains, everywhere high, rocky, and broken. The caravan road was lost and scattered in the sandy country, and we had been following an Indian trail up the river. The hunters the next day were sent out to reconnoitre, and in the meantime we moved about a mile farther up, where we found a good little patch of grass. There being only sufficient grass for the night, the horses were sent with a strong guard in charge of Tabeau to a neighboring hollow, where they might pasture during the day; and, to be ready in case the Indians should make any attempt on the animals, several of the best horses were picketed at the camp. In a few hours the hunters returned, having found a convenient ford in the river, and discovered the Spanish trail on the other side.

I had been engaged in arranging plants; and, fatigued with the heat of the day, I fell asleep in the afternoon, and did not awake until sundown. Presently Carson came to

the only animal, and the
 d enters the principal sign
 s. After twenty miles'
 road of hills and heavy
 the most dreary river I
 deep rapid stream, almost
 swiftly by, and roaring
 ons. The banks were
 w, acacia, and a frequent
 country already mentioned
 growing in thickets, re-
 minding bearing a small pink
 it, we encamped on the
 e found a very little grass.
 ing steers, being entirely
 lled here. By the boiling
 of the river here is 4,060
 s, by observation, 36° 41'
 was running towards the
 appeared to come from a
 n the north. It proved to
 —a tributary to the Colo-
 heard in bands on the hills,
 into camp. For several
 our journey up the river,
 ch were thickly overgrown
 of brush; and the sandy
 y covered with the tracks
 followed us stealthily, like
 and we had no opportunity
 ven for a few hours, the
 order that they might be
 p after a little repose. A
 behind, was taken off in a
 evening of the 8th, having
 up the river from our first
 e, we encamped at a little
 a spring of cool water is-
 uff. On the opposite side
 cottonwoods at the mouth of
 enters the river. On ei-
 y is bounded by ranges of
 where high, rocky, and
 ravan road was lost and
 andy country, and we had
 Indian trail up the river.
 next day were sent out to
 n the meantime we moved
 er up, where we found a
 f grass. There being only
 or the night, the horses
 strong guard in charge of
 laboring hollow, where they
 ring the day; and, to be
 Indians should make any
 animals, several of the best
 ed at the camp. In a few
 returned, having found a
 n the river, and discovered
 'he other side.
 aged in arranging plants;
 the heat of the day, I fell
 rnoon, and did not awake
 Presently Carson came to

use, and reported that Tabeau, who early in
 the day had left his post, and, without my
 knowledge, rode back to the camp we had
 left, in search of a lame mule, had not re-
 turned. While we were speaking, a smoke
 rose suddenly from the cottonwood grove be-
 low, which plainly told us what had befallen
 him; it was raised to inform the surround-
 ing Indians that a blow had been struck, and
 to tell them to be on their guard. Carson,
 with several men well mounted, was instantly
 sent down the river, but returned in the night
 without tidings of the missing man. They
 went to the camp we had left, but neither he
 nor the mule was there. Searching down
 the river, they found the tracks of the mule,
 evidently driven along by Indians, whose
 tracks were on each side of those made by
 the animal. After going several miles, they
 came to the mule itself, standing in some
 bushes, mortally wounded in the side by an
 arrow, and left to die, that it might be af-
 terwards butchered for food. They also found,
 in another place, as they were hunting about
 on the ground for Tabeau's tracks, some-
 thing that looked like a little puddle of blood,
 but which the darkness prevented them from
 verifying. With these details they returned
 to our camp, and their report saddened all our
 hearts.

May 10.—This morning as soon as there
 was light enough to follow tracks, I set out
 myself, with Mr. Fitzpatrick and several
 men, in search of Tabeau. We went to
 the spot where the appearance of puddled
 blood had been seen; and this, we saw at
 once, had been the place where he fell and
 died. Blood upon the leaves, and beaten
 down bushes, showed that he had got his
 wound about twenty paces from where he
 fell, and that he had struggled for his life.
 He had probably been shot through the
 lungs with an arrow. From the place where
 he lay and bled, it could be seen that he had
 been dragged to the river bank, and thrown
 into it. No vestige of what had belonged to
 him could be found, except a fragment of his
 horse equipment. Horse, gun, clothes—all
 became the prey of these Arabs of the New
 World.

Tabeau had been one of our best men,
 and his unhappy death spread a gloom over
 our party. Men, who have gone through
 such dangers and sufferings as we had seen,
 become like brothers, and feel each other's
 loss. To defend and avenge each other, is
 the deep feeling of all. We wished to
 avenge his death; but the condition of our
 horses, languishing for grass and repose,
 forbade an expedition into unknown moun-
 tains. We knew the tribe who had done
 the mischief—the same which had been in-
 sulting our camp. They knew what they
 deserved, and had the discretion to show

themselves to us no more. The day before,
 they infested our camp; now, not one ap-
 peared; nor did we ever afterwards see but
 one who even belonged to the same tribe,
 and he at a distance.

Our camp was in a basin below a deep
 cañon—a gap of two thousand feet deep in
 the mountain—through which the *Rio Virgen*
 passes, and where no man or beast could
 follow it. The Spanish trail, which we had
 lost in the sands of the basin, was on the
 opposite side of the river. We crossed over
 to it, and followed it northwardly towards a
 gap which was visible in the mountain. We
 approached it by a defile, rendered difficult
 for our barefooted animals by the rocks
 strewn along it; and here the country
 changed its character. From the time we
 entered the desert, the mountains had been
 bald and rocky; here they began to be wood-
 ed with cedar and pine, and clusters of trees
 gave shelter to birds—a new and welcome
 sight—which could not have lived in the
 desert we had passed.

Descending a long hollow, towards the
 narrow valley of a stream, we saw before us
 a snowy mountain, far beyond which ap-
 peared another more lofty still. Good bunch
 grass began to appear on the hill sides, and
 here we found a singular variety of inter-
 esting shrubs. The changed appearance of
 the country infused among our people a
 more lively spirit, which was heightened
 by finding at evening a halting place of very
 good grass on the clear waters of the *Santa
 Clara* fork of the *Rio Virgen*.

May 11.—The morning was cloudy and
 quite cool, with a shower of rain—the first
 we have had since entering the desert, a pe-
 riod of twenty-seven days; and we seem to
 have entered a different climate, with the
 usual weather of the Rocky mountains.
 Our march to-day was very laborious, over
 very broken ground, along the *Santa Clara*
 river; but then the country is no longer so
 distressingly desolate. The stream is pret-
 tily wooded with sweet cottonwood trees—
 some of them of large size; and on the hills,
 where the nut pine is often seen, a good and
 wholesome grass occurs frequently. This
 cottonwood, which is now in fruit, is of a
 different species from any in Michaux's *Sylva*.
 Heavy dark clouds covered the sky in the
 evening, and a cold wind sprang up, making
 fires and overcoats comfortable.

May 12.—A little above our encampment,
 the river forked; and we continued up the
 right-hand branch, gradually ascending to-
 wards the summit of the mountain. As we
 rose towards the head of the creek, the
 snowy mountain on our right showed out
 handsomely—high and rugged with preci-
 pices, and covered with snow for about two
 thousand feet from their summits down.

Our animals were somewhat repaid for their hard marches by an excellent camping ground on the summit of the ridge, which forms here the dividing chain between the waters of the *Río Virgen*, which goes south to the Colorado, and those of Sevier river, flowing northwardly, and belonging to the Great Basin. We considered ourselves as crossing the rim of the basin; and, entering it at this point, we found here an extensive mountain meadow, rich in bunch grass, and fresh with numerous springs of clear water, all refreshing and delightful to look upon. It was, in fact, that *las Vegas de Santa Clara*, which had been so long presented to us as the terminating point of the desert, and where the annual caravan from California to New Mexico halted and recruited for some weeks. It was a very suitable place to recover from the fatigue and exhaustion of a month's suffering in the hot and sterile desert. The meadow was about a mile wide, and some ten miles long, bordered by grassy hills and mountains—some of the latter rising two thousand feet, and white with snow down to the level of the *vegas*. Its elevation above the sea was 5,280 feet; latitude, by observation, $37^{\circ} 28' 28''$; and its distance from where we first struck the Spanish trail about four hundred miles. Counting from the time we reached the desert, and began to skirt, at our descent from Walker's Pass in the Sierra Nevada, we had travelled 550 miles, occupying twenty-seven days, in that inhospitable region. In passing before the great caravan, we had the advantage of finding more grass, but the disadvantage of finding also the marauding savages, who had gathered down upon the trail, waiting the approach of that prey. This greatly increased our labors, besides costing us the life of an excellent man. We had to move all day in a state of watch, and prepared for combat—scouts and flankers out, a front and rear division of our men, and baggage animals in the centre. At night, camp duty was severe. Those who had toiled all day, had to guard, by turns, the camp and the horses, all night. Frequently one third of the whole party were on guard at once; and nothing but this vigilance saved us from attack. We were constantly dogged by bands, and even whole tribes of the marauders; and although Tabeau was killed, and our camp infested and insulted by none, while swarms of them remained on the hills and mountain sides, there was manifestly a consultation and calculation going on, to decide the question of attacking us. Having reached the resting place of the *Vegas de Santa Clara*, we had complete relief from the heat and privations of the desert, and some relaxation from the severity of camp duty. Some relaxation,

and relaxation only—for camp guards, horse guards, and scouts, are indispensable from the time of leaving the frontiers of Missouri until we return to them.

After we left the *Vegas*, we had the gratification to be joined by the famous hunter and trapper, Mr. Joseph Walker, whom I have before mentioned, and who now became our guide. He had left California with the great caravan; and perceiving, from the signs along the trail, that there was a party of whites ahead, which he judged to be mine, he detached himself from the caravan, with eight men, (Americans,) and ran the gauntlet of the desert robbers, killing two, and getting some of the horses wounded, and succeeded in overtaking us. Nothing but his great knowledge of the country, great courage and presence of mind, and good rifles, could have brought him safe from such a perilous enterprise.

May 13.—We remained one day at this noted place of rest and refreshment; and, resuming our progress in a northeasterly direction, we descended into a broad valley, the water of which is tributary to Sevier lake. The next day we came in sight of the Wah-satch range of mountains on the right, white with snow, and here forming the southeast part of the Great Basin. Sevier lake, upon the waters of which we now were, belonged to the system of lakes in the eastern part of the Basin—of which, the Great Salt lake, and its southern limb, the Utah lake, were the principal—towards the region of which we were now approaching. We travelled for several days in this direction, within the rim of the Great Basin, crossing little streams which bore to the left for Sevier lake; and plainly seeing, by the changed aspect of the country, that we were entirely clear of the desert, and approaching the regions which appertained to the system of the Rocky mountains. We met, in this traverse, a few mounted Utah Indians, in advance of their main body, watching the approach of the great caravan.

May 16.—We reached a small salt lake, about seven miles long and one broad, at the northern extremity of which we encamped for the night. This little lake, which well merits its characteristic name, lies immediately at the base of the Wah-satch range, and nearly opposite a gap in that chain of mountains through which the Spanish trail passes; and which, again falling upon the waters of the Colorado, and crossing that river, proceeds over a mountainous country to Santa Fé.

May 17.—After 440 miles of travelling on a trail, which served for a road, we again found ourselves under the necessity of exploring a track through the wilderness. The Spanish trail had borne off to the

—for camp guards, horse
men, are indispensable from
the frontiers of Missouri
them.

At *Las Vegas*, we had the grati-
fied by the famous hunter
Joseph Walker, whom I
mentioned, and who now be-

He had left California
caravan; and perceiving,
along the trail, that there
whites ahead, which he
saw, he detached himself
with eight men, (Ameri-
the gauntlet of the desert
to, and getting some of the
and succeeded in overta-
king but his great knowl-
edge and presence
with rifles, could have brought
about a perilous enterprise.

It remained one day at this
place for rest and refreshment; and
then we pressed on in a northeasterly
direction into a broad valley,
which is tributary to Sevier

one day we came in sight of
a range of mountains on the
east, and here forming
part of the Great Basin.

In the waters of which we
travelling to the system of lakes
of the Basin—of which,
the lake, and its southern limb,
are the principal—towards
which we were now approach-

ed for several days in this
direction the rim of the Great Basin,
the same which bore to the left
and plainly seeing, by the
direction of the country, that we were
in the desert, and approaching
the mountains.

We met, in
the main body, watching the
great caravan.

We reached a small salt lake,
long and one broad, at the
foot of which we encamped
near this little lake, which well
characteristic name, lies imme-
diately of the Wah-satch range,
and a gap in that chain of
mountains which the Spanish trail
crosses, again falling upon the
Colorado, and crossing that
river a mountainous country

for 440 miles of travelling
we served for a road, we again
under the necessity of ex-
ploring through the wilderness.

It had borne off to the

southeast, crossing the Wah-satch range.
Our course led to the northeast, along the
foot of that range, and leaving it on the
right. The mountain presented itself to us
under the form of several ridges, rising one
above the other, rocky, and wooded with
pine and cedar; the last ridge covered with
snow. Sevier river, flowing northwardly to
the lake of the same name, collects its prin-
cipal waters from this section of the Wah-
satch chain. We had now entered a region
of great pastoral promise, abounding with
fine streams, the rich bunch grass, soil that
would produce wheat, and indigenous flax
growing as if it had been sown. Consistent
with the general character of its bordering
mountains, this fertility of soil and vegeta-
tion does not extend far into the Great
Basin. Mr. Joseph Walker, our guide, and
who has more knowledge of these parts than
any man I know, informed me that all the
country to the left was unknown to him,
and that even the *Digger* tribes, which fre-
quented Lake Sevier, could tell him nothing
about it.

May 20.—We met a band of Utah In-
dians, headed by a well-known chief, who
had obtained the American or English
name of Walker, by which he is quoted
and well known. They were all mounted,
armed with rifles, and use their rifles well.
The chief had a fusée, which he had carried
slung, in addition to his rifle. They were
journeying slowly towards the Spanish trail,
to levy their usual tribute upon the great
Californian caravan. They were robbers
of a higher order than those of the desert.
They conducted their depredations with
form, and under the color of trade and toll
for passing through their country. Instead
of attacking and killing, they affect to pur-
chase—taking the horses they like, and giv-
ing something nominal in return. The
chief was quite civil to me. He was per-
sonally acquainted with his namesake, our
guide, who made my name known to him.
He knew of my expedition of 1842; and,
as tokens of friendship, and proof that we
had met, proposed an interchange of pres-
ents. We had no great store to choose out
of; so he gave me a Mexican blanket, and
I gave him a very fine one which I had ob-
tained at Vancouver.

May 23.—We reached Sevier river—the
main tributary of the lake of the same name
—which, deflecting from its northern course,
here breaks from the mountains to enter the
lake. It was really a fine river, from eight
to twelve feet deep; and, after searching in
vain for a fordable place, we made little
boats (or, rather, rafts) out of bulrushes,
and ferried across. These rafts are readily
made, and give a good conveyance across a
river. The rushes are bound in bundles,

and tied hard; the bundles are tied down
upon poles, as close as they can be pressed,
and fashioned like a boat, in being broader
in the middle and pointed at the ends. The
rushes, being tubular and jointed, are light
and strong. The raft swims well, and is
shoved along by poles, or paddled, or pushed
and pulled by swimmers, or drawn by ropes.

On this occasion, we used ropes—one at
each end—and rapidly drew our little boat
backwards and forwards, from shore to
shore. The horses swam. At our place
of crossing, which was the most northern
point of its bend, the latitude was 39° 22'
19". The banks sustained the character
for fertility and vegetation which we had
seen for some days. The name of this
river and lake was an indication of our ap-
proach to regions of which our people had
been the explorers. It was probably named
after some American trapper or hunter, and
was the first American name we had met
with since leaving the Columbia river.
From the *Dalles* to the point where we
turned across the Sierra Nevada, near 1,000
miles, we heard Indian names, and the
greater part of the distance none; from
Nueva Helvetia (Sacramento) to *las Vegas*
de Santa Clara, about 1,000 more, all were
Spanish; from the Mississippi to the Pa-
cific, French and American or English
were intermixed; and this prevalence of
names indicates the national character of
the first explorers.

We had here the misfortune to lose one of
our people, François Badeau, who had been
with me in both expeditions; during which
he had always been one of my most faithful
and efficient men. He was killed in drawing
towards him a gun by the muzzle; the ham-
mer being caught, discharged the gun, driv-
ing the ball through his head. We buried
him on the banks of the river.

Crossing the next day a slight ridge along
the river, we entered a handsome mountain
valley covered with fine grass, and directed
our course towards a high snowy peak, at
the foot of which lay the Utah lake. On
our right was a bed of high mountains, their
summits covered with snow, constituting the
dividing ridge between the Basin waters
and those of the Colorado. At noon we fell
in with a party of Utah Indians coming out
of the mountain, and in the afternoon en-
camped on a tributary to the lake, which is
separated from the waters of the Sevier by
very slight dividing grounds.

Early the next day we came in sight of
the lake; and, as we descended to the
broad bottoms of the Spanish fork, three
horsemen were seen galloping towards us,
who proved to be Utah Indians—scouts
from a village, which was encamped near
the mouth of the river. They were armed

with rifles, and their horses were in good condition. We encamped near them, on the Spanish fork, which is one of the principal tributaries to the lake. Finding the Indians troublesome, and desirous to remain here a day, we removed the next morning farther down the lake, and encamped on a fertile bottom near the foot of the same mountainous ridge which borders the Great Salt lake, and along which we had journeyed the previous September. Here the principal plants in bloom were two, which were remarkable as affording to the Snake Indians—the one an abundant supply of food, and the other the most useful among the applications which they use for wounds. These were the kooyah plant, growing in fields of extraordinary luxuriance, and *convallaria stellata*, which, from the experience of Mr. Walker, is the best remedial plant known among those Indians. A few miles below as was another village of Indians, from which we obtained some fish—among them a few salmon trout, which were very much inferior in size to those along the Californian mountains. The season for taking them had not yet arrived; but the Indians were daily expecting them to come up out of the lake.

We had now accomplished an object we had in view when leaving the Dalles of the Columbia in November last: we had reached the Utah lake; but by a route very different from what we had intended, and without sufficient time remaining to make the examinations which were desired. It is a lake of note in this country, under the dominion of the Utahs, who resort to it for fish. Its greatest breadth is about 15 miles, stretching far to the north, narrowing as it goes, and connecting with the Great Salt lake. This is the report, and which I believe to be correct; but it is fresh water, while the other is not only salt, but a saturated solution of salt; and here is a problem which requires to be solved. It is almost entirely surrounded by mountains, walled on the north and east by a high and snowy range, which supplies to it a fan of tributary streams. Among these, the principal river is the *Timpan-ogo*—signifying Rock river—a name which the rocky grandeur of its scenery, remarkable even in this country of rugged mountains, has obtained for it from the Indians. In the Utah language, *og-wáh-be*, the term for river, when coupled with other words in common conversation, is usually abbreviated to *ogo*; *timpan* signifying rock. It is probable that this river furnished the name which on the older maps has been generally applied to the Great Salt lake; but for this I have preferred a name which will be regarded as highly characteristic, restricting to the river the

descriptive term *Timpan-ogo*, and leaving for the lake into which it flows the name of the people who reside on its shores, and by which it is known throughout the country.

The volume of water afforded by the *Timpan-ogo* is probably equal to that of the *Sevier* river; and, at the time of our visit, there was only one place in the lake valley at which the Spanish fork was fordable. In the cove of mountains along its eastern shore, the lake is bordered by a plain, where the soil is generally good, and in greater part fertile; watered by a delta of prettily timbered streams. This would be an excellent locality for stock farms; it is generally covered with good bunch grass, and would abundantly produce the ordinary grains.

In arriving at the Utah lake, we had completed an immense circuit of twelve degrees diameter north and south, and ten degrees east and west; and found ourselves, in May, 1844, on the same sheet of water which we had left in September, 1843. The Utah is the southern limb of the Great Salt lake; and thus we had seen that remarkable sheet of water both at its northern and southern extremity, and were able to fix its position at these two points. The circuit which we had made, and which had cost us eight months of time, and 3,500 miles of travelling, had given us a view of Oregon and of North California from the Rocky mountains to the Pacific ocean, and of the two principal streams which form bays or harbors on the coast of that sea. Having completed this circuit, and being now about to turn the back upon the Pacific slope of our continent, and to recross the Rocky mountains, it is natural to look back upon our footsteps, and take some brief view of the leading features and general structure of the country we had traversed. These are peculiar and striking, and differ essentially from the Atlantic side of our country. The mountains all are higher, more numerous, and more distinctly defined in their ranges and directions; and, what is so contrary to the natural order of such formations, one of these ranges, which is near the coast, (the Sierra Nevada and the Coast Range,) presents higher elevations and peaks than any which are to be found in the Rocky mountains themselves. In our eight months' circuit, we were never out of sight of snow; and the Sierra Nevada, where we crossed it, was near 2,000 feet higher than the South Pass in the Rocky mountains. In height, these mountains greatly exceed those of the Atlantic side, constantly presenting peaks which enter the region of eternal snow; and some of them volcanic, and in a frequent state of activity. They are seen at

Timpanogo, and leaving which it flows the name of side on its shores, and by throughout the country. water afforded by the probably equal to that of the at the time of our visit, place in the lake valley fish fork was fordable. It remains along its eastern ordered by a plain, where ally good, and in greater ed by a delta of prettily This would be an ex-stock farms; it is gener-good bunch grass, and produce the ordinary

the Utah lake, we had com-circuit of twelve degrees south, and ten degrees found ourselves, in May, sheet of water which we ber, 1843. The Utah is of the Great Salt lake; en that remarkable sheet s northern and southern re able to fix its position. The circuit which we which had cost us eight d 3,500 miles of travel-a view of Oregon and of om the Rocky mountains, n, and of the two princi-form bays or harbors on sea. Having completed eing now about to turn Pacific slope of our con-sa the Rocky mountains, k back upon our footsteps, ief view of the leading al structure of the coun- d. These are peculiar and essentially from the At- country. The mountains re numerous, and more t their ranges and direc- so contrary to the natu- formations, one of these ar the coast, (the Sierra Coast Range,) presents nd peaks than any which n the Rocky mountains r eight months' circuit, t of sight of snow; and a, where we crossed it, t higher than the South mountains. In height, ealy exceed those of the ntly presenting peaks egion of eternal snow; volcanic, and in a fre- ity. They are seen at

great distances, and guide the traveller in his courses.

The course and elevation of these ranges give direction to the rivers and character to the coast. No great river does, or can, take its rise below the Cascade and Sierra Nevada range; the distance to the sea is too short to admit of it. The rivers of the San Francisco bay, which are the largest after the Columbia, are local to that bay, and lateral to the coast, having their sources about on a line with the Dalles of the Columbia, and running each in a valley of its own, between Coast range and the Cascade and Sierra Nevada range. The Columbia is the only river which traverses the whole breadth of the country, breaking through all the ranges, and entering the sea. Drawing its waters from a section of ten degrees of latitude in the Rocky mountains, which are collected into one stream by three main forks (Lewis's, Clark's, and the North fork) near the centre of the Oregon valley, this great river thence proceeds by a single channel to the sea, while its three forks lead each to a pass in the mountains, which opens the way into the interior of the continent. This fact in relation to the rivers of this region gives an immense value to the Columbia. Its mouth is the only inlet and outlet to and from the sea; its three forks lead to the passes in the mountains; it is therefore the only line of communication between the Pacific and the interior of North America; and all operations of war or commerce, of national or social intercourse, must be conducted upon it. This gives it a value beyond estimation, and would involve irreparable injury if lost. In this unity and concentration of its waters, the Pacific side of our continent differs entirely from the Atlantic side, where the waters of the Alleghany mountains are dispersed into many rivers, having their different entrances into the sea, and opening many lines of communication with the interior.

The Pacific coast is equally different from that of the Atlantic. The coast of the Atlantic is low and open, indented with numerous bays, sounds, and river estuaries, accessible everywhere, and opening by many channels into the heart of the country. The Pacific coast, on the contrary, is high and compact, with few bays, and but one that opens into the heart of the country. The immediate coast is what the seamen call *iron bound*. A little within, it is skirted by two successive ranges of mountains, standing as ramparts between the sea and the interior country; and to get through which, there is but one gate, and that narrow and easily defended. This structure of the coast, backed by these two ranges of

mountains, with its concentration and unity of waters, gives to the country an immense military strength, and will probably render Oregon the most impregnable country in the world.

Differing so much from the Atlantic side of our continent, in coast, mountains, and rivers, the Pacific side differs from it in another most rare and singular feature—that of the Great interior Basin, of which I have so often spoken, and the whole form and character of which I was so anxious to ascertain. Its existence is vouched for by such of the American traders and hunters as have some knowledge of that region; the structure of the Sierra Nevada range of mountains requires it to be there; and my own observations confirm it. Mr. Joseph Walker, who is so well acquainted in those parts, informed me that, from the Great Salt lake west, there was a succession of lakes and rivers which have no outlet to the sea, nor any connection with the Columbia, or with the Colorado of the Gulf of California. He described some of these lakes as being large, with numerous streams, and even considerable rivers, falling into them. In fact, all concur in the general report of these interior rivers and lakes; and, for want of understanding the force and power of evaporation, which so soon establishes an equilibrium between the loss and supply of waters, the fable of whirlpools and subterraneous outlets has gained belief, as the only imaginable way of carrying off the waters which have no visible discharge. The structure of the country would require this formation of interior lakes; for the waters which would collect between the Rocky mountains and the Sierra Nevada, not being able to cross this formidable barrier, nor to get to the Columbia or the Colorado, must naturally collect into reservoirs, each of which would have its little system of streams and rivers to supply it. This would be the natural effect; and what I saw went to confirm it. The Great Salt lake is a formation of this kind, and quite a large one; and having many streams, and one considerable river, four or five hundred miles long, falling into it. This lake and river I saw and examined myself; and also saw the Wah-satch and Bear River mountains which enclose the waters of the lake on the east, and constitute, in that quarter, the rim of the Great Basin. Afterwards, along the eastern base of the Sierra Nevada, where we travelled for forty-two days, I saw the line of lakes and rivers which lie at the foot of that Sierra; and which Sierra is the western rim of the Basin. In going down Lewis's fork and the main Columbia, I crossed only inferior streams coming in

from the left, such as could draw their water from a short distance only; and I often saw the mountains at their heads, white with snow; which, all accounts said, divided the waters of the *desert* from those of the Columbia, and which could be no other than the range of mountains which form the rim of the Basin on its northern side. And in returning from California along the Spanish trail, as far as the head of the Santa Clara fork of the Rio Virgen, I crossed only small streams making their way south to the Colorado, or lost in sand—as the Mo-hah-ve; while to the left, lofty mountains, their summits white with snow, were often visible, and which must have turned water to the north as well as to the south, and thus constituted, on this part, the southern rim of the Basin. At the head of the Santa Clara fork, and in the Vegas de Santa Clara, we crossed the ridge which parted the two systems of waters. We entered the Basin at that point, and have travelled in it ever since, having its southeastern rim (the Wah-satch mountain) on the right, and crossing the streams which flow down into it. The existence of the Basin is therefore an established fact in my mind; its extent and contents are yet to be better ascertained. It cannot be less than four or five hundred miles each way, and must lie principally in the Alta California; the demarcation latitude of 42° probably cutting a segment from the north part of the rim. Of its interior, but little is known. It is called a *desert*, and, from what I saw of it, sterility may be its prominent characteristic; but where there is so much water, there must be some *oasis*. The great river, and the great lake, reported, may not be equal to the report; but where there is so much snow, there must be streams; and where there is no outlet, there must be lakes to hold the accumulated waters, or sands to swallow them up. In this eastern part of the Basin, containing Sevier, Utah, and the Great Salt lakes, and the rivers and creeks falling into them, we know there is good soil and good grass, adapted to civilized settlements. In the western part, on Salmon Trout river, and some other streams, the same remark may be made.

The contents of this Great Basin are yet to be examined. That it is peopled, we know; but miserably and sparsely. From all that I heard and saw, I should say that humanity here appeared in its lowest form, and in its most elementary state. Dispersed in single families; without fire-arms; eating seeds and insects; digging roots, (and hence their name,)—such is the condition of the greater part. Others are a degree higher, and live in communities

upon some lake or river that supplies fish, and from which they repulse the miserable *Digger*. The rabbit is the largest animal known in this desert; its flesh affords a little meat; and their bag-like covering is made of its skins. The wild sage is their only wood, and here it is of extraordinary size—sometimes a foot in diameter, and six or eight feet high. It serves for fuel, for building material, for shelter to the rabbits, and for some sort of covering for the feet and legs in cold weather. Such are the accounts of the inhabitants and productions of the Great Basin; and which, though imperfect, must have some foundation, and excite our desire to know the whole.

The whole idea of such a desert, and such a people, is a novelty in our country, and excites Asiatic, not American ideas. Interior basins, with their own systems of lakes and rivers, and often sterile, are common enough in Asia; people still in the elementary state of families, living in deserts, with no other occupation than the mere animal search for food, may still be seen in that ancient quarter of the globe; but in America such things are new and strange, unknown and unsuspected, and discredited when related. But I flatter myself that what is discovered, though not enough to satisfy curiosity, is sufficient to excite it, and that subsequent explorations will complete what has been commenced.

This account of the Great Basin, it will be remembered, belongs to the Alta California, and has no application to Oregon, whose capabilities may justify a separate remark. Referring to my journal for particular descriptions, and for sectional boundaries between good and bad districts, I can only say, in general and comparative terms, that, in that branch of agriculture which implies the cultivation of grains and staple crops, it would be inferior to the Atlantic States, though many parts are superior for wheat; while in the rearing of flocks and herds it would claim a high place. Its grazing capabilities are great; and even in the indigenous grass now there, an element of individual and national wealth may be found. In fact, the valuable grasses begin within one hundred and fifty miles of the Missouri frontier, and extend to the Pacific ocean. East of the Rocky mountains, it is the short curly grass, on which the buffalo delight to feed, (whence its name of buffalo,) and which is still good when dry and apparently dead. West of those mountains it is a larger growth, in clusters, and hence called bunch grass, and which has a second or fall growth. Plains and mountains both exhibit them; and I have seen good pasturage at an elevation of ten thousand feet. In this

river that supplies fish, they repulse the miserable bit is the largest animal; its flesh affords a bag-like covering in

The wild sage is there it is of extraordinary a foot in diameter, feet high. It serves for material, for shelter for the same sort of covering for in cold weather. Such of the inhabitants and present Basin; and which, must have some foundation to know the

of such a desert, and such only in our country, and American ideas. Into their own systems of lakes, sterile, are common people still in the elements, living in deserts, with than the mere animal may still be seen in that the globe; but in America new and strange, unexpected, and discredited but I flatter myself that, though not enough to sufficient to excite it, and explorations will complete

the Great Basin, it will belongs to the Alta California application to Oregon, may justify a separate to my journal for part, and for sectional bound and bad districts, I can and comparative terms, of agriculture which importation of grains and staple inferior to the Atlantic parts are superior for the rearing of flocks and gain a high place. Its are great; and even in now there, an element national wealth may be valuable grasses begin and fifty miles of the and extend to the Pacific Rocky mountains, it is, on which the buffalo hence its name of buffalo,) good when dry and appearance of those mountains it is hunters, and hence called which has a second or fall mountains both exhibit a good pasturage at an thousand feet. In this

spontaneous product the trading or travelling caravans can find subsistence for their animals; and in military operations any number of cavalry may be moved, and any number of cattle may be driven; and thus men and horses be supported on long expeditions, and even in winter, in the sheltered situations.

Commercially, the value of the Oregon country must be great, washed as it is by the north Pacific ocean—fronting Asia—producing many of the elements of commerce—mild and healthy in its climate—and becoming, as it naturally will, a thoroughfare for the East India and China trade.

Turning our faces once more eastward, on the morning of the 27th we left the Utah lake, and continued for two days to ascend the Spanish fork, which is dispersed in numerous branches among very rugged mountains, which afford few passes, and render a familiar acquaintance with them necessary to the traveller. The stream can scarcely be said to have a valley, the mountains rising often abruptly from the water's edge; but a good trail facilitated our travelling, and there were frequent bottoms, covered with excellent grass. The streams are prettily and variously wooded; and everywhere the mountain shows grass and timber.

At our encampment on the evening of the 28th, near the head of one of the branches we had ascended, strata of bituminous limestone were displayed in an escarpment on the river bluffs, in which were contained a variety of fossil shells of new species.

It will be remembered, that in crossing this ridge about 120 miles to the northward in August last, strata of fossiliferous rock were discovered, which have been referred to the oolitic period; it is probable that these rocks also belong to the same formation.

A few miles from this encampment we reached the bed of the stream; and crossing, by an open and easy pass, the dividing ridge which separates the waters of the Great Basin from those of the Colorado, we reached the head branches of one of its larger tributaries, which, from the decided color of its waters, has received the name of White river. The snows of the mountains were now beginning to melt, and all the little rivulets were running by in rivers, and rapidly becoming difficult to ford. Continuing a few miles up a branch of White river, we crossed a dividing ridge between its waters and those of the Uintah. The approach to the pass, which is the best known to Mr. Walker, was somewhat difficult for packs, and impracticable for wagons—all the streams being shut in by nar-

row ravines, and the narrow trail along the steep hill sides allowing the passage of only one animal at a time. From the summit we had a fine view of the snowy Bear River range; and there were still remaining beds of snow on the cold sides of the hills near the pass. We descended by a narrow ravine, in which was rapidly gathered a little branch of the Uintah, and halted at noon about 1,500 feet below the pass, at an elevation, by the boiling point, of 6,000 feet above the sea.

The next day we descended along the river, and about noon reached a point where three forks come together. Forging one of these with some difficulty, we continued up the middle branch, which, from the color of its waters, is named the Red river. The few passes, and extremely rugged nature of the country, give to it great strength, and secure the Utahs from the intrusion of their enemies. Crossing in the afternoon a somewhat broken highland, covered in places with fine grasses, and with cedar on the hill sides, we encamped at evening on another tributary to the Uintah, called the Duchesne fork. The water was very clear, the stream not being yet swollen by the melting snows; and we forded it without any difficulty. It is a considerable branch, being spread out by islands, the largest arm being about a hundred feet wide; and the name it bears is probably that of some old French trapper.

The next day we continued down the river, which we were twice obliged to cross; and, the water having risen during the night, it was almost everywhere too deep to be forded. After travelling about sixteen miles, we encamped again on the left bank.

I obtained here an occultation of δ Scorpii at the dark limb of the moon, which gives for the longitude of the place $112^{\circ} 18' 30''$, and the latitude $40^{\circ} 18' 53''$.

June 1.—We left to-day the Duchesne fork, and, after traversing a broken country for about sixteen miles, arrived at noon at another considerable branch, a river of great velocity, to which the trappers have improperly given the name of Lake fork. The name applied to it by the Indians signifies great swiftness, and is the same which they use to express the speed of a racehorse. It is spread out in various channels over several hundred yards, and is everywhere too deep and swift to be forded. At this season of the year, there is an uninterrupted noise from the large rocks which are rolled along the bed. After infinite difficulty, and the delay of a day, we succeeded in getting the stream bridged, and got over with the loss of one of our animals. Continuing our route across a broken country, of which the higher parts were rocky and timbered with

cedar, and the lower parts covered with good grass, we reached, on the afternoon of the 3d, the Uintah fort, a trading post belonging to Mr. A. Roubideau, on the principal fork of the Uintah river. We found the stream nearly as rapid and difficult as the Lake fork, divided into several channels, which were too broad to be bridged. With the aid of guides from the fort, we succeeded, with very great difficulty, in fording it; and encamped near the fort, which is situated a short distance above the junction of two branches which make the river.

By an immersion of the 1st satellite, (agreeing well with the result of the occultation observed at the Duchesne fork,) the longitude of the post is $109^{\circ} 50' 42''$, the latitude $40^{\circ} 27' 45''$.

It has a motley garrison of Canadian and Spanish *engagés* and hunters, with the usual number of Indian women. We obtained a small supply of sugar and coffee, with some dried meat and a cow, which was a very acceptable change from the *pinoli* on which we had subsisted for some weeks past. I strengthened my party at this place by the addition of Auguste Archangeau, an excellent voyageur and hunter, belonging to the class of Carson and Godey.

On the morning of the 5th we left the fort* and the Uintah river, and continued our road over a broken country, which afforded, however, a rich addition to our botanical collection; and, after a march of 25 miles, were again checked by another stream, called Ashley's fork, where we were detained until noon of the next day.

An immersion of the 2d satellite gave for this place a longitude of $109^{\circ} 27' 07''$, the latitude by observation being $40^{\circ} 28' 07''$.

In the afternoon of the next day we succeeded in finding a ford; and, after traveling fifteen miles, encamped high up on the mountain side, where we found excellent and abundant grass, which we had not hitherto seen. A new species of *elymus*, which had a purgative and weakening effect upon the animals, had occurred abundantly since leaving the fort. From this point, by observation 7,300 feet above the sea, we had a view of the Colorado below, shut up amongst rugged mountains, and which is the recipient of all the streams we had been crossing since we passed the rim of the Great Basin at the head of the Spanish fork.

On the 7th we had a pleasant but long

* This fort was attacked and taken by a band of the Utah Indians since we passed it; and the men of the garrison killed, the women carried off. Mr. Roubideau, a trader of St. Louis, was absent, and so escaped the fate of the rest.

day's journey, through beautiful little valleys and a high mountain country, arriving about evening at the verge of a steep and rocky ravine, by which we descended to "Brown's hole." This is a place well known to trappers in the country, where the cañons through which the Colorado runs expand into a narrow but pretty valley, about sixteen miles in length. The river was several hundred yards in breadth, swollen to the top of its banks, near to which it was in many places fifteen to twenty feet deep. We repaired a skin boat which had been purchased at the fort, and, after a delay of a day, reached the opposite banks with much less delay than had been encountered on the Uintah waters. According to information, the lower end of the valley is the most eastern part of the Colorado; and the latitude of our encampment, which was opposite to the remains of an old fort on the left bank of the river, was $40^{\circ} 48' 07''$, and, by observation, the elevation above the sea 5,150 feet. The bearing to the entrance of the cañon below was south 20° east. Here the river enters between lofty precipices of red rock, and the country below is said to assume a very rugged character; the river and its affluents passing through cañons which forbid all access to the water. This sheltered little valley was formerly a favorite wintering ground for the trappers, as it afforded them sufficient pasturage for their animals, and the surrounding mountains are well stocked with game.

We surprised a flock of mountain sheep as we descended to the river, and our hunters killed several. The bottoms of a small stream called the Vermilion creek, which enters the left bank of the river a short distance below our encampment, were covered abundantly with *F. vermicularis*, and other chenopodiaceous shrubs. From the lower end of Brown's hole we issued by a remarkably dry cañon, fifty or sixty yards wide, and rising, as we advanced, to the height of six or eight hundred feet. Issuing from this, and crossing a small green valley, we entered another rent of the same nature, still narrower than the other, the rocks on either side rising in nearly vertical precipices perhaps 1,500 feet in height. These places are mentioned, to give some idea of the country lower down on the Colorado to which the trappers usually apply the name of a cañon country. The cañon opened upon a pond of water, where we halted to noon. Several flocks of mountain sheep were here among the rocks, which rung with volleys of small arms. In the afternoon we entered upon an ugly, barren, and broken country, corresponding well with that we had traversed a few degrees north, on the same side of the Colorado. The

ough beautiful little val-
mountain country, arriving
the verge of a steep and
which we descended to
This is a place well
in the country, where the
ich the Colorado runs ex-
y but pretty valley, about
length. The river was
rds in breadth, swollen
nks, near to which it was
een to twenty feet deep.
n boat which had been
rt, and, after a delay of a
pposite banks with much
een encountered on the
ording to information,
the valley is the most
Colorado; and the lati-
tment, which was oppo-
of an old fort on the left
was 40° 46' 27", and, by
levation above the sea
bearing to the entrance
w was south 20° east.
ers between lofty preci-
and the country below is
very rugged character;
ffluents passing through
d all access to the water.
le valley was formerly a
ground for the trappers,
n sufficient pasturage for
the surrounding moun-
ked with game.
lock of mountain sheep as
no river, and our hunters
the bottoms of a small
Vermilion creek, which
t of the river a short dis-
campment, were covered
a *vermicularis*, and other
shrubs. From the lower
e we issued by a remark-
ly or sixty yards wide,
advanced, to the height
dred feet. Issuing from
a small green valley, we
ent of the same nature,
n the other, the rocks on
n nearly vertical precipi-
feet in height. These
ed, to give some idea of
down on the Colorado
opers usually apply the
country. The cañon
nd of water, where we
several flocks of mountain
among the rocks, which
of small arms. In the
ed upon an ugly, barren,
corresponding well with
ed a few degrees north,
of the Colorado. The

Vermilion creek afforded us brackish water and indifferent grass for the night.

A few scattered cedar trees were the only improvement of the country on the following day; and at a little spring of bad water, where we halted to noon, we had not even the shelter of these from the hot rays of the sun. At night we encamped in a fine grove of cotton-wood trees, on the banks of the Elk Head river, the principal fork of the Yampah river, commonly called by the trappers the Hoar river. We made here a very strong *corral* and fort, and formed the camp into vigilant guards. The country we were now entering is constantly infested by war parties of the Sioux and other Indians, and is considered among the most dangerous war grounds in the Rocky mountains; parties of whites having been repeatedly defeated on this river.

On the 11th we continued up the river, which is a considerable stream, fifty to a hundred yards in width, handsomely and continuously wooded with groves of the narrow-leaved cotton-wood, (*populus angustifolia*;) with these were thickets of willow and *grain du bœuf*. The characteristic plant along the river is *F. vermicularis*, which generally covers the bottoms; mingled with this, are saline shrubs and artemisia. The new variety of grass which we had seen on leaving the Uintah mountains had now disappeared. The country on either side was sandy and poor, scantily wooded with cedars, but the river bottoms afforded good pasture. Three antelopes were killed in the afternoon, and we encamped a little below a branch of the river, called St. Vrain's fork. A few miles above was the fort at which Frapp's party had been defeated two years since; and we passed during the day a place where Carson had been fired upon so close that one of the men had five bullets through his body. Leaving this river the next morning, we took our way across the hills, where every hollow had a spring of running water, with good grass.

Yesterday and to-day we have had before our eyes the high mountains which divide the Pacific from the Mississippi waters; and entering here among the lower spurs, or foot hills of the range, the face of the country began to improve with a magical rapidity. Not only the river bottoms, but the hills, were covered with grass; and among the usual varied flora of the mountain region, these were occasionally blue with the showy bloom of a *lupinus*. In the course of the morning we had the first glad view of buffalo, and welcomed the appearance of two old bulls with as much joy as if they had been messengers from home; and when we descended to noon on St. Vrain's

fork, an affluent of Green river, the hunters brought in mountain sheep and the meat of two fat bulls. Fresh entrails in the river showed us that there were Indians above; and, at evening, judging it unsafe to encamp in the bottoms, which were wooded only with willow thickets, we ascended to the spurs above, and fortified strongly in a small aspen grove, near to which was a spring of cold water. The hunters killed two fine cows near the camp. A band of elk broke out of a neighboring grove; antelopes were running over the hills; and on the opposite river plains, herds of buffalo were raising clouds of dust. The country here appeared more variously stocked with game than any part of the Rocky mountains we had visited; and its abundance is owing to the excellent pasturage, and its dangerous character as a war ground.

June 13.—There was snow here near our mountain camp, and the morning was beautiful and cool. Leaving St. Vrain's fork, we took our way directly towards the summit of the dividing ridge. The bottoms of the streams and level places were wooded with aspens; and as we neared the summit, we entered again the piny region. We had a delightful morning's ride, the ground affording us an excellent bridle path, and reached the summit towards midday, at an elevation of 8,000 feet. With joy and exultation we saw ourselves once more on the top of the Rocky mountains, and beheld a little stream taking its course towards the rising sun. It was an affluent of the Platte, called *Pullan's* fork, and we descended to noon upon it. It is a pretty stream, twenty yards broad, and bears the name of a trapper who, some years since, was killed here by the *Gros Ventre* Indians.

Issuing from the pines in the afternoon, we saw spread out before us the valley of the Platte, with the pass of the Medicine Butte beyond, and some of the Sweet Water mountains; but a smoky haziness in the air entirely obscured the Wind River chain.

We were now about two degrees south of the South Pass, and our course home would have been eastwardly; but that would have taken us over ground already examined, and therefore without the interest which would excite curiosity. Southwardly there were objects worthy to be explored, to wit: the approximation of the head waters of three different rivers—the Platte, the Arkansas, and the Grand River fork of the Rio Colorado of the gulf of California; the Passes at the heads of these rivers; and the three remarkable mountain coves, called Parks, in which they took their rise. One of these Parks was, of course, on the western side of the dividing ridge; and a visit to it would require us once more to cross

the summit of the Rocky mountains to the west, and then to recross to the east; making, in all, with the transit we had just accomplished, three crossings of that mountain in this section of its course. But, no matter. The coves, the heads of the rivers, the approximation of their waters, the practicability of the mountain passes, and the locality of the THREE PARKS, were all objects of interest, and, although well known to hunters and trappers, were unknown to science and to history. We therefore changed our course, and turned up the valley of the Platte instead of going down it.

We crossed several small affluents, and again made a fortified camp in a grove. The country had now become very beautiful—rich in water, grass, and game; and to these were added the charm of scenery and pleasant weather.

June 14.—Our route this morning lay along the foot of the mountain, over the long low spurs which sloped gradually down to the river, forming the broad valley of the Platte. The country is beautifully watered. In almost every hollow ran a clear, cool mountain stream; and in the course of the morning we crossed seventeen, several of them being large creeks, forty to fifty feet wide, with a swift current, and tolerably deep. These were variously wooded with groves of aspen and cotton-wood, with willow, cherry, and other shrubby trees. Buffalo, antelope, and elk, were frequent during the day; and, in their abundance, the latter sometimes reminded us slightly of the Sacramento valley.

We halted at noon on Potter's fork—a clear and swift stream, forty yards wide, and in many places deep enough to swim our animals; and in the evening encamped on a pretty stream, where there were several beaver dams, and many trees recently cut down by the beaver. We gave to this the name of Beaver Dam creek, as now they are becoming sufficiently rare to distinguish by their name the streams on which they are found. In this mountain they occurred more abundantly than elsewhere in all our journey, in which their vestiges had been scarcely seen.

The next day we continued our journey up the valley, the country presenting much the same appearance, except that the grass was more scanty on the ridges, over which was spread a scrubby growth of sage; but still the bottoms of the creeks were broad, and afforded good pasture grounds. We had an animated chase after a grizzly bear this morning, which we tried to lasso. Fuentes threw the lasso upon his neck, but it slipped off, and he escaped into the dense thickets of the creek, into which we did not like to venture. Our course in the after-

noon brought us to the main Platte river, here a handsome stream, with a uniform breadth of seventy yards, except where widened by frequent islands. It was apparently deep, with a moderate current, and wooded with groves of large willow.

The valley narrowed as we ascended, and presently degenerated into a gorge, through which the river passed as through a gate. We entered it, and found ourselves in the New Park—a beautiful circular valley of thirty miles diameter, walled in all round with snowy mountains, rich with water and with grass, fringed with pine on the mountain sides below the snow line, and a paradise to all grazing animals. The Indian name for it signifies "cow lodge," of which our own may be considered a translation: the enclosure, the grass, the water, and the herds of buffalo roaming over it, naturally presenting the idea of a park. We halted for the night just within the gate, and expected, as usual, to see herds of buffalo, but an Arapahoe village had been before us, and not one was to be seen. Latitude of the encampment $40^{\circ} 52' 44''$. Elevation by the boiling point $7,720$ feet.

It is from this elevated *cove*, and from the gorges of the surrounding mountains, and some lakes within their bosoms, that the Great Platte river collects its first waters, and assumes its first form; and certainly no river could ask a more beautiful origin.

June 16.—In the morning we pursued our way through the Park, following a principal branch of the Platte, and crossing, among many smaller ones, a bold stream, scarcely fordable, called Lodge Pole fork, and which issues from a lake in the mountains on the right, ten miles long. In the evening we encamped on a small stream, near the upper end of the Park. Latitude of the camp $40^{\circ} 33' 22''$.

June 17.—We continued our way among the waters of the Park, over the foot hills of the bordering mountains, where we found good pasturage, and surprised and killed some buffalo. We fell into a broad and excellent trail, made by buffalo, where a wagon would pass with ease; and, in the course of the morning, we crossed the summit of the Rocky mountains, through a pass which was one of the most beautiful we had ever seen. The trail led among the aspens, through open grounds, richly covered with grass, and carried us over an elevation of about $9,000$ feet above the level of the sea.

The country appeared to great advantage in the delightful summer weather of the mountains, which we still continued to enjoy. Descending from the pass, we found ourselves again on the western waters; and halted to noon on the edge of another

to the main Platte river, a stream, with a uniform width of many yards, except where it is broken by small islands. It was apparent that it had a moderate current, and was lined with large willow.

As we ascended, and entered into a gorge, through which we passed as through a gate, and found ourselves in the beautiful circular valley of Grand river, which ran through this portion of the valley. The appearance of the country in the Old Park is interesting, though of a different character from the New; instead of being a comparative plain, it is more or less broken into hills, and surrounded by the high mountains, timbered on the lower parts with quaking asp and pines.

June 18.—Our scouts, who were as usual ahead, made from a *butte* this morning the signal of Indians, and we rode up in time to meet a party of about 30 Arapahoes. They were men and women going into the hills—the men for game, the women for roots—and informed us that the village was encamped a few miles above, on the main fork of Grand river, which passes through the midst of the valley. I made them the usual presents; but they appeared disposed to be unfriendly, and galloped back at speed to the village. Knowing that we had trouble to expect, I descended immediately into the bottoms of Grand river, which were overflowed in places, the river being up, and made the best encampment the ground afforded. We had no time to build a fort, but found an open place among the willows, which was defended by the river on one side and the overflowed bottoms on the other. We had scarcely made our few preparations, when about 200 of them appeared on the verge of the bottom, mounted, painted, and armed for war. We planted the American flag between us; and a short parley ended in a truce, with something more than the usual amount of presents. About 20 Sioux were with them—one of them an old chief, who had always been friendly to the whites. He informed me that, before coming down, a council had been held at the village, in which the greater part had declared for attacking us—we had come from their enemies, to whom we had doubtless been carrying assistance in arms and ammunition; but his own party, with some few of the Arapahoes who had seen us the previous year in the plains, opposed it. It will be remembered that it is customary for this people to attack the trading parties which they meet in this region, considering all whom they meet on the western side of the mountains

to be their enemies. They deceived me into the belief that I should find a ford at their village, and I could not avoid accompanying them; but put several sloughs between us and their village, and forded strongly on the banks of the river, which was everywhere rapid and deep, and over a hundred yards in breadth. The camp was generally crowded with Indians; and though the baggage was carefully watched and covered, a number of things were stolen.

The next morning we descended the river for about eight miles, and halted a short distance above a cañon, through which Grand river issues from the Park. Here it was smooth and deep, 150 yards in breadth, and its elevation at this point 6,700 feet. A frame for the boat being very soon made, our baggage was ferried across; the horses, in the mean time, swimming over. A southern fork of Grand river here makes its junction, nearly opposite to the branch by which we had entered the valley, and up this we continued for about eight miles in the afternoon, and encamped in a bottom on the left bank, which afforded good grass. At our encampment it was 70 to 90 yards in breadth, sometimes widened by islands, and separated into several channels, with a very swift current and bed of rolled rocks.

On the 20th we travelled up the left bank with the prospect of a bad road, the trail here taking the opposite side; but the stream was up, and nowhere fordable. A piny ridge of mountains, with bare rocky peaks, was on our right all the day, and a snowy mountain appeared ahead. We crossed many foaming torrents with rocky beds, rushing down to the river; and in the evening made a strong fort in an aspen grove. The valley had already become very narrow, shut up more closely in densely timbered mountains, the pines sweeping down the verge of the bottoms. The *coq de prairie* (*tetrao europasianus*) was occasionally seen among the sage.

We saw to-day the returning trail of an Arapahoe party which had been sent from the village to look for Utahs in the Bayou Salade, (South Park;) and it being probable that they would visit our camp with the desire to return on horseback, we were more than usually on the alert.

Here the river diminished to 35 yards, and, notwithstanding the number of affluents we had crossed, was still a large stream, dashing swiftly by, with a great continuous fall, and not yet fordable. We had a delightful ride along a good trail among the fragrant pines; and the appearance of buffalo in great numbers indicated that there were Indians in the Bayou Salade, (South

June 19.—Our scouts, who were as usual ahead, made from a *butte* this morning the signal of Indians, and we rode up in time to meet a party of about 30 Arapahoes. They were men and women going into the hills—the men for game, the women for roots—and informed us that the village was encamped a few miles above, on the main fork of Grand river, which passes through the midst of the valley. I made them the usual presents; but they appeared disposed to be unfriendly, and galloped back at speed to the village. Knowing that we had trouble to expect, I descended immediately into the bottoms of Grand river, which were overflowed in places, the river being up, and made the best encampment the ground afforded. We had no time to build a fort, but found an open place among the willows, which was defended by the river on one side and the overflowed bottoms on the other. We had scarcely made our few preparations, when about 200 of them appeared on the verge of the bottom, mounted, painted, and armed for war. We planted the American flag between us; and a short parley ended in a truce, with something more than the usual amount of presents. About 20 Sioux were with them—one of them an old chief, who had always been friendly to the whites. He informed me that, before coming down, a council had been held at the village, in which the greater part had declared for attacking us—we had come from their enemies, to whom we had doubtless been carrying assistance in arms and ammunition; but his own party, with some few of the Arapahoes who had seen us the previous year in the plains, opposed it. It will be remembered that it is customary for this people to attack the trading parties which they meet in this region, considering all whom they meet on the western side of the mountains

to be their enemies. They deceived me into the belief that I should find a ford at their village, and I could not avoid accompanying them; but put several sloughs between us and their village, and forded strongly on the banks of the river, which was everywhere rapid and deep, and over a hundred yards in breadth. The camp was generally crowded with Indians; and though the baggage was carefully watched and covered, a number of things were stolen.

The next morning we descended the river for about eight miles, and halted a short distance above a cañon, through which Grand river issues from the Park. Here it was smooth and deep, 150 yards in breadth, and its elevation at this point 6,700 feet. A frame for the boat being very soon made, our baggage was ferried across; the horses, in the mean time, swimming over. A southern fork of Grand river here makes its junction, nearly opposite to the branch by which we had entered the valley, and up this we continued for about eight miles in the afternoon, and encamped in a bottom on the left bank, which afforded good grass. At our encampment it was 70 to 90 yards in breadth, sometimes widened by islands, and separated into several channels, with a very swift current and bed of rolled rocks.

On the 20th we travelled up the left bank with the prospect of a bad road, the trail here taking the opposite side; but the stream was up, and nowhere fordable. A piny ridge of mountains, with bare rocky peaks, was on our right all the day, and a snowy mountain appeared ahead. We crossed many foaming torrents with rocky beds, rushing down to the river; and in the evening made a strong fort in an aspen grove. The valley had already become very narrow, shut up more closely in densely timbered mountains, the pines sweeping down the verge of the bottoms. The *coq de prairie* (*tetrao europasianus*) was occasionally seen among the sage.

We saw to-day the returning trail of an Arapahoe party which had been sent from the village to look for Utahs in the Bayou Salade, (South Park;) and it being probable that they would visit our camp with the desire to return on horseback, we were more than usually on the alert.

Here the river diminished to 35 yards, and, notwithstanding the number of affluents we had crossed, was still a large stream, dashing swiftly by, with a great continuous fall, and not yet fordable. We had a delightful ride along a good trail among the fragrant pines; and the appearance of buffalo in great numbers indicated that there were Indians in the Bayou Salade, (South

Park,) by whom they were driven out. We halted to noon under the shade of the pines, and the weather was most delightful. The country was literally alive with buffalo; and the continued echo of the hunter's rifle on the other side of the river for a moment made me uneasy, thinking perhaps they were engaged with Indians; but in a short time they came into camp with the meat of seven fat cows.

During the earlier part of the day's ride, the river had been merely a narrow ravine between high piny mountains, backed on both sides, but particularly on the west, by a line of snowy ridges; but, after several hours' ride, the stream opened out into a valley with pleasant bottoms. In the afternoon the river forked into three apparently equal streams; broad buffalo trails leading up the left hand, and the middle branch, indicating good passes over the mountains; but up the right-hand branch, (which, in the object of descending from the mountain by the main head of the Arkansas, I was most desirous to follow,) there was no sign of a buffalo trace. Apprehending from this reason, and the character of the mountains, which are known to be extremely rugged, that the right-hand branch led to no pass, I proceeded up the middle branch, which formed a flat valley bottom between timbered ridges on the left and snowy mountains on the right, terminating in large *buttes* of naked rock. The trail was good, and the country interesting; and at nightfall we encamped in an open place among the pines, where we built a strong fort. The mountains exhibit their usual varied growth of flowers, and at this place I noticed, among others, *thermopsis montana*, whose bright yellow color makes it a showy plant. This has been a characteristic in many parts of the country since reaching the Uintah waters. With fields of iris were *aquilegia cærulea*, violeta, esparcette, and strawberries.

At dark, we perceived a fire in the edge of the pines, on the opposite side of the valley. We had evidently not been discovered, and, at the report of a gun, and the blaze of fresh fuel which was heaped on our fires, those of the strangers were instantly extinguished. In the morning, they were found to be a party of six trappers, who had ventured out among the mountains after beaver. They informed us that two of the number with which they had started had been already killed by the Indians—one of them but a few days since—by the Arapahoes we had lately seen, who had found him alone at a camp on this river, and carried off his traps and animals. As they were desirous to join us, the hunters returned with them to their encampment, and we

continued up the valley, in which the stream rapidly diminished, breaking into small tributaries—every hollow affording water. At our noon halt, the hunters joined us with the trappers. While preparing to start from their encampment, they found themselves suddenly surrounded by a party of Arapahoes, who informed them that their scouts had discovered a large Utah village in the Bayou Salade, (South Park,) and that a large war party, consisting of almost every man in the village, except those who were too old to go to war, were going over to attack them. The main body had ascended the left fork of the river, which afforded a better pass than the branch we were on; and this party had followed our trail, in order that we might add our force to theirs. Carson informed them that we were too far ahead to turn back, but would join them in the bayou; and the Indians went off apparently satisfied. By the temperature of boiling water, our elevation here was 10,430 feet; and still the pine forest continued, and grass was good.

In the afternoon, we continued our road—occasionally through open pines, with a very gradual ascent. We surprised a herd of buffalo, enjoying the shade at a small lake among the pines; and they made the dry branches crack, as they broke through the woods. In a ride of about three-quarters of an hour, and having ascended perhaps 800 feet, we reached the summit of the dividing ridge, which would thus have an estimated height of 11,200 feet. Here the river spreads itself into small branches and aprings, heading nearly in the summit of the ridge, which is very narrow. Immediately below us was a green valley, through which ran a stream; and a short distance opposite rose snowy mountains, whose summits were formed into peaks of naked rock. We soon afterwards satisfied ourselves that immediately beyond these mountains was the main branch of the Arkansas river—most probably heading directly with the little stream below us, which gathered its waters in the snowy mountains near by. Descriptions of the rugged character of the mountains around the head of the Arkansas, which their appearance amply justified, deterred me from making any attempt to reach it, which would have involved a greater length of time than now remained at my disposal.

In about a quarter of an hour, we descended from the summit of the Pass into the creek below, our road having been very much controlled and interrupted by the pines and springs on the mountain side. Turning up the stream, we encamped on a bottom of good grass near its head, which gathers its waters in the dividing crest of the

valley, in which the stream
 breaking into small trib-
 buttles affording water. At
 the hunters joined us with
 While preparing to start
 ment, they found them-
 surrounded by a party of
 informed them that their
 ered a large Utah village
 lade, (South Park,) and
 party, consisting of almost
 village, except those who
 to war, were going over
 The main body had as-
 cended the branch we were
 had followed our trail, in
 light add our force to theirs.
 them that we were too far
 to, but would join them in
 the Indians went off appa-
 By the temperature of
 elevation here was 10,430
 the pine forest continued,
 and.

On, we continued our road—
 through open pines, with a very
 We surprised a herd of
 the shade at a small lake
 ; and they made the dry
 as they broke through the
 of about three-quarters of
 ing ascended perhaps 800
 the summit of the divid-
 would thus have an esti-
 of 11,200 feet. Here the
 self into small branches and
 nearly in the summit of the
 very narrow. Immediately
 green valley, through which
 and a short distance opposite
 mountains, whose summits were
 like naked rock. We
 satisfied ourselves that im-
 these mountains was the
 the Arkansas river—most
 directly with the little
 which gathered its waters
 mountains near by. Descrip-
 ed character of the moun-
 the head of the Arkansas,
 arance amply justified, de-
 making any attempt to reach
 have involved a greater
 an now remained at my dis-

arter of an hour, we de-
 scended the Pass into
 our road having been very
 and interrupted by the pines
 the mountain side. Turn-
 ing, we encamped on a bot-
 tom near its head, which
 is in the dividing crest of the

Rocky mountains, and, according to the best
 information we could obtain, separated only
 by the rocky wall of the ridge from the head
 of the main Arkansas river. By the obser-
 vations of the evening, the latitude of our
 encampment was $39^{\circ} 20' 24''$, and south of
 which, therefore, is the head of the Arkan-
 sas river. The stream on which we had
 encamped is the head of either the *Fontaine-
 qui-bouit*, a branch of the Arkansas, or the
 remotest head of the south fork of the
 Platte; as which, you will find it laid down
 on the map. But descending it only through
 a portion of its course, we have not been
 able to settle this point satisfactorily.

In the evening, a band of buffalo furnished
 a little excitement, by charging through the
 camp.

On the following day, we descended the
 stream by an excellent buffalo trail, along
 the open grassy bottom of the river. On
 our right, the bayou was bordered by a
 mountainous range, created with rocky and
 naked peaks; and below, it had a beautiful
 park-like character of pretty level prairies,
 interspersed among low spurs, wooded
 openly with pine and quaking asp, contrast-
 ing well with the denser pines which swept
 around on the mountain sides. Descending
 always the valley of the stream, towards
 noon we descried a mounted party descend-
 ing the point of a spur, and judging them to
 be Arapahoes—who, defeated or victorious,
 were equally dangerous to us, and with
 whom a fight would be inevitable—we hur-
 ried to post ourselves as strongly as possible
 on some willow islands in the river. We
 had scarcely halted when they arrived,
 proving to be a party of Utah women, who
 told us that on the other side of the ridge
 their village was fighting with the Arapa-
 hoes. As soon as they had given us this in-
 formation, they filled the air with cries and
 lamentations, which made us understand
 that some of their chiefs had been killed.

Extending along the river, directly ahead
 of us, was a low pine ridge, leaving be-
 tween it and the stream a small open bottom,
 on which the Utahs had very injudiciously
 placed their village, which, according to the
 women, numbered about 300 warriors. Ad-
 vancing in the cover of the pines, the Ara-
 pahoes, about daylight, charged into the vil-
 lage, driving off a great number of their
 horses, and killing four men; among them,
 the principal chief of the village. They
 drove the horses perhaps a mile beyond the
 village, to the end of a hollow, where they
 had previously fortified at the edge of the
 pines. Here the Utahs had instantly at-
 tacked them in turn, and, according to the
 report of the women, were getting rather
 the best of the day. The women pressed
 us eagerly to join with their people, and

would immediately have provided us with
 the best horses at the village; but it was
 not for us to interfere in such a conflict.
 Neither party were our friends, or under our
 protection; and each was ready to prey up-
 on us that could. But we could not help
 feeling an unusual excitement at being with-
 in a few hundred yards of a fight, in which
 500 men were closely engaged, and hearing
 the sharp cracks of their rifles. We were
 in a bad position, and subject to be attacked
 in it. Either party which we might meet,
 victorious or defeated, was certain to fall
 upon us; and, gearing up immediately, we
 kept close along the pines of the ridge, hav-
 ing it between us and the village, and keep-
 ing the scouts on the summit, to give us
 notice of the approach of Indians. As we
 passed by the village, which was immedi-
 ately below us, horsemen were galloping to
 and fro, and groups of people were gathered
 around those who were wounded and dead,
 and who were being brought in from the
 field. We continued to press on, and, cross-
 ing another fork, which came in from the
 right, after having made fifteen miles from
 the village, fortified ourselves strongly in
 the pines, a short distance from the river.

During the afternoon, Pike's Peak had
 been plainly in view before us, and, from
 our encampment, bore N. 87° E. by com-
 pass. This was a familiar object, and it
 had for us the face of an old friend. At its
 foot were the springs, where we had spent
 a pleasant day in coming out. Near it were
 the habitations of civilized men; and it
 overlooked the broad smooth plains, which
 promised us an easy journey to our home.

The next day we left the river, which
 continued its course towards Pike's Peak;
 and taking a southeasterly direction, in
 about ten miles we crossed a gentle ridge,
 and, issuing from the South Park, found
 ourselves involved among the broken spurs
 of the mountains which border the great
 prairie plains. Although broken and ex-
 tremely rugged, the country was very inter-
 esting, being well watered by numerous af-
 fluents to the Arkansas river, and covered
 with grass and a variety of trees. The
 streams, which, in the upper part of their
 course, ran through grassy and open hol-
 lows, after a few miles all descended into
 deep and impracticable cañons, through
 which they found their way to the Arkan-
 sas valley. Here the buffalo trails we had
 followed were dispersed among the hills, or
 crossed over into the more open valleys of
 other streams.

During the day our road was fatiguing
 and difficult, reminding us much, by its steep
 and rocky character, of our travelling the
 year before among the Wind river moun-
 tains; but always at night we found some

grassy bottom, which afforded us a pleasant camp. In the deep seclusion of these little streams, we found always an abundant pasturage, and a wild luxuriance of plants and trees. Aspens and pines were the prevailing timber; on the creeks, oak was frequent; but the narrow-leaved cotton-wood, (*populus angustifolia*), of unusually large size, and seven or eight feet in circumference, was the principal tree. With these were mingled a variety of shrubby trees, which aided to make the ravines almost impenetrable.

After several days' laborious travelling, we succeeded in extricating ourselves from the mountains, and on the morning of the 28th encamped immediately at their foot, on a handsome tributary to the Arkansas river. In the afternoon we descended the stream, winding our way along the bottoms, which were densely wooded with oak, and in the evening encamped near the main river. Continuing the next day our road along the Arkansas, and meeting on the way a war party of Arapahoe Indians, (who had recently been committing some outrages at Bent's fort, killing stock and driving off horses,) we arrived before sunset at the Pueblo, near the mouth of the *Fontaine-qui-bouit* river, where we had the pleasure to find a number of our old acquaintances. The little settlement appeared in a thriving condition; and in the interval of our absence another had been established on the river, some thirty miles above.

June 30.—Our cavalcade moved rapidly down the Arkansas, along the broad road which follows the river, and on the 1st of July we arrived at Bent's fort, about 70 miles below the mouth of the *Fontaine-qui-bouit*. As we emerged into view from the groves on the river, we were saluted with a display of the national flag and repeated discharges from the guns of the fort, where we were received by Mr. George Bent with a cordial welcome and a friendly hospitality, in the enjoyment of which we spent several very agreeable days. We were now in the region where our mountaineers were accustomed to live; and all the dangers and difficulties of the road being considered past, four of them, including Carson and Walker, remained at the fort.

On the 5th we resumed our journey down the Arkansas, travelling along a broad wagon road, and encamped about twenty miles below the fort. On the way we met a very large village of Sioux and Cheyenne Indians, who, with the Arapahoes, were returning from the crossing of the Arkansas, where they had been to meet the Kioway and Comanche Indians. A few days previous they had massacred a party of fifteen Delawares, whom they had discovered in a

fort on the Smoky Hill river, losing in the affair several of their own people. They were desirous that we should bear a pacific message to the Delawares on the frontier, from whom they expected retaliation; and we passed through them without any difficulty or delay. Dispersed over the plain in scattered bodies of horsemen, and family groups of women and children, with dog trains carrying baggage, and long lines of pack horses, their appearance was picturesque and imposing.

Agreeably to your instructions, which required me to complete, as far as practicable, our examinations of the Kansas, I left at this encampment the Arkansas river, taking a northeasterly direction across the elevated dividing grounds which separate that river from the waters of the Platte. On the 7th we crossed a large stream, about forty yards wide, and one or two feet deep, flowing with a lively current on a sandy bed. The discolored and muddy appearance of the water indicated that it proceeded from recent rains; and we are inclined to consider this a branch of the Smoky Hill river, although, possibly, it may be the Pawnee fork of the Arkansas. Beyond this stream we travelled over high and level prairies, halting at small ponds and holes of water, and using for our fires the *bois de vache*, the country being without timber. On the evening of the 8th we encamped in a cotton-wood grove on the banks of a sandy stream bed, where there was water in holes sufficient for the camp. Here several hollows, or dry creeks with sandy beds, met together, forming the head of a stream which afterwards proved to be the Smoky Hill fork of the Kansas river.

The next morning, as we were leaving our encampment, a number of Arapahoe Indians were discovered. They belonged to a war party which had scattered over the prairie in returning from an expedition against the Pawnees.

As we travelled down the valley, water gathered rapidly in the sandy bed from many little tributaries; and at evening it had become a handsome stream, fifty to eighty feet in width, with a lively current in small channels, the water being principally dispersed among quicksands.

Gradually enlarging, in a few days' march it became a river eighty yards in breadth, wooded with occasional groves of cotton-wood. Our road was generally over level uplands bordering the river, which were closely covered with a sward of buffalo grass.

On the 10th we entered again the buffalo range, where we had found these animals so abundant on our outward journey, and halted for a day among numerous herds, in

Hill river, losing in the their own people. They we should bear a pacific elawares on the frontier, expected retaliation; and them without any diffi- dispersed over the plain in of horsemen, and family and children, with dog ggage, and long lines of r appearance was pictu- ng.

ur instructions, which re- plete, as far as practica- ons of the Kansas, I left ent the Arkansas river, terly direction across the grounds which separate he waters of the Platte. sed a large stream, about and one or two feet deep, vely current on a sandy red and muddy appear- indicated that it proceed- ins; and we are inclined branch of the Smoky Hill ssibly, it may be the Paw- Arkansas. Beyond this led over high and level small ponds and holes of for our fires the *bois de* ry being without timber. of the 8th we encamped grove on the banks of a where there was water in the camp. Here several creeks with sandy beds, ning the head of a stream proved to be the Smoky Kansas river.

ing, as we were leaving a number of Arapahoe la- ered. They belonged to had scattered over the ing from an expedition es.

d down the valley, water n the sandy bed from ma- s; and at evening it had e stream, fifty to eighty a lively current in small er being principally dis- ksands.

ing, in a few days' march eighty yards in breadth, sional groves of cotton- was generally over level the river, which were with a sward of buffalo

entered again the buffalo had found these animals ur outward journey, and among numerous herds, in

order to make a provision of meat sufficient to carry us to the frontier.

A few days afterwards, we encamped, in a pleasant evening, on a high river prairie, the stream being less than a hundred yards broad. During the night we had a succession of thunder storms, with heavy and continuous rain, and towards morning the water suddenly burst over the banks, flooding the bottoms, and becoming a large river, five or six hundred yards in breadth. The darkness of the night and incessant rain had concealed from the guard the rise of the water; and the river broke into the camp so suddenly, that the baggage was instantly covered, and all our perishable collections almost entirely ruined, and the hard labor of many months destroyed in a moment.

On the 17th we discovered a large village of Indians encamped at the mouth of a handsomely wooded stream on the right bank of the river. Readily inferring, from the nature of the encampment, that they were Pawnee Indians, and confidently expecting good treatment from a people who receive regularly an annuity from the Government, we proceeded directly to the village, where we found assembled nearly all the Pawnee tribe, who were now returning from the crossing of the Arkansas, where they had met the Kioway and Comanche Indians. We were received by them with the unfriendly rudeness and characteristic insolence which they never fail to display whenever they find an occasion for doing so with impunity. The little that remained of our goods was distributed among them, but proved entirely insufficient to satisfy their greedy rapacity; and, after some delay, and considerable difficulty, we succeeded in extricating ourselves from the village, and encamped on the river about fifteen miles below.*

The country through which we had been travelling since leaving the Arkansas river, for a distance of 260 miles, presented to the eye only a succession of far-stretching green prairies, covered with the unbroken verdure of the buffalo grass, and sparingly wooded along the streams with straggling trees and occasional groves of cotton-wood; but here the country began perceptibly to change its character, becoming a more fertile, wooded, and beautiful region, covered with a profusion of grasses, and watered with innumerable little streams, which were wooded with oak, large elms, and the usual varieties of

* In a recent report to the department, from Major Wharton, who visited the Pawnee villages with a military force some months afterwards, it is stated that the Indians had intended to attack our party during the night we remained at this encampment, but were prevented by the interposition of the Pawnee Loups.

timber common to the lower course of the Kansas river.

As we advanced, the country steadily improved, gradually assimilating itself in appearance to the northwestern part of the State of Missouri. The beautiful sward of the buffalo grass, which is regarded as the best and most nutritious found on the prairies, appeared now only in patches, being replaced by a longer and coarser grass, which covered the face of the country luxuriantly. The difference in the character of the grasses became suddenly evident in the weakened condition of our animals, which began sensibly to fail as soon as we quitted the buffalo grass.

The river preserved a uniform breadth of eighty or a hundred yards, with broad bottoms continuously timbered with large cotton-wood trees, among which were interspersed a few other varieties.

While engaged in crossing one of the numerous creeks which frequently impeded and checked our way, sometimes obliging us to ascend them for several miles, one of the people (Alexis Ayot) was shot through the leg by the accidental discharge of a rifle—a mortifying and painful mischance, to be crippled for life by an accident, after having nearly accomplished in safety a long and eventful journey. He was a young man of remarkably good and cheerful temper, and had been among the useful and efficient men of the party.

After having travelled directly along its banks for two hundred and ninety miles, we left the river, where it bore suddenly off in a northwesterly direction, towards its junction with the Republican fork of the Kansas, distant about sixty miles; and, continuing our easterly course, in about twenty miles we entered the wagon road from Santa Fé to Independence, and on the last day of July encamped again at the little town of Kansas, on the banks of the Missouri river.

During our protracted absence of fourteen months, in the course of which we had necessarily been exposed to great varieties of weather and of climate, no one case of sickness had ever occurred among us.

Here ended our land journey; and the day following our arrival, we found ourselves on board a steamboat rapidly gliding down the broad Missouri. Our travel-worn animals had not been sold and dispersed over the country to renewed labor, but were placed at good pasturage on the frontier, and are now ready to do their part in the coming expedition.

On the 6th of August we arrived at St. Louis, where the party was finally disbanded; a great number of the men having their homes in the neighborhood.

Andreas Fuentes also remained here, hav-

ing readily found employment for the winter, and is one of the men engaged to accompany me the present year.

Pablo Hernandez remains in the family of Senator Benton, where he is well taken care of, and conciliates good will by his docility, intelligence, and amiability. General Almonte, the Mexican minister at Washington, to whom he was of course made known, kindly offered to take charge of him, and to carry him back to Mexico; but the boy preferred to remain where he was until he got an education, for which he shows equal ardor and aptitude.

Our Chinook Indian had his wish to see

the whites fully gratified. He accompanied me to Washington, and, after remaining several months at the Columbia college, was sent by the Indian department to Philadelphia, where, among other things, he learned to read and write well, and speak the English language with some fluency.

He will accompany me in a few days to the frontier of Missouri, whence he will be sent with some one of the emigrant companies to the village at the Dalles of the Columbia.

Very respectfully, your obedient servant,
J. C. FREMONT,
Bt. Capt. Topl. Engineers.

TABLE OF DISTANCES

ALONG

THE ROAD TRAVELLED BY THE EXPEDITION IN 1843 AND 1844

OUTWARD JOURNEY.

From Kansas Landing to Fort Vancouver.

Date.	Distance travelled each day.	Distance from Kansas landing.	Localities.	Date.	Distance travelled each day.	Distance from Kansas landing.	Localities.
1843.	Miles.	Miles.		1843.	Miles.	Miles.	
May 29	7	7		July 29	6	807	
30	22	29		30	24	831	
31	26	55		31	30	861	
June 1	23	78		Aug. 1	26	887	
2	22	100		2	31	918	Medicine Bow river
3	23	123		3	26	944	
4	18	141		4	18	962	North fork.
5	19	160		6	12	981	
6	14	174		7	30	1,011	
7	8	182		8	29	1,040	
8	5	187	Junction of Smoky Hill and Republican forks.	9	26	1,066	Sweet Water
				10	23	1,089	
				11	29	1,118	
				12	25	1,143	
10	1	188		13	9	1,152	South pass.
11	24	212		15	15	1,167	
12	25	240		14	25	1,192	
13	18	258		15	29	1,221	Green river, or Rio Colorado.
14	17	275					
16	21	296		16	26	1,247	
17	14	310		17	21	1,268	
18	23	333		18	32	1,300	
19	18	351		19	28	1,328	
20	26	377		20	30	1,358	
21	27	404		21	26	1,384	
22	26	430		22	37	1,421	
23	26	456		23	12	1,433	
24	34	490		24	22	1,455	
25	26	516	Crossing of the Republican.	25	8	1,463	Bear Springs.
				26	21	1,484	
26	24	540		27	21	1,505	
27	27	567		28	27	1,532	
28	30	597		29	17	1,549	
29	21	618		30	19	1,568	
30	26	644	South fork.	31	26	1,594	
July 1	32	676		Sept. 1	22	1,616	
2	29	705		2	17	1,633	
3	28	733		3	3	1,636	Mouth of Bear river.
4	18	751	St. Vrain's fort	4	6	1,642	
26	4	755		5	27	1,669	
27	26	781		6	25	1,694	
28	20	801					

TABLE OF DISTANCES—Continued.

Date.	Distance travel- led each day.	Distance from Kansas landing.	Localities.	Date.	Distance travel- led each day.	Distance from Kansas landing.	Localities.
1843. Sept. 8	Miles. 20	Miles. 1,714	Shore of the Salt lake. Island in the Salt lake. Fort Hall. American falls on Lewis's fork.	1843. Oct. 9	Miles. 24	Miles. 2,254	Fort Boisé.
9	8	1,722		Oct. 10	2	2,256	
10	28	1,750		11	20	2,276	
12	13	1,763		12	27	2,303	
13	27	1,790		13	20	2,323	
14	24	1,814		14	22	2,345	
15	19	1,833		15	26	2,371	
16	26	1,859		16	13	2,384	
17	24	1,883		17	21	2,405	
18	23	1,906		18	20	2,425	
22	12	1,918		19	21	2,446	
24	10	1,928		20	12	2,458	
25	13	1,941		21	5	2,463	
26	17	1,958		22	16	2,479	
27	20	1,978		24	18	2,497	
28	25	2,003		25	18	2,515	
29	24	2,027		26	3	2,518	
30	26	2,053					
Oct. 1	16	2,069			28	19	2,537
2	20	2,098			29	19	2,556
3	16	2,114			30	21	2,577
4	19	2,133			31	26	2,603
5	26	2,159			Nov. 1	23	2,626
6	22	2,181			2	19	2,645
7	23	2,204		3	17	2,662	
8	26	2,230		4	14	2,676	
				6 & 7	90	2,766	
							Fort Nez Percés, at the mouth of Wa- lahwah river.
							Dalles. Fort Vancouver.

HOMEWARD JOURNEY.

From the Dalles to the Missouri river.

Date.	Distance travel- led each day.	Distance from the Dalles.	Localities.	Date.	Distance travel- led each day.	Distance from the Dalles.	Localities.
1843. Nov. 25	Miles. 12	Miles. 12		1843. Dec. 4	Miles. 9	Miles. 147	Tiamath lake.
26	22	34		Dec. 5	11	158	
27	13	47		6	19	177	
28	21	68		7	25	202	
29	21	89		8	19	221	
30	10	99		9	14	235	
Dec. 1	6	105		10	15	250	
2	11	116		12	5	255	
3	22	138		13	12	267	

TABLE OF DISTANCES—Continued.

Date.	Distance travel- led each day.	Distance from the Dalles.	Localities.	Date.	Distance travel- led each day.	Distance from the Dalles.	Localities.
1844	<i>Miles.</i>	<i>Miles.</i>		1844.	<i>Miles.</i>	<i>Miles.</i>	
May 10	24	2,058		June 22	15	2,913	Bayou Salade, (South Park.)
11	12	2,070		23	36	2,949	
12	14	2,084	Vegas de Santa Clara.	24	21	2,970	
13	15	2,099		25	21	2,991	
15	21	2,120		26	11	3,002	
16	17	2,137		27	10	3,012	
17	17	2,154		28	21	3,033	
19	27	2,181		29	30	3,063	Pueblo, on the Arkan- sas.
20	22	2,203		30	37	3,100	
21	31	2,234		July 1	33	3,133	Hent's fort.
22	23	2,257		5	20	3,153	
23	12	2,269	Sevier river.	6	31	3,184	
24	23	2,292		7	31	3,215	
25	32	2,324		8	28	3,243	Head-water of Smo- ky Hill fork of the Kansas.
26	9	2,333	Utah lake.	9	27	3,270	
27	22	2,355		10	28	3,298	
28	25	2,380		12	24	3,322	
29	25	2,405		13	30	3,352	
30	31	2,436		15	10	3,362	
31	16	2,452		16	23	3,385	
June 1	16	2,468		17	32	3,417	
2	8	2,476		18	24	3,441	
3	21	2,497	Uintah fort.	19	29	3,470	
5	26	2,523		20	29	3,499	
6	15	2,538		21	23	3,522	
7	30	2,568	Green river, (Brown's hole.)	22	17	3,539	
9	36	2,604		23	26	3,565	
10	30	2,634		24	22	3,587	
11	30	2,664		25	19	3,606	
12	26	2,690		26	24	3,630	
13	26	2,716		27	18	3,648	
14	23	2,739		28	22	3,670	
15	25	2,764	New Park	29	12	3,682	
16	26	2,790		30	12	3,694	
17	33	2,823	Old Park.	31	8	3,702	Kansas landing
18	13	2,836		Aug. 1	7	3,709	Missouri river.
19	16	2,852					
20	27	2,879					
21	19	2,898					

E.

med.

Miles from the Dalles	Localities
913	Bayou Salade, (South Park.)
949	
970	
991	
002	
012	
033	
063	Pueblo, on the Arkansas.
100	
133	Bent's fort.
153	
184	
215	
243	Head-water of Smoky Hill fork of the Kansas.
270	
298	
322	
352	
362	
385	
417	
441	
470	
499	
522	
539	
565	
587	
606	
630	
648	
670	
682	
694	
702	Kansas landing
709	Missouri river.

